



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Ex. 1 918.45.120

G. A. Perkins

**HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY**



**THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION**

**GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
OF NEW YORK**

**JANUARY 25, 1924**



3 2044 097 061 121

Dr John G. Treadwell,  
with the affectionate regards  
of his cousin, the Author.  
Aug. 1. 1845

Educ 1 918. 45. 120

G. A. Perkins

**HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY**



**THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION**

**GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
OF NEW YORK**

**JANUARY 25, 1924**





3 2044 097 061 121

Dr John G. Treadwell,  
with the affectionate regards  
of his country, the author.  
Aug. 1. 1845

Case 1 918.45.12-0

*G. A. Perkins*

**HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY**



**THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION**

**GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
OF NEW YORK**

**JANUARY 25, 1924**



3 2044 097 061 121

Dr John G. Treadwell,  
with the affectionate regards  
of his country, the Author.  
Aug. 1. 1845

418.45.120  
*G. A. Perkins*

**HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY**



**THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION**

**GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
OF NEW YORK**

**JANUARY 25, 1924**



3 2044 097 061 121

Dr John G. Treadwell,  
with the affectionate regards  
of his country, the author.  
Aug. 1. 1845

[illegible]

A  
GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
LATIN LANGUAGE,  
ON THE  
BASIS OF THE GRAMMAR

OF  
DR. ALEXANDER ADAM, OF EDINBURGH.

=  
BY  
C. D. CLEVELAND, Ed.

FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF THE LATIN AND GREEK LANGUAGES IN DICKINSON COLLEGE,  
CARLISLE, PENN.; AND OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE  
IN THE UNIVERSITY OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK.

~~~~~  
THIRD EDITION.  
~~~~~

PHILADELPHIA:  
THOMAS, COWPERTHWAIT & CO.  
1845.

Educ T 918. 45, 120

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
JANUARY 25, 1924

---

Entered according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1845, by C. D.  
CLEVELAND, in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States,  
in and for the Eastern District of Pennsylvania.

---

2

PHILADELPHIA:  
PRINTED BY KING & BAIRD,  
No. 7 George street.



**TO THE**  
**CLASSICAL TEACHERS OF OUR COUNTRY,**  
**THIS ATTEMPT**  
**TO IMPROVE A WORK**  
**ORIGINALLY OF GREAT MERIT AND DESERVED CELEBRITY,**  
**IS RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED,**  
**BY THEIR FELLOW-LABOURER,**  
**THE EDITOR.**



## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

---

**THE** first edition of this Grammar, of two thousand copies, having been sold in less than ten months, the editor has carefully revised the present Stereotype edition, and has endeavoured, by some emendations and additions, to make it still more worthy of the favourable estimation of the public. He feels indeed, with others, that it is a great evil to have the successive editions of school books continually undergoing alterations and enlargements; but as this edition was to be sent forth to the world in a permanent form, he thought it advisable to introduce a few alterations, and, in his view, decided improvements, without changing the form or character of the work. Accordingly, by enlarging the page a little, and compressing the four conjugated verbs into a smaller space, he has been enabled to introduce the new matter without increasing the size of the book. But these alterations will occasion little or no difficulty in referring from this edition to the former, or from that to this: for in the Syntax, to which reference is more frequently made, and where the pages of the two editions differ most, the number of the rule will be an unerring guide. Soon, however, the old edition will be entirely gone; and where this alone is used, the most minute references can be made, not only in the Syntax, as before, but throughout the whole book, by the number of the section—the Etymology being numbered from § 1 to § 263, the Syntax from § 1 to § 246, and the Prosody from § 1 to § 125.

In justice to himself, and in reply to some remarks that have been made in a certain quarter, from interested motives, 'that this edition is little or no better than others of the same work,' the editor deems it his duty to state, somewhat more in detail than formerly, in what respects his edition **DIFFERS FROM ALL OTHERS**, and what it contains **OVER AND ABOVE ALL OTHER EDITIONS** of Adam's grammar, published in this country.

1. The remarks on Gender, page 19, are new.

2. The lists of *regular* Nouns of the first, second, and fourth declensions, found in other editions, have been thrown out of this, as entirely useless; and the spaces they would have occupied have been filled with lists of *Irregular Nouns*, and those which present some peculiarities. See the lists § 10, 11, 12 and 13, on page 21;—the Alphabetical list of Irregular Nouns on pages 46, 47, 48, 49 and 50;—the lists of Irregular Nouns, § 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63 and 64, which have been much enlarged; and the lists, § 65, 66, 67 and 68, which are entirely new;—and the terminations of the five declensions, on page 53.

3. The following entirely new matter is also to be found among the NOUNS. The remarks on the several cases, with their powers explained, § 15;—the declension of *Deus* in full, under § 22;—the declension of *Delos*, of *Androgeos*, and of *barbiton*, under § 23;—the exceptions in the vocative singular, under § 43;—the third and sixth paragraphs under the fifth declension, under § 51;—and the remarks on Proper Names, § 70. Besides this new matter, the Defective Nouns, § 54, have been arranged in alphabetical order, and the list of Redundant Nouns, § 69, has been much enlarged.

4. Among the ADJECTIVES, exceptions 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5, under § 82, are greatly enlarged, as will readily be seen on a comparison with any of the common editions of this work. The two first paragraphs on page 73, upon the numeral letters, are entirely new; as are also the three first paragraphs under § 91. The paragraph 2, under § 101, is greatly enlarged, and the whole article § 102, upon Irregular and Unusual Comparison, is new.

5. In the PRONOUNS, observations 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 and 21, under § 108, are entirely new.

6. In the VERBS, the remarks on the various tenses, comprising all of § 104, are new: likewise the second, third and fourth paragraphs under § 115. The Deponent and Common Verbs, § 128, have a different arrangement from that which obtains in other editions of this grammar, they being placed here next to the verbs which are given as examples of the several Conjugations. The formations of the tenses under § 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138 and 139, are greatly enlarged.

7. The most important alteration, perhaps, that has been made by the editor in his edition of Adam's Grammar, is to be found in the Conjugation of the Verbs. It is well known to every classical scholar, that while the Perfect Participle of a greater part of the Latin Verbs, is in use, the Supine is rarely found in the classics. It is therefore obviously proper that Latin Verbs should be conjugated with the Perfect Participle, rather than with the Supine. Dr. Adam, on the contrary, in conjugating the Verbs, gives the Supine almost uniformly, without any classical authority for its support, and all the common editions have followed carefully in his steps. For instance, the Boston edition of Adam's, from page 118 to page 164, is the same as the old Edinburgh edition of 1793, *totidem verbis*, with the trifling exception of five or six lines of the Irregular Verb *Prosum*. Thus have the errors of the old editions of this work been perpetuated. In this edition, however, the editor has rejected *entirely* Dr. Adam's article on the verbs, comprising about *thirty-two pages*, and has inserted matter altogether new, comprising about *sixty-five pages*, from page 112 to page 176. The Verbs are, therefore, conjugated with the Perfect Participle, if it be used; if not, the verb has an asterisk (\*) prefixed to it, and one of the future participles is inserted. The futures RUS and DUS, when found, are indicated by the letters R and D, and the Supines UM and U, by M and U. In the notes under the verbs will be found such parts of them as seldom occur in the Latin authors, with the classical authorities for each. In the common editions of Adam's, *not a single classical authority is given*; while in this, there are—

In the First Conjugation, .....	774
“ “ Second, “ .....	405
“ “ Third, “ .....	1147
“ “ Fourth, “ .....	360
“ “ Irregular and Defective verbs, .....	424
	<hr/> 3110 <hr/>

In all, THREE THOUSAND ONE HUNDRED AND TEN classical citations.

The editor is aware that much space has, in consequence of these numerous additions, been given to the Verbs, but he believes that it could not be better filled. Not only will it afford

the advanced scholar much satisfaction to be able to ascertain readily, whether any part of a verb which he may wish to employ, has been used by the best Roman writers, but it is highly important that the scholar in the grammar-school should *begin* right, and not, in after years, be obliged to do, what all know is so hard to be done—unlearn what has been learned amiss.

8. The articles § 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, on the Defective Verbs, are new.

9. The articles § 222, 223, 224 and 225, on Redundant Verbs, are new.

10. The Remarks on the Verb, § 230, on pages 176, 177 and 178, are not found in any other edition.

11. In the PARTICIPLES, articles § 233 and 239, are new.

12. It will be seen that the PREPOSITIONS are entirely remodelled, and instead of the meagre page, which is given to them in all the preceding editions of Adam's Grammar, they here occupy eight pages. The original import of each is endeavoured to be given and illustrated, and the secondary meanings traced to the primary. See pages 184—192. To the PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION, four pages have been devoted instead of a third of a page, as in the Edinburgh edition. See pages 192—195.

13. Articles § 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262 and 263, on the Signification of Words, are entirely new.

14. In the SYNTAX, the following articles are entirely new:—the remarks on Simple and Compound Sentences, § 4 and 5:—articles § 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11, under Rule II;—articles § 24, 25, 26 and 27, under Rule III;—article § 35, under Rule IV;—articles § 44, 45, 47 and 50, under Rule VI, explanatory of the government of the Genitive by another noun, and the different senses in which the Genitive is used;—article § 51, under Rule VI, explaining the use of the Dative for the Genitive;—article § 60, under Rule VII, giving the different significations of the 'Ablative of Quality';—article § 67, under Rule VIII;—article § 73, under Rule IX;—article § 82, under Rule X, comprising nearly two pages of adjectives governing the Genitive, with the classical authorities;—articles § 90 and 91, before Rule XII, explaining

the force and use of the Dative case;—articles § 106 and 109, under Rule XIII;—the note explanatory of Rule XV, and articles § 118, 119, 120, under that Rule;—the note to Rule XVII, and under this Rule, part of articles § 131 and 135, and the whole of the articles § 132, 133, 136, 138, 141, 142 and 143, the three last comprising about four pages of verbs, governing the Dative, that are ‘variously construed;’—article § 145, explaining what are usually considered as ‘redundant Datives;’—articles § 148, 149, 150, under Rule XVIII;—observation 3, under Rule XIX;—nearly all of observation 1, under Rule XX;—article § 156, under Rule XXI;—the note to Rule XXII;—article § 161, under Rule XXIII;—observations 3 and 4, under Rule XXVI;—observations 2, 3 and 4, under Rule XXVII;—articles § 172 and 173, under Rule XXVIII, explaining the construction when the active is changed into the passive verb;—observations 6 and 7, under Rule XXX;—part of observation 2, and all of observations 6 and 7, under Rule XXXI;—observations 4 and 5, under Rule XXXVIII;—part of observation 3, and all observations 4 and 5, under Rule XXXIX;—most of article § 196, and all of article § 197, under Rule XL;—Rules XLII and XLIII;—observation 3, under Rule LIII;—articles § 220, 221, 222, 223 and 224, giving rules for the use of the Relative with the Indicative and Subjunctive modes;—and article § 234, under Rule LXII. These additions to the Syntax, comprise about SEVEN HUNDRED LINES, while in all the other editions of Adam’s Grammar, which have fallen under the editor’s notice, this division of it (the Syntax) corresponds exactly with the Syntax in the old Edinburgh edition of 1793, with but a few trifling exceptions.

15. In PROSODY, the following articles are new;—article § 17;—exceptions 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8, under § 40;—the 9th, 10th and 13th, observations under § 42;—exception 4, under § 49;—article § 62;—exceptions 1, 2, 3 and 4, under § 63;—all of articles § 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91 and 92;—which present a clear view of all the different metres used by Horace;—and articles § 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124 and 125, which exhibit all the combinations of the preceding metres found in the same poet. Besides all these new articles, the “Figures of Diction” have been enlarged from the old editions; and many new subdivisions made throughout the Prosody. For instance, ex-

ceptions 2, 3 and 4, under § 48, are, in the other editions of Adam's comprised in one: but they are entirely different in character, and should be made distinct by division, both from the fact of their difference, and for easy and intelligible reference.

Such are the chief additions which the Editor has made to Adam's Latin Grammar, and by which, he trusts this work, originally of great merit, and deserved celebrity, has been rendered still more valuable. The original work has been used nearly half a century in all the best schools and colleges in our country, and those who have temporarily resorted to other grammars, have at length come back to this. It is true that some of the Rules of Syntax, of the original Edinburgh editions, and of those hitherto published in this country, have not been expressed with the greatest clearness and precision, but every intelligent instructor would of course explain and illustrate whatever there appeared to be that was ambiguous or obscure. Taken as a whole, however, the original work of Dr. Adam has risen higher in the estimation of the editor, the oftener and the more critically he has examined it. It has been his aim in this edition, to explain the little that was ambiguous, and to illustrate the little that was obscure; and, by supplying some deficiencies, to make it a manual to which the student of the higher classics might constantly refer with pleasure and satisfaction. Whether he has succeeded, he leaves for the decision of those who are decidedly the best qualified to judge—the Classical Teachers of our country.

**THE EDITOR.**

**Philadelphia, January 1, 1837.**



# CONTENTS.

	Page		Page
PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN .....	11	III. Verb .....	85
<b>PART I.</b>		Voice .....	87
ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of Let-		Mode .....	87
ters .....	15	Tense .....	87
Diphthongs .....	16	Number and Person .....	89
Syllables .....	16	Conjugation of Verbs .....	89
<b>PART II.</b>		First Conjugation .....	93
ETYMOLOGY, which treats of Words .	17	Second Conjugation .....	97
Division of Words, or Parts of Speech	17	Third Conjugation .....	99
I. Noun or Substantive .....	18	Fourth Conjugation .....	102
Latin Nouns .....	19	Deponent and Common Verbs .	104
Genders .....	19	Formation of Tenses .....	106
Number .....	23	Signification of Tenses .....	109
Case .....	22	Verbs of the First Conjugation	112
Declension of Nouns .....	23	—— Second .....	122
First Declension .....	24	—— Third .....	129
Second Declension .....	25	—— Fourth .....	150
Third Declension .....	29	Irregular Verbs .....	159
Fourth Declension .....	50	Neuter Passive .....	168
Fifth Declension .....	52	Defective .....	168
Irregular Nouns .....	53	Impersonal .....	171
Heterogeneous .....	53	Redundant Verbs .....	172
Defective in Cases .....	56	Frequentative .....	175
Defective in Number .....	58	Inceptive .....	175
Redundant .....	62	Desiderative .....	175
Division of Nouns according to		Remarks on the Verb .....	176
their Signification and Deri-		IV. Participles .....	178
vation .....	65	Gerunds .....	180
Adjective .....	67	Supines .....	180
First and Second Declension ...	67	V. Adverbs .....	180
Third Declension .....	69	VI. Prepositions .....	184
Rules for the formation of the		Prepositions in Composition ...	192
Ablative .....	70	VII. Interjections .....	195
Nominal Adjectives .....	72	VIII. Conjunctions .....	196
Comparison of Adjectives .....	76	Signification of Words .....	197
Irregular Comparison .....	77	Terminations of Words .....	199
II. Pronoun .....	79	<b>PART III.</b>	
1. Simple Pronouns .....	80	SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION .....	202
2. Compound Pronouns .....	82	Division of Sentences into Simple	
3. Reciprocals .....	84	and Compound .....	203

	Page		Page
<b>I. SIMPLE SENTENCES</b> .....	203	<b>PART IV.</b>	
Concord, or Agreement of Words	203	3. Figures of Thought .....	278
Government of Words in Simple Sentences .....	208	<i>PROSODY, which treats of the Quantity of Syllables, of Accent, and Verse</i> .....	281
Government of Substantives ..	208	Quantity of Syllables .....	282
Government of Adjectives ....	213	1. Quantity of First and Middle Syllables .....	283
Government of Verbs .....	221	2. Quantity of Final Syllables ....	289
1. Verbs governing one case ...	221	Quantity of Derivatives .....	292
2. Verbs governing two cases .	232	Quantity of Compounds .....	293
Construction of Passive Verbs .	237	Verse .....	294
—— Impersonal Verbs .....	239	Different Kinds of Feet .....	294
Construction of the Infinitive ..	241	Different Kinds of Verse .....	295
Construction of Participles, &c.	242	Cæsura .....	296
—— Gerunds .....	243	Iambic Measure .....	298
—— Supines .....	245	Choriambic .....	299
Construction of Adverbs .....	246	Ionic .....	300
—— Prepositions ..	249	Figures in Scanning .....	301
—— Interjections ..	251	Figures of Diction .....	303
Construction of Circumstances	251	Different Kinds of Poems .....	304
<b>COMPOUND SENTENCES</b> .....	256	Combination of Verses in Poems ...	305
Construction of Relatives .....	256	Different Metres used by Horace, and their Combinations .....	306
Construction of Conjunctions ..	260	Index to the Odes of Horace .....	309
Construction of Comparatives .	263		
Ablative Absolute .....	265		
<b>APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.</b>		<b>APPENDIX.</b>	
<b>II. Figures of Syntax</b> .....	267	Punctuation, Capitals, &c. ....	310
Ellipsis .....	267	Abbreviations, &c. ....	311
Pleonasm .....	268	Division of the Roman Months ....	311
Enallage .....	268	Of the Reckoning of Money .....	313
Hyperbaton .....	269	Roman Measures of Length .....	314
<b>III. Analysis and Translation</b> ....	270	—— Measures of Extent .....	315
<b>IV. Different kinds of Style</b> .....	273	—— Measures of Capacity 315 and 316	
<b>V. Figures of Rhetoric</b> .....	274	—— Weights .....	317 and 318
1. Figures of Words, or Tropes	274	—— Moneys .....	319 and 320
2. Repetition of Words .....	277		

## THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

---

THE following rules for the Pronunciation of Latin, are such as prevail in the English Universities, and in the principal Colleges in the United States. They are in accordance with the standard laid down by Walker, (which it is desirable should be adopted wherever the English language is spoken,) that the Latin should be accented and pronounced by us, according to the prevailing analogies of our own language, without regard to the prosodial accent and quantity of the ancients.

### RULES FOR THE ACCENT.

§ 1. In words of two syllables, the penult is always accented; as, *pá-ter*, *bel'-lum*, *na'-vis*.

§ 2. In words of more than two syllables, the accent is regulated by the quantity of the penult. Of this there are three cases: 1. If the penult is long, it is accented; as, *a-mā'-bam*, *a-mi'-cus*, *se-cū'-rus*. 2. If the penult be short, the accent is on the antepenult; as, *hom'-i-nis*, *leg'-i-re*. 3. If the penult be common, the accent in prose is on the antepenult; as, *vol'-u-cris*, *ib'-i-que*, *ten'-e-bris*: but genitives in *is*, in which *i* is common, accent their penult in prose; as, *u-ni'-us*, *is-ti'-us*.

### RULES FOR THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

#### I. OF THE VOWELS.

§ 3. In MONOSYLLABLES when the vowel is the final letter it has its *long* sound; as, *da*, *me*, *si*, *do*, *tu*: otherwise it has its *short* sound; as, *jam*, *et*, *in*, *non*, *nunc*.

Exc. 1. Custom, in disregard of analogy, has given to all terminations in *es*, and the plural cases in *os*, the long sound; as, *es*, *amāres*, *pes*, pronounced like the English word *ease*: *nos*, *hos*, *popūlos*, pronounced like *ose* in *dose*.

Exc. 2. *Post* is pronounced like the same word in English: so also are its compounds; as, *post-quam*; but not its derivatives; as, *pos-trē-mus*.

§ 4. In DYSSYLLABLES the vowel of the first syllable, when it comes before another vowel, or a single consonant, has the long sound; as, *Ca-to*, *re-i*, *i-bi*, *ho-nos cu-i*: but when it comes before two consonants

or a double consonant, it has the short sound; as, *tan-dem*, *bel-lum*, *il-le*, *lon-gus*, *bux-us*.

Exc. If the vowel be followed by a mute and a liquid, it has the long sound; as, *sa'-cra*.

§ 5. In POLYSYLLABLES, when the penult is accented, its vowel before another vowel, or single consonant, has the long sound; as, *o-rā'-tor*, *spe-ci-ē'-i*, *a-mi'-cus*, *mul-tō'-rum*, *se-cū'-rus*: but before two consonants or a double consonant, the short sound; as, *a-man'-tur*, *do-cen'-tur*, *ex-tin'-guo*, *res-pon'-dens*, *Ti-bul'-lus*.

§ 6. But if in POLYSYLLABLES the antepenult be accented, its vowel has the short sound; as, *trad'-i-tu*, *ex-er'-ci-tus*, *sid'-ē-ra*, *ser-mon'-i-bus*, *tan-tum'-mō-do*. To this rule there are the following exceptions:

Exc. 1. When *u* comes before a single consonant, and when an accented vowel comes before another vowel, they have the long sound; as, *du'-bi-e*, *ju'-di-ces*, *o-ce'-a-nus*, *mu-li'-e-res*, *pro-cu-bu'-e-rant*.

Exc. 2. When the penultimate vowel is *e* or *i* before another vowel, the antepenultimate vowel, EXCEPT *i*, has the long sound; as, *gra-ti-a*, *ag-gre'-di-or* *in-o'-pi-a*, *mu'-li-er*, — *per-fid'-i-e*, *Scip'-i-o*.

## II. OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

§ 7. *Æ* and *Œ* are pronounced as *e* would be in the same situation; as, *æ'-tus*, *pæ'-na*, *cæt'-ē-ra*.

§ 8. *Ai*, *ei*, *oi*, and *yi*, generally have the vowels pronounced separately in prose. When followed by another vowel, the *i* is joined with that vowel, and takes the sound of *y* in *youth*; as, *Maia*, *Pompeius*; pronounced *Ma'-ya*, *Pom-pe'-yus*.

§ 9. *Au*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like *aw*; as, *laus*, pronounced like the English *laws*. In the termination of Greek proper names, the letters *au* are pronounced separately; as, *Ar-che-la'-us*.

§ 10. *Eu* and *ui* when diphthongs are pronounced like long *u* and *i*; as, *Or-pheus*, *cui*, *huic*.

## III. OF THE CONSONANTS.

§ 11. *C* and *G* are hard before *a*, *o*, and *u*, and soft before *e*, *i*, *y*; as,

<i>carpo</i>	like	card,	<i>cera</i>	like	cent,
<i>colo</i>	"	colt,	<i>cibus</i>	"	circle,
<i>culmen</i>	"	cucumber,	<i>cycnus</i>	"	cycle,
<i>gaza</i>	"	gave,	<i>gelidus</i>	"	gelid,
<i>gorgon</i>	"	gone,	<i>gigas</i>	"	giant.
<i>gustus</i>	"	gust,	<i>gyrus</i>	"	gypsy.

§ 12. *Ch* has always the sound of *k*, as, *charta*, *machina*, pronounced *kār'-ta*, *mak'-e-na*.

THE  
RUDIMENTS  
OF  
LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

§ 1. GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; words consist of one or more syllables; syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

§ 2. A letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar, which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.\*

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, *a, e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b, d*.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound*; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

---

\* In English there is one letter more, viz. W.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice ; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p*, *b* ; *t*, *d* ; *c*, *k*, *q*, and *g* ; but *b*, *d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes* ; because their sounds may be continued, whereas the sound of *p*, *t*, and *k*, cannot be prolonged.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice ; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *f*. The first four of these are called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r* ; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable ; as, *bla*, *stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them ; as, *pe*, *be*, &c. ; but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them ; as, *el*, *em*, &c.

The double consonants are, *x*, *z*, and, as some think, *j*. *X* is made up of *cs*, *ks*, or *gs*.

In Latin, *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

### DIPHTHONGS.

§ 3. A diphthong consists of two vowels forming one syllable, and pronounced by one impulse of the voice.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong* ; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three ; *au*, *eu*, *ei* ; as in *aurum*, *Eurus*, *omneis*. To these some, not improperly, add other three ; namely, *ai*, as in *Maia* ; *oi*, as in *Troia* ; and *ui*, as in *Harpua*, or in *cui*, and *huic*, pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two ; *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ* ; as, *aetas*, or *ætas*, *oe*, or *æ* ; as, *poena*, or *pæna* ; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately ; thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

### SYLLABLES.

§ 4. A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters, pronounced by one impulse of the voice ; as, *a*, *ad*, *cum*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it ; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s* ; as in *lingua*, *qui*, *suadeo* ; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Dissyllables*; and of more than two, *Polysyllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Polysyllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *ab-ūtor*, *in-ops*, *proptēr-ea*, *et-ēnim*, *vel-ut*, &c.

Observe, a long syllable is marked with a horizontal line, [—]; as in *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent, [ ^ ]; as in *amāris*. A short syllable is marked with a curved line, [ ˘ ]; as in *omnībūs*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables and to verse will be treated of hereafter.

## WORDS.

§ 5. Words are articulate sounds, significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words is called *Etymology* or *Analogy*.\*

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species*, or sort.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pīus*, pious; *ēgo*, I; *dōceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word and some syllable added; as, *impīus*, impious; *dēdōceo*, I unteach; *ēgōmet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pīus*, pious; *dīscō*, I learn; *dōceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *pīetas*, piety; *doctrīna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words are called *Parts of Speech*.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 6. The parts of speech in Latin are eight, viz:  
1. *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle*; declined.

---

\* All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home*," the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

2. *Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction*; undeclined.\*

### NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.†

### SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 7. A Substantive, or noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy, school, book*.

Substantives are of two sorts; *proper* and *common* names.

*Proper names* are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of persons and places; such are *Cæsar, Rome*.

*Common names*, stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude; men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an* Alexander;" or, "*the* Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

\* Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined*, which receive different changes on their last syllables, or their *terminations*.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words, which admit of different terminations, were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

† The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun*: it is only a word *added* to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.



## LATIN NOUNS.

To Latin nouns belong *Gender, Number, and Case.*

## GENDERS.

§ 8. There are three genders; *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

Gender is the distinction of sex. In the nature of things, therefore, there are but two genders, the Masculine and Feminine. But in Latin, Gender is not only a *natural* distinction, but also a *grammatical distribution* of nouns into *sorts or kinds*, with respect to the terminations of adjectives with which they are construed. *Liber*, 'a book,' is masculine, because it is joined with that termination of adjectives which is applied only to males. *Ratio*, 'reason,' is feminine, because it is joined with that termination of adjectives which is applied only to females. *Opus*, 'a work,' is neuter, because it is joined with that termination of adjectives which cannot be applied either to males or females. *Neuter* is a pure Latin word, signifying 'neither:' when a noun, therefore, is said to be of the *neuter* gender, it means simply that it is 'neither' masculine nor feminine.

Grammarians distinguish the genders by the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

Nouns which have either the masculine or feminine gender, according to the sense, are called *common*; as, *conjux*, 'a spouse;' *hic conjux*, 'this husband;' *hæc conjux*, 'this wife;' *parens*, 'a parent;' *meus parens*, 'my father;' *mea parens*, 'my mother.'

When under one gender a noun signifies both the sexes of brutes, it is called *epicene*; as, *hic passer*, 'a sparrow,' male or female.

The distinction between the *common* and *epicene* may be thus marked. Words of the *common* gender are those which under one termination include both genders, but for distinction require an adjective of masculine or feminine termination; as, *hic parens*, or *hæc parens*; but *epicene* words are those which express both sexes under one fixed gender; as, *hic lepus*, the male or female hare. If *hic parens* might denote both father and mother, it would be *epicene*; but since for mother we must say *hæc parens*, it is *common*. If we might say *hic lepus*, this male hare, *hæc lepus* this female hare, *lepus* would be *common*; but as *hic lepus* expresses both, it is *epicene*.

*General Rules concerning Gender.*

§ 9. 1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Hômêrus*, Homer; *pâter*, a father; *poëta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hêlêna*, Helen; *mûlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *mâter*, a mother; *sôror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the *common gender*; that is, either masculine or feminine; as, *hic bos*, an ox; *hæc bos*, a cow; *hic pârens*, a father, *hæc pârens*, a mother.

4. Nouns admitting either the masculine or feminine gender, independently of the sense, are called *doubtful*; as, *hic* or *hæc anguis*, 'a snake,' either masculine or feminine; *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, 'the rabble,' either masculine or neuter.

## OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. 1. *The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.*

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus *passer*, a sparrow, either male or female, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *âquila*, an eagle, either male or female, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *epicene*, or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *femina*; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *femina passer*, a female sparrow.

Obs. 2. *A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.*

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, *hic Aprilis*, April; *hic Aquilo*, the north wind; *hic Africus*, the south west wind; *hic Tiberis*, the river Tiber; *hic Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, *hæc Matrôna*, the river Marne in France; *hæc Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; *hoc Soracte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships are feminine, because *terra* or *régio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nâvis*, are feminine; as, *hæc Egyptus*, Egypt; *Sâmos*, an island of that name; *Côrinthus*, the city of Corinth; *pômus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship. Thus also the names of poems, *hæc Ilias*, *-âdos*, and *Odyssea*, the two poems of Homer; *hæc Ænëis*, *-idos*, a poem of Virgil; *hæc Eunûchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, *hic Pontus*, a country of that name; *hic Sulmo*, *-ônis*; *Pessinus*, *-untis*; *Hydrus*, *-untis*, names of towns; *hæc Persis*, *-idis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthâgo*, *-inis*, the city Carthage; *hoc Albion*, Britain; *hoc Cære*, *Reâte*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelidâ Præneste*. Juvenal. iii. 190; *Alta Ilion*. Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, *oleastri*, a wild olive-tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cýttisus*, a kind of shrub; *rûbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *lôtus*, the lote-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two, however, are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sûber*, *-ëris*, the cork-tree; *sîler*, *-ëris*, the osier; *rôbur*, *-ëris*, oak of the hardest kind; *âcer*, *-ëris*, the maple-tree.

The piace where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *ar-bustum*, *quercetum*, *esculetum*, *salicum*, *fruticetum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c., grow; also the names of fruits and timber; as, *pōmum* or *mālum*, an apple; *pīrum*, a pear; *ēbēnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

§ 10. The following nouns are Masculine and Feminine, both in sense and grammatical construction :

<i>Adolescens</i> , a young man or woman.	<i>Dux</i> , a leader.	<i>Patruelis</i> , a cousin-german by the father's side.
<i>Affinis</i> , a relation by marriage.	<i>Exul</i> , an exile.	<i>Præs</i> , a surety.
<i>Antistes</i> , a chief priest.	<i>Hospes</i> , a host, a guest.	<i>Præsul</i> , a priest of Mars.
<i>Auctor</i> , an author.	<i>Hostis</i> , an enemy.	<i>Princeps</i> , a prince.
<i>Augur</i> , an augur.	<i>Infans</i> , an infant.	<i>Sacerdos</i> , a priest, or priest-ess.
<i>Bos</i> , an ox, or cow.	<i>Interpres</i> , an interpreter.	<i>Satelles</i> , a life-guard.
<i>Canis</i> , a dog, or bitch.	<i>Judex</i> , a judge.	<i>Sus</i> , a swine.
<i>Civis</i> , a citizen.	<i>Juvenis</i> , a youth.	<i>Testis</i> , a witness.
<i>Comes</i> , a companion.	<i>Miles</i> , a soldier.	<i>Valca</i> , a prophet, or prophetess.
<i>Conjux</i> , a husband, or wife.	<i>Municeps</i> , a burgess.	<i>Verna</i> , a slave.
<i>Censors</i> , a consort.	<i>Nemo</i> , nobody.	<i>Vindex</i> , an avenger.
<i>Concivæ</i> , a guest.	<i>Par</i> , a mate, husband, or wife.	
<i>Custos</i> , a keeper.	<i>Parens</i> , a parent.	

§ 11. The following are Masculine or Feminine in sense, but Masculine only in grammatical construction :

<i>Artifex</i> , an artist.	<i>Fur</i> , a thief.	<i>Obes</i> , a hostage.
<i>Auspex</i> , a soothsayer.	<i>Hæres</i> , an heir, an heiress.	<i>Opifex</i> , a workman.
<i>Cocles</i> , a person having but one eye.	<i>Homo</i> , a man or woman.	<i>Pedes</i> , a footman.
<i>Eques</i> , a horseman.	<i>Index</i> , an informer.	<i>Pugil</i> , a boxer.
<i>Exlex</i> , an outlaw.	<i>Latro</i> , a robber.	<i>Senex</i> , an old person.
	<i>Libèri</i> , children.	

§ 12. The following, though Masculine or Feminine in sense, are Feminine only in grammatical construction :

<i>Copie</i> , forces, troops.	<i>Opære</i> , labourers.	<i>Soboles</i> , an offspring.
<i>Custodie</i> , guards.	<i>Proles</i> , an offspring.	<i>Vigilie</i> , watchmen.
<i>Excubie</i> , sentinels.		

§ 13. Some nouns signifying Persons are Neuter with respect to their termination.

<i>Acrochamus</i> , a jester.	<i>Mancipium</i> , a slave.
<i>Auxilia</i> , auxiliary troops.	<i>Servitium</i> , a slave.

## NUMBER.

§ 14. Number is the distinction of objects, whether as one, or more than one.

There are two numbers, the Singular which denotes one, as *homo*, 'a man;' or the aggregate of many taken collectively, as, *multitudo*, 'a multitude;' and the Plural, which denotes more than one, as *homines*, 'men.'

Some Latin nouns of the Plural number signify but one, as, *Athenæ*, 'Athens;' others signify one or more, as, *nuptiæ*, 'a marriage,' or 'marriages.'

## CASES.

§ 15. Various methods are used in different languages to express the different connexions, or relations of one thing to another. In English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive; in Latin by Declension or by different Cases, that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, 'a king;' *regis*, 'of a king.'

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called from *cādo*, 'to fall,' because they fall, as it were, from the nominative, which is therefore named *cāsus rectus*, 'the straight case,' and the other cases, *cāsus obliqui*, 'the oblique cases.'

There are six cases, the Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

The Nominative simply expresses the name of a person or thing, and marks the subject of discourse, as *Alexander interfecit*, 'Alexander slew.'

The Genitive generally expresses the relation of possession or property, and in English it has the sign *of* before it, or 's (s with an apostrophe) added to it, as *Amor Dei*, 'the love of God,' or 'God's love,' *Domus Cæsaris*, 'the house of Cæsar,' or 'Cæsar's house.'

The Dative is used to mark the object to which any thing is referred, whether it be acquisition or loss, and is generally translated with the signs *to* and *for*, though sometimes its true force can only be rendered by, *from* and *by*: as, *Hoc mihi datur*, 'this is given to me;' *Hoc mihi seritur*, 'this is sown for me;' *Hoc mihi adimītur*, 'this is taken away from me.' *Nec cernitur ulli*, 'nor is he perceived by any one.'

The Accusative indicates the object to which the action of the verb passes; as, *Alexander interfecit Clitum*, 'Alexander slew Clitus.'

The Vocative points out the object called upon or addressed, with or without the sign O, as O felix frater, 'O happy brother,' or 'happy brother.'

The Ablative, (compounded of the preposition *ab*, 'from,' and *latum*, the supine of *fero*, 'to take,') often implies 'a taking away.' It also denotes concomitancy or accompaniment; as, Ingressus est cum *gladio*, 'he entered with a sword,' i. e. having at that time a sword along with him. When the preposition *cum*, 'with,' is not expressed, the Ablative may be considered as the *cause*, *manner*, or *instrument*, as, Interfecit eum *gladio*, 'he killed him with a sword;' that is, a sword was the *instrument* with which his death was effected. In English, the Ablative has before it the signs *with*, *from*, *for*, *by*, *in*, *through*.

## DECLENSION.

Declension is the regular distribution of nouns according to their terminations, so that they may be distinguished from one another.

§ 16. There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth* declensions.

The different declensions are distinguished from one another by the termination of the Genitive singular.

The Genitive of the <i>First</i> ends in	<i>æ</i> .
<i>Second</i>	in <i>i</i> .
<i>Third</i>	in <i>is</i> .
<i>Fourth</i>	in <i>us</i> .
<i>Fifth</i>	in <i>ei</i> .

## GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

§ 17. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative in both numbers; and in the Plural, these three cases end *always* in *a*.

The Nominative and Vocative\* singular *generally*, and the Nominative and Vocative plural *always* in all Declensions end alike.

The Dative and Ablative plural end *always* alike in all declensions.

The Accusative plural of the first, third, fourth and fifth Declensions is formed from the Accusative singular by changing *m* into *s*.

The Ablative singular of the first, third, fourth, and fifth Declensions is formed from the Accusative singular, by dropping *m*.

The Genitive plural is formed from the Ablative singular by adding *um* in the first, second, and fifth Declensions, and *um* in the fourth.

Proper names, for the most part, want the Plural.

\* Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas*, *Thoma*; *Anchises*, *Anchise*; *Pæris*, *Pari*; *Panthus*, *Panthu*; *Pallas*, *-antis*, *Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension, oftener retain the *s*; as, *δ Achilles*, rarely *-e*; *Ο Socrætes*, seldom *-e*; and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *Ο Thais*, *Mysis*, *Pallas*, *-ædis*, the goddess Minerva, &c.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 18. Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender: those ending in *e*, *as*, and *es* are Greek.

## TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	} <i>a</i> .	Nom.	} <i>æ</i> .
Voc.		Voc.	
Gen.		Gen.	
Dat.	} <i>æ</i> .	Gen.	<i>arum</i> .
Acc.		Acc.	<i>as</i> .
Abl.		Dat.	} <i>is</i> .
		Abl.	

Penna, *a pen*. fem.

## Singular.

## Plural.

N. penna,..... <i>a pen</i> ;	N. pennæ, ..... <i>pens</i> ;
G. pennæ, ..... <i>of a pen</i> ;	G. pennarum, ..... <i>of pens</i> ;
D. pennæ, ..... <i>to or for a pen</i> ;	D. pennis, ..... <i>to or for pens</i> ,
A. pennam, ..... <i>a pen</i> ;	A. pennas, ..... <i>pens</i> ;
V. penna, ..... <i>O pen</i> ;	V. pennæ, ..... <i>O pens</i> ;
A. pennâ, ..... <i>with a pen</i> ;	A. pennis, ..... <i>with pens</i> .

## EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine. *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cômêta*, a comet; *planêta*, a planet; and sometimes, *talpa*, a mole; and *dâma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter. *Pandectæ*, 'pandects,' is rather masc. than fem.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *ai*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulai*: and sometimes likewise in *as*, which form the compounds of *fâmilia* usually retain; as, *mâter-fâmiliæ*, the mistress of a family; genit. *matris-fâmiliæ*; nom. plur. *matres-fâmiliæ*, or *matres-familiarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *abus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us*, of the second declension:

*Ânîma* the soul, the life.

*Dea*, a goddess.

*Eua*, a mare.

*Famûla*, a female servant.

*Filia*, & *Nâta*, a daughter.

*Liberta*, a freed woman.

*Mûla*, a she-mule.

Thus, *deabus*, *filiabus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

But when they are construed with *Duabus* or *Ambabus*, or the distinction is clear from the context, the termination is in *is* only: thus Cicero has *duabus animis*: but Livy xxiv. 26 has *duabus filiabus*.

## GREEK NOUNS.

§ 19. Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es*, are masculine; nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ænēas*, *Æneās*, the name of a man; gen. *Ænēæ*, dat. *-æ*, acc. *-am*, or *-an*, voc. *-a*, abl. *ā*. So *Bōreas*, *-eæ*, the north wind; *tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as *Ossa* acc. *-am* or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

## DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

Nom. Anchīse,	Penelōpe,	Thyestes,	Epitōme,
Gen. Anchīse,	Penelōpes,	Thyestæ,	Epitōmes,
Dat. Anchīse,	Penelōpes,	Thyestæ,	Epitōmas,
Acc. Anchīsen,	Penelōpen,	Thyestan,	Epitōmen,
Voc. Anchīse, or a,	Penelōpe,	Thyeste, or a,	Epitōme,
Abl. Anchīse,	Penelōpe.	Thyeste,	Epitōme.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.\*

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrida*, for *Atrides*; *Persa* for *Perseus*, a Persian; *geometra*, for *-tres*, a geometrician; *Circa*, for *Circe*; *epitōma*, for *-me*, an abridgement; *grammātica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *rhētōrica*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 20. Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*, (*os* and *on* are Greek terminations.)

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter: the rest are masculine.

## TERMINATIONS.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>ur</i> , <i>us</i> , <i>um</i> ; <i>os</i> , <i>on</i>	Nom. } <i>i</i> or <i>a</i> .
Gen. <i>i</i>	Voc. } <i>i</i> or <i>a</i> .
Dat. } <i>o</i>	Gen. <i>orum</i> .
Abl. } <i>o</i>	Dat. } <i>is</i> .
Acc. <i>um</i> , or like the nom.	Abl. } <i>is</i> .
Voc. <i>e</i> , or like the nom.	Acc. <i>os</i> , or <i>a</i> .

\* The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*. We sometimes find the genit. plural contracted as, *Calicōlām*, for *Calicōlārum*; *Æneādūm*, for *Æneādārum*.

*Gēner, a son-in-law, masc.**Singular*

<i>Nom. gēner,</i>		<i>a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Gen. genēri,</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Dat. genēro,</i>	<i>to, or for</i>	<i>a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Acc. genērum,</i>		<i>a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Voc. genēr,</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>son-in-law,</i>
<i>Abl. genēro,</i>	<i>with, from, or by</i>	<i>a son-in-law.</i>

*Plural.*

<i>Nom. genēri,</i>		<i>sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Gen. generōrum,</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Dat. genēris,</i>	<i>to, or for</i>	<i>sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Acc. genēros,</i>		<i>sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Voc. genēri,</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Abl. genēris,</i>	<i>with, from, or</i>	<i>sons-in-law.</i>

After the same manner decline, *sōcer, -ēri*, a father-in-law; *puer -ēri*, a boy: So *furcifer*, a villain; *Lucifer*, the morning star; *adulter*, an adulterer; *armiger*, an armour-bearer; *presbyter*, an elder; *Mulciber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *Iber, -ēri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the gen. long, and its compound *Celtiber, -ēri*: Also, *vir, viri*, a man, the only noun in *ir*, and its compounds, *lēvir*, a brother-in-law; *semivir, duumvir, triumvir*, &c. And likewise *satur, -ūri*, full, (of old, *satūrus*,) an adjective.

§ 21. But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,

*Ager, a field, masc.**Singular.**Plural.*

<i>N. āger, . . . . . a field,</i>	<i>N. agri, . . . . . fields,</i>
<i>G. agri, . . . . . of a field,</i>	<i>G. agrōrum, . . . . . of fields,</i>
<i>D. agro, . . . . . to a field,</i>	<i>D. agris, . . . . . to fields,</i>
<i>A. agrum, . . . . . a field,</i>	<i>A. agros, . . . . . fields,</i>
<i>V. āger, . . . . . O field,</i>	<i>V. agri, . . . . . O fields,</i>
<i>A. agro, . . . . . with a field.</i>	<i>A. agris, . . . . . with fields.</i>

## In like manner decline,

<i>Aper, a wild boar.</i>	<i>Cāper, a he-goat.</i>	<i>Fāber, a workman.</i>
<i>Arbiter, &amp; -tra, an arbitrator or judge.</i>	<i>Cōlūber, &amp; -bra, a serpent.</i>	<i>Māgister, a master.</i>
<i>Auster, the south wind.</i>	<i>Culter, the coulter of a plough, a knife.</i>	<i>Mīnister, a servant.</i>
<i>Cancer, a crab fish.</i>		<i>Onāger, a wild ass.</i>
		<i>Scalper, a lancet.</i>

Also, *liber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri*; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the god of wine, have *libēri*. So likewise proper names, *Alexander, Evander, Perianther, Mēnander, Teucer, Mēleāger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri, Evandri*, &c.



*Dōmīnus, a lord, masc.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. <i>dōmīnus</i> ,..... <i>a lord</i> ,	N. <i>dōmīni</i> ,..... <i>lords</i> ,
G. <i>domīni</i> ,..... <i>of a lord</i> ,	G. <i>domīnōrum</i> ,..... <i>of lords</i> ,
D. <i>domīno</i> ,..... <i>to a lord</i> ,	D. <i>domīnis</i> ,..... <i>to lords</i> ,
A. <i>domīnum</i> ,..... <i>a lord</i> ,	A. <i>domīnos</i> ,..... <i>lords</i> ,
V. <i>domīne</i> ,..... <i>O lord</i> ,	V. <i>domīni</i> ,..... <i>O lords</i> ,
A. <i>domīno</i> ,..... <i>with a lord</i> .	A. <i>domīnis</i> ,..... <i>with lords</i> .

*Regnum, a kingdom, neut.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. <i>regnum</i> ,..... <i>a kingdom</i> ,	N. <i>regna</i> ,..... <i>kingdoms</i> ,
G. <i>regni</i> ,..... <i>of a kingdom</i> ,	G. <i>regnōrum</i> ,..... <i>of kingdoms</i> ,
D. <i>regno</i> ,..... <i>to a kingdom</i> ,	D. <i>regnis</i> ,..... <i>to kingdoms</i> ,
A. <i>regnum</i> ,..... <i>a kingdom</i> ,	A. <i>regna</i> ,..... <i>kingdoms</i> ,
V. <i>regnum</i> ,..... <i>O kingdom</i> ,	V. <i>regna</i> ,..... <i>O kingdoms</i> ,
A. <i>regno</i> ,..... <i>with a kingdom</i> ,	A. <i>regnis</i> ,..... <i>with kingdoms</i> .

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine ; *kūmus*, the ground ; *alvus*, the belly ; *vannus*, a sieve ; *miltus*, vermilion ; also, *Domus*, 'a house,' partly of the fourth Declension.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os*,

<i>Abyssus, a bottomless pit.</i>	<i>Dialectus, a dialect or manner of speech.</i>	<i>Methodus, a method.</i>
<i>Antidōtus, a preservative against poison.</i>	<i>Diāmetros, the diameter of a circle.</i>	<i>Pēriōdus, a period.</i>
<i>Arctos, the Bear, a constellation near the north pole.</i>	<i>Diphthongus, a diphthong.</i>	<i>Pērīmetros, the circumference.</i>
<i>Carbāsus, a sail.</i>	<i>Erēmus, a desert.</i>	<i>Phārus, a watch-tower.</i>
	<i>Leōythus, a vial.</i>	<i>Plinthus, the foot of a pillar.</i>
		<i>Synōdus, an assembly.</i>

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine, as,

<i>Amēthystus, an amethyst.</i>	<i>Tōpazius, a topaz.</i>	<i>Bysus, fine flax or linen.</i>
<i>Chrysolīthus, a chrysolite.</i>	Biblus, Pāpȳrus, { an Egyptian reed, of which paper was made.	<i>Costus, costmary.</i>
<i>Chrysōphrāsus, a kind of topaz.</i>		<i>Crōcus, saffron.</i>
<i>Chrystallus, crystal.</i>		<i>Hymōpus, hyssop.</i>
<i>Leucōchrȳsus, a jacinth.</i>		<i>Nardus, spikenard.</i>
<i>Sapphirus, a sapphire.</i>		

Other names of jewels are generally masculine ; as, *bēryllus*, the beryl ; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle ; *pyrōpus*, a ruby ; *smāragdus*, an emerald : And also names of plants ; as, *aspārāgus*, asparagus or sparrowgrass ; *ellebōrus*, ellebore ; *raphānus*, radish or colewort ; *intȳbus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow are either masculine or feminine :

<i>Atōmus, an atom.</i>	<i>Barbītus, a harp.</i>	<i>Grossus, a green fig.</i>
<i>Atlānus, the fruit of the palm tree, ointment.</i>	<i>Cāmēlus, a camel.</i>	<i>Pēnus, a store-house.</i>
	<i>Cōlus, a distaff.</i>	<i>Phāsēlus, a little ship.</i>

Exc. 3. *Virus*, poison ; *pēlāgus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

Exc. 5. *Sexus*, *i*, a sex, of the Second Declension, is neut.; but *Sexus*, *us*, of the Fourth Declension, is masc.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 22. Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as, *Hōrātius*, *Hōrāti*; *Virgilius*, *Virgili*; *Georgius*, *Georgi*, names of men: *Lārius*, *Lāri*; *Mincius*, *Minci*; names of lakes. *Filius*, a son, also has *filī*; *gēnius*, one's guardian angel, *geni*; and *deus*, a god, has *deus* in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dīi* and *dīis*, than *dēi* and *dēis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, has *mī*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative.

1. Other nouns in *ius* have *e*; as *tabellarius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier; *pīus*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Dēlius*, *Dēlie*; *Tīrynthius*, *Tīrynthie*; and these possessives, *Lārtius*, *Lārtie*; *Sāturnius*, *Sāturnie*; &c. which are not considered as proper names.

2. The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative; as, *fluvius Lātīnus*, for *fluvie Lātīne*. Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely; thus, *Audi tu, pōpulus*, for *pōpule*. Liv. i. 24.

3. The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us*; as *Evānder*, or *Evandrus*, vocative, *Evānder*, or *Evandrē*. So *Meānder*, *Leānder*, *Tymbēr*, *Teucer*, &c.; and so anciently *puer* in the vocative had *puērē*, from *puērūs*.

4. Note. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets for the sake of quantity; as, *tugūrī*, for *tugurii*; *ingēntī*, for *ingenii*, &c.

5. The Genitive plural *ōrum* in many words, especially those which denote money, weight and measure, is often contracted into *ūm*, as *Sestertiūm*, *nummūm*, *modiūm*, *talentiūm*, for *Sestertiōrum*, *nummōrum*, &c. So also, *Deūm*, *libērūm*, *fabriūm*, *duūm-virūm*, *oppidiūm*, *exitūm*, *prodigiūm*, *factūm*; and in poetry, *Teucrūm*, *Graiūm*, *Argivūm*, *Danaūm*, *Pelasgūm*, &c., for *Teucrōrum*, &c.

6. *Deus*, 'God,' masc. is thus declined.

## Singular.

N. *Deus*, ..... *God*,  
G. *Dei*, ..... *of God*,  
D. *Deo*, ..... *to, or for God*,  
A. *Deum*, ..... *God*,  
V. *Deus*, ..... *O God*,  
A. *Deo*, ..... *from, or by God*.

## Plural.

N. *Dei*, *Dii*, or *Dī*, ... *the Gods*,  
G. *Deōrum*, or *Deūm*, *of the Gods*,  
D. *Deis*, *Diis*, or *Dis*, *to the Gods*,  
A. *Deos*, ..... *the Gods*,  
V. *Dei*, *Dii*, or *Dī*, ... *O the Gods*,  
A. *Deis*, *Diis*, or *Dis*, *from or by the Gods*.

## GREEK NOUNS.

§ 23. *Os* and *on* are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *Ilion*, the city Troy;

and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus*, *Ilium*, which are declined like *domīnus* and *regnum*.

1. Nouns in *eos* or *ēus* are sometimes contracted in the Genitive; as, *Orphēus*, gen. *Orphēi*, *Orphei*, or *Orphi*. So *Thesēus*, *Promothēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

2. Some nouns in *os* have the genitive singular in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, genitive *Androgeo*, or *-ēi*, the name of a man; *Aithos*, *Aitho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both of which are also found in the third declension; thus, nominative *Androgeo*, genitive *Androgeōnis*. So *Aitho*, or *Aithon*, *-ōnis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the genitive in *u*; as, *Mēandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Mēandri*, *Apollodōri*. Ter. *Panthus* has *Panthu* in the vocative.

3. Nouns in *os* have the accusative in *um* or *on*; as, *Delus*, or *Delos*, accusative *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

4. Some neuters have the genitive plural in *ōn*; as, *Georgica*, genitive plural *Georgicōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as, Virgil's *Georgicks*.

Greek nouns of the second declension are thus declined:—

Singular.		Barbīton, a lyre.	
		Singular.	Plural.
N. Delos,	Androgeos,	N. barbīton,	barbīta,
G. Deli,	Androgeo, or i,	G. barbīti,	barbīton,
D. Delo,	Androgeo,	D. barbīto,	barbītis
A. Delon, or um,	Androgeo, or on,	A. barbīton,	barbīta,
V. Dele,	Androgeos,	V. barbīton,	barbīta,
A. Delo.	Androgeo.	A. barbīto.	barbītis.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 24. There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i, o, y, c, d, l, t, x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with the second; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A, i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

#### TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		Plural.
Nom. <i>a, e, i</i> , &c.		Nom. }
Gen. <i>is</i> .		Acc. } <i>es, a, or ia.</i>
Dat. <i>i</i> .		Voc. }
Acc. <i>em</i> , or like the nom.		Gen. } <i>um, or ium.</i>
Voc. like the nom.		Dat. }
Abl. <i>e, or i</i> .		Abl. } <i>ibus.</i>

*Sermo, a speech, masc.**Singular.*

N. sermo, .....	<i>a speech,</i>
G. sermōnis, .....	<i>of a speech,</i>
D. sermōni, .....	<i>to a speech,</i>
A. sermōnem, .....	<i>a speech,</i>
V. sermo, .....	<i>O speech,</i>
A. sermōne, .....	<i>with a speech,</i>

*Honor, honor ; masc.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. honor,	honōres,
G. honōris,	honōrum,
D. honōri,	honōribus,
A. honōrem,	honōres,
V. honor,	honōres,
A. honōre.	honōribus.

*Rupes, a rock ; fem.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. rupes,	rupes,
G. rupis,	rupium,
D. rupi,	rupibus,
A. rupem,	rupes,
V. rupes,	rupes,
A. rupe.	rupibus.

*Ars, art ; fem.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. ars,	artes,
G. artis,	artium,
D. arti,	artibus,
A. artem,	artes,
V. ars,	artes,
A. arte.	artibus.

*Turris, a tower ; fem.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. turris,	turres.
G. turris,	turrium,
D. turri,	turribus,
A. turrem,	turres,
V. turris,	turres,
A. turre, or ri	turribus.

*Plural.*

N. sermōnes, .....	<i>speeches,</i>
G. sermōnum, .....	<i>of speeches,</i>
D. sermonibus, .....	<i>to speeches,</i>
A. sermōnes, .....	<i>speeches,</i>
V. sermōnes, .....	<i>O speeches,</i>
A. sermonibus, ...	<i>with speeches.</i>

*Nox, night ; fem.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. nox,	noctes,
G. noctis,	noctium,
D. nocti,	noctibus,
A. noctem,	noctes,
V. nox,	noctes,
A. nocte.	noctibus.

*Miles, a soldier ; com. gen.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. miles,	milites,
G. militis,	militum,
D. militi,	militibus,
A. militem,	milites,
V. miles,	milites,
A. milite.	militibus.

*Pater, a father ; masc.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. pater,	patres,
G. patris,	patrum,
D. patri,	patribus,
A. patrem,	patres,
V. pater,	patres,
A. patre.	patribus.

*Sedile, a seat ; neut.**Singular.**Plural.*

N. sedile,	sedilia,
G. sedilis,	sedilium,
D. sedili,	sedilibus,
A. sedile,	sedilia,
V. sedile,	sedilia,
A. sedili.	sedilibus.

**Carmen, a verse ; neut.***Singular.**Plural.*

N. carmen,	carmīna,
G. carminis,	carminum,
D. carmini,	carminibus,
A. carmen,	carmīna,
V. carmen,	carmīna,
A. carmine.	carminibus.

**Iter, a journey ; neut.***Singular.**Plural.*

N. iter,	itinēra,
G. itinēris,	itinērum,
D. itinēri,	itineribus,
A. iter,	itinēra,
V. iter,	itinēra,
A. itinēre.	itineribus.

**Lapis, a stone ; fem.***Singular.**Plural.*

N. lapis,	lapīdes,
G. lapidis,	lapidum,
D. lapidi,	lapidibus,
A. lapidem,	lapīdes,
V. lapis,	lapīdes,
A. lapide.	lapidibus.

**Virgo, a virgin ; fem.***Singular.**Plural.*

N. virgo,	virgīnes,
G. virginis,	virginum,
D. virgini,	virginibus,
A. virginem,	virgīnes,
V. virgo,	virgīnes,
A. virgine.	virginibus.

**Animal, an animal ; neut.***Singular.**Plural.*

N. animal,	animalia,
G. animalis,	animalium,
D. animali,	animalibus,
A. animal,	animalia,
V. animal,	animalia,
A. animali.	animalibus.

**Opus, a work ; neut.***Singular.**Plural.*

N. opus,	opēra,
G. opēris,	opērum,
D. opēri,	operibus,
A. opus,	opēra,
V. opus,	opēra,
A. opere.	operibus.

**Caput, a head ; neut.***Singular.**Plural.*

N. caput,	capīta,
G. capitis,	capitum,
D. capiti,	capitibus,
A. caput,	capīta,
V. caput,	capīta,
A. capite.	capitibus.

**Pārens, a parent ; com. gen.***Singular.**Plural.*

N. pārens,	N. pārentes,
G. parentis,	G. parentum,*
D. parenti,	D. parentibus,
A. parentem,	A. parentes,
V. parens,	V. parentes,
A. parente.	A. parentibus.

**Poēma, a poem ; neut.***Singular.**Plural.*

N. poēma,	poemāta,
G. poemātis,	poemātum,
D. poemāti,	poematibus, or poemātis,
A. poēma,	poemāta,
V. poēma,	poemāta,
A. poemāte.	poematibus, or poemātis.

\* Nouns in *ns* and *as* form their genitive plural in *ium* and *um*, but oftener admit a syncope of the *i*.

OF THE GENDER AND GENITIVE OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A, E, I, and Y.

§ 25. Nouns in *a, e, i, and y*, are neuter.Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis*; as, *diadēma, diademātis*, a crown; *dogma, dogmātis*, an opinion.

So,

<i>Ænigma, a riddle.</i>	<i>Nūmisma, a coin.</i>	<i>Stigma, a mark or brand, a di- diagram.</i>
<i>Apōphthegma, a short, pithy saying.</i>	<i>Phasma, an apparition.</i>	<i>Strātāgēma, an artful con- trivance.</i>
<i>Arūma, sweet spices.</i>	<i>Pōēma, a poem.</i>	<i>Thēma, a theme, a subject to write or speak on.</i>
<i>Axiōma, a plain truth.</i>	<i>Schēma, a scheme, or figure.</i>	<i>Tōreuma, a carved ves- sel.</i>
<i>Diplōma, a charter.</i>	<i>Sōphisma, a deceitful argu- ment.</i>	
<i>Epigramma, an inscrip- tion.</i>	<i>Stemma, a pedigree.</i>	

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rēte, retis*, a net. So,

<i>Ancile, a shield.</i>	<i>Cūbile, a couch.</i>	<i>Ovile, a sheep fold.</i>
<i>Apluste, the flag of a ship.</i>	<i>Equile, a stable for horses.</i>	<i>Præēpe, a stall; a bee- hive.</i>
<i>Campestre, a pair of draw- ers.</i>	<i>Lāqueāre, a ceiled roof.</i>	<i>Sēcāle, rye.</i>
<i>Cochleāre, a spoon.</i>	<i>Mantile, a towel.</i>	<i>Suile, a sow-cote.</i>
<i>Conclāve, a room.</i>	<i>Mōnile, a necklace.</i>	<i>Tibiāle, a stocking.</i>
<i>Crināle, a pin for the hair.</i>	<i>Nāvāle, a dock or place for shipping.</i>	

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, *gummi, gum*; *zingībēri, ginger*; but some Greek nouns add *itis*; as, *hydrōmēli, hydromēlitis*, water and honey sodden together, mead.Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, *māly, molyos*, an herb; *māsy, yos, vitriol*.

O.

§ 26. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis*; as,*Sermo, sermōnis*, speech; *draco, dracōnis*, a dragon. So,

<i>Agēso, a horse-keeper.</i>	<i>Equiso, a groom or ostler.</i>	<i>Præco, a common crier.</i>
<i>Aquilo, the north wind.</i>	<i>Erro, a wanderer.</i>	<i>Prædo, a robber.</i>
<i>Arrhābo, an earnest-penny, a pledge.</i>	<i>Fullo, a fuller of cloth.</i>	<i>Pulmo, the lungs.</i>
<i>Bālatro, a pitiful fellow.</i>	<i>Helluo, a glutton.</i>	<i>Pūbio, a little child.</i>
<i>Bambālio, a stutterer.</i>	<i>Histrio, a player.</i>	<i>Salmo, a salmon.</i>
<i>Bāro, a blockhead.</i>	<i>Latro, a robber.</i>	<i>Sannio, a buffoon.</i>
<i>Būbo, an owl.</i>	<i>Lēno, a pimp.</i>	<i>Sāpo, soap.</i>
<i>Būfo, a toad.</i>	<i>Lūdīo, &amp; ius, a player.</i>	<i>Sīpho, a pipe or tube.</i>
<i>Cālo, a soldier's slave.</i>	<i>Lurco, a glutton.</i>	<i>Spādo, an eunuch.</i>
<i>Cāpo, a capon.</i>	<i>Mango, a slave-merchant.</i>	<i>Stōlo, a shoot or scion.</i>
<i>Carbo, a coal.</i>	<i>Mirmillo, a fencer.</i>	<i>Strābo, a goggle-eyed per- son.</i>
<i>Caupo, an inn-keeper.</i>	<i>Mūrio, a fool.</i>	<i>Tēmo, the pole or draught- tree.</i>
<i>Cerdo, a cobbler, or one who follows a mean trade.</i>	<i>Mucro, the point of a wea- pon.</i>	<i>Tīro, a raw soldier.</i>
<i>Cīnīflo, a frizzler of hair.</i>	<i>Mūlio, a muleteer.</i>	<i>Umbo, the boss of a shield.</i>
<i>Crabro, a wasp or hornet.</i>	<i>Nēbūlo, a knave.</i>	<i>Uplīo, a shepherd.</i>
<i>Cūrio, the chief of a ward or curia.</i>	<i>Pāvo, a peacock.</i>	<i>Vōlo, a volunteer.</i>
	<i>Pēro, a kind of shoe.</i>	

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *râtio, ratiônis*, reason.

So,

Captio, a quirk.	Pensio, a payment.	Sanctio, a confirmation.
Cautio, caution, care.	Perduellio, treason.	Sectio, the confiscation or forfeiture of one's goods.
Concio, an assembly, a speech.	Portio, a part.	Seditio, a mutiny.
Cessio, a yielding.	Potio, drink.	Sinio, a sitting.
Dictio, a word.	Pruditio, treachery.	Statio, a station.
Deditio, a surrender.	Proscriptio, a proscription, ordering citizens to be slain, and confiscating their effects.	Suspicio, mistrust.
Lectio, a lesson.	Quæstio, an inquiry.	Titillatio, a tickling.
Legio, a legion, a body of men.	Rēbellio, rebellion.	Translatio, a transferring.
Mentio, mention.	Régio, a country.	Usucapio, the enjoyment of a thing by prescription.
Notio, a notion or idea.	Rēlatio, a telling.	Vacatio, freedom from labour, &c.
Opinio, an opinion.	Rēligio, religion.	Visio, an apparition.
Optio, a choice.	Rēmissio, a slackening.	
Oratio, a speech.		

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

Curculio, the throat-pipe, the weasand.	Scipio, a staff.	Unio, a pearl.
Papilio, a butterfly.	Scorpio, a scorpion.	Vesperilio, a bat.
Pugio, a dagger.	Septentrio, the north.	Ternio, the number three.
Pusio, a little child.	Stellio, a lizard.	Quaternio, ——— four.
	Tytio, a firebrand.	Senio, ——— six.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis*; as, *arundo, arundinis*, a reed; *imāgo, imaginis*, an image.

So,

Ærugo, rust (of brass)	Hirundo, a swallow.	Sartago, a frying pan.
Caligo, darkness.	Intercapedo, a space between.	Scaturigo, a spring.
Cartilago, a gristle.	Lanugo, down.	Testudo, a tortoise.
Crëpido, a creek, bank.	Lentigo, a pimple.	Torpëdo, a numbness.
Farrago, a mixture.	Origo, an origin.	Uligo, the natural moisture of the earth.
Ferrugo, rust (of iron.)	Porrigo scurf, or scales in the head; dandruff.	Vălătudo, health.
Formido, fear.	Pröpagö, a lineage.	Vertigo, a dizziness.
Fuligo, soot.	Rubigo, rust, mildew.	Virgo, a virgin.
Grando, hail.		Vörägo, a gulf.
Hirudo, a horse-leech.		

But the following are masculine:

Cardo, -inis, a hinge.	Margo, -inis, the brink of a river; also feminine.
Cudo, -onis, a leather cap.	Ordo, -inis, order.
Harpägo, -onis, a drag.	Tendo, -inis; a tendon.
Ligo, -onis, a spade.	Udo, -onis, a linen or woollen sock.

*Cüpido*, desire, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *inis*:

Apollo, -inis, the god Apollo.	Nämo, -inis, m. or f. no body.
Hömo, -inis, a man or woman.	Turbo, -inis, m. a whirlwind.

*Cäro*, flesh, fem. has *carnis*. *Anio*, masc. the name of a river, *Aniënis*. *Nerio*, *Neriënis*, the wife of the god Mars; from the obsolete nominatives *Anien*, *Nerien*. *Turbo*, the name of a man, has *önis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *ūs* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as *Dido*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didūs*; dat. *Didō*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis*: so *ēcho*, *-ūs*, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, *-ūs*, the name of a ship; *hālo*, *-ōnis*, f. a. circle about the sun or moon

*Dido*, *Dido*, the name of a woman, fem.

Sing.

Nom. *Dido*,

Gen. *Didūs*,

Dat. *Dido*,

Acc. *Dido*,

Voc. *Dido*,

Abl. *Dido*.

The form *Dido*, *onis*, is not to be imitated.

C, D, L.

§ 27. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

*Animal*, *animālis*, a living creature; *tōral*, *-ālis*, a bed-cover; *hālec*, *halēcis*, a kind of pickle. So,

*Cervical*, a bolster.

*Cūbital*, a cushion

*Mīnerval*, entry-money.

*Minūtal*, minced meat.

*Pūteal*, a well-cover.

*Vectigal*, a tax.

Except, *Consul*, *-ūlis*, m. a consul.

*Fel*, *fellis*, n. gall.

*Lac*, *lactis*, n. milk.

*Mel*, *mellis*, n. honey.

*Mūgil*, *-īlis*, m. a mullet-fish.

*Sal*, *sālis*, m. or n. salt.

*Sāles*, *-ium*, pl. m. witty sayings.

*Sol*, *sōlis*, m. the sun.

*D* is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Davidūs*.

N.

§ 28. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

*Cānon*, *-ōnis*, a rule.

*Demon*, *-ōnis*, a spirit.

*Delphin*, *-īnis*, a dolphin.

*Gnōmon*, *-ōnis*, the cock of a dial.

*Hūmen*, *-ēnis*, the god of marriage.

*Lien*, *-ēnis*, the mill.

*Pæan*, *-ānis*, a song.

*Phūsiognōmon*, *-ōnis*, one who guesses at the dispositions of men from the face.

*Ren*, *rēnis*, the reins.

*Splen*, *-ēnis*, the spleen.

*Sūren*, *-ēnis*, f. a Syren.

*Titan*, *-ānis*, the sun.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men*, are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis*; as, *flūmen*, *flūminis*, a river. So,

*Abdūmen*, the paunch.

*Acūmen*, sharpness.

*Agmen*, an army on march.

*Alūmen*, alum.

*Bitūmen*, a kind of clay.

*Cācūmen*, the top.

*Carmen*, a song, a poem.

*Cognōmen*, a sir-name.

*Cōlūmen*, a support.

*Crīmen*, a crime.

*Discrīmen*, a difference.

*Exāmen*, a swarm of bees.

*Fōrāmen*, a hole.

*Germēn*, a sprout.

*Grāmēn*, grass.

*Lēgūmen*, all kinds of pulse.

*Lūmen*, light.

*Nūmen*, a name.

*Nūmen*, the Deity.

*Omen*, a presage.

*Pūtāmen*, a nut-shell.

*Sagmen*, vervain, an herb.

*Sāmen*, a seed.

*Spēcīmen*, a proof.

*Stāmēn*, the warp.

*Subtēmēn*, the woof.

*Tegmen*, a covering.

*Vīmēn*, a twig.

*Vōlūmen*, a folding.



The following nouns are likewise neuter ;

Gluten, -inis, *glue*.

Unguen, -inis, *ointment*.

Inguen, -inis, *the groin*.

Pollen, -inis, *fine flour*.

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis* ; *pecten*, a comb ; *tībicen*, a trumpeter ; *tībicen*, a piper ; and *oscen*, or *oscinis*, ac. *avis*, f. a bird which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3 The following nouns are feminine ; *Sindon*, -*ōnis*, fine linen ; *āidon*, -*ōnis*, a nightingale ; *halcyon*, -*ōnis*, a bird called the king's fisher ; *icon*, -*ōnis*, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis* ; as, *Laōmēdon*, -*ontis*, a king of Troy. So *Achēron*, *chameleon*, *Phaëthon*, *Chēron*, &c.

### AR and UR.

§ 29. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to from the genitive ; as, *calcar*, *calcāris*, 'a spur.'

So,

Guttur, -*ūris*, *the throat*.

Jūbar, -*āris*, *a sun-beam*.

Lācūnar, -*āris*, *a ceiling*.

Murmur, -*ūris*, *a noise*.

Nectar, -*āris*, *drink of the gods*.

Pulvinar, -*āris*, *a pillow*.

Sulphur, -*ūris*, *sulphur*.

Except,

Ebur, -*ōris*, n. *ivory*.

Far, farris, n. *corn*.

Fēmur, -*ōris*, n. *the thigh*.

Furfur, -*ūris*, m. *bran*.

Fur, furis, m. *a thief*.

Hēpar, -*ātis*, or *ātos*, n. *the liver*.

Jēcūr, -*ōris*, or *jecinōris*, n. *the liver*.

Rōbur, -*ōris*, n. *strength*.

Sālar, -*āris*, m. *a trout*.

Turtur, -*ūris*, m. *a turtle-dove*.

Vultur, -*ūris*, m. *a vulture*.

### ER and OR.

§ 30. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is* ; as,

*Anser*, *ansēris*, a goose or gander ; *agger*, -*ēris*, a rampart ; *āer*, -*ēris*, the air ; *carcer*, -*ēris*, a prison ; *asser*, -*ēris*, and *asses*, -*is*, a plank ; *dolor*, -*ōris*, pain ; *color*, -*ōris*, a colour. So,

Actor, *a doer, a pleader*.

Crēdītor, *he that trusts or lends*.

Cruor, *gore*.

Dēbītor, *a debtor*.

Fātor, *an ill smell*.

Hōnor, *honour*.

Lector, *a reader*.

Lictor, *an officer among the Romans, who attended the magistrates*.

Livor, *paleuess, malice*.

Nidor, *a strong smell*.

Odor, and -*os*, *a smell*.

Olor, *a swan*.

Pādor, *filth*.

Pastor, *a shepherd*.

Prātor, *a commander*.

Pūdor, *shame*.

Rūbor, *blushing*.

Rūmor, *a report*.

Sāpor, *a taste*.

Sartor, *a cobbler or tailor*.

Sātor, *a sower, a father*.

Sōpor, *sleep*.

Splendor, *brightness*.

Sponsor, *a surety*.

Squālor, *filthiness*.

Stūpor, *dulness*.

Sūtōr, *a sewer*.

Tēpor, *warmth*.

Terror, *dread*.

Tīmōr, *fear*.

Tonsor, *a barber*.

Tūtōr, *a guardian*.

Vāpor, *a vapour*.

Vēnātor, *a hunter*.

*Rhētor*, a rhetorician, has *rhetōris* ; *castor*, a beaver, -*ōris*.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter :

Acer, -ēris, a maple tree.  
Ador, -ōris, fine wheat.  
Æquor, -ōris, a plain, the sea.  
Cādāver, -ēris, a dead carcass.  
Cicer, -ēris, vetches.  
Cor, cordis, the heart.  
Iter, itinēris, a journey.

Marmor, -ōris, marble.  
Pāpāver, -ēris, poppy.  
Pīper, -ēris, pepper.  
Spānther, -ēris, a clasp.  
Tūber, -ēris, a swelling.  
Uber, -ēris, a pap, or fatness.  
Ver, vēris, the spring.

Arbor, -ōris, a tree, is fem. Tuber, -ēris, the fruit of the tuber-tree, is masc. but when put for the tree, is fem.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris*, in the genitive; as, hic *imber*, *imbris*, a shower. So *Insūber*, *Octōber*, &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris*; as, *venter*, *ventris*, the belly; *pāter*, *pātris*, a father; *frāter*, -*tris*, a brother; *accipiter*, -*tris*, a hawk; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crāteris*; *sōter*, -*ēris*, a saviour; *lāter*, a tile, *latēris*; *Jūpiter*, the chief of the Heathen gods, has *Jovis*; *lūter*, -*tris*, a little boat, is masc. or femin.

### AS.

§ 31. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis*: as, *ætās*, *ætātis*, an age.

#### So,

Ætas, the summer.  
Piētas, piety.  
Pōtestas, power.  
Prōbitas, probity.  
Sātiētas, a glut or disgust.

Sīmultas, a feud, a grudge.  
Tempestas, a time, a tem-  
pest.  
Ubertas, fertility.

Vērītas, truth.  
Volūntas, will.  
Vōluptas, pleasure.  
Anas, a duck, has *anātis*.

Exc. 1. As, assis, m. a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts.

Mas, mās, m. a male.  
Vas, vādīs, m. a surety  
Vas, vāsīs, n. a vessel.

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem.; as, *sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *dēcunx*, 10; *dounx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine, some feminine, some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. as, *gigas*, *gigantis*, a giant; *ādēmas*, -*antis*, an adamant; *ēlēphas*, -*antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *adis*, or *ados*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados*, a lamp; *drōmas*, -*adis*, f. a dromedary; likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcādis*, or -*ados*. Those that are neuter have *ātis*; as, *būcēras*, -*ātis*, an herb; *artocreas*, -*ātis*, a pie.

### ES.

§ 32. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; as,

*rūpes*, *rupis*, a rock; *nūbes*, *nubis*, a cloud. So,

Ædes, or -*is*, a temple; plur. a house.  
Cautēs, a rugged rock.  
Clādes, an overthrow, destruction.  
Crātes, a hurdle.  
Fāmes, hunger.  
Fīdes, a fiddle.

Lues, a plague.  
Mōles, a heap.  
Nātes, the buttock.  
Pālumbes, m. or f. a pigeon.  
Prōles, an offspring.  
Pūbes, youth.

Sēpes, a hedge.  
Sōbōles, an offspring.  
Strāges, a slaughter.  
Strues, a heap.  
Sūdes, a stake.  
Tābes, a consumption.  
Vulpes, a fox.

**Exc. 1.** The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive :

Ales, -ŭtis, a bird.  
Ames, -ŭtis, a fowler's staff.  
Aries, -ētis, a ram.  
Bes, bessis, two-thirds of a pound.  
Cespes, -ŭtis, a turf.  
Eques, -ŭtis, a horseman.  
Fōmes, -ŭtis, fuel.  
Gurges, -ŭtis, a whirlpool.  
Hæres, -ēdis, an heir.  
Indĭges, -ētis, a man deified.  
Interpres, -ētis, an interpreter.  
Līmes, -ŭtis, a limit or bound.  
Miles, -ŭtis, a soldier.  
Obses, -ŭdis, a hostage.

Palmes, -ŭtis, a vine-branch.  
Pāries, -ētis, a wall.  
Pes, pēdis, the foot.  
Pēdes, -ŭtis, a footman.  
Poples, -ŭtis, the ham of the leg.  
Præses, -ŭdis, a president.  
Sātelles, -ŭtis, a life-guard.  
Stīpes, -ŭtis, the stock of a tree.  
Termes, -ŭtis, an olive bough.  
Trāmes, -ŭtis, a path.  
Vēles, -ŭtis, a light-armed soldier.  
Vātes, vatis, a prophet.  
Verres, verris, a boar-pig.

But *ales*, *miles*, *hæres*, *interpres*, *obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

**Exc. 2.** The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive :

Abies, -ētis, a fir-tree.  
Cēres, -ēris, the goddess of corn.  
Merces, -ēdis, a reward, hire.  
Merges, -ŭtis, a handful of corn.  
Quies, -ētis, rest.

Rēquies, -ētis; or requiŭi, (of the fifth declension) rest.  
Sāges, -ētis, growing corn.  
Tēges, -ētis, a mat or coverlet.  
Tūdes, -is, or -ŭtis, a hammer.

To these add the following adjectives :

Ales, -ŭtis, swift.  
Bipes, -ēdis, two-footed.  
Quadrupes, -ēdis, four-footed.  
Dēses, -ŭdis, slothful.  
Dives, -ŭtis, rich.  
Hēbes, -ētis, dull.  
Perpes, -ētis, perpetual.

Præpes, -ētis, swift-winged.  
Rēses, -ŭdis, idle.  
Sospes, -ŭtis, safe.  
Superstes, -ŭtis, surviving.  
Tēres, -ētis, round and long, smooth.  
Lōcuples, -ētis, rich.  
Mansues, -ētis, gentle.

**Exc. 3.** Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as, hic *acīnāces*, -is, a Persian sword, a scimitar: but some are neuter; as, hoc *cācōēthes*, an evil custom; *hippōmānes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pēnāces*, the herb all-heal; *nēpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, a Cretan, have -ētis in the genitive; as, hic *magnes*, *magnētis*, a load-stone; *tāpes*, -ētis, tapestry; *lēbes*, -ētis, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either -ētis, or *is*; as, *Dāres*, *Darētis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension. *Achilles* has *Achillīs*; or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillēi*, or *Achillei*, of the second declension, from *Achillēus*. So *Ulysses*, *Pētrides*, *Verres*, *Aristōtēles*, &c.

## IS.

§ 33. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as,

*auris*, *auris*, the ear; *avis*, *avis*, a bird. So,

Apis, a bee.  
Bilis, the gall, anger.  
Classis, a fleet.  
Fēlis, a cat.  
Fōris, a door; oftener plur.  
fores, -ium.

Mensis, a harvest or crop.  
Nāris, the nostril.  
Neptis, a niece.  
Ovis, a sheep.  
Pellis, a skin.  
Pestis, a plague.

Rātis, a raft.  
Rūdis, a rod.  
Vallis, a valley.  
Vestis, a garment.  
Vitis, a vine.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

<i>Axis</i> , axis, an axle-tree.	<i>Fascia</i> , a bundle.	<i>Patrušlis</i> , a cousin-german
<i>Aquālis</i> , a water-pot, an ewer.	<i>Fēciālis</i> , a herald.	<i>Piscis</i> , a fish.
<i>Callis</i> , a beaten road.	<i>Follis</i> , a pair of bellows.	<i>Postis</i> , a post.
<i>Canlis</i> , the stock of an herb.	<i>Fustis</i> , a staff.	<i>Sōdalis</i> , a companion.
<i>Collis</i> , a hill.	<i>Mensis</i> , a month.	<i>Torris</i> , a fire-brand.
<i>Cenchris</i> , a kind of serpent.	<i>Mūgliis</i> , or -il, a mullet-fish.	<i>Unguis</i> , the nail.
<i>Ensis</i> , a sword.	<i>Orbis</i> , a circle, the world.	<i>Vectis</i> , a lever.
		<i>Vermis</i> , a worm.

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as *pānis*, bread; *crīnis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *idis*; as, *týrannis*, *týrannidis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

<i>Cīnis</i> , -ēris, ashes.	<i>Pūbis</i> , or <i>pūbes</i> , -is, or <i>ostēns</i> , -ēris, marriageable.
<i>Cūcūmis</i> , -is, or -ēris, a cucumber.	<i>Pulvis</i> , -ēris, dust.
<i>Dīs</i> , <i>dītis</i> , the god of riches; or rich, an adj.	<i>Quiris</i> , -ītis, a Roman.
<i>Gūs</i> , <i>glūris</i> , a dormouse, a rat.	<i>Samnis</i> , -ītis, a Samnite.
<i>Impūbis</i> , or <i>impūbes</i> , -is, or -ēris, not marriageable.	<i>Sanguis</i> , -inis, blood.
<i>Lāpis</i> , -īdis, a stone.	<i>Sēmis</i> , -iasis, the half of anything.
	<i>Vōmis</i> , or -er, -ēris, a ploughshare.

*Pulvis*, and *cinis*, are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pubis* and *impūbis* are properly adjectives; thus, *Puberibus caulem foliis*, a stock with downy leaves. *Virg. Æn. xii. 413. Impūbe corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes*, -is, f.) of youth. *Horat. Epod. 5. 13. Exanguis*, bloodless, an adjective, has *exanguis* in the genitive.

Exc. 3. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

<i>Amnis</i> , a river.	<i>Finis</i> , the end; <i>finēs</i> , the boundaries of a field, or territories, is always masc.
<i>Anguis</i> , a snake.	<i>Serōbis</i> , or <i>scrobs</i> , a ditch.
<i>Cānālis</i> , a conduit-pipe.	<i>Torquis</i> , a chain.
<i>Corbis</i> , a basket.	

Exc. 4. These feminines have *idis*: *Cassis*, -īdis, a helmet; *cupis*, -īdis, the point of a spear; *capis*, -īdis, a kind of cup; *prōmulsis*, -īdis, a kind of drink, methelin. *Lis*, strife, f. has *litis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: some have *eos* or *ios*; as, *hērēsis*, -eos, or -ios, or -is, a heresy; so, *bāsis*, f. the foot of a pillar; *phrasis*, a phrase; *phthīsis*, a consumption; *poēsis*, poetry; *metrōpōlis*, a chief city, &c. Some have *idis*, or *idos*; as, *Pāris*, -īdis, or -idos, the name of a man; *aspis*, -īdis, f. an asp; *ēphēmēris*, -īdis, f. a day-book; *iris*, -īdis, f. the rainbow; *pyxis*, -īdis, f. a box. So *Ægis*, the shield of Pallas; *canthāris*, a sort of fly; *pērisclis*, a garter; *proboscis*, an elephant's trunk; *pýrāmis*, a pyramid; and *tigris*, a tiger, -īdis, seldom *tigris*: all fem. Part have *idis*, as, *Psophis*, -īdis, the name of a city: others have *inis*; as, *Eleusis*, -inis, the name of a city; and some have *entis*; as, *Stimois*, *Simoēntis*, the name of a river. *Chāris*, one of the Graces, has *Charitis*.

## OS.

§ 34. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis*; as,

*nēpos, -ōtis*, a grandchild; *sacerdos, -ōtis*, a priest, also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

*Arbos, or -or, -ōris*, a tree.  
*Cos, cōtis*, a whetstone.  
*Dos, dōtis*, a dowry.

*Eos, eōis*, the morning.  
*Glos, glōris*, the husband's sister, or brother's wife.

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

*Flos, flōris*, a flower.  
*Hōnos, or -or, -ōris*, honour.  
*Lābos, or -or, -ōris*, labour.  
*Lēpos, or -or, -ōris*, wit.  
*Mos, mōris*, a custom.  
*Ros, rōris*, dew.

*Custos, -ūdis*, a keeper, also fem.  
*Hēros, herōis*, a hero.  
*Mīnos, -ūs*, a king of Crete.  
*Tros, Trōis*, a Trojan.  
*Boa, bōvis*, m. or f. an *os* or *cos*.

Exc. 3. *Oa, ossis*, a bone; and *ōs, ōris*, the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis*, as, *heros, -ōis*, a hero, or great man: So *Mīnos*, a king of Crete; *Tros*, a Trojan; *thos*, a kind of wolf.

## US.

§ 35. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris*; as,

*pectus, pectōris*, the breast; *tempus, tempōris*, time. So,

*Corpus, a body.*  
*Dēcus, honour.*  
*Dēdēcus, disgrace.*  
*Fācīnus, a great action.*  
*Fēnus, usury.*

*Frigus, cold.*  
*Lītus, a shore.*  
*Nēmus, a grove.*  
*Pēcus, cattle.*

*Pēnus, provisions.*  
*Pignus, a pledge.*  
*Stercus, dung.*  
*Tergus, a hide.*

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ēris*:

*Acus, chaff.*  
*Fūnus, a funeral.*  
*Fœdus, a covenant.*  
*Gēnus, a kind, or kindred.*  
*Glōmus, a clue.*  
*Lātus, the side.*

*Mūnus, a gift or office.*  
*Olus, pot-herb.*  
*Onus, a burden.*  
*Opus, a work.*  
*Pondus, a weight.*  
*Rūdus, rubbish.*

*Scēlus, a crime.*  
*Sidus, a star.*  
*Vellus, a fleece of wool.*  
*Viscus, an entrail.*  
*Ulcus, a bile.*  
*Vulnus, a wound.*

Thus *acēris, funēris*, &c. *Glōmus*, a clue, is sometimes masculine, and has *glōmi*, of the second declension. *Vēnus*, the goddess of love, and *vētus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ēris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously:

*Incus, -ūdis*, an anvil.  
*Pālus, -ūdis*, a pool, or morass.  
*Pēcus, -ūdis*, a sheep.  
*Subecus, -ūdis*, a dove-tail.  
*Tellus, -ūris*, the earth, or goddess of the earth.

*Juventus, -ūtis*, youth.  
*Sālus, -ūtis*, safety.  
*Sēnectus, -ūtis*, old age.  
*Servītus, -ūtis*, slavery.  
*Virtus, -ūtis*, virtue.  
*Intercus, -ūtis*, an hydropey.

*Intercus* is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *uris*, in the genitive; as,

*Crus*, *crūris*, the leg.

*Jus*, *jūris*, law or right; also broth.

*Pus*, *pūris*, the corrupt matter of any sore.

*Rus*, *rūris*, the country.

Thus, *thūris*, frankincense.

So *Mus*, *mūris*, masc. a mouse.

*Ligus*, or *-ur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris*; *lēpus*, masc. a hare, *lepōris*; *sus*, masc. or fem. a swine, *suis*; *grus*, masc. or fem. a crane, *gruis*.

*Œdipus*, the name of a man, has *Œdipōdis*; sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *Œdipi*. The compounds of *pūs* have *ōdis*; as, *tripus*, masc. a tripod, *tripōdis*; but *līgōpus*, *-ōdis*, a kind of bird, or, the herb hare's-foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis*; as, *Trapēzus*, *Trapēzuntis*; *Opus*, *Opuntis*; *Hierichus*, *-untis*, Jericho.

## YS.

§ 36. Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive they have sometimes *ysis*, or *yos*; as,

*Hæc chēlys*, *chelyis*, or *-yos*, a harp; *Cēpys*, *Capyis*, or *-yos*, the name of a man; sometimes they have *ydīs*, or *ydos*; as, *hæc chlēm̄ys*, *chlām̄ydīs*, or *chlām̄ydos*, a soldier's cloak; and sometimes *ynīs*, or *ynos*; as, *Trāchys*, *Trach̄ynīs*, or *Trach̄ynos*, the name of a town.

## ÆS, AUS, EUS.

§ 37. The nouns ending in *æs*, and *aus*, are,

*Æs*, *æris*, n. brass or money.

*Fraus*, *fraudis*, f. fraud.

*Laus*, *laudis*, f. praise.

*Præs*, *prædis*, m. or f. a surety.

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*; *Tereus*, *Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Orphēus*, genit. *Orphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphēi*, and that into *Orph̄i*.

## S with a consonant before it.

§ 38. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as,

*Trabs*, *trābis*, a beam; *scōbs*, *scōbis*, saw-dust; *hiems*, *hiēm̄is*, winter; *gens*, *gen̄tis*, a nation; *stips*, *stīpis*, alms; *pars*, *partis*, a part; *sors*, *sortis*, a lot; *mors*, *-tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

*Chālybs*, *-ybis*, steel.

*Dens*, *-tis*, a tooth.

*Fons*, *-tis*, a well.

*Gryps*, *gr̄yphis*, a griffin.

*Hydrops*, *-ōpis*, the dropsy.

*Mērops*, *-ōpis*, a woodpecker.

*Mons*, *-tis*, a mountain.

*Pons*, *-tis*, a bridge.

*Seps*, *sēpis*, a kind of serpent; but

*Seps*, *sēpis*, a hedge, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masculine, or feminine:

*Adeps*, *ad̄ypis*, fatness.

*Rūdēns*, *-tis*, a cable.

*Scrobs*, *scrōbis*, a ditch.

*Serpens*, *-tis*, a serpent.

*Stirps*, *st̄irpis*, the root of a tree.

*Stirps*, an offspring, always fem.

*Antheas*, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps, forcipis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -ipis*, a prince or princess; *particeps, -cipis*, a partaker; so likewise *coelebs, coelibis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *caput* have *cipitis*; as, *præceps, præcipitis*, headlong; *anceps, ancipitis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cipitis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler; has *aucupis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, frondis, the leaf of a tree.	Juglans, -dis, a walnut.
Glans, glandis, an acorn.	Lens, lendis, a nit.

So *libripens, libripendis*, m. a weigher; *nefrens, -dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as, *concor, concordis*, agreeing; *discor, dis agreeing*; *vecor, mad, &c.* But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going, and *quens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*; thus, *iens, euntis*; *quens, queuntis*; *rediens, redeuntis*; *nequens, nequeuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tiryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tirynthis*

## T.

§ 39. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *caput, capitis*, the head, neuter. In like manner its compounds, *sinciput, sincipitis*, the forehead; and *occiput, -itis*, the hind-head.

## X.

§ 40. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as, *lux, lucis*, light.

## So,

Appendix, -icis, an addition; dim. -icula.	Fæx, -cis, dregs.	Nutrix, -icis, a nurse.
Cælox, -icis, a pinnacle.	Falx, -cis, a scythe.	Nux, nūcis, a nut.
Cervix, -icis, the neck.	Fax, -ācis, a torch.	Pax, -ācis, peace.
Cicatrix, -icis, a scar.	Filix, -icis, a fern.	Pix, pīcis, pitch.
Cornix, -icis, a crow.	Lanx, -cis, a plate.	Rādx, -icis, a root.
Cōturnix, -icis, a quail.	Lōdix, -icis, a sheet.	Sālix, -icis, a willow.
Coxendix, -icis, the hip.	Mēretrix, -icis, a courtesan.	Vibix, or -ex, -icis, the mark of a wound.
Crux, crucis, a cross.	Merx, -cis, merchandise.	

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thōrax, -ācis*, a breast-plate; *Cōrax, -ācis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *icis*; as, *pollex, -icis*, m. the thumb. So the following nouns, also masculine:

Apex, the tuft or tassel on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself, or the top of any thing.	Cimex, a bug.	Pōdex, the breech.
Artifex, an artist.	Cōdex, a book.	Pontifex, a chief priest.
Carnifex, an executioner.	Cūlex, a gnat, a midge.	Pūlex, a flea.
Caudex, the trunk of a tree.	Frūtēx, a shrub.	Rāmēx, a rupture.
	Index, an informer.	Sūrex, a rat.
	Lātex, any liquor.	Vertex, the crown of the head.
	Mūrex, a shell fish, purple.	Vortex, a whirlpool.

*Veruez*, a wether sheep, has *vervēcis*; *fanisex*, a mower of hay, *fanistcis*; *rěsez*, m. -*čis*, a vine-branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

*Călix*, -*čis*, a cup.  
*Călyx*, -*čis*, the bud of a flower.  
*Coccyx*, -*čis*, or -*čis*, a cuckoo.  
*Fornix*, -*čis*, a vault.

*Oryx*, -*čis*, a wild goat.  
*Phoenix*, -*čis*, a bird so called.  
*Trădux*, -*čis*, a graff or offset of a vine;  
 also fem.

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine:

*Fornax*, -*čis*, a furnace.  
*Pănax*, -*čis*, the herb all-heal.  
*Climax*, -*čis*, a ladder.  
*Forfex*, -*čis*, a pair of scissors.  
*Hălex*, -*čis*, a herring.

*Smilax*, -*čis*, the herb rope-weed.  
*Carex*, -*čis*, a sedge.  
*Sūpellex*, *supellectilis*, household furniture.

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

*Calx*, -*čis*, the heel, or the end of any thing, the goal; but *calx*, lime, is always fem.  
*Cortex*, -*čis*, the bark of a tree.  
*Hystrix*, -*čis*, a porcupine.  
*Imbrex*, -*čis*, a gutter or roof tile.  
*Lynx*, -*čis*, an ounce, a beast of very quick sight.

*Limax*, -*čis*, a snail.  
*Obex*, -*čis*, a bolt or bar.  
*Perdix*, -*čis*, a partridge.  
*Pūmex*, -*čis*, a pumice stone.  
*Rūmex*, -*čis*, sorrel, an herb.  
*Sandix*, -*čis*, a purple colour.  
*Sīlex*, -*čis*, a flint.  
*Vārix*, -*čis*, a swollen vein.

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

*Aquiflex*, -*čis*, a well-maker.  
*Conjūnx*, or -*ux*, *ūgis*, a husband or wife.  
*Frux* (not used), *frūgis*, f. corn.  
*Grexx*, *grēgis*, m. or f. a flock.  
*Lēxx*, *lēgis*, f. a law.

*Phălanx*, -*angis*, f. a phalanx.  
*Rēmex*, -*čis*, a rower.  
*Rēxx*, *rēgis*, a king.  
*Nix*, *nīvis*, f. snow.  
*Noxx*, *noctis*, f. night.  
*Sēnex*, *sēnis*, & -*čis*, (an adj.) old.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and manner of declension, are as various as Latin nouns; thus, *bombys*, *bombȳcis*, a silk-worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *ōnix*, masc. or fem. *onȳchis*, a precious stone; and so *sardōnyx*; *lărynx*; *laryngis*, fem. the top of the windpipe; *Phryx*, *Phrȳgis*, a Phrygian; *sphīnx*, -*ngis*, a fabulous hag; *strix*, -*čis*, f. a screech-owl; *Styx*, -*čis*, f. a river in hell; *Hylax*, -*ctis*, the name of a dog; *Bībraz*, *Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

### DATIVE SINGULAR.

The dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Esuriēte leōni ex ore exculpere prădam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion. Lucil. *Hăret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot. Virg. *Æn.* x. 361. for *esurienti* and *pedi*.

### EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 41. Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im*.

*Amussia*, f. a mason's rule.  
*Būris*, f. the beam of a plough.  
*Cannābis*, f. hemp.  
*Cūcūmis*, m. a cucumber.  
*Gūmmis*, f. gum.  
*Mēphītis*, f. a damp or strong smell.

*Răvis*, f. hoarseness.  
*Sīnăpis*, f. mustard.  
*Sītis*, f. thirst.  
*Tussis*, f. a cough.  
*Vis*, f. strength.



To these add proper names, 1. of cities and other places; as, *Hispānis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Libya;—2. of rivers; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Bætis*, the Guadalquivir, in Spain; so, *Albis*, *Arāris*, *Athēsis*, *Lāris*, &c.—3. of gods; as, *Anūbis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Serāpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin*, *Tibērim*, or *-in*, &c.

§ 42. Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

*Aquālis*, m. a water-pot.  
*Clāvis*, f. a key.  
*Cūtis*, f. the skin.  
*Febria*, f. a fever.  
*Nāvis*, f. a ship.

*Pelvis*, f. a basin.  
*Puppis*, f. the stern of a ship.  
*Restis*, f. a rope.

*Sēcūris*, f. an axe.  
*Sēmentis*, f. a sowing.  
*Strīgīlis*, f. a horse-comb.  
*Turris*, f. a tower.

Thus *navem* or *navim*; *puppem*, or *puppin*, &c. The ancients said, *avin*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

§ 43. Exc. 3. Greek nouns form their accusative variously:

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas*, *lampādīs*, or *lampādos*, *lampādem* or *lampāda*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros*, *Trois*, *Troem* or *Troa*, a Trojan; *heros*, a hero; *Mīnos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a*; *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *æther*, the sky; *delphin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pana*, *æthēra*, *delphīna*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*, never *īda*; as, *Pāris*, *Paridīs* or *Paridos*, *Parim*, or *Parin*, sometimes *Pāridem*, never *Parīda*.—So, *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *īda*, but rarely *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elidīs* or *Elidos*, *Elidem* or *Elīda*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like manner feminines in *ys*, *īdos*, have *īdem* or *īda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as, *chlām̄ys*, *īdem* or *īda*, not *chlām̄yn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative, by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metamorphōsis*, *-eos* or *-ios*, *metamorphōsim* or *-in*, a change. *Tēthys*, *-yos* or *-yis*, *Tēthym* or *-yn*, the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thīseus*, *Thīsea*; *Tydeus*, *Tydea*.

#### EXCEPTIONS IN THE VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

Many Greek nouns, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as *Daphnis*, *Daphni*; *Paris*, *Pari*; *Tēthys*, *Tēthy*; *Melampus*, *Melampu*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*; *Chelys*, *Chely*; *Pōisis*, *Pōisi*. Nouns in *as*, *antis*, make the vocative in *a* or in *an*; as, *Pallas*, *Palla* or *Pallan*; *Calchas*, *Calcha* or *Calchan*: some in *es* make it in *es* or *e*; as, *Socrātes*, *Chremes*, *Hercūles*, *Achilles*, &c.

## EXCEPTIONS IN THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 44. **Exc. 1.** Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *sēdīle*, *sedīli*; *anīmal*, *animālī*; *calcar*, *calcārī*. Except proper names; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town; and the following neuters in *ar*:

*Far*, *farre*, corn.  
*Hēpar*, *āte*, the liver.  
*Jūbar*, *āre*, a sun-beam.

*Nectar*, *āre*, drink of the gods.  
*Par*, *pāre*, a match, a pair.  
*Sal*, *sāle*, or *-i*, m. or n. salt.

**Exc. 2.** Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative, as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*; but *cannābis*, *Bætis*, and *Tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre*, or *turri*; but *restis*, a rope, and *cūtis*, the skin, have *e* only.\*

**Exc. 3.** Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjective; as, *bīpennīs*, *-i*, a halberd; *mōlāris*, *-i*, a mill-stone; *quadrirēmīs*, *-i*, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprilis*, *-i*; *Dēcember*, *-bri*, &c. But *rūdīs*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *jūvēnis*, a young man, have *e* only; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *ns*; as,

*Adōlescens*, a young man.  
*Infans*, an infant.

*Princeps*, a prince.  
*Sēnex*, an old man.

*Torrens*, a brook.  
*Vīgil*, a watchman.

**Exc. 4.** Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye*, or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

## NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

§ 45. 1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermōnes*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as, *puppēs*, *puppēis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capīta*, *itinēra*: but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *sedīlia*, *calcāria*.

\* Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *finis*, *supeller*, *vectis*, *pūgil*, a champion; *mūgil* or *mugīlis*; so *rus*, *occiput*: Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagīni*; he lives at Carthage. So, *civis*, *classis*, *sors*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *postia*, *fustia*, *amnis*, and *ignis*; but these have oftener *e*. *Canālis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *estāti*, *cani*, *lapīdi*, *ovi*; &c.

## GENITIVE PLURAL.

§ 46. Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or either *e* or *i*; make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e* only, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capite*, *capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *māre*, *marium*; *vas*, a surety, *vadium*: but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civitātum*, and sometimes *civitatium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as, *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*; *parens*, *vātes*, *volūcris*, *pānis*, *jūvenis*, *opes*, *forceps*, and *cānis*. Horace, however, has *parentium*. Od. iii. 24, 21.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

*Arx*, *arcis*, *f* a castle.  
*Caro*, *carnis*, *f* flesh.  
*Cohors*, *-tis*, *f* a company.  
*Cor*, *cordis*, *n* the heart.  
*Cos*, *cōtis*, *f* a hone or whetstone.  
*Dos*, *dōtis*, *f* a dowry.  
*Faux*, *faucis*, *f* the jaws.  
*Glia*, *gliris*, *m* a rat.  
*Lar*, *lāris*, *m* a household god.

*Lintor*, *-tris*, *m* or *f* a little boat.  
*Lis*, *litis*, *f* strife.  
*Mus*, *mūris*, *m* a mouse.  
*Nix*, *nivis*, *f* snow.  
*Nex*, *noctis*, *f* the night.  
*Os*, *omnis*, *n* a bone.  
*Quiris*, *-itis*, a Roman.  
*Samnis*, *-tis*, *m* or *f* a Samnite.  
*Uter*, *utris*, *m* a bottle.

Thus *Samnitium*, *lintrium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*: as, *septuāz*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *hes*, eight ounces, *hessium*.

*Bos*, an ox or cow, has *boiūm*; and in the dative, *bōbus*, or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Macedo*, a Macedonian; *Arabs*, an Arabian; *Æthiops*, an Ethiopian; *monoceros*, an unicorn; *lynx*, a beast so called; *Thrax*, a Thracian; *Macedonum*, *Arabum*, *Æthiopum*, *monocerotum*, *lynxum*, *Thracum*. But those which have *a* or *is* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *on*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammātum*, or *epigrammāton*, an epigram; *metamorphosis*, *-ium*, or *ebn*.

Obs. 1. Nouns, which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *mānes*, *m* souls departed, *manium*; *caēlites*, *m* inhabitants of heaven, *caelitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* or *manes*, and *caēles*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnālia*, the feasts of Saturn, *Saturnalium* and *Saturnaliōrum*. So, *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, *Terminalia*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *im*; as, *nocentim* for *nocentium*: and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *caelitum*, for *caelium*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncōpe*; and the latter by *Epenthesis*.

## EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

§ 47. Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus*; as, *poēma*, a poem, *poēmātis*, rather than *poematibus*, from the old nominative *poēmātum*, of the second declension.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or, when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troāsi* or *Troāsin*, for *Troādibus*, from *Troas*, *Troādis* or *Troādos*, a Trojan woman.

Exc. 3. *Bos*, an ox, has *bōbus* or *bubus*; *Sus*, a swine, *sūsbus*, *sūbus*, or *sūbus*.

#### EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

§ 48. Exc. 1. Nouns which have *tum* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*; *lampādes* or *lampādas*. So, *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *herōas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiōpas*, &c.

#### GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

*Lampas*, a lamp, f. *lampādis*, or *-ādos*, *-ādi*, *-ādem*, or *-āda*, *-as*, *-āde*.

Plur. *-ādes*, *-ādum*, *-ādibus*, *-ādes*, or *-ādas*, *-ādes*, *-ādibus*.

*Troas*, f. *Troādis*, or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem*, or *-da*, *-as*, *-de*. Plur. *Troādes*, *-dum*, *-dibus* or *-si* or *-sin*, *-des*, or *-das*, *-des*, *-dibus*.

*Tros*, m. *Trois*, *Troi*, *Troem* or *-a*, *Tros*, *Troe*, &c.

*Phillis*, f. *Phillidis* or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem* or *-da*, *-i* or *-is*, *-de*.

*Pāris*, m. *Pāridis* or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem* or *Parim* or *-in*, *-i*, *-de*.

*Chlāmys*, f. *chlāmýdis* or *-ýdos*, *-ýdi*, *-ýdem* or *-ýda*, *-ýs*, *-ýde*, &c.

*Cāpys*, m. *Cāpýis* or *-ýos*, *-yi*, *-ym*, or *-yn*, *-y*, *-ye* or *-y*.

*Mētāmorphōsis*, f. *-is* or *-ios*, or *-eos*, *-i*, *-im* or *-in*, *-i*, *-i*, &c.

§ 49. The following is an alphabetical list of most of the irregular Nouns, both substantive and adjective, of the Third Declension.

A.	Acc. Sing.	Abl. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
Adolescens, .....	.....	.....	tium, rather tum.
Amnis, .....	.....	e or i rare.	
Amussis, .....	im, .....	i.	
Anguis, .....	.....	e or i.	
Aprilis, .....	em, .....	i.	
Aqualis, § .....	im, or em, .....	i or e.	
Araris, .....	im, .....	e.	
As and compounds	.....	.....	ium.
Avia, .....	.....	e or i.	
Adjectives.			
Ales, † .....	.....	e or i. ....	itum,
Anceps, † .....	.....	e or i. ....	itum, (ia, nom.)
Artifex, † .....	.....	e or i. ....	um.
B.			
Bætes, † .....	im or in, .....	i or e.	
Bilibris, .....	im, .....	i.	

	Acc. Sing.	Abl. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
Bipennis, †	.....	i.	
Bos, .....	.....	.....	boam, (bobus, dat.)
Buris, .....	im, .....	i.	
C.			
Canalis, .....	em, .....	i.	
Cannabis, .....	im, .....	i or e.	
Carthago, †	.....	i or e.	
Caro, .....	.....	.....	nium.
Centussis, .....	im.	.....	
Civis, .....	.....	e or i.	
Classis, .....	.....	e or i.	
Cohors, .....	.....	.....	tium.
Clavis, §	im, em, .....	i or e.	
Cor, .....	.....	.....	dium.
Cos, .....	.....	.....	tium.
Collis, .....	.....	e or i.	
Cucumis, ..	im, .....	i.	
Cutis, .....	im, .....	i or e.	
Adjectives.			
Capio, compounds	.....	e or i.	um.
of, in -ceps, ...	.....	.....	
Caput, compounds	.....	e or i.	um.
of, in -ceps, ...	.....	.....	
Celer, †	.....	i.	um.
Celebs, *	.....	e.	um.
Compar, †	.....	e or i.	um.
Compos, *	.....	ote, .....	um.
Concolor, *	.....	e.	um.
Color, comp. of, *	.....	e.	um.
Corpus, comp. of, in	.....	.....	
-or, *	.....	e.	um.
Consors, †	.....	e or i.	um.
Concors, .....	.....	i or e rarely,	ium.
D.			
Decussis, .....	im.	.....	
Dos, .....	.....	.....	tium.
Adjectives.			
Degener, †	.....	e or i.	um.
Dispar, †	.....	e or i.	um.
Dives, *	.....	e, sometimes i,	um.
F.			
Familiaris, †	.....	i or e.	
Faux, .....	.....	.....	clum.
Febris, §	im, em, .....	i, e.	
Finis, .....	.....	i, e.	
Fornax, .....	.....	.....	clum.
Fustis, .....	.....	e, i.	
Facio, comp. of, in	.....	.....	
-fex, .....	.....	e or i,	um.
G.			
Gausape, (perhaps	.....	.....	
indecl.)	.....	e.	
Glis, .....	.....	.....	rium.

	Acc. Sing.	Abl. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
Gummis, . . . . .	im, . . . . .	i.	
Genus, <i>comp. of, in</i>			
-er, . . . . .			um.
H.			
Hæresis, . . . . .	im, in, . . . . .	i.	
Hospes, <i>adj.*</i> . . . . .		ite, . . . . .	um.
I.			
Ignis, . . . . .		e or i.	
Imber, . . . . .		e or i.	
Infans, . . . . .			tium.
Jus, . . . . .		jure, . . . . .	um, ium <i>seldom.</i>
Juvenis, . . . . .		e, . . . . .	um.
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Impos, * . . . . .		ote, . . . . .	um.
Impar, † . . . . .		e or i, . . . . .	um.
Impubes, * . . . . .		ere, . . . . .	um.
Inops, † . . . . .		e or i, . . . . .	um.
L.			
Labea, . . . . .		e or i.	
Lar, . . . . .			ium.
Lens, † . . . . .	tim, tem, . . . . .	ti, te.	
Lintar, . . . . .			ium.
Lis, . . . . .			tium.
Locuples, <i>adj.</i> . . . . .		e or i, . . . . .	um, ium <i>seldom.</i>
M.			
Mephitis, . . . . .	im, . . . . .	i.	
Messis, . . . . .		e or i.	
Malaria, † . . . . .		i.	
Mons, . . . . .		e or i.	
Mugil, . . . . .		e or i,	um.
Mus, . . . . .			rium. <sup>1</sup>
Memor, <i>adj.† (olim</i>			
Memoris,) . . . . .		i, . . . . .	um.
N.			
Natalis, † . . . . .		i or e.	
Navis, † . . . . .	im, em, . . . . .	i or e.	
Nix, . . . . .			nivium.
November, ( <i>and</i>			
<i>such,</i> ) . . . . .	em, . . . . .	i.	
O.			
Occiput, † . . . . .		i or e.	
October, . . . . .	em, . . . . .	i.	
Orbis, . . . . .		e or i.	
Os, ossis, . . . . .			ossium.
Ovis, . . . . .	em, im, . . . . .	e or i.	
P.			
Pelvis, † . . . . .	im, em, . . . . .	i or e.	
Par, <i>m. &amp; f.</i> . . . . .		e, . . . . .	ium.
Par, <i>n.</i> . . . . .		i, . . . . .	ium.

<sup>1</sup> Semel apud Ciceronem murum.

	Acc. Sing.	Abl. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
Palus, .....	.....	.....	ndium.
Pars, .....	.....	e or i.	
Postia, .....	.....	e or i.	
Pugil, ♂ .....	.....	i or e.	
Puppis, ♂ .....	im, em, .....	i or e.	
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Par, † .....	.....	i, .....	ium.
Particeps, † .....	.....	e or i, .....	um.
Pauper, * .....	.....	era, .....	um.
Pes, comp. of * .....	.....	e, .....	um.
Princeps, † .....	.....	e or i, .....	um.
Præceps, * .....	.....	i, e, .....	tum (ia, nom.)
Plus, .....	.....	ri, re, .....	rium.
Pubes, * .....	.....	era, .....	um.
<i>Q.</i>			
Quintilis (and such), .....	em, .....	i.	
Quiris, .....	.....	.....	itium, itum.
<i>R.</i>			
Ratis, .....	em, ina, .....	e, i.	
Ravis, .....	im, .....	i.	
Restia, .....	im, em, .....	e.	
Rivalis, † .....	.....	i or e.	
Rus, ♂ .....	.....	i or e.	
Rudis, .....	.....	e.	
<i>S.</i>			
Sal, .....	.....	e or i.	
Sannia, .....	.....	.....	tium.
Securis, .....	im, em, .....	e or i.	
Seges, .....	.....	e or i.	
Sementia, ♂ .....	im, em, .....	i or e.	
Senex, .....	.....	e, .....	um.
Sentis, .....	em, im, .....	e or i.	
Septunx, .....	.....	.....	cium.
Serapis,    .....	im, .....	i.	
Sextans, .....	.....	.....	tium.
Sextilis, .....	em, .....	i.	
Sinapis, .....	im, .....	i, e rara.	
Sitis, .....	im, .....	.....	
Sodalis, † .....	.....	i or e.	
Sordes, .....	.....	e or i.	
Sors, .....	.....	e or i.	
Strigilis, .....	em, im seldom, ..	e.	
Supellex, ♂ .....	.....	i or e.	
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Senex, * .....	.....	e, .....	um.
Sospes, * .....	.....	ite, .....	um.
Superstes, * .....	.....	ite, .....	um.
Supplex, † .....	.....	ici, or e, .....	um.
<i>T.</i>			
Tibris,    .....	im, in, .....	i, e, ide.	
Tigris,    .....	ina, in, .....	i, e.	
Tridens, ♂ .....	.....	i or e.	

	Acc. Sing.	Abl. Sing.	Gen. Plur.
Turris, §	im, em,.....	i or e.	
Tussis, .....	im, em,.....	i or e.	
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Tricorpor, *	.....	e, .....	um.
Tricuspis, *	.....	e, .....	um.
Tripes, *	.....	e, .....	um.
U, V.			
Vectis, .....	.....	e or i.	
Venter, .....	.....	.....	ium.
Vigil, §	.....	e or i,.....	um.
Vis, pl. vires, ...	vim, .....	vi, .....	rium.
Unguis, .....	.....	e or i.	
Volucris, †	.....	i or e, .....	um.
Uter, .....	.....	.....	ium.
<i>Adjectives.</i>			
Uber, †	.....	e or i,.....	um.
Vetus, *	.....	i, e <i>seldom</i> ,.....	um.
Vigil, †	.....	i, e, .....	um, ium <i>seldom</i> .
Volucris, †	.....	i, .....	um, ium <i>seldom</i> .

\* Those thus marked, have *e* only in the ablative, and *um* in the genitive plural.

† Those having *i*, or *e* and *i*, in the ablative, and *um* in the genitive plural, are thus marked.

‡ Such substantives have *i*, because they are formed from adjectives, having *i* only in the ablative. Though used as substantives, they are in reality adjectives, the substantive with which they agree being understood.

§ Substantives, thus marked, take either termination indifferently: those not marked take, in general, the first termination mentioned.

|| *Carthāgo* and such nouns have *e* or *i* when *at a place* is signified, that is, when the question is made by *ubi* 'where?' The names of gods, rivers, &c., in *is*, take, in general, *im* or *in* in the accusative, *i* or sometimes *e* in the ablative.

#### FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 50. Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

#### TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	{ us, or u,	Nom.	{ us, or us,
Voc.		Acc.	
Gen.	ūs,	Voc.	{ uum,
Dat.	ui,	Gen.	
Acc.	um,	Dat.	{ ūs.
Abl.	u.	Abl.	



Fructus, *fruit*, masc.

## Singular.

N. fructus, .....	<i>fruit</i> ,
G. fructûs, .....	<i>of fruit</i> ,
D. fructui, .....	<i>to fruit</i> ,
A. fructum, .....	<i>fruit</i> ,
V. fructus, ...	<i>O fruit</i> ,
A. fructu, .....	<i>with fruit</i> .

## Plural.

N. fructus, .....	<i>fruits</i> ,
G. fructuum, .....	<i>of fruits</i> ,
D. fructibus, .....	<i>to fruits</i> ,
A. fructus, .....	<i>fruits</i> ,
V. fructus, .....	<i>O fruits</i> ,
A. fructibus, .....	<i>with fruits</i> .

Cornu, *a horn*, neut.

## Singular.

N. cornu, .....	<i>a horn</i> ,
G. cornu, .....	<i>of a horn</i> ,
D. cornu, .....	<i>to a horn</i> ,
A. cornu, .....	<i>a horn</i> ,
V. cornu, .....	<i>O horn</i> ,
A. cornu, .....	<i>with a horn</i> .

## Plural.

N. cornua, .....	<i>horns</i> ,
G. cornuum, .....	<i>of horns</i> ,
D. cornibus, .....	<i>to horns</i> ,
A. cornua, .....	<i>horns</i> ,
V. cornua, .....	<i>O horns</i> ,
A. cornibus, .....	<i>with horns</i> .

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine :

Acus, <i>a needle</i> .	Idus, -uum, <i>the ides of a</i>	Porticus, <i>a gallery</i> .
Anus, <i>an old woman</i> .	month.	Spēcus, <i>a den</i> .
Dōmus, <i>a house</i> .	Mānus, <i>the hand</i> .	Tribus, <i>a tribe</i> ,
Ficus, <i>a fig</i> .	Pēnus, <i>a store-house</i> .	

*Penus* and *specus* are sometimes masculine. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus* ; *unimānus*, having one hand ; *centimānus*, &c. adj. *Quercus*, an oak, has *quercōrum*, and -uum, in the gen. pl. *Versus* has *versi*, *versōrum*, *versis*, as well as its regular cases. *Senātus* has also -ātī, in the gen. ; so *ornatus*, -i : but these forms are not to be imitated.

*Domus* is but partly of the second declension ; thus,

Dōmus, *a house*, fem.

## Singular.

N. domus, .....	<i>a house</i> ,
G. domûs, or -mi, ...	<i>of a house</i> ,
D. domui, or -mo, ...	<i>to a house</i> ,
A. domum, .....	<i>a house</i> ,
V. domus, .....	<i>O house</i> ,
A. domo, .....	<i>with a house</i> .

## Plural.

N. domus, .....	<i>houses</i> ,
G. domōrum, or -uum, ...	<i>of houses</i> ,
D. domibus, .....	<i>to houses</i> ,
A. domos, or -us, .....	<i>houses</i> ,
V. domus, ...	<i>O houses</i> ,
A. domibus, .....	<i>with houses</i> .

*Note.* *Domûs*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house ; and *domi*, at home, or of home ; as, *meminēris domi*. Terent. Eun. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ûbus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

Acus, <i>a needle</i> .	Lacus, <i>a lake</i> .	Spēcus, <i>a den</i> .
Arcus, <i>a bow</i> .	Partus, <i>a birth</i> .	Tribus, <i>a tribe</i> .
Artus, <i>a joint</i> .	Portus, <i>a harbour</i> .	Vēru, <i>a spit</i> .
Genu, <i>the knee</i> .		

*Portus*, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ûbus* ; as, *portibus* or *portûbus*.

Exc. 3. *JESUS*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructus*, *fructue*; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructuibus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; as, *Ejus anuis causâ*, for *anâs*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Resistere impetui*, for *impetui*. Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usû sibi*, for *usui*. Ib. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currim*, for *curruum*.

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 51. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.

#### TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	} <i>es</i> ,	Nom.	} <i>es</i> ,
Voc.		Acc.	
Gen.	} <i>ei</i> ,	Voc.	} <i>es</i> ,
Dat.		Gen.	
Acc.	} <i>em</i> ,	Dat.	} <i>ërum</i> ,
Abl.		Abl.	
	<i>e</i> .		<i>ëbus</i> .

*Res*, a thing, fem.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>res</i> , ..... a thing,	N. <i>res</i> , ..... things,
G. <i>rêi</i> , ..... of a thing,	G. <i>rërum</i> , ..... of things,
D. <i>rêi</i> , ..... to a thing,	D. <i>rëbus</i> , ..... to things,
A. <i>rem</i> , ..... a thing,	A. <i>res</i> , ..... things,
V. <i>res</i> , ..... O thing,	V. <i>res</i> , ..... O things,
A. <i>re</i> , ..... with a thing.	A. <i>rëbus</i> , ..... with things.

In like manner decline,

<i>Acies</i> , the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.	<i>Inglûvies</i> , gluttony.	<i>Sânies</i> , gore.
<i>Câries</i> , rottenness.	<i>Mâcies</i> , leanness.	<i>Scâbies</i> , the scab, or itch.
<i>Cesâries</i> , the hair.	<i>Mâtëries</i> , matter.	<i>Sêries</i> , an order, or row.
<i>Fâcies</i> , the face.	<i>Pernîcies</i> , destruction.	<i>Spëcies</i> , an appearance.
<i>Glâcies</i> , ice	<i>Prölûvies</i> , a looseness	<i>Sûperficieis</i> , the surface.
	<i>Râbies</i> , madness.	<i>Tempëries</i> , temperateness.

1. Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

2. The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative singular, in *e*; as, *fide*, for *fidëi*. Ov. M. 3. 341.

3. Gen. *Dië*, Virg. G. i. 208. Sallust, Jug. 52, 106. *Acîë*, Sallust. Dat. *Dië*, Plant. *Fâciâ*, Gell. *Fidë*, Sallust, Jug. Hor. i. Sat. 3. 95. We find such Genitives also as, *Acîi*, *Pernîcii*, *Fidîi*, &c. A few have their Genitive from the Third, as, *Rëquîës*, *ëi*, or *ëis*, rest. *Plëbës*, the common people, makes *plëbis*, *plëbîi*, or *plëbi*; *Fâmës*, hunger, *fâmis*, or *fâmîi*.

4. The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many, the plural altogether.

5. All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three; *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four; *abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *pāries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.

6. Of the fifty-seven nouns of this declension, only two, *Rēs*, and *Diēs*, are complete in the plural. The following plurals occur: Nom. or Accus., *Acies*, *Faciēs*, *Eluviēs*, *Prægeniēs*, *Scabiēs*, *Spēciēs*, *Spēs*, *Sūperficiēs*.—Gen. *Faciērum*, *Spēciērum*, *Spērūm*, *Māteriūm*, *Luxūriūm*.—Dat. or Abl. *Spēbus*, *Sūperficiēbus*. '*Spēciērum* et *Spēciēbus* nolim dicere, ne si Latine quidem dici possit.—Cicero.

TERMINATIONS OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

	Singular.							
	I.	II.		III.		IV.		V.
		M.	N.	M.	N.	M.	N.	
Nom.	ă,	us,	er, um,	—	—	us,	û,	es,
Gen.	æ,	ī,		is,		ûs,	û,	ei,
Dat.	æ,	ô,		ī,		ui,	û,	ei,
Acc.	am,	um,		em,	—	um,	û,	em,
Voc.	ă,	ě,	er, um,	—	—	us,	û,	es,
Abl.	â,	ô,		ě,	or ī,		û,	ě,

Plural.									
Nom.	æ,	ī,	ā,	es,	ā, iā,	us,	uā,	es,	
Gen.	ārum,	ōrum,		um, or ium,		uum,		ērum,	
Dat.	is,	is,		ibus,		ibus, or ūbus,		ēbus,	
Acc.	as,	os,	ā,	es,	ā, iā,	us,	aū,	es,	
Voc.	æ,	ī,	ā,	es,	ā, iā,	us,	aū,	es,	
Abl.	is,	is,		ibus,		ibus, or ūbus,		ēbus,	

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 52. Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in gender, or declension, or in both.

*Heterogeneous Nouns.*

Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

*Avernus*, a lake in Campania, *hell*.

*Dindymus*, a hill in Phrygia.

*Imārus*, a hill in Thrace.

*Massicus*, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines

*Manālus*, a hill in Arcadia.

*Pangæus*, a promontory in Thrace.

*Tenārus*, a promontory in Laconia.

*Tartārus*, *hell*.

*Taygētus*, a hill in Laconia.

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernōrum*; *Dindýma*, *-ōrum*, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *juga*, or *cacumina*, or the like, in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.*

*Jocus*, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *lōcus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in a discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

*Carbāsus*, a sail, pl. *carbāsa*; *Pergāmus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergāma*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural.*

*Cælum*, pl. *cæli*, heaven; *Elysium*, pl. *Elysi*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter.*

*Rastrum*, a rake, pl. *rastrī* and *rastra*; *frænum*, a bridle, pl. *fræni* and *fræna*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural.*

*Dēlicium*, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *ēpulum*, a banquet, pl. *ēpula*; *balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea*.

*Heteroclites.*

§ 53. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*; as, *vas*, *vāsī*, a vessel, pl. *vāsa*, *vasōrum*; *jūgērum*, *jūgēri*, an acre, pl. *jūgēra*, *jūgērum*, *jūgeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jūgēris*, and *jūgēre*, in the singular, from the obsolete *jūgus*, or *juger*.

When a noun is compounded with another noun, if they be both in the nominative, they are both declined: as,

*Respublica*, a commonwealth, fem.

*Singular.*

N. *respublica*,  
G. *reipublicæ*,  
D. *reipublicæ*,  
A. *reipublicam*,  
V. *respublica*,  
A. *republicā*.

*Plural.*

N. *respublicæ*,  
G. *rerumpublicarum*,  
D. *rebuspublicis*,  
A. *respublicas*,  
V. *respublicæ*,  
A. *rebuspublicis*.

*Jusjurandum*, an oath, neut.

*Singular.*

N. *jusjurandum*,  
G. *jurisjurandi*,  
D. *jurijurando*,  
A. *jusjurandum*,  
V. *jusjurandum*,  
A. *jurejurando*.

*Plural.*

N. *jurajuranda*,  
G. \_\_\_\_\_  
D. \_\_\_\_\_  
A. *jurajuranda*,  
V. *jurajuranda*,  
A. \_\_\_\_\_

If a nominative be combined with an oblique case, then the nominative only is declined; as,

*Paterfamilias, a master of a family, masc.*

N.	paterfamilias,
G.	patrisfamilias,
D.	patrifamilias,
A.	patremfamilias,
V.	paterfamilias,
A.	patrefamilias.

Some nouns are both of the second and third declension; as,

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Orpheus,	{ ei,	{ eo,	{ eum,	—	eō; 2d Declen.
	{ eos,	{ ei,	{ or eon,		—; 3d Declen.
			ea,	eu,	

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Œdypus,	{ i,	{ o,	{ um,	—	o; 2d Declen.
	{ ōdis,	{ ōdi,	{ ōdem,		ōde; 3d Declen.
			u,	ū,	

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Achilleus,	{ ei,	{ eo,	—	{ eu,	eo; 2d Declen.
Achilles,	{ lis, or	{ li,	{ lem,	{ les,	le; 3d Declen.
	{ lēos,	{	{ or len,	{ or le,	

*Jupiter, vis* 'strength,' and *Bos* 'an ox' or 'cow,' are thus declined;

Singular.		Singular.	Plural.
N. Jupiter,		N. vis,	N. vires,
G. Jovis,		G. vis,	G. virium,
D. Jovi,		D. —	D. viribus,
A. Jovem,		A. vim,	A. vires,
V. Jupiter,		V. vis,	V. vires,
A. Jove.		A. vi.	A. viribus.

Singular.	Plural.
N. bos,	N. boves,
G. bovis,	G. boum,
D. bovi,	D. bobus, or bubus,
A. bovem,	A. boves,
V. bos,	V. boves,
A. bove.	A. bobus, or bubus.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

§ 54. Nouns are defective either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

Some are altogether indeclinable, and are therefore called *Aptōta*, or *Aptotes*. Some are used only in one case, and are therefore called *Monoptōta*; some in two, and are therefore called *Diptōta*; some in three, and are therefore called *Triptōta*; some in four, and are called *Tetraptōta*; and some in five, and are therefore called *Pentaptōta*.

The following list contains most of the nouns that are defective in case:—

Abactus, <i>acc. pl.</i> ; a driving away.	Dicis, <i>gen.</i> ; as, <i>dicis gratia</i> , for form's sake.
Accitu, <i>abl.</i> ; a calling for.	Ditiōnis, <i>gen.</i> ; -i, <i>dat.</i> ; -em, <i>acc.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; power.
Admissu, <i>abl.</i> ; admission.	Diu, <i>abl.</i> ; in the day time.
Admonitu, <i>abl.</i> ; admonition.	Divisui, <i>dat.</i> ; a dividing.
Æs, not used in <i>gen. pl.</i>	Ebur, <i>ivory</i> ;—not used in the <i>gen., dat., and abl. pl.</i>
Affātu, <i>abl.</i> ; an addressing;— <i>pl. affātus, -ibus.</i>	Efflagitātu, <i>abl.</i> ; importunity.
Algus, <i>nom.</i> ; algum, <i>acc.</i> ; algu, or -o, <i>abl.</i> ; cold.	Ejectus, <i>nom.</i> ; a throwing out.
Ambāge, <i>abl.</i> ; a winding story;— <i>pl. ambāges, -ibus.</i>	Epos, <i>acc.</i> ; an epic poem.
Amissum, <i>acc.</i> ; a loss.	Ergo, <i>abl.</i> ; for the sake.
Aplustre, <i>nom. and acc.</i> ; the flag of a ship;— <i>pl. aplustria, or aplustra.</i>	Evectus, <i>nom.</i> ; a conveyance.
Arbitrātu, <i>abl.</i> ; judgment.	Fæx, <i>dregs</i> , wants <i>gen. pl.</i>
Arcessitu, <i>abl.</i> ; a sending for.	Far, <i>corn</i> , not used in the <i>gen., dat., and abl. pl.</i>
Astu, <i>nom. acc.</i> ; a city.	Fas, <i>nom., acc.</i> ; right.
Astus, <i>nom.</i> ; astu, <i>abl.</i> ; craft;— <i>astus acc. pl.</i>	Fauce, <i>abl.</i> ; the throat;— <i>pl. fauces, -ibus.</i>
Cacoëthes, <i>nom., acc.</i> ; an evil custom;— <i>cacoëthe, nom. pl.</i> ; -e, and -es, <i>acc. pl.</i>	Fax, a torch, wants <i>gen. pl.</i>
Ceto, <i>acc.</i> ; a whale;— <i>cete, nom. and acc. pl.</i>	Femīnis, <i>gen.</i> ; -i, <i>dat.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; the thigh;— <i>pl. femīna, -ibus.</i>
Chaos, <i>nom., acc.</i> ; chao, <i>abl.</i> ; chaos;—but, signifying a deity, Chaon, <i>acc.</i>	Flictu, <i>abl.</i> ; a striking.
Circumspectus, <i>nom.</i> ; -um, <i>acc.</i> ; a looking around.	Foris, <i>nom. and gen.</i> ; -em, <i>acc.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; a door;— <i>pl. fores, -ibus.</i>
Coactu, <i>abl.</i> ; constraint.	Fors, <i>nom.</i> ; -tis, <i>gen.</i> ; -tem, <i>acc.</i> ; -te, <i>abl.</i> ; chance.
Cœlīte, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>pl. entire</i> ; inhabitants of heaven.	Frustratui, <i>abl.</i> ; a deceiving.
Commutātum, <i>acc.</i> ; an alteration.	Frux, <i>fruit, nom.</i> , scarcely used;— <i>frugis, gen., &amp;c.</i>
Compēdis, <i>gen.</i> ; compēde, <i>abl.</i> ; a fetter;— <i>pl. compēdes, -ibus.</i>	Gausāpe, <i>nom., acc., abl.</i> ; a rough garment;— <i>gausāpa, acc. pl.</i>
Concessu, <i>abl.</i> ; permission.	Glos, <i>nom., voc.</i> ; a husband's sister.
Condiscipulātu, <i>abl.</i> ; companionship at school.	Grates, <i>acc. pl.</i> ;— <i>gratibus, abl.</i> ; thanks.
Cratim, or -em, <i>acc.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; a hurdle;— <i>pl. crates, -ium, -ibus.</i>	Hiems, <i>winter</i> , not used in <i>gen., dat., and abl. pl.</i>
Dapis, <i>nom.</i> , scarcely used; <i>dapis, gen. &amp;c.</i> ; a feast.	Hippomānes, <i>nom.</i>
Datu, <i>abl.</i> , a giving.	Hir, <i>nom. and acc.</i> ; the palm of the hand.
Derisui, <i>dat.</i> ; -um, <i>acc.</i> ; -u, <i>abl.</i> ; ridicule.	Hortātu, <i>abl.</i> ; an exhorting;— <i>pl. hortatibus.</i>
Despicatui, <i>dat.</i> ; contempt.	Impētis, <i>gen.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; a shock;— <i>pl. impetibus.</i>
Dica, <i>nom.</i> ; dicam, <i>acc.</i> ; a legal process;— <i>dicas acc. pl.</i>	Inconsultu, <i>abl.</i> ; without advice.
	Incītas, or -a, <i>acc. pl.</i> ; as, <i>ad incītas redactus</i> , reduced to a strait.
	Indultu, <i>abl.</i> ; indulgence.

- Inferis, nom. pl.*; -as, acc.; *sacrifices to the dead.*  
*Inicias, acc. pl.*; a denial; as, ire *inicias*, to deny.  
*Ingratis, abl. pl.*; against one's will.  
*Injussu, abl.*; without leave.  
*Inquiet, nom.*; disquiet.  
*Instar, nom., acc.*; a likeness.  
*Interdiu, abl.*; in the day time.  
*Invitatu, abl.*; an invitation.  
*Jovis, nom.*, rarely used;—*pl. Joves.*  
*Irrisui, dat.*; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; *derision.*  
*Jugēris, gen.*; -e, abl.; an acre;—*pl. jugēra, -um, -ibus.*  
*Jussu, abl.*; command.  
*Labes, a spot, wants gen. pl.*  
*Lucu, abl.*; light.  
*Ludificatui, dat.*; a mockery.  
*Lux, light, wants the gen. pl.*  
*Mandātu, abl.*; a command.  
*Mane, nom., acc.*; mane, or -i, abl.; *morning.*  
*Mel, honey, not used in gen., dat., and abl. pl.*  
*Melos, acc.*; melody;—*mele, nom., acc. pl.*  
*Metus, fear, not used in gen., dat., and abl. pl.*  
*Missu, abl.*; despatch;—*pl. missus, -ibus.*  
*Monitu, abl.*; admonition;—*pl. monitus.*  
*Natu, abl.*; by birth.  
*Nauci, gen.*; as, *res nauci*, a thing of no value.  
*Nefas, nom., acc.*; wickedness.  
*Nemo, nobody, wants the voc. and the pl.*  
*Nepenthes, nom.*; an herb.  
*Nex, death, wants the voc.*;—*neces, nom., acc. pl.*  
*Nihil, or nihīlum, nom.*; -i, gen.; -um, acc.; -o, abl.; nothing.  
*Noctu, abl.*; by night.  
*Nuptui, dat.*; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; *marriage.*  
*Obex, nom.*; -icem, acc.; -ice, or -jice, abl.; a bolt;—*pl. obices, -jices.*  
*Objectum, acc.*; -u, abl.; an interposition;—*pl. objectus.*  
*Obtentui, dat.*; -u, abl.; a pretext.  
*Opis, gen.*; opem, acc.; ope, abl.; help;—*pl. entire.*  
*Oppositu, abl.*; an opposing;—*pl. oppositus.*  
*Opus, nom., acc.*; need.  
*Os, the mouth, wants the gen. pl.*  
*Panāces, nom.*; an herb.  
*Pax, peace, wants gen. pl.*  
*Peccātu, abl.*; sinning.  
*Pecūdia, gen.*; -i, dat.; -em, acc.; -e, abl.;—*pl. entire.*  
*Pelāge, nom., acc. pl. of pelāgus*; the sea.  
*Permīssu, abl.*; permission.  
*Piscātus, nom.*; -i, gen.; -um acc.; -u, abl.; a fishing.  
*Pix, pitch, wants gen. pl.*  
*Pondo, abl.*; in weight.  
*Preci, dat.*; -em, acc.; -e, abl.; prayer;—*pl. entire.*  
*Procōrem, acc.*; a peer;—*pl. entire.*  
*Proles, offspring, wants gen. pl.*  
*Relātu, abl.*; a relation.  
*Repetundārum, gen. pl.*; -ia, abl.; extortion.  
*Rogātu, abl.*; a request.  
*Rus, the country, wants gen., dat., and abl. pl.*  
*Satiās, nom.*; -ātem, acc.; -āte, abl.; satiety.  
*Secus, nom., acc.*; sex.  
*Situs, nom.*; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; situation;—*situs, nom. and acc. pl.*; -ibus, abl.  
*Situs, nom.*; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; rust;—*situs, acc. pl.*  
*Sobōles, offspring, wants gen. pl.*  
*Sol, the sun, wants gen. pl.*  
*Sordia, gen.*; -em, acc.; -e, abl.; filth;—*pl. sordēs, -ium, &c.*  
*Sponsis, gen.*; -e, abl.; of one's own accord.  
*Suppletæ, nom. pl.*; -as, acc.; supplies.  
*Tabum, nom.*; -i, gen.; -o, abl.; gore.  
*Tempe, nom., acc., voc. pl.*; a vale in Thessaly.  
*Thus, not used in the gen., dat., and abl. pl.*  
*Veprem, acc.*; -e, abl.; a brier;—*pl. entire.*  
*Verbēris, gen.*; -e, abl.; a stripe;—*pl. verbēra, -um, -ibus.*  
*Vesper, nom.*; -e or -i, abl.; the evening.  
*Vespēra, nom.*; -am, acc.; -ērā, abl.; the evening.  
*Vespētus, nom.*; -o, dat.; -um, acc.; -o, abl.; the evening.  
*Vicis, gen.*; -i, dat.; -em, acc.; -e, abl.; change;—*pl. entire, except gen.*  
*Virus, nom.*; -i, gen.; -us, acc.; -o, abl.; poison.  
*Vis, nom.*; vis, gen.; vim, acc.; vi, abl.; strength;—*pl. vires, -ium, &c.*  
*Viscus, nom.*; -ēris, gen.; -ēre, abl.; an internal organ.  
*Vocātu, abl.*; a calling;—*vocātus, acc. pl.*  
*Volūpe, or volup', nom., acc.*; pleasure.

To these may be added nouns of the fifth declension, which either want the plural, as most of them are abstract nouns, or have in that number only the nominative, accusative, and vocative. *Res* and *dies*, however, have the plural entire.

For the use of the vocative, also, of many words, no classical authority can be found.

## DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

§ 55. PROPER NAMES OF PERSONS strictly want the plural.

§ 56. PROPER NAMES OF PLACES are used in the singular or plural only ; as,

*Italia*, 'Italy;' *Athēnae*, 'Athens.'

§ 57. Most names of VIRTUES, VICES, HERBS, METALS, MINERALS, LIQUIDS, CORN, most ABSTRACT NOUNS, &c., want the plural ; as,

*Justitia*, 'justice;' *Inertia*, 'sloth;' *Apium*, 'parsley;' *Argentum*, 'silver;' *Aurum*, 'gold;' *Lac*, 'milk;' *Triticum*, 'wheat;' *Hordeum*, 'barley;' *Avēna*, 'oats;' *Juventus*, 'youth;' *Pueritia*, 'childhood;' &c.

§ 58. Masculines wanting the Plural.

*Aër*, *aëris*, the air.  
*Æther*, -*ëris*, the sky.  
*Cestus*, -*i*, the girdle of Venus.  
*Fim̄us*, -*i*, dung.  
*Hesp̄erus*, -*i*, the evening star.  
*Lamus*, -*i*, slime.  
*Mēridies*, -*iei*, mid-day.  
*Mundus*, -*i*, a woman's ornaments.  
*Muscus*, -*i*, moss.  
*Nēmo* -*īnis*, c. g. nobody.

*Pēnus*, -*i*, or *ūs*, d. g. all manner of provisions.  
*Pontus*, -*i*, the sea.  
*Pulvis*, -*ëris*, dust.  
*Sabulo*, -*ōnis*, gravel.  
*Sanguis*, -*īnis*, blood.  
*Sōpor*, -*ōris*, sleep.  
*Veternus*, -*i*, lethargy.  
*Viscus*, -*i*, bird-lime.

59. Feminines wanting the Plural.

*Argilla*, -*æ*, potter's earth.  
*Fāma*, -*æ*, fame.  
*Hūmus*, -*i*, the ground.  
*Lues*, -*is*, a plague.  
*Plebs*, *plēbis*, the common people.  
*Pūbes*, -*is*, the youth.  
*Quies*, -*ëtis*, rest.

*Sālus*, -*ūtis*, safety.  
*Sītis*, -*is*, thirst.  
*Sūpellex*, -*ctilis*, household furniture.  
*Tābes*, -*is*, a consumption.  
*Tellus*, -*ūris*, the earth.  
*Vesp̄era*, -*æ*, the evening.

§ 60. Neuters wanting the Plural.

*Album*, -*i*, an album.  
*Bālaustum*, -*i*, the flower of a pomegranate tree.  
*Barāthrum*, -*i*, a gulf.  
*Cœnum*, -*i*, mud.  
*Crōcum*, -*i*, saffron.  
*Dilūcūlum*, -*i*, the dawn.  
*Ebur*, -*ōris*, ivory.  
*Fel*, -*fellis*, gall.  
*Gēlu*, -*inv*, frost.  
*Glastum*, -*i*, wood.

{ *Glūtēn*, -*īnis*, or  
*Glūtīnum*, -*i*, glue.  
*Gypsum*, -*i*, white plaster.  
*Hēpar*, -*ātis*, the liver.  
*Hīlum*, -*i*, the black speck of a bean.  
*Jūbar*, -*āris*, a sun-beam.  
*Justitium*, -*i*, a law vacation.  
*Lardum*, -*i*, bacon.  
*Lētum*, -*i*, death.  
*Lūtum*, -*i*, clay.  
*Mācellum*, -*i*, the shambles.



Măně, *the morning.*  
Nectar, āris, *nectar.*  
Nihil, nil, nihflum, i, *nothing.*  
Nītrum, i, *nitre.*  
Omāsum, i, *fat tripe.*  
Opium, i, *opium.*  
Pelāgus, i, *the sea.*  
{ Pēnum, i, *or*  
{ Pēnus, ōris, *provisions.*  
Pīper, ēris, *pepper.*  
Prōlūbium, i, *a desire.*  
Sābūlum, i, *sand.*

Sāl, sālis, (*neut.*) *salt.*  
Sālum, i, *the sea.*  
Sēnium, i, *old age.*  
Sīnāpi, *inv. mustard.*  
Tābum, i, *gore.*  
Vēr, vōris, *spring.*  
Vēternum, i, *lethargy.*  
Virus, i, *poison.*  
Viscum, i, *birdlime.*  
Vitrum, i, *wood.*  
Zingībēr, ōris, *ginger.*

## § 61. Names of Games, Feasts, Books, &c. wanting the Singular.

Apollināres, ium, *games in honour of Apollo.*  
Bacchānālia, ium, or ōrum, *the feasts of Bacchus.*  
Bucōlica, ōrum, or ōn, *a book of pastorals.*  
Chāristia, ōrum, *love-feasts.*  
Diōnysia, *the feast of Bacchus.*  
Georgica, ōrum, or ōn, *a work on husbandry.*  
Hierosolyma, ōrum, *Jerusalem.*  
Lātina, *feasts of Jupiter Latialis.*

Olympia, *the Olympic games.*  
Orgia, *rites of Bacchus.*  
Pālilia, *a feast in honour of Pales.*  
Pārentālia, *solemnities at the funeral of a parent.*  
Pythia, *games in honour of Apollo.*  
Quinquātrūs, num, *and*  
Quinquātria, ōrum, & ium, *feasts in honour of Minerva.*  
Suōvētaurilia, ium, *a sacrifice of a swine, sheep, and ox.*  
Syracusē, ārum, *Syracuse.*

## § 62. Masculines wanting the Singular.

Antes, -ium, *fore-rank.*  
Cancelli, *lattices or windows, made with cross-bars, like a net; a rail or balustrade round any place; bounds or limits.*  
Cāni, *gray hairs.*  
Casses, -ium, *a hunter's net.*  
Cēlēres, -um, *the light-horse.*  
Codicilli, *writings.*  
Druidēs, -um, *the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.*  
Fasces, -ium, *a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.*  
Fasti, -ōrum, or fastus, -uum, *calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.*  
Fines, -ium, *the borders of a county, or a country.*  
Fōri, *the gangways of a ship; seats*

*in the circus; or the cells of a beehive.*  
Furfūres, -um, *scales in the head.*  
Infēri, *the gods below.*  
Laurices, *young rabbits.*  
Lēmūres, -um, *hobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.*  
Libēri, *children.*  
Luceres, -um, *a third part of the early Romans.*  
Majōres, -um, *ancestors.*  
Mānes, -ium, *spirits of the dead.*  
Minōres, -um, *successors.*  
Nātales, -ium, *parentage.*  
Pandectę, *pandects.*  
Postēri, *posterity.*  
Prōcēres, -um, *the nobles.*  
Pūgillāres, -ium, *writing-tables.*  
Sentēs, -im, *thorns.*  
Sūpēri, -ūm, & -ōrum, *the gods above.*

## § 63. Feminines wanting the singular.

Alpes, -ium, *the Alps.*  
Angustia, *difficulties.*  
Antia, *a forelock.*  
Apīna, *gangways.*  
Argūtia, *quarrels, witticisms.*

Bigę, *a chariot drawn by two horses.*  
Trigę, — *by three.*  
Quadrigę, — *by four.*  
Braccę, *breeches.*

Branchię, *the gills of a fish.*  
Charites, -um, *the three graces.*  
Clitellę, *panniers.*

Cunæ, a cradle.	Inferiæ, sacrifices to the Infernals.	Phalæra, trappings.
Décimæ, tithes.	Inaldie, snares.	Plægæ, nets.
Diræ, imprecations, the furies.	Kalendæ, Nônæ, Idus, -uum, names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.	Pleiades, -um, the seven stars.
Divitiæ, riches.	Lapidinæ, stone quarries.	Præstigæ, enchantments.
Dryades, -um, the nymphs of the woods.	Litræ, an epistle.	Primus, first fruits.
Excubiæ, watches.	Lactes, -ium, small entails.	Quisquiliæ, sweepings.
Exequiæ, funerals.	Mânubiæ, spoils taken in war.	Reliqiæ, a remainder.
Exuviæ, spoils.	Mine, threats.	Sælebæ, rugged places.
Faciæ, pleasant sayings.	Mînutiæ, little niceties.	Salinæ, salt-pits.
Facultates, -um, & -ium, one's goods and chattels.	Nugæ, trifles.	Scalæ, a ladder.
Feræ, holydays.	Nundinæ, a market.	Scatæbræ, a spring.
Fraces, -ium, the lees of oil.	Nuptiæ, a marriage.	Scopæ, a besom, a broom.
Gades, -ium, Cadiz.	Officiæ, cheats.	Tenebræ, darkness.
Gerræ, trifles.	Opère, workmen.	Thermæ, hot baths.
Grates, thanks.	Pariêtinæ, old walls.	Thermopylæ, straits of mount Cila.
Hyades, -um, the seven stars.	Partes, -ium, a party.	Tricæ, toys.
Induciæ, a truce.		Valvæ, folding doors.
Induviæ, clothes to put on.		Vergiliæ, the seven stars.
Ineptiæ, silly stories.		Vindicæ, a claim of liberty, a defence.

## § 64. Neuters wanting the Singular.

Acta, public acts, or records.	Mœnia, -ium, & -iûm, the walls of a city.
Adversaria, a memorandum book.	Mulûcia, garments finely wrought.
Æstiva, sc. castra, summer quarters.	Mûnia, -iûm, offices.
Arma, arms.	Orgia, the sacred rites of Bacchus.
Bellaria, -ûm, sweetmeats.	Ovilia, -ium, an inclosure where the people went to give their votes.
Bona, goods.	Palearia, -ium, the dewlap of a beast.
Brèvia, -ium, shelves.	Parapherna, all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.
Castra, a camp.	Parentalia, -ium, solemnities at the funeral of parents.
Chæristia, -ûm, a peace feast.	Philtra, love potions.
Cibaria, victuals.	Praebia, an amulet.
Cōmîtia, an assembly of the people to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials.	Præcordia, the bowels.
Crêpundia, children's baubles.	Principia, the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.
Cunabûla, a cradle, an origin.	Pythia, games in honour of Apollo.
Dictéria, scoffs, witticisms.	Rostra, a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.
Exta, the entrails.	Scrûta, old clothes.
Februa, -ûm, purifying sacrifices.	Sponsalia, -ium, espousals.
Flabra, blasts of wind.	Stativa, sc. castra, a standing camp.
Foria, muck.	Sœvetaurilia, -ium, a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.
Frâga, strawberries.	Talâria, -ium, winged shoes.
Hÿberna, sc. castra, winter quarters.	Tesqua, rough places.
Ilia, -ium, the entrails.	Tranatra, the seats where the rowers sit in ships.
Incunabûla, a cradle.	Utenalia, -ium, utensils.
Insecta, insects.	
Iusta, funeral rites.	
Lamenta, lamentations.	
Lautia, provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.	
Lustra, dens of wild beasts.	
Mægalia, -ium, cottages.	

§ 65. The following Plurals are sometimes found in the Singular.

Annāles, ium, *annals*.  
 Antæ, door-posts.  
 Argūtiae, *witticisms*.  
 Artus, um, *the joints*.  
 Bigæ, a chariot drawn by two horses.  
 Cassēs, ium, a hunter's net.  
 Cœlitēs, um, and um, the gods.  
 Cyclādēs, um, the Cycladian islands.  
 Dēclmæ, tithes.  
 Diræ, the Furies.  
 Dryādēs, um, the Dryads.  
 Epulæ, a banquet.  
 Eumēnidēs, um, the Furies.  
 Fācētiae, pleasant sayings.  
 Fidēs, ium, a stringed instrument.  
 Frāgæ, ōrum, strawberries.  
 Gēmini, twins.

Gēnæ, the cheeks.  
 Hābēnæ, reins.  
 Hyādēs, um, the Hyades.  
 Ineptiæ, silly wit.  
 Lātēbræ, lurking places.  
 Libēri, children.  
 Mājores, um, ancestors.  
 Mānēs, ium, the shades.  
 Māpālia, huts.  
 Minūtiae, little niceties.  
 Nāiādēs, um, fountain nymphs.  
 Nārēs, ium, the nostrils.  
 Nātēs, ium, the buttocks.  
 Oblivia, forgetfulness.  
 Offūciæ, cheats.  
 Optīmātes, um, nobles.  
 Pālēaria, ium, the dewlap of a beast.  
 Pascua, pastures.  
 Pēnātēs, ium, household gods.

Phālēræ, trappings.  
 Plērique, many.  
 Prōcēres, um, nobles.  
 Pūgillāria, ium, or  
 Pūgillāres, ium, a note-book.  
 Quādrigæ, a chariot drawn by four horses.  
 Quiritēs, um, and ium, citizens of Rome.  
 Rēliquiæ, a remainder.  
 Sālēbræ, rugged places.  
 Scālæ, a ladder.  
 Sentēs, ium, thorns.  
 Singuli, one by one.  
 Spolia, spoils.  
 Supēri, the gods above.  
 Transtra, seats for the rowers in a ship.  
 Utensilia, ium, utensils.  
 Vēpræ, um, brambles.

§ 66. The following Singulars are sometimes found in the Plural.

Acōnītum, wolf's-bane.  
 Aēr, ōris, the air.  
 Œs, ōris, brass, money.  
 Œvum, an age.  
 Allium, garlic.  
 Amicitia, friendship.  
 Avēna, oats.  
 Balsāmum, balsam.  
 Cālor, ōris, heat.  
 Cāro, carnis, flesh.  
 Cēra, wax.  
 Cīcūta, hemlock.  
 Contāgium, a contagion.  
 Crōcus, saffron.  
 Cruor, ōris, blood.  
 Cūtis, the skin.  
 Ebur, ōris, ivory.  
 Electrum, amber.  
 Fār, faris, corn.  
 Fervor, ōris, heat.  
 Fūga, flight.

Fūrōr, ōris, madness.  
 Fūmus, smoke.  
 Glōria, glory.  
 Hordeum, barley.  
 Irā, anger.  
 Jūs, juris, justice, law.  
 Lētītia, joy.  
 Languor, ōris, faintness.  
 Lātēx, ūcis, liquor, water.  
 Lignum, wood, a log.  
 Līquor, ōris, liquor.  
 Lux, lūcis, light.  
 Marmor, ōris, marble.  
 Mēl, mellis, honey.  
 Mors, mortis, death.  
 Munditia, neatness.  
 Nēquitia, wickedness.  
 Nex, nēcis, cruel death.  
 Oblivio, ōnis, forgetfulness.  
 Pālæa, chaff.

Pax, pācis, peace.  
 Pix, pīcis, pitch.  
 Pulvis, ōris, dust.  
 Purpura, purple.  
 Quies, ētis, rest.  
 Rōs, rōris, dew.  
 Rūbor, ōris, redness.  
 Sāl, sālis, (masc.) salt.  
 Sōl, sōlis, the sun, a day.  
 Sōpor, ōris, sleep.  
 Spūma, foam.  
 Sulphur, ūris, sulphur.  
 Tēpor, ōris, heat.  
 Terror, ōris, terror.  
 Thymum, thyme.  
 Tribulus, a thistle.  
 Tristitia, sadness.  
 Verbena, vervain.  
 Vigor, ōris, strength.  
 Vinum, wine.

§ 67. The following differ somewhat in meaning with respect to the number in which they are used.

*Ædes*, is, a temple.  
*Ædes*, ium, a house.  
*Auxilium*, aid.  
*Auxilia*, auxiliary troops.  
*Bōnum*, a good thing.  
*Bōna*, property.  
*Carcer*, a prison.  
*Carcēres*, a goal.  
*Castrum*, a castle.  
*Castra*, a camp.  
*Cōmītium*, a part of the Roman forum.  
*Cōmītia*, an assembly for election.  
*Cūpēdia*, æ, delicacy.  
*Cūpēdia*, ārum, and  
*Cūpēdia*, ōrum, dainties.  
*Cūpia*, plenty  
*Cūpiæ*, forces.  
*Fācultas*, ability.

*Fāciltātes*, wealth.  
*Fāla*, a trick.  
*Fālæ*, scaffolding.  
*Fastūs*, ūs, pride.  
*Fastūs*, uum, and  
*Fasti*, ōrum, a calendar.  
*Finis*, an end.  
*Finēs*, boundaries.  
*Fortūna*, Fortune.  
*Fortūnæ*, luck, wealth.  
*Furfur*, bran.  
*Furfūres*, dandruff.  
*Litēra*, a letter of the alphabet.  
*Litēra*, an epistle.  
*Lustrum*, a space of five years.  
*Lustra*, dens of wild beasts.  
*Mōs*, custom.  
*Mōres*, manners.

*Opis*, gen. help.  
*Opes*, um, power, wealth.  
*Opēra*, labour.  
*Opēre*, workmen.  
*Plāga*, a climate.  
*Plāgæ*, nets, toils.  
*Princīpium*, a beginning.  
*Princīpia*, the general's situation in a camp.  
*Rostrum*, a beak.  
*Rostra*, the elevated place at Rome from which orators spoke.  
*Rūs*, the country.  
*Rūra*, fields.  
*Sal*, salt.  
*Sāles*, witticisms.  
*Tōrus*, a bed, a tuft, a cord.  
*Tōri*, brawny muscles.

## § 68. Plurals sometimes used for the Singular.

*Alta*, the sea.  
*Anīmi*, courage.  
*Auræ*, the air.  
*Cārīnæ*, a keel.  
*Cervicæ*, the neck.  
*Colla*, the neck.  
*Cōmæ*, the hair.  
*Connubia*, marriage.  
*Corda*, the heart.  
*Corpōra*, a body.  
*Crēpusculā*, twilight.  
*Currus*, a chariot.  
*Exilia*, banishment.  
*Frigōra*, cold.  
*Gaudia*, joy.  
*Grāmīna*, grass.

*Gutturā*, the throat.  
*Hymēnæi*, marriage.  
*Jējūnia*, fasting.  
*Ignes*, love.  
*Inguīna*, the groin.  
*Jūbæ*, a mane.  
*Limīna*, a threshold.  
*Littōra*, a shore.  
*Mensæ*, a service or course of dishes.  
*Nænīæ*, a funeral dirge.  
*Nūmīna*, the divinity.  
*Odia*, hatred.  
*Ora*, the mouth, the countenance.  
*Oræ*, confines.

*Ortūs*, a rising, the east.  
*Otia*, ease, leisure.  
*Pectōra*, the breast.  
*Rictūs*, the jaws.  
*Rūbōra*, oak, strength.  
*Silēntia*, silence.  
*Sīnūs*, the breast of a Roman garment.  
*Tædæ*, a torch.  
*Tempōra*, time.  
*Thālāmi*, marriage, or marriage-bed.  
*Tōri*, a bed, a couch.  
*Vīæ*, a journey.  
*Vultūs*, the countenance.  
*Thūra*, frankincense.

## § 69. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbos*, and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri* and *laurūs*, a laurel tree; *sēquester*, -tri, or -tris, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mātēria*, -æ or *matereis*, -iēi, matter; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or *plebes*, -is, -ēi, or contracted, *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as *tōnitrus*, -ūs, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pēnus*, -i, and -ūs, m. or f. or *penus*, -ōris, neut. all kind of provisions. 7. In termination, gender and declension; as, *æther*, -ēris, masc. and *æthra*, -æ, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is or -idis, a tiger; to which may be added nouns which have the same signification

in different numbers ; as, *Fidēna*, -æ ; or *Fidēnæ*, -ārum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations ; as, *menda*, -æ ; and *mendum*, -i, a fault ; *cassis*, -idis ; and *cassida*, -æ, a helmet.

The following list contains most of the *Redundant Nouns* of the above mentioned classes.

*Abusio*, and -us, -ūs, an abuse.  
*Acinus*, and -um, a grape-stone.  
*Adagium*, and -io, a proverb.  
*Admonitio*, and -us, -us, an advising.  
*Æthra*, and *Æther*, the clear sky.  
*Affectio*, and -us, -ūs, affection.  
*Agamemno*, and -on, Agamemnon.  
*Alabaster*, -tri, and -trum, an alabaster box.  
*Alcinus*, and -um, a grape-stone.  
*Alimonia*, and -um, aliment.  
*Alluvio*, and -es, a flood.  
*Alvearium*, and -āre, a bee-hive.  
*Amarācus*, and -um, sweet marjoram.  
*Ancile*, and -ium, an oval shield.  
*Anfractum*, and -us, -ūs, a winding.  
*Angiportum*, and -us, -ūs, a narrow way.  
*Antidōtus*, and -um, an antidote.  
*Aplūre*, and -um, the flag, colours.  
*Aranea*, and -us, a spider.  
*Arar*, and -āria, the river Arar.  
*Arbor*, and -os, a tree.  
*Architectus*, and -on, an architect.  
*Attagēna*, and -gen, a woodcock.  
*Avaritia*, and -ies, avarice.  
*Augmentum*, and -men, increase.  
*Baccar*, and -āria, a kind of herb.  
*Baculus*, and -um, a staff.  
*Balteus*, and -um, a belt.  
*Barbaria*, and -ies, barbarism.  
*Barbitus*, and -on, a harp.  
*Batillus*, and -um, a fire shovel.  
*Blanditia*, and -ies, flattery.  
*Buccina*, and -um, a trumpet.  
*Bura*, and -ia, a plough-tail.  
*Buxus*, and -um, the box-tree.  
*Calamister*, -tri, and -trum, a crimping-pin.  
*Callus*, and -um, hardness of the skin.  
*Cancer*, -eri, or -ēris, a crab.  
*Canitia*, and -ies, hoariness.  
*Capus*, and *Capo*, a capon.  
*Cassida*, and *Cassis*, a helmet.  
*Catinus*, and -um, a platter.  
*Cepa*, and -e, an onion.  
*Chirogrāphus*, and -um, a hand-writing.  
*Cingula*, -us, and -um, a girdle.  
*Clypeus*, and -um, a shield.  
*Cochlearium*, -ar, and -āre, a spoon.  
*Colluvio*, and -ies, filth.  
*Commentarius*, and -um, a journal.  
*Compāges*, and -o, a joining.  
*Conātum*, and -us, -ūs, an attempt.

*Concinnitas*, and -tudo, neatness.  
*Conger* and -grus, a large eel.  
*Consortium*, and -io, partnership.  
*Contagium*, -io, and -es, contact.  
*Cornus*, -i, or -ūs, a cornel-tree.  
*Costus*, and -um, a kind of shrub.  
*Crocus*, and -um, saffron.  
*Crystallus*, and -um, crystal.  
*Cubitus*, and -um, a cubit.  
*Cupiditas*, and -pido, desire.  
*Cupressus*, -i, or -ūs, a cypress-tree.  
*Culeus*, and -um, a leathern bag.  
*Cytisus*, and -um, the shrub trefoil.  
*Delicia*, and -um, a delight.  
*Delphinus*, and *Delphin*, a dolphin.  
*Desidia*, and -es, sloth.  
*Dictamnus*, and -um, dittany.  
*Diluvium*, and -ies, a deluge.  
*Domus*, -i, or -ūs, a house.  
*Dorsus*, and -um, the back.  
*Duritia*, and -ies, hardness.  
*Ebēnus*, and -um, ebony.  
*Effigia*, and -ies, an image.  
*Elegeia*, and -us, an elegy.  
*Elephantus*, and -phas, an elephant.  
*Essēda*, and -um, a chariot.  
*Evander*, -dri, and -drus, Evander.  
*Eventum*, and -us, -ūs, an event.  
*Exemplar*, and -āre, a copy.  
*Ficus*, -i, or -ūs, a fig-tree.  
*Fimur*, and -um, dung.  
*Fretum*, and -us, -ūs, a strait.  
*Fulgetra*, and -um, lightning.  
*Galērus*, and -um, a hat.  
*Ganea*, and -um, a subterraneous room.  
*Gibba*, -us, and *er*, -ēri, a bunch.  
*Glomus*, -i, or -ēris, a ball of thread.  
*Glutinum*, and -ten, glue.  
*Gobius*, and -io, a gudgeon.  
*Gruis*, and *Grus*, a crane.  
*Hebdomāda*, and -mas, a week.  
*Hellebōrus*, and -um, hellebore.  
*Honor*, and -os, honour.  
*Hysōpus*, and -um, hyssop.  
*Illos*, and -on, Troy.  
*Incestum*, and -us, -ūs, incest.  
*Intūbus*, and -um, endive.  
*Jugulus*, and -um, the throat.  
*Juventa*, -us, and -as, youth.  
*Labor*, and -os, labour.  
*Lacerta*, and -us, a lizard.  
*Laurus*, -i, or -us, a laurel.

Lepor, and -os, wit.	Requies, -ētis, or -ēi, rest.
Libraria, and -um, a book-case.	Rete, and -is, a net.
Ligur, and -us, -ūris, a Ligurian.	Reticūlus, and -um, a small net.
Lupinus, and -um, a lupine.	Rictum, and -us, -ūs, the mouth.
Luxuria, and -ies, luxury.	Ruscus, and -um, butcher's broom.
Mæander, -dri, and -drus, Mæander.	Sævitia, and -ies, cruelty.
Materia, and -ies, materials.	Sagus, and -um, a soldier's cloak.
Medimnus, and -um, a measure.	Sanguis, and -guen, blood.
Menda, and -um, a fault.	Satrapes, and Satraps, a satrap.
Milliarium, and -āre, a mile.	Scabritia, and -ies, roughness.
Modius, and -um, a measure.	Scobis, and Scobs, sawdust.
Mollitia, and -ies, softness.	Scorpius, and -io, a scorpion.
Momentum, and -men, motion.	Scrobis, and Scrobs, a ditch.
Monitum, and -us, an admonition.	Segmentum, and -men, a piece.
Mugil, and -ilis, a mullet.	Segnitia, and -ies, sloth.
Mulciber, -tri, or -tris, Vulcan.	Senecta, and -us, old age.
Mulctra, and -um, a milk-pail.	Sensum, and -us, -ūs, sense.
Munditia, and -ies, neatness.	Seps and sepes, a hedge.
Muria, and -ies, brine or pickle.	Sequester, -tri, or -tris, an umpire.
Myrtus, -i, or -ūs, a myrtle.	Sesāma, and -um, sesame.
Nardus, and -um, spikenard.	Sibflus, and -um, a hissing.
Nasus, and -um, the nose.	Sināpi, and -is, mustard.
Necessitas, and -ūdo, necessity.	Sinus, and -um, a milk-pail.
Nequitia, and -ies, wickedness.	Sparus, and -um, a spear.
Notitia, and -ies, knowledge.	Spurcitia, and -ies, filthiness.
Oblivium, and -io, forgetfulness.	Squalitudo, and Squalor, filthiness.
Obsidium, and -io, a siege.	Stramentum, and -men, straw.
Œdīpus, -i, or -ōdis, Œdīpus.	Suffimentum, and -men, a perfume.
Orpheus, -ei, or -eos, Orpheus.	Suggestus, and -um, a pulpit.
Palātus, and -um, the palate.	Suppārus, and -um, a veil.
Palumba, -es, and -us, -ūs, a pigeon.	Supplicium, and -icatio, a supplication.
Papȳrus, and -um, papyrus.	Tabus, and -um, gore.
Paupertas, and -ies, poverty.	Tapētum, -ēte, and -es, tapestry.
Pavus, and -o, a peacock.	Teneritas, and -tūdo, softness.
Ponus, -ōris, or -ūs, and Penum, provisions.	Tiāra, and -as, a turban.
Peplus, and -um, a veil.	Tignus, and -um, a plank.
Perseus, -ei, or -eos, Perseus.	Tigris, -is, or -idis, a tiger.
Pileus, and -um, a hat.	Titānus, and Titan, Tītan.
Pinus, -i, or -ūs, a pine-tree.	Tonitruum, and -trus, thunder.
Pistrina, and -um, a bake-house.	Torāle, and -al, a bed covering.
Planitia, and -ies, a plain.	Trabes, and Trabs, a beam.
Plato, and -on, Plato.	Tribula, and -um, a threshing machine.
Plebs, and Plebes, -ei, the common people.	Vespēra, -pērus, and -per, the evening.
Postulātum, and -io, a request.	Vetemus, and -um, a lethargy.
Præsepēs, -is, and -e, a stable.	Vinaceus, and -um, a grape-stone.
Prætextum, and -us, -ūs, a pretext.	Viscus, and -um, bird-lime.
Prosapia, and -ies, lineage.	Vulgus, masc. and neut, the common people.
Rapa, and -um, a turnip.	

To these may be added some other verbals in *us* and *io*, and Greek nouns in *o* and *on*; as, *Dio* and *Dion*; also some Greek nouns in *es* and *e*, which have Latin forms in *a*; as, *Atrides* and *Atrida*.

Some proper names of places also are redundant in number; as, *Argos* and *Argi*; *Cuma* and *Cumæ*; *Fidēna* and *Fidēna*; *Thebe* and *Thebæ*.

The different forms of most words in the above list are not equally common, and some are rarely used, or only in particular cases.

*Note.* The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant; thus, *vāsa, -ōrum*, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular and retained the plural; and so of others.

## DIVISION OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO THEIR SIGNIFICATION AND DERIVATION.

§ 70. The name of a particular person or thing individually is called a *proper* name; as,

All christian and surnames of men, as, *Paulus*, *Cicero*, Charles, Frederic, &c.; the names of cities, mountains, and rivers; as, London, Andes, Missouri. But a name which belongs to several things of one kind is called a *common* name; as, *homo*, 'a man;' *rex*, 'a king;' *fluvius*, 'a river.'

The Roman names of men generally consisted of three parts, as, *Marcus*, *Tullius*, *Cicero*: 1. *Marcus*, the *prænomen*, which answered to the English christian name. 2. *Tullius*, the *nomen*, distinguishing the *gens*, which included many families. 3. *Cicero*, the *cognomen*, which denoted the *familia*. Sometimes the family was subdivided, and distinguished by a fourth name called the *agnomen*; thus, *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africānus*, *Lucius Cornelius Scipio Asiaticus*. If *Cicero* had had only one daughter, she would have been called *Tullia*; if two, *Tullia major* and *minor*; if, more, *Tullia prima*, *secunda*, &c. If a person was adopted by another, he took his name with an *agnomen*, formed from his original *nomen*; thus *Octavius*, when adopted by *Caius Julius Cæsar*, took the name of *Caius Julius Cæsar Octaviānus*. Freedmen took the *prænomen* and *nomen* of their masters, with a new *cognomen*. Sometimes the order of the names was changed; and under the Emperors the *prænomen* was put last; thus, *L. Annæus Seneca* and *L. Annæus Mela* were two brothers.

§ 71. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *collective* noun; as, *pöpulus*, a people, *exercitus*, an army.

§ 72. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *patronymic* noun; as,

*Prümides*, the son of *Priamus*; *Ætias*, the daughter of *Æetes*; *Nérine*, the daughter of *Nereus*. *Patronymics* are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Ædcides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of *Æacus*; *Römülda*, the Romans, from their first king *Romulus*.

*Patronymic* names of men end in *des*; of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of

the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third ; as, *Priamides*, -*dæ*, &c. ; pl. -*dæ*, *dârum*, &c. ; *Nérine*, -*es* ; *Tyndâris*, -*idis* or -*idos* ; *Æétias*, -*adis*, &c.

§ 73. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *patrial* or *gentile* noun ; as,

*Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy ; *Troas*, -*adis*, a woman born at Troy. *Sicûlus*, -*i*, a Sicilian man ; *Sicêlis*, -*idis*, a Sicilian woman ; so, *Mâcêdo*, -*onis*, *Arpinas*, -*âlis*, a man born in Macedonia, at Arpinum ; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood ; as, *Rômânus*, *Athêniciensis*, &c.

§ 74. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *abstract* ; as,

*Iustitia*, justice ; *bonitas*, goodness ; *dulcêdo*, sweetness ; from *justus*, just ; *bonus*, good ; *dulcis*, sweet.

The adjectives from which these abstracts come are called CONCRETES ; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

§ 75. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *diminutive* ; as,

*Lîbellus*, a little book ; *chartûla*, a little paper ; *opusculum*, a little work ; *corcûlum*, a little heart ; *reticûlum*, a small net ; *scâbellum*, a small form ; *lîpillus*, a little stone ; *cukellus*, a little knife ; *pâgella*, a little page : from *lîber*, *charia*, *opus*, *cor*, *rete*, *scamnum*, *lîpis*, *culler*, *pâgina*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive ; as, from *puer*, *puerulus*, *puellus*, *puellulus* ; from *cista*, *cistûla*, *cistelli*, *cistellûla* ; from *homo*, *homuncio*, *homunculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum*, and are generally of the same gender with their primitives.

When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an AMPLIFICATIVE, and ends in *o* ; as, *câpîto*, -*onis*, having a large head : so, *nâso*, *lûbeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

§ 76. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *verbal* noun ; as,

*Amor*, love ; *doctrîna*, learning ; from *âmo*, and *dûceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura* ; as, *lectio*, a lesson ; *âmâtor*, a lover ; *luctus*, grief ; *creâtûra*, a creature.



## ADJECTIVE.

§ 77. An Adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality; as, *durus*, *hard*; *mollis*, *soft*.\*

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.†

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension:

<i>Acer</i> , sharp.	<i>Cēler</i> , swift.	<i>Pedester</i> , on foot.
<i>Alācer</i> , cheerful.	<i>Equester</i> , belonging to a horse.	<i>Sālūber</i> , wholesome.
<i>Campester</i> , belonging to a plain.	<i>Pāluster</i> , marshy.	<i>Sylvester</i> , woody.
<i>Cēlēber</i> , famous.		<i>Vōlūcer</i> , swift.

## Rule for the Gender of Adjectives.

In adjectives of three terminations, the first is masc., the second fem., and the third neut. In those of two terminations, the first is masc. and fem., and the second neut. Adjectives of one termination are of all genders.

## § 78. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

*Bōnus*, masc. *bona*, fem. *bonum*, neut. *good*.

## Singular.

## Plural.

N. bōn-us,	-a,	-um,	N. bōn-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. bōn-i,	-æ,	-i,	G. bon-ōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum,
D. bōn-o,	-æ,	-o,	D. bon-is,	-is,	-is,
A. bōn-um,	-am,	-um,	A. bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V. bōn-e,	-a,	-um,	V. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
A. bōn-o,	-ā,	-o.	A. bon-is,	-is,	-is.

\* We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

† An adjective properly has neither genders, numbers, nor cases; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Tēner, tenēra, tenērum, *tender*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. tēn-er,	-ēra,	-ērum,	N. ten-ēri,	-ērā,	-ēra,
G. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēri,	G. ten-erōrum,	-erārum,	-erōrum,
D. ten-ēro,	-ēræ,	-ēro,	D. ten-ēris,	-ēris,	-ēris,
A. ten-ērum,	-ēram,	-ērum,	A. ten-ēros,	-ēras,	-ēra,
V. ten-er,	-ēra,	-ērum,	V. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēra,
A. ten-ēro,	-ērā,	-ēro.	A. ten-ēris,	-ēris,	-ēris.

In like manner decline,

Asper, <i>rough</i> .	Gibber, <i>crook-backed</i> .	Miser, <i>wretched</i> .
Cæter, ( <i>hardly used</i> ) the rest.	Lacer, <i>torn</i> .	Prosper, <i>prosperous</i> .
	Liber, <i>free</i> .	

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *lāniger*, bearing wool; *öpifer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *sätur*, *sätura*, *sätürum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *äter*, *atra*, *atrum*, black; gen. *atri*, *atræ*, *atri*; dat. *atro*, *atræ*, *atro*, &c. So,

<i>Æger</i> , <i>sick</i> .	<i>Mācer</i> , <i>lean</i> .	<i>Sācer</i> , <i>sacred</i> .
<i>Crēber</i> , <i>frequent</i> .	<i>Niger</i> , <i>black</i> .	<i>Scāber</i> , <i>rough</i> .
<i>Glāber</i> , <i>smooth</i> .	<i>Pīger</i> , <i>slow</i> .	<i>Tēter</i> , <i>ugly</i> .
<i>Intēger</i> , <i>entire</i> .	<i>Pulcher</i> , <i>fair</i> .	<i>Vāfer</i> , <i>crafty</i> .
<i>Lūdīcer</i> , <i>ludicrous</i> .	<i>Rūber</i> , <i>red</i> .	

Dexter, *right*, has -*tra*, -*trum*, or -*tēra*, -*tērum*.

§ 79. Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders; in the other cases, like *bonus* and *tener*.

Unus, -a, -um; gen. unius, dat. uni, one.	Alter, altērius, one of two, the other.
Alius, -ius, one of many, another.	Uter, utrius, either, whether of the two.
Nullus, nullius, none.	Neuter, -trius, neither.
Solus, -ius, alone.	Uterque, utriusque, both.
Tōtus, -ius, whole.	Uterlibet, utriuslibet, } which of the two
Ullus, -ius, any.	Utervis, -triusvis, } you please.

Alterūter, *the one or the other*, alterutrius, alterutri, and sometimes alterius utrius altēri utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *tōtus*, are called *partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*.

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedile*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say, *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir*, or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *femina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

\* *Tōtus*, so great, is regularly declined.

## § 80. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

*Felix*, masc. fem. and neut.; *happy*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. <i>felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,	N. <i>felices</i> ,	<i>felices</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
G. <i>felicis</i> ,	<i>felicis</i> ,	<i>felicis</i> ,	G. <i>feliciū</i> ,	<i>feliciū</i> ,	<i>feliciū</i> ,
D. <i>felici</i> ,	<i>felici</i> ,	<i>felici</i> ,	D. <i>felicibus</i> ,	<i>felicibus</i> ,	<i>felicibus</i> ,
A. <i>felicem</i> ,	<i>felicem</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,	A. <i>felices</i> ,	<i>felices</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
V. <i>felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,	V. <i>felices</i> ,	<i>felices</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
A. <i>felice</i> , or <i>felici</i> ,	} <i>in all the genders.</i>		A. <i>felicibus</i> ,	<i>felicibus</i> ,	<i>felicibus</i> .

*Præsens*, masc. fem. and neut.; *present*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. <i>præ-sens</i> ,	<i>-sens</i> ,	<i>-sens</i> ,	N. <i>præ-sentes</i> ,	<i>-sentes</i> ,	<i>-sentia</i> ,
G. <i>præ-sentis</i> ,	<i>-sentis</i> ,	<i>-sentis</i> ,	G. <i>præ-sentium</i> ,	<i>-sentium</i> ,	<i>-sentium</i> ,
D. <i>præ-senti</i> ,	<i>-senti</i> ,	<i>-senti</i> ,	D. <i>præ-sentibus</i> ,	<i>-sentibus</i> ,	<i>-sentibus</i> ,
A. <i>præ-sentem</i> ,	<i>-sentem</i> ,	<i>-sens</i> ,	A. <i>præ-sentes</i> ,	<i>-sentes</i> ,	<i>-sentia</i> ,
V. <i>præ-sens</i> ,	<i>-sens</i> ,	<i>-sens</i> ,	V. <i>præ-sentes</i> ,	<i>-sentes</i> ,	<i>-sentia</i> ,
A. <i>præ-sente</i> , or <i>senti</i> ,	} <i>in all the genders.</i>		A. <i>præ-sentibus</i> ,	<i>-sentibus</i> ,	<i>-sentibus</i> .

In like manner decline,

<i>Amens</i> , -tis, <i>mad</i> .	<i>Fallax</i> , <i>deceitful</i> .	<i>Rēcens</i> , <i>fresh</i> .
<i>Atrox</i> , -ūcis, <i>cruel</i> .	<i>Fērax</i> , <i>fertile</i> .	<i>Rēpens</i> , <i>sudden</i> .
<i>Audax</i> , -ācis, & -ens, -tis, <i>bold</i> .	<i>Fērox</i> , <i>fierce</i> .	<i>Sāgax</i> , -ācis, <i>sagacious</i> .
<i>Blix</i> , -īcis, <i>woven with a double thread</i> .	<i>Frēquens</i> , <i>frequent</i> .	<i>Sālax</i> , -ācis, <i>lustful</i> .
<i>Cāpax</i> , <i>capacious</i> .	<i>Ingens</i> , <i>huge</i> .	<i>Sāpiens</i> , <i>wise</i> .
<i>Cīcur</i> , -ūris, <i>tame</i> .	<i>Iners</i> , -tis, <i>sluggish</i> .	<i>Sōlers</i> , <i>shrewd</i> .
<i>Clēmens</i> , -tis, <i>merciful</i> .	<i>Insons</i> , <i>guiltless</i> .	<i>Sons</i> , <i>guilty</i> .
<i>Contūmax</i> , <i>stubborn</i> .	<i>Mendax</i> , <i>lying</i> .	<i>Tēnax</i> , <i>tenacious</i> .
<i>Dēmens</i> , <i>mad</i> .	<i>Mordax</i> , <i>biting, satirical</i> .	<i>Trux</i> , -ūcis, <i>cruel</i> .
<i>Edax</i> , <i>gluttonous</i> .	<i>Pernix</i> , -īcis, <i>swift</i> .	<i>Uber</i> , -ēris, <i>fertile</i> .
<i>Efficax</i> , <i>effectual</i> .	<i>Pervicax</i> , <i>wilful</i> .	<i>Vehēmens</i> , <i>vehement</i> .
<i>Elēgans</i> , <i>handsome</i> .	<i>Pētūlans</i> , <i>froward, saucy</i> .	<i>Vēlox</i> , -ūcis, <i>swift</i> .
	<i>Pregnans</i> , <i>with child</i> .	<i>Vōrax</i> , <i>devouring</i> .

*Mitis*, masc. and fem.; *mite*, neut.; *meek*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. <i>mitis</i> ,	<i>mitis</i> ,	<i>mite</i> ,	N. <i>mites</i> ,	<i>mites</i> ,	<i>mitia</i> ,
G. <i>mitis</i> ,	<i>mitis</i> ,	<i>mitis</i> ,	G. <i>mitium</i> ,	<i>mitium</i> ,	<i>mitium</i> ,
D. <i>miti</i> ,	<i>miti</i> ,	<i>miti</i> ,	D. <i>mitibus</i> ,	<i>mitibus</i> ,	<i>mitibus</i> ,
A. <i>mitem</i> ,	<i>mitem</i> ,	<i>mite</i> ,	A. <i>mites</i> ,	<i>mites</i> ,	<i>mitia</i> ,
V. <i>mitis</i> ,	<i>mitis</i> ,	<i>mite</i> ,	V. <i>mites</i> ,	<i>mites</i> ,	<i>mitia</i> ,
A. <i>miti</i> ,	<i>miti</i> ,	<i>miti</i> .	A. <i>mitibus</i> ,	<i>mitibus</i> ,	<i>mitibus</i> .

*Acer* or *acris*, masc. *acris*, fem. *acre*, neut. *sharp*.

*Singular.*

N. ā-cer or acris,	acris,	acre,
G. a-cris,	a-cris,	a-cris,
D. a-cri,	a-cri,	a-cri,
A. a-crem,	a-crem,	a-cre,
V. a-cer or acris,	a-cris,	a-cre,
A. a-cri,	a-cri,	a-cri.

*Plural.*

N. a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
G. a-crium,	a-crium,	a-crium,
D. a-cribus,	a-cribus,	a-cribus,
A. a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
V. a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
A. a-cribus,	a-cribus,	a-cribus.

In like manner *ālācer*, or *alacris*, *cēler* or *celēris*. So also, *acer*, *campester*, *celeber*, *equester*, *paluster*, *pedester*, *saluber*, *sylvester*, *volucer*, which have two terminations in the nom. and voc. sing. masculine.

RULES.

§ 81. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

§ 82. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following have *e* in the Ablative singular, and *um* in the Gen. plur. They are scarcely ever used in the Neuter singular, and never in the Neuter plural. *Ales*, *itis*, 'winged,' 'swift'; *Bipes*, *edis*, 'two-footed'; *Colebs*, *ibis*, 'unmarried'; *Compos*, *otis*, 'having obtained one's desire'; *Discolor*, *ōris*, 'of various colours'; *Hospes*, *itis*, 'hospitable'; *Impos*, *ōtis*, 'without power'; *Impubes*, *ēris*, 'under age'; *Juvenis*, *is*, 'young'; *Pauper*, *ēris*, 'poor'; *Puber* or *Pubes*, *ēris*, 'full grown'; *Redux*, *ūcis*, 'returning'; *Senex*, *senis*, 'old'; *Sospes*, *itis*, 'safe'; *Superstes*, *itis*, 'surviving'; *Tricuspis*, *idis*, 'three-forked'; (*tricuspidē*, *telo*, Ovid); *Tripes*, *edis*, 'three-footed'; *Vigil*, *itis*, 'watchful.' Also compounds in *CEPS*, *FEX*, *CORPOR*, and *GENER*; as, *Bicorpor*, *ōris*, 'two-bodied'; *Tricorpor*, *ōris*, 'three-bodied'; though *Artifex*, *icis*, 'artificial'; *Degēner*, *ēris*, 'degenerate'; *Particeps*, *ipis*, 'partaking of'; *Princeps*, *ipis*, 'chief'; have also *i* in the Abl.

Exc. 2. The following have *e* or *i* in the Abl. sing. and *um* in the Gen. plur. *Dives*, *itis*, 'rich'; *Inops*, *ōpis*, 'needy'; *Quadrūplex*, *icis*, 'four-fold.'

Exc. 3. *Concors*, *dis*, 'agreeing'; *Consors*, *tis*, 'sharing'; *Exsors*, *tis*, 'given by choice'; *Supplex*, *icis*, 'suppliant'; have *e* or *i* in the Abl. and *ia*, *ium*, in the Nom. and Gen. pl. *Locuples*, *itis*, 'wealthy,' has *e* or *i*, and *ia*, *ium* or *um*. *Sons*, *tis*, 'guilty,' and *Insons*, *tis*, 'guiltless,' have *e* or *i*, and Gen. plur. *um*, or *um*. *Memor*, *ōris*, 'mindful,' has *i* and *um*. *Uber*, *ēris*, 'fruitful,' *i*, *a*, and *um*. *Vetus*, *ēris*, 'old,' has *i* or *e*, and *a*, and *um*. *Par*, *pāris*, 'equal,' has only *i* in the Abl. sing. and in plur. *ia*, *ium*; but its compounds have *e* or *i*.

Exc. 4. The following have the Abl. in *e* or *i*, and want the Neut. plur. *Concolor*, *ōris*, 'of the same colour'; *Versicolor*, *ōris*, 'parti-coloured'; *Deses*, *idis*, 'slothful'; *Hebes*, *itis*, 'blunt,' 'dull'; *Perpes*, *itis*, 'perpetual'; *Præpes*, *itis*, 'swift'; *Reces*, *idis*, 'idle'; *Teres*, *ētis*, 'round.' Of these, *Præpes* only is found in the Gen. plur.

Exc. 5. *Esopes*, 'hopeless,' and *Potis*, *is*, *e*, 'able,' are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has sometimes *potis* in the neut.

The Neuter *Plus*, 'more,' is thus declined :

Singular.		Plural.		
N. Plus,		N. Plures,	-es,	-a or is,
G. Pluris,		G. Plur-um,	-ium,	-ium,
D. _____		D. Pluribus,	-ibus,	-ibus,
A. Plus,		A. Plur-es,	-es,	-a or is,
V. _____		V. _____	_____	_____
A. Plure or i.		A. Pluribus,	-ibus,	-ibus.

## REMARKS.

§ 83. 1. Comparatives and adjectives in *us*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victricī ferro*, not *victrice*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victor*, victorious, for the masc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix* in the plural has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrices*, *victricia*; so, *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also neuter in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frænum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jûgum*, *linus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivis*, -e, and *declivus*, -a, -um, steep; *imbécillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanimus*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnánimus*, *flexánimus*, *effrénus*, *levisomnus*; not *magnánimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillánimis*, *injûgis*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pusillánimus*, &c. So, *semanímis*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*; rarely *semanímus*, &c.

§ 84. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *denominatives*;

as, *cordátus*, *mórátus*, *calestis*, *adámantíus*, *corpórtus*, *agrestis*, *æstíus*, &c.; from *cor*, *mos*, *cælum*, *adámas*, &c.

Those which diminish the signification of their primitives, are called DIMINUTIVES; as, *micellus*, *parvulus*, *dúriuscúlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing, are called AMPLIFICATIVES, and end in *osus*, or *entus*; as, *vinóeus*, *vinó-lentus*, much given to wine; *opérósus*, laborious; *plumbósus*, full of lead; *nódósus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpúlentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurítus*, having long or large ears; *nasítus*, having a large nose; *literátus*, learned, &c.

§ 85. An adjective derived from a substantive, or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *possessive adjective*; as,

*Scóticus*, *páternus*, *herédís*, *aliénus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master another; from *Scotia*, *pater* *herus*, and *alius*.

§ 86. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbals*; as,

*amabílis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docílís*, teachable; from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*.

§ 87. When participles become adjectives, they are called *participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acūtus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent.

Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *anīmans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocātus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legātus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *serta*, sc. *corōna*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*; *debitum*, *decrētum*, *præceptum*, *satum*, *lectum*, *votum*, &c.

§ 88. Adjectives derived from adverbs are called *adverbials*;

as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastīnus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*, &c. There are also adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *antīcus*, from *ante*; *postīcus*, from *post*.

#### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 89. Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

1. The Cardinal or *Principal* numbers are:

Unus,.....	one. ....	1. ....	I.
Duo,.....	two. ....	2. ....	II.
Tres,.....	three. ....	3. ....	III.
Quatuor,.....	four. ....	4. ....	IV.
Quinque,.....	five. ....	5. ....	V.
Sex,.....	six. ....	6. ....	VI.
Septem,.....	seven. ....	7. ....	VII.
Octo,.....	eight. ....	8. ....	VIII.
Nōvem,.....	nine. ....	9. ....	IX.
Dēcem,.....	ten. ....	10. ....	X.
Undēcim,.....	eleven. ....	11. ....	XI.
Duodēcim,.....	twelve. ....	12. ....	XII.
Tredēcim,.....	thirteen. ....	13. ....	XIII.
Quatuordēcim,.....	fourteen. ....	14. ....	XIV.
Quindēcim,.....	fifteen. ....	15. ....	XV.
Sexdēcim,.....	sixteen. ....	16. ....	XVI.
Septendēcim,.....	seventeen. ....	17. ....	XVII.
Octodēcim,.....	eighteen. ....	18. ....	XVIII.
Novemdēcim,.....	nineteen. ....	19. ....	XIX.
Viginti,.....	twenty. ....	20. ....	XX.
Viginti unus, or }			
Unus et viginti, }	twenty-one. ....	21. ....	XXI.
Viginti duo, or }			
Duo et viginti, }	twenty-two. ....	22. ....	XXII.
Triginta,.....	thirty. ....	30. ....	XXX.
Quadrāginta,.....	forty. ....	40. ....	XL.
Quinquaginta,.....	fifty. ....	50. ....	L.
Sexaginta,.....	sixty. ....	60. ....	LX.

Septuaginta, . . . . .	<i>seventy.</i> . . . . .	70. ....	LXX.
Octoginta, . . . . .	<i>eighty.</i> . . . . .	80. ....	LXXX.
Nonaginta, . . . . .	<i>ninety.</i> . . . . .	90. ....	XC.
Centum, . . . . .	<i>a hundred.</i> . . . . .	100. ....	C.
Ducenti, -æ, -a, . . . . .	<i>two hundred.</i> . . . . .	200. ....	CC.
Trecenti, -æ, -a, . . . . .	<i>three hundred.</i> . . . . .	300. ....	CCC.
Quadringenti, . . . . .	<i>four hundred.</i> . . . . .	400. ....	CCCC.
Quingenti, . . . . .	<i>five hundred.</i> . . . . .	500. ....	D.
Sexcenti, . . . . .	<i>six hundred.</i> . . . . .	600. ....	DC.
Septingenti, . . . . .	<i>seven hundred.</i> . . . . .	700. ....	DCC.
Octingenti, . . . . .	<i>eight hundred.</i> . . . . .	800. ....	DCCC.
Nongenti, . . . . .	<i>nine hundred.</i> . . . . .	900. ....	DCCCC.
Mille, . . . . .	<i>a thousand.</i> . . . . .	1,000. ....	M.
Duo millia, or Bis mille, } . . . . .	<i>two thousand.</i> . . . . .	2,000. ....	MM.
Decem millia, or Decies mille, } . . . . .	<i>ten thousand.</i> . . . . .	10,000. ....	XM.
Viginti millia, or Vicies mille, } . . . . .	<i>twenty thousand.</i> . . . . .	20,000. ....	XXM.

To mark numbers the Romans employed the capital letters, I, V, X, L, C, which were therefore called *Numeral Letters*. I denotes *one*; V, *five*; X, *ten*; L, *fifty*; C, *one hundred*. By the repetition of either of these, its value was repeated; thus, II signifies *two*, XXXX, *forty*; CCC, *three hundred*. But V and L are never found repeated.

When a letter of less value stands before one of a greater, the greater is *diminished* by as much as the less stands for: but when it comes after a greater, the greater is *increased* by as much as the less stands for; thus,

IV. <i>Four.</i>	V. <i>Five.</i>	VI. <i>Six.</i>
IX. <i>Nine.</i>	X. <i>Ten.</i>	XI. <i>Eleven.</i>
XL. <i>Forty.</i>	L. <i>Fifty.</i>	LX. <i>Sixty.</i>

A thousand was marked thus, *CIĀ*, which in latter times was contracted into *M*. Five hundred was marked thus, *IO*, or, by contraction, *D*.

The annexing of *O*, to *IO*, makes its value ten times greater; thus, *IOO*, marks five thousand, and *IOOO*, fifty thousand.

The prefixing of *C*, together with the annexing of *O*, to the number *CIĀ*, makes its value ten times greater; thus, *COIOO*, denotes ten thousand; and *COOIOO*, a hundred thousand. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, *COOIOOO*, *COOIOOO*, signified two hundred thousand, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters; thus, *III*, denotes three thousand; *X*, ten thousand.

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille* want the singular.

§ 90. *Unus* is not used in the plural, except when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, in *unis ædibus*, in one house. Terent. Eun. ii. 3. 75. *Unæ nuptiæ*. Id. Andr. iv. 1. 51. In *una mania convenère*. Sallust. Cat. 6. or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. Cic. Flacc. 29.

*Duo* and *tres* are thus declined :

Plural.			Plural.		
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	N. tres,	tres,	tria,
G. duorum,	duarum,	duorum,	G. trium,	trium,	trium,
D. duobus,	duâbus,	duobus,	D. tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
A. duos or duo,	duas,	duo,	A. tres,	tres,	tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	V. tres,	tres,	tria,
A. duobus,	duâbus,	duobus.	A. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the Cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, *-tæ*, *-ta*; *ducentorum*, *-târum*, *-tôrûm*, &c.

*Mille*, the substantive, makes Nom. and Acc. *mille*, Abl. *mille*; as, *mille hominum*, 'a thousand men;' *milli hominum*, 'with a thousand men.' In the plural it is perfect. *Duo millia hominum*, 'two thousand men;' *Trium millium hominum*, *Tribus millibus hominum*, &c.

*Mille*, the adjective, is plural only, and indeclinable; as, *mille homines*, 'a thousand men;' *mille hominibus*, 'with a thousand men.' To express more than one thousand, it has the numeral adverbs joined with it; as, *Bis mille homines*, 'two thousand men;' *Ter millo homines*, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers, are, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c.; declined like *bonus*.

3. The Distributive are, *singuli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, or by twos, &c.; declined like the plural of *bonus*.

4. The Multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, *-icis*, &c.

§ 91. The Cardinal and Distributive numbers may be thus distinguished; the Cardinal expresses a number absolutely, as, *one*, *two*, &c.; the Distributive are those which distribute the same number to every single person; as, *Dedit nobis DECEM libros*, 'he gave us together ten books;' *dedit nobis DENOS libros*, 'he gave us each ten books.'

But poets, and sometimes prose writers, use the Distributive for the Cardinal numbers, particularly with substantives which are plural only;



as, *binæ nuptiæ*, 'two weddings;' *binæ literæ*, 'two epistles;' not *duæ*, for *duæ literæ* would mean two letters of the alphabet.

The Multiplicative numbers are also sometimes used for the Cardinal by the poets; as, *Duplices tendens ad sidæra palmas*, instead of *duas palmas*.

The interrogative words to which these numerals answer, are *quot*, *quōtus*, *quōtēni*, *quōties*, and *quōtuplex*.

*Quot*, how many? is indeclinable: So *tot*, so many; *tōttdem*, just so many; *quotquot quōtcunque*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the numeral Adjectives.

Ordinal.	Distributive.	Numeral Adverbs.
Primus, -a, -um.	Singūli, -a, -a.	Semel, <i>once</i> .
Secundus.	Bini.	Bis, <i>twice</i> .
Tertius.	Terni.	Ter, <i>thrice</i> .
Quartus.	Quaterni.	Quāter, <i>four times</i> .
Quintus.	Quini.	Quinquies, &c.
Sextus.	Seni.	Sexies.
Septimus.	Septēni.	Septies.
Octāvus.	Octōni.	Octies.
Nonus.	Novēni.	Novies.
Décimus.	Dēni.	Décies.
Undécimus.	Undēni.	Undecies.
Duodécimus.	Duodēni.	Duodecies.
Decimus tertius.	Trédēni, terni deni.	Tredecies.
Decimus quartus.	Quaterni deni.	Quatuordecies.
Decimus quintus.	Quindēni.	Quindecies.
Decimus sextus.	Seni deni.	Sextdecies.
Decimus septimus.	Septēni deni.	Decies ac septies.
Decimus octāvus.	Octōni deni.	Decies ac octies.
Decimus nonus.	Novēni deni.	Decies et novies.
Vigesimus, vicesimus.	Vicēni.	Vicies.
Vigesimus primus.	Vicēni singūli.	Vicies semel.
Trigesimus, tricesimus.	Tricēni.	Tricies.
Quadragesimus.	Quadrāgēni.	Quadrāgies.
Quinquagesimus.	Quinquagēni.	Quinquāgies.
Sexagesimus.	Sexāgēni.	Sexāgies.
Septuagesimus.	Septuāgēni.	Septuāgies.
Octogesimus.	Octogēni.	Octōgies.
Nonagesimus.	Nonagēni.	Nonāgies.
Centesimus.	Centēni.	Centies.
Dūcentesimus.	Dūcēni.	Dūcenties.
Trēcentesimus.	Trēcentēni.	Trēcenties.
Quadrīngentesimus.	Quāter centēni.	Quadrīngenties.
Quīngentesimus.	Quinquies centēni.	Quīngenties.
Sexcentesimus.	Sexies centēni.	Sexcenties.
Septīngentesimus.	Septies centēni.	Septīngenties.
Octīngentesimus.	Octies centēni.	Octīngenties.
Nongentesimus.	Novies centēni.	Nōningenties.
Millesimus.	Millēni.	Millies.
Bis millesimus.	Bis millēni.	Bis millies.

To the numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c.; as, *bipartitus*, *tripartitus*, &c.; *duplus*, *triplus*, &c.; *bi-mus*, *tri-mus*, &c.; *biennis*, *triennis*, &c.; *bimestris*, *trimestris*, &c.; *bi-libris*, *tri-libris*, &c.;

*binārius, ternarius, &c.* ; which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever ; as, *versus sēnārius*, a verse of six feet ; *dēnārius nummus*, a coin of ten asses ; *octogenārius senex*, an old man eighty years old ; *grex centenārius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 92. The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees : as, *durus*, hard ; *durior*, harder ; *durissimus*, hardest.

Those adjectives only are compared whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality ; as, *durus*, hard ; and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality ; as, *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same ; as, *durior*, harder ; *sapientior*, wiser.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree ; as, *durissimus*, hardest ; *sapientissimus*, wisest.

### FORMATION OF THE DEGREES.

#### COMPARATIVE.

§ 93. The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding the syllable *or* for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter ; as,

Nom. *altus, alta, altum*,  
Gen. *alti* :

then adding *or* and *us*, we have *altior, altior, altius*.

In adjectives of the third declension, the Dative is of course the first case that ends in *i*, as, Nom. *mitis*, Gen. *mitis*, Dat. *miti* ; then by adding *or* and *us*, we have *mitior, mitior, mitius*.

Mitior, *meeker*, is thus declined.

*Singular number.*

Nom.	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
Gen.	Mitiōris,	mitiōris,	mitioris,
Dat.	Mitiōri,	mitiōri,	mitiōri,
Acc.	Mitiōrem,	mitiōrem,	mitius,
Voc.	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
Abl.	{ Mitiōre, or } in all the genders. { Mitiōri,		

*Plural number.*

Nom.	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiora,
Gen.	Mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,
Dat.	Mitiōribus,	mitiōribus,	mitiōribus,
Acc.	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiora,
Voc.	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiora,
Abl.	Mitiōribus,	mitiōribus,	mitiōribus.

SUPERLATIVE.

§ 94. The Superlative degree is formed from the same case by adding *ssimus*; as, Nom. *altus*, Gen. *alti*, Superlative *altissimus*. So, *mitis*, Gen. *mitis*, Dat. *miti*, Superlative *mitissimus*.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed from the nominative by adding *rimus*; as, *pauper*, 'poor;' *pauperrimus*, 'poorest.'

The Comparative is always of the Third declension, the Superlative of the First and Second.

§ 95. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

Bonus,	mēlior,	optimus,	good,	better,	best.
Mālus,	pejor,	pessimus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maximus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	mīnor,	mīnimus,	small,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plūrimus,	much,	more,	most.

*Fem.* Multa, plurīma; *neut.* multum, plus, plurimum; *plur.* multi, plures, plurīmi; multæ, plures, plurīmæ, &c.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse; in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magnissimus*; *worse* for *worsest*.

§ 96. These five have their superlative in *limus*:

Faciēs, facilior, facillimus, <i>easy</i> .	Imbecillis, imbecillior, imbecillimus, <i>weak</i> .
Gracilis, gracilior, gracillimus, <i>lean</i> .	Similis, similior, simillimus, <i>like</i> .
Humilis, humilior, humillimus, <i>low</i> .	

§ 97. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently :

Citer, ceterior, citissimus, *near*, &c.

Dexter, dexterior, dextrissimus, *right*.

Sinister, sinisterior, sinistissimus, *left*.

Exter, -erior, extimus or extrēmus, *outward*.

Infērus, -ior, infimus or imus, *below*.

Intērus, interior, intimus, *inward*.

Mātūrus, -ior, maturissimus, or maturissimus, *ripe*.

Postērus, posterior, postrēmus, *behind*.

Sūpērus, -rior, suprēmus or summus, *high*.

Vētus, vētērior, vēterrīmus, *old*.

§ 98. Compounds in *dicus*, *lōquus*, *ficus*, and *vōlus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus* ; as, *mālēdicus*, railing ; *mālēdicentior*, *maledicentissimus* : So, *magnilōquus*, one that boasteth ; *bēnēficus*, beneficent ; *mālēvōlus*, malevolent ; *mirīficus*, wonderful ; -*entior*, -*entissimus*, or, *mirīficissimus*. *Nēquam*, indeclinable, worthless, vicious, has *nēquior*, *nequissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased, yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

§ 99. The following adjectives are not used in the positive :

Dēterior, *worse*, deterrīmus.

Ociōr, *swifter*, ocissīmus.

Prior, *former*, primus.

Prōpior, *nearer*, proximū, *nearest* or *next*.

Ultērior, *farther*, ultīmus.

§ 100. The following want the comparative :

Inclūtus, inclutissīmus, *renowned*.

Mēritus, meritissīmus, *deserving*.

Nōvus, novissīmus, *new*.

Mūpērus, nuperrīmus, *late*.

Par, pārissīmus, *equal*.

Sācer, sacerrīmus, *sacred*.

§ 101. The following want the superlative :

Adōlescens, adolescentior, *young*.

Diūtūrnus, diuturnior, *lasting*.

Ingens, ingentior, *huge*.

Jūvēnis, junior, *young*.

Opīmus, opimior, *rich*.

Prōnus, pronior, *inclined downwards*.

Sātur, satūrior, *full*.

Sēnex, senior *old*.

1. To supply the superlative of *jūvēnis*, or *adōlescens*, we say *minimus natus*, the youngest ; and of *senex*, *maximus natus*, the oldest.

2. These also want the Superlative : Adjectives in *ālis*, *ilis*, and *bilis*, and many in *ānus*, *ivis*, and *inquus* ; as, *capitālis*, 'capital' ; *regālis*, 'royal' ; *civilis*, 'civil' ; *jūvenīlis*, 'youthful' ; *tolerābilis*, 'tolerable' ; *arcānus*, 'secret' ; *declivis*, 'bending downwards' ; *proclivis*, 'down-hill' ; *longinquus*, 'far off' ; *propinquus*, 'near' ; &c. Some are found only in the Positive ; the compounds of *Gero* and *Fero*, participles in *rus* and *dus*, and adjectives in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus*, *ivus*, *orus*. Also, *almus*, 'cherishing' ; *calvus*, 'bald' ; *claudus*, 'lame' ; *clivus*, 'out of the furrow' ; 'doting' ;

*dubius*, 'doubtful'; *egēnus*, 'indigent'; *magnānīmus*, 'courageous'; *memor*, 'mindful'; *mirus*, 'wonderful'; *rudis*, 'new'; 'rude'; *salvus*, 'safe'; *vacuus*, 'empty'; *vulgāris*, 'common,' &c. But many of these admit of *Magis*, *Minus*, *Maximē*, *Minimē*, &c.

3. *Anterior*, former; *sequior*, worse; *editior*, better, are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all; such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versicōlor*, of divers colours; *pestifer*, poisonous; also, adjectives in *us* pure, in *ivus*, *ivus*, *orus*, or *ivus*, and diminutives; as, *dūbīus*, 'doubtful'; *vācūus*, empty; *fūgīvīus*, that flieth away; *mātūfīnus*, early; *cānōrus*, shrill; *līgīfīnus*, lawful; *tēnellus*, somewhat tender; *majuscūlus*, &c.; together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox-ēcis*, soon or early ripe; *mirus*, *egēnus*, *lācer*, *mēmor*, *sospes*, &c.

5. This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maximē* for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy, *magis egēnus*, more needy; *valde* or *maximē egēnus*, very, or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

## § 102. IRREGULAR AND UNUSUAL COMPARISONS.

Apricus, <i>sunny</i> .	Anterior, <i>former</i> , Cæs.	Apricissimus, <i>Colum.</i>
Bellus, <i>fine</i> .	Apricior, <i>Plin.</i>	Bellissimus, <i>Cic.</i>
Celer, <i>swift</i> .	Bellior, <i>Varr.</i>	{ Celerrimus, <i>passim</i> .
	Celerior, <i>passim</i> .	{ Celerrissimus, <i>Enn. &amp; Cn. Manl.</i>
Communis, <i>common</i> .	Communior, <i>Suet.</i>	Communissimus, <i>Suet.</i>
Consultus, <i>skilled</i> .	[Consultior, <i>Tertul.</i> ]	Consultissimus, <i>Cic.</i>
Crispus, <i>curled</i> .	Crispior, <i>Plin.</i>	Crispissimus, <i>Colum.</i>
Diversus, <i>different</i> .	Diversior, <i>Gel. Lucr.</i>	Diversissimus, <i>Liv. Tull.</i>
Dives, <i>rich</i> .	{ Divitior, <i>Ovid. Cic.</i> }	Divitissimus, <i>Cic.</i>
	{ Ditiior, <i>Hor.</i> }	Ditissimus, <i>Virg.</i>
Falsus, <i>false</i> .	Falsior, <i>Petron.</i>	Falsissimus, <i>Colum.</i>
Fidus, <i>faithful</i> .	Fidior, <i>Liv.</i>	Fidissimus, <i>Cic. Ovid.</i>
Imbecillus, <i>weak</i> .	Imbecillior, <i>Cic.</i>	Imbecillissimus, <i>Senec.</i>
		Cela.
Jejunus, <i>fasting</i> .	Jejunior, <i>Cic.</i>	
Infinitus, <i>indefinite</i> .	Infinitior, <i>Cic.</i>	Invictissimus, <i>Cic. et al.</i>
Invictus, <i>unconquered</i> .	[Invictior, <i>S. August.</i> ]	Invisissimus, <i>Plin. Senec.</i>
Invisus, <i>hated</i> .	Invisior, <i>Mart.</i>	Invitissimus, <i>Cic.</i>
Invitus, <i>reluctant</i> .	Invitior, <i>Plaut.</i>	
Licentis, <i>extravagant</i> .	Licentior, <i>Cic.</i>	Mellitissimus, <i>Apul.</i>
Mellitus, <i>honeyed</i> .		Nequissimus, <i>Cic.</i>
Nequam, <i>wicked</i> .	Nequior, <i>Cic.</i>	Persuassissimus, <i>Cic.</i>
Persuasus, <i>persuaded</i> .		Potissimus, <i>passim</i> .
Potes, or Pote, <i>able</i> .	Potior, <i>passim</i> .	
	Satius, <i>better</i> , <i>passim</i> .	
	Sequior, <i>worse</i> , <i>Liv.</i>	
Sylvester, or }	Sylvestrior, <i>Plin.</i>	
Sylvestris, <i>woody</i> . }		
Supinus, <i>lying on the back</i> .	Supinior, <i>Mart.</i>	

## PRONOUN.

§ 103. A Pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a noun*.\*

\* Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou*, for the name of the person addressed.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen ; *ĕgo*, *tu*, *sui* ; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui* ; *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester* ; *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*.

Three of them are substantives, *ĕgo*, *tu*, *sui* ; the other fifteen are adjectives.

## Ego, I.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. ego,	<i>I,</i>	N. nos,	<i>we,</i>
G. mei,	<i>of me,</i>	G. nostrūm, or nostri,	<i>of us,</i>
D. mihi,	<i>to me,</i>	D. nobis,	<i>to us,</i>
A. me,	<i>me,</i>	A. nos,	<i>us,</i>
V. _____		V. _____	
A. me,	<i>with me.</i>	A. nobis,	<i>with us.</i>

## Tu, thou.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. tu,	<i>thou,</i>	N. vos,	<i>ye or you,</i>
G. tui,	<i>of thee,</i>	G. vestrūm, or vestri,	<i>of you,</i>
D. tibi,	<i>to thee,</i>	D. vobis,	<i>to you,</i>
A. te,	<i>thee,</i>	A. vos,	<i>you,</i>
V. tu,	<i>O thou,</i>	V. vos,	<i>O ye or you,</i>
A. te,	<i>with thee.</i>	A. vobis,	<i>with you.</i>

## Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. _____		N. _____	
G. sui,	<i>of himself, of herself, of itself.</i>	G. sui,	<i>of themselves,</i>
D. sibi,	<i>to himself, to herself, &amp;c.</i>	D. sibi,	<i>to themselves,</i>
A. se,	<i>himself, &amp;c.</i>	A. se,	<i>themselves,</i>
V. _____		V. _____	
A. se,	<i>with himself, &amp;c.</i>	A. se,	<i>with themselves.</i>

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person; thus, we cannot say, *O ego*, *O I*; *O nos*, *O we*.

Obs. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mī*.

Obs. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrōrum*; and *nostrārum*; of *tu*, *vestrōrum* and *vestrārum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrūm* and *vestrūm*.

We commonly use *nostrūm* and *vestrūm* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

---

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

§ 104. The English substantive pronouns *he, she, it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille, iste, hic*, or *is*; as, *Ille*, for the masc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neuter, that: or *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it or that: thus,

Singular.			Plural.		
N. ille,	illa,	illud,	N. illi,	illæ,	illa,
G. illius,	illius,	illius,	G. illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
D. illi,	illi,	illi,	D. illis,	illis,	illis,
A. illum,	illam,	illud,	A. illos,	illas,	illa,
V. ille,	illa,	illud,	V. illi,	illæ,	illa,
A. illo,	illâ,	illo.	A. illis,	illis,	illis.

*Ipse*, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste, ista, istud*, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

*Ipse* is often joined to *ego, tu, sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as, *ego ipse*, I myself.

*Hic, hæc, hoc, this.*

Singular.			Plural.		
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	N. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	G. horum,	harum,	horum,
D. huic,	huic,	huic,	D. his,	his,	his,
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. hos,	has,	hæc,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	V. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
A. hoc,	hac,	hoc,	A. his,	his,	his,

*Is, ea, id; he, she, it; or that.*

Singular.			Plural.		
N. is,	ea,	id,	N. ii,	eæ,	ea,
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	G. eorum,	eârum,	eorum,
D. ei,	ei,	ei,	D. iis or eis,	iis or eis,	iis or eis,
A. eum,	eam,	id,	A. eos,	eas,	ea,
V. ———	———	———	V. ———	———	———
A. eo,	eâ,	eo.	A. iis or eis,	iis or eis,	iis or eis.

*Quis, quæ, quod* or *quid*? which, what? Or *quis*? who? or what man? *quæ*? who? or what woman? *quod* or *quid*? what? which thing? or what thing? thus,

Singular.			Plural.		
N. quis,	quæ,	quod or quid,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. ———	queis, or quibus,	———
A. quem,	quam,	quod or quid,	A. quos	quas,	quæ,
V. ———	———	———	V. ———	———	———
A. quo,	quâ,	quo.	A. ———	queis, or quibus.	———

§ 105. *Qui, quæ, quod*, who, which, that: Or *vir qui*, the man *who* or *that*; *fœmina, quæ*, the woman *who* or *that*; *negotium quod*, the thing *which* or *that*: genit. *vir cujus*, the man *whose* or *of whom*; *mulier cujus*, the woman *whose* or *of whom*; *negotium cujus*, the thing *of which*, seldom *whose*, &c. thus,

Singular.			Plural.		
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis, or quibus,		
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
A. quo,	quâ,	quo.	A. queis, or quibus.		

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suius*, his own, her own, its own, their own; are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; and *noster*, our; *vester*, your; like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension; *noster*, -tra, -trum.

1. *Nostras*, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country; are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostrâti*, dat. *nostrâti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things which cannot be addressed or called upon, want the vocative.

2. *Meus* has *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the voc. sing. masc.

3. The relative *qui* has frequently *quî* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

4. *Qui* is sometimes used for *quis*: and instead of *cujus* the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their significations, are divided into the following classes:

5. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present: *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iste*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipse*.

6. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*.

7. *Possessives*, which signify possession: *meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, *noster*, *vester*.

8. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.

9. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis*? *cujas*? When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.

10. *Reciprocals* which again call back or represent the same object to the mind: *sui* and *suius*.

#### COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

§ 106. Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *isthic*, *isthæc*, *isthoc*, *isthuc*, or *istuc*. Acc. *Isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc*, or *isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*: Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthæc*, of *iste* and *hic*. So *illic*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With some other parts of speech; as, *hujusmodi*, *cujusmodi*, &c. *mecum*, *ticum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum*, or *quicum*, and *quibuscum*: *ecum*, *ecram*; *eccos*, *eccas*, and sometimes *ecca* in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *illum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.



3. With some syllable added ; as, *tute*, of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *egomet*, *tūtemet*, *suimet*, through all the cases, thus, *meimet*, *tumet*, &c. of *ego*, *tu*, *mi*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tūtemet* : *Hiccine*, *hæccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *c* ; of *hic* and *cine* : *Meapte*, *tuapte*, *suapte*, *nostrapte*, *vestrapte*, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes *meapte*, *tuapte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte* : *hicce*, *hæcce*, *hocce* ; *hujusce*, *hisce*, *hocce* ; of *hic* and *ce* : whence *hujuscemōdi*, *ejuscemōdi*, *cujuscemōdi*. So, *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined :

*Singular.*

N. idem,	eādem,	Idem,
G. ejusdem,	ejusdem,	ejusdem,
D. eidem,	eidem,	eidem,
A. eundem,	eandem,	Idem,
V. idem,	eādem,	Idem,
A. eodem,	eādem,	eodem.

*Plural.*

N. iidem,	eādem,	eūdem,
G. eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
D. iidem,	eīdem, or iisdem,	
A. eosdem,	easdem,	eādem,
V. iidem,	eādem,	eādem,
A. iidem,	eīdem, or iisdem.	

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

*Quis* in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded ; but *qui* is always the first.

§ 107. 1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are *quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one ; *quisque*, every one ; *quisquis*, whosoever ; which are thus declined :

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Quisnam, quēnam,	quodnam or quidnam ;	cujusnam ; cuinam ;
Quispiam, quēpiam,	quodpiam or quidpiam ;	cujuspiam ; cuipiam ;
Quisquam, quēquam,	quodquam or quidquam ;	cujusquam ; cuiquam ;
Quisque, quēque,	quodque or quidque ;	cujusque ; cuique ;
Quisquis, quēquid,	quidquid or quicquid ;	cujusquis ; cuicui.

And so in the other cases according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the fem. at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam* ; accusative *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nom. sing. fem. ; and in the nominative and accusative plural neuter, as, *aliquis*, some ; *ecquis*, who ? of *et* and *quis* ; also, *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately ; thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined :

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Alquis, alīqua,	aliquod or aliquid ;	alicujus ; alicui ;
Ecquis, ecqua or ecqua,	ecquod or ecquid ;	eccujus ; eccui ;
Si quis, si qua,	si quod or si quid ;	si cujus ; si cui ;
Ne quis, ne qua,	ne quod or ne quid ;	ne cujus ; ne cui ;
Num quis, num qua,	num quod or num quid ;	num cujus ; num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *ecquisnam*, who? *nequisque*, gen. *uniuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicumque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quisvis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined:

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Quicumque, quuscunque, quodcunque;	cujuscunque; cuicumque;	
Quidam, quædam, quoddam or quiddam;	cujusdam; cuidam;	
Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet or quidlibet;	cujuslibet; cuilibet;	
Quisvis, quævis, quodvis or quidvis;	cujusvis; cuivis.	

§ 108. Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds, in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the genitive plural, *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c., are used when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c., for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason, they are by some reckoned substantives.

Obs. 5. *Aliquis* and *Quidam* may be thus distinguished; the former denotes a person or thing *indeterminately*; the latter, *determinately*.

Obs. 6. *Uter* refers to two, and is therefore joined to comparatives.

Obs. 7. *Quis* may refer to many, and is therefore joined to superlatives.

Obs. 8. *Hic* and *Ille* are often found to refer to two words going before them. *Hic* usually to the latter; *Ille* to the former.

Obs. 9. As demonstratives, *Hic* refers to the person nearest to me; *Iste* to the person nearest to you; *Ille* to any intermediate person.

Obs. 10. *Ille* denotes honour: *Iste*, contempt: as, *ille vir*; *iste homo*.

Obs. 11. *Tuus* is used when we speak to one; as, *Summe, Coriolane, in tuis castris captiva an mater?* *Vester*, when we speak to more than one; as, *Cives, miseremini cœli vestri*.

Obs. 12. *Alter* is in general applied to one of two; *Alius* to one of many.

Obs. 13. *Quisvis*, 'any whom you please'; *Quisquam*, 'any one'; and *Ullus*, 'any,' are thus used: *Quisvis* affirms; as, *Quidvis mihi sat est*, 'any thing pleases me.' *Ullus* never affirms, but asks or denies, as also *Quisquam*. Thus, *Nec ulla res ex omnibus me angit*, 'nor does any of all these things distress me;' *Nec quisquam eorum te novit*, 'nor does any one of them know you.' In an interrogative sentence, as, *An quisquam dubitavit?* 'will any one doubt?' *Ullus* is used in the same way.

Obs. 14. *Mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, the genitives of the primitives, are generally used when *passion* or *the being acted upon*, is denoted: thus, *amor mei*, means 'the love wherewith I am loved.'

Obs. 15. *Meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, *noster*, *vester*, the possessives, denote action or the possession of a thing; as, *amor meus*, is 'the love which I possess and exert towards somebody else.'

#### RECIPROCALLS.

Obs. 16. *Sui* and *suius* are called Reciprocalls, because they always refer to some preceding person or thing, generally the principal noun in the sentence; thus, *Cæsar Ariovisto dixit, non sese (Cæsarem) Gallis, sed Gallos sibi (Cæsari) bellum intulisse*, 'Cæsar told Ariovistus that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him;' in which *se* and *sibi* refer to Cæsar, the principal noun.

Obs. 17. The Reciprocals may likewise be applied to the word which follows the verb, provided that it is capable of being turned into the nominative without altering the sense; thus, *Trahit sua quemque voluptas*, (Virg.) 'his own pleasure allures each'; in which *sua* refers to *quemque*, the object of the verb, because it may become the subject, as in the equivalent expression, *Quisque trahitur a voluptate sua*, 'each one is allured by his own pleasures.'

Obs. 18. *Suus* is sometimes used in the sense of *unicuique proprius*, 'peculiar'; as, *Sabæi sua thura mittunt*, 'the country of the Sabæi produces frankincense peculiar to itself.' It sometimes indicates 'fitness,' or 'congruity'; as, *Sunt et sua dona parenti*, (Virg.) 'there are likewise for my father fit, appropriate, or suitable presents.'

Obs. 19. *Suus* is often used without the substantive being mentioned; as, *suum cuique tribuit*, 'give every man his own'; (*negotium*, 'thing,' being understood.) *Sui responderunt*, 'his soldiers,' or 'countrymen answered'; (*cives* or *milites* being understood.)

Obs. 20. The reciprocals alone are used with *quisque*, and they are generally placed before it; as, *Pro se quisque acriter intendit animum*, Liv. 'let each one for himself give his most critical attention'; *Sua cujusque animantis natura est*, Cic. 'every animal has its own peculiar nature.'

Obs. 21. *Sibi*, and sometimes *tibi*, *mihi*, &c., are used for the sake of elegance, when not indispensably necessary; as, *Expédi mihi hoc negotium*, Ter. 'despatch this business for me.'

## VERB.\*

§ 109. A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or exist-

\* It is called a *Verb* or *Word* by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation, or assertion, is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, -*ōris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

ing in a certain state or condition, as in a state of motion or rest; &c.

§ 110. 1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon; as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

§ 111. The verb is also called *Transitive* when the action *passes over* to the object, or has an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo literas*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passes not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambulo*, I walk; *curro*, I run; which are likewise called *Neuter verba*. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistere*, to stop; *incipere*, to begin; *durare*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being* are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be, or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb: thus, *I love*, may be resolved into *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*; as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*,

The persons are three; *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

## VOICES.

§ 112. Voice expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting or being acted upon. When the action is confined to the agent or nominative, as, *cado*, 'I fall;' or when it is exerted by the nominative upon an external object, as, *amo virum*, 'I love the man,' the Active voice is used; but when the action is exerted by an external object upon the nominative, the Passive voice is employed, as, *vir amatur*, 'the man is loved.'

As an Active verb denotes that the nominative to it is doing something, and a Passive verb, that something is done to it, or in the language of grammarians, that it is suffering; hence, to distinguish whether an English verb is to be rendered in Latin by the Active or Passive voice, nothing more is necessary than to consider whether the nominative be doing or suffering; as, 'John is building,' *Joannes aedificat*: 'The wall is building,' *murus aedificatur*. The English is the same in both examples; but in one, John is active, in the other the wall is passive.

## MODES.

§ 113. *Modes* or *moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb:

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall or will love; or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me obsecret, redibo*, if he entreat me, I will return. *Ter*.

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as *amāre*, to love.

## TENSES.

§ 114. Tenses, or Times, express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

The general divisions of time are into *present*, *past*, and *future*; but grammarians make five tenses, namely: the Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect, and the Future.

## PRESENT.

1. The Present tense denotes that an action is going on; as, *edificat*, 'he builds.' Historians and poets sometimes describe past actions in this tense, in order to give animation to their discourse, by bringing them, as it were, under immediate observation. Thus, Livy, *Ad equites dictator ADVOLAT obtestans ut ex equis DESCENDANT*, 'the dictator flies forward to the cavalry, beseeching them to dismount from their horses.'

2. Any general custom, if still existing, may be expressed in this tense; thus, *Apud Parthos signum DATUR tympano, et non tubâ*, Justin. 'Among the Parthians the signal is given by the drum, and not by the trumpet.'

3. In Latin, as in English, this tense may express futurity; as, *quâni mox navigo Ephesum*, Plaut. 'as soon as I sail,' or 'shall sail to Ephesus.'

## PRÆTER-IMPERFECT.

4. The Præter-imperfect expresses an action as passing sometime ago, but not yet finished; as, *edificâbat*, 'he was building.'

5. It likewise denotes what is usual or customary; as, *aciebat*, 'he was wont to say.'

## PRÆTER-PERFECT.

6. When we mean to say that an action *has taken place*, without particular reference to the present, or *has taken place* within some period of time not yet fully past, we use the Præter-perfect tense, as, *amavi*, 'I loved,' or 'have loved.'

7. It is sometimes used instead of the Pluperfect indicative; *Quæ postquam evolvit, cæcoque exēmit acervo*, Ovid, 'which after he sorted (had sorted) and took (had taken) from the confused mass.'

8. It is poetically used instead of the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive; as, *nec veni nisi fata*, Virg. 'neither would I have come unless the fates,' &c., for *venissem*.

## PRÆTER-PLUPERFECT.

9 When we mean to say that an action was completed before some other past action took place, we use the Præter-pluperfect tense, as *hostes superavērat*, 'he had conquered the enemy' before the succours arrived.

## FUTURE.

10. Future time is expressed two different ways. When we mean to express that an action will be going on, some time hence, but not finished, we use the Future indicative; as, *Cenābo* 'I shall sup;' but when we

mean to say that an action will be finished before another action, also future, takes place, we use the Future subjunctive; as, *Cum cenavero, proficiscar*, 'when I have supped,' or 'shall have supped, I will go.'

## NUMBER AND PERSON.

§ 115. 1. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer. As one or more persons may speak, be spoken to, or spoken of, there are *two* numbers; the Singular, which speaks of one, and the Plural, which speaks of more than one.

2. *Person* shows to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, the person spoken to, or to some other person or thing. There are three persons in each number: in the Singular, *Ego*, 'I,' is of the first; *Tu*, 'thou,' is of the second; and *Ille*, 'he,' or *Illā*, 'she,' is of the third person: in the Plural, *Nos*, 'we,' is of the first; *Vos*, 'ye,' or 'you,' is of the second; *Illi*, (masc.) 'they,' or *Illæ*, (fem.) 'they,' is of the third person; and to each of these the verb has appropriate variations in its terminations.

*Qui* takes the person of the antecedent.

*Ipse* may be joined to any person, according to the sense.

## THE DIFFERENT CONJUGATIONS.

§ 116. A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, *yoked together*, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

The conjugation of a verb is the regular formation and arrangement of its several parts, &c., according to the different voices, modes, tenses, numbers and persons.

There are four conjugations which are distinguished by the vowel preceding *re* of the infinitive active.

In the first conjugation it is *ā* long; as, *Amāre*.

In the second conjugation it is *ē* long; as, *Docēre*.

In the third conjugation it is *ē* short; as, *Legere*.

In the fourth conjugation it is *i* long; as, *Audire*.

Except *dāre*, to give, which has *ā* short, and also its compounds; thus, *Circumdāre*, to surround; *circumdāmus*, *dātis*, *dābam*, *dābo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses:

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

Present Tense.				Present Tense.			
Singular.				Plural.			
Persons.				Persons.			
Conjugation.	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
	1. -o,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.	
	2. -eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.	
	3. -o,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.	
	4. -io,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-iunt.	
Imperfect.							
1. -ābam,	-ābas,	-abat;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.		
2. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.		
3. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.		
4. -iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.		
Future.							
1. -ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābimus,	-ābitis,	-ābunt.		
2. -ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbimus,	-ēbitis,	-ēbunt.		
3. -am,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.		
4. -iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iemus,	-iētis,	-ient.		

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Present Tense.				Present Tense.			
1. -em,	es,	-et;	-emus,	-ētis,	-ent.		
2. -eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eamus,	-eātis,	-eant.		
3. -am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-ātis,	-ant.		
4. -iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iamus,	-iātis,	-iant.		
Imperfect.							
1. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.		
2. -ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.		
3. -ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.		
4. -īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-īrent.		

*Imperative Mode.*

2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -a or -āto,	-āto;	-āte or -ātōte,	-anto.
2. -e or -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte or -ētōte,	-ento.
3. -e or -īto,	-īto;	-īte or -ītōte,	-unto.
4. -i or -īto,	-īto;	-īte or -ītōte,	-iunto.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

Present Tense.				Present Tense.			
1. -or,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur;	-emur,	-amini,	-antur.		
2. -eor,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-emur,	-emini,	-entur.		
3. -or,	-ēris or -ēre,	-itur;	-imur,	-imini,	-untur.		
4. -ior,	-īris or -īre,	-iur;	-imur,	-imini,	-iuntur.		



*Imperfect.*

1. -ābar,	-ābāris or -ābāre,	-ābātur;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmīni,	-ābantur.
2. -ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
3. -ībar,	-ībāris or -ībāre,	-ībātur;	-ībāmur,	-ībāmīni,	-ībantur.

*Future.*

1. -ābor,	-ābēris or -ābēre.	-ābītur;	-ābīmur,	-ābīmīni,	-ābuntur.
2. -ēbor,	-ēbēris or -ēbēre.	-ēbītur;	-ēbīmur,	-ēbīmīni,	-ēbuntur.
3. -iar,	-iēris or -iēre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēmīni,	-ientur.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Present Tense.*

1. -er,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
2. -ear,	-eāris or -eāre,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eāmīni,	-eantur.
3. -ar,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
4. -iar,	-iāris or -iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāmīni,	-iantur.

*Imperfect.*

1. -ārer,	-ārēris or -ārēre,	-ārētur;	-ārēmur,	-ārēmīni,	-ārentur.
2. -ērer,	-ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
3. -īrer,	-irēris or -irēre,	-irētur;	-irēmur,	-irēmīni,	-irentur.

*Imperative Mode.*

2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -āre or -ātor,	ātor;	-āmīni,	-antor.
2. -ēre or -ētor,	ētor;	-ēmīni,	-entor.
3. -īre or -ītor,	ītor;	-īmīni,	-untor.
4. -ire or -itor:	-itor;	-imīni,	-untor.

*Observe.* Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam*; *iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the conjugations Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Perf.</i> -i,	-isti	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	-erunt or ēre.
<i>Plu.</i> -ēram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-ērāmus,	-ērātis,	-ērāt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Perf.</i> -ētim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-ērimus,	-ēritis,	-ērint.
<i>Plu.</i> -iissem,	-iissem,	-iisset;	-iissemus,	-iissetis,	-iissent.
<i>Fut.</i> -ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-ērimus,	-ēritis,	-ērint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

§ 117. *SUM* is an irregular verb, and is thus conjugated :

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>
<i>Sum,</i>	<i>esse,</i>	<i>fui. To be.</i>

### INDICATIVE MODE.

#### PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Person 1.	<i>Sum, I am.</i>	<i>Sumus, We are.</i>
2.	<i>Ea, Thou art, or you are.</i>	<i>Estis, Ye or you are.</i>
3.	<i>Est, He is.</i>	<i>Sunt, They are.</i>

#### IMPERFECT. *was.*

1.	<i>Eram, I was.</i>	<i>Erāmus, We were.</i>
2.	<i>Eras, Thou wast, or you were.</i>	<i>Erātis, Ye or you were.</i>
3.	<i>Erat, He was.</i>	<i>Erant, They were.</i>

#### PERFECT. *have been or was.*

1.	<i>Fui, I have been.</i>	<i>Fuimus, We have been.</i>
2.	<i>Fuisti, Thou hast been.</i>	<i>Fuistis, Ye have been.</i>
3.	<i>Fuit, He has been.</i>	<i>Fuerunt, or -ere, They have been.</i>

#### PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

1.	<i>Fuēram, I had been.</i>	<i>Fuerāmus, We had been.</i>
2.	<i>Fuēras, Thou hadst been.</i>	<i>Fuerātis, Ye had been.</i>
3.	<i>Fuērat, He had been.</i>	<i>Fuerant, They had been.</i>

#### FUTURE. *shall or will.\**

1.	<i>Ero, I shall be.</i>	<i>Erimus, We shall be.</i>
2.	<i>Eris, Thou wilt be.</i>	<i>Eritis, Ye will be.</i>
3.	<i>Erit, He will be.</i>	<i>Erunt, They will be.</i>

### SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

#### PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

1.	<i>Sim, I may be.</i>	<i>Simus, We may be.</i>
2.	<i>Sis, Thou mayest be.</i>	<i>Sitis, Ye may be.</i>
3.	<i>Sit, He may be.</i>	<i>Sint, They may be.</i>

#### IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

1.	<i>Essem, I might be.</i>	<i>Essemus, We might be.</i>
2.	<i>Esces, Thou mightest be.</i>	<i>Essetis, Ye might be.</i>
3.	<i>Esset, He might be.</i>	<i>Essetent, They might be.</i>

\* *Shall* and *will* are always employed to express future time.

*Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens ; in the second and third persons, only foretells : *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells ; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question ; thus, " *I shall go*," " *you will go*," express event only ; but " *will you go ?*" imports intention ; and " *shall I go ?*" refers to the will of another.

PERFECT. *may have.*

1. Fuërim, <i>I may have been.</i>	Fuerimus, <i>We may have been.</i>
2. Fuëris, <i>Thou mayest have been.</i>	Fueritis, <i>Ye may have been.</i>
3. Fuërit, <i>He may have been.</i>	Fuerint, <i>They may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

1. Fuissem, <i>I might have been.</i>	Fuissemus, <i>We might have been.</i>
2. Fuisses, <i>Thou mightest have been.</i>	Fuissetis, <i>Ye might have been.</i>
3. Fuisset, <i>He might have been.</i>	Fuisset, <i>They might have been.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

1. Fuëro, <i>I shall have been.</i>	Fuerimus, <i>We shall have been.</i>
2. Fuëris, <i>Thou wilt have been.</i>	Fueritis, <i>Ye will have been.</i>
3. Fuërit, <i>He will have been.</i>	Fuerint, <i>They will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Es or esto, <i>Be thou.</i>	Este or Estote, <i>Be ye, or be you.</i>
3. Esto, <i>Let him be.</i>	Sunto, <i>Let them be.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Esse,	To be.
PERF. Fuisse,	To have been.
FUT. Esse futurus, -a, -um,	To be about to be.
Fuisse futurus, -a, -um,	To have been about to be.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. Futurus, -a, -um. *About to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood ; because the several persons are distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner, however, at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb ; thus, *ego sum*, I am ; *tu es*, thou art, or you are ; *ille est*, he is ; *nos sumus*, we are ; &c. So *ego amo*, I love ; *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love ; *ille amat*, he loveth or loves ; *nos amamus*, we love, &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse ; as, *tu es*, thou art, or much oftener, you are ; *tu eras*, thou wast, or you were ; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, or you may be ; &c. So, *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love ; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, or you loved ; &c.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
§ 118. Amo,	amare,	amavi,	amatum, To love.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *love, do love, or am loving.*

S. Am-o, <i>I love.</i>	P. Am-amus, <i>We love.</i>
Am-as, <i>Thou lovest.</i>	Am-atis, <i>Ye or you love.</i>
Am-at, <i>He loves.</i>	Am-ant, <i>They love</i>

IMPERFECT. *was loving or did love.*

S. Am-ābam, *I was loving.*  
 Am-ābas, *Thou wast loving.*  
 Am-ābat, *He was loving.*

P. Am-abāmus, *We were loving.*  
 Am-abātis, *Ye or you were loving.*  
 Am-ābant, *They were loving.*

PERFECT. *have.*

S. Am-āvi, *I have loved.*  
 Am-avisti, *Thou hast loved.*  
 Am-āvit, *He has loved.*

P. Am-avimus, *We have loved.*  
 Am-avistis, *Ye or you have loved.*  
 Am-avērunt, or } *They have loved.*  
 -avēre,

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

S. Am-avēram, *I had loved.*  
 Am-avēras, *Thou hadst loved.*  
 Am-avērat, *He had loved.*

P. Am-averāmus, *We had loved.*  
 Am-averātis, *Ye or you had loved.*  
 Am-avērant, *They had loved.*

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

S. Am-ābo, *I shall love.*  
 Am-ābis, *Thou wilt love.*  
 Am-ābit, *He will love.*

P. Am-ābimus, *We shall love.*  
 Am-ābitis, *Ye or you will love.*  
 Am-ābunt, *They will love.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

S. Am-em, *I may love.*  
 Am-es, *Thou mayest love.*  
 Am-et, *He may love.*

P. Am-ēmus, *We may love.*  
 Am-ētis, *Ye or you may love.*  
 Am-ent, *They may love.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

S. Am-ērem, *I might love.*  
 Am-ēres, *Thou mightest love.*  
 Am-ēret, *He might love.*

P. Am-erēmus, *We might love.*  
 Am-arētis, *Ye or you might love.*  
 Am-arēt, *They might love.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

S. Am-avērim, *I may have loved.*  
 Am-avēris, *Thou mayest have loved.*  
 Am-avērit, *He may have loved.*

P. Am-averimus, *We may have loved.*  
 Am-averitis, } *Ye or you may have*  
 } *loved.*  
 Am-avērint, *They may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *might have.*

S. Am-avissēm, *I might have loved.*  
 Am-avisses, } *Thou mightest have*  
 } *loved.*  
 Am-avisset, *He might have loved.*

P. Am-avissēmus, *We might have loved.*  
 Am-avissētis, } *Ye or you might have*  
 } *loved.*  
 Am-avissent, *They might have loved.*

\* The second person of the present subjunctive, and the second person of the perfect, are used for the imperative; as, *ne me ATTINGAS*, 'do not touch me'; *nec illos JUVERIS*, 'nor assist them.'

The first person plural of the present subjunctive is used only in encouraging or resolving; as, *moriamur*, 'let us die'; *in arma RUAMUS*, 'let us rush to arms.'

FUTURE. *shall have.*

S. Am-avēro, *I shall have loved.*  
 Am-avēris, *Thou wilt have loved.*  
 Am-avērit, *He will have loved.*

P. Am-averimus, *We shall have loved.*  
 Am-averitis, } *Ye or you will have loved.*  
 Am-avērint, } *They will have loved.*

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2. Am-a or am-āto,  
 3. Am-āto,  
 Plur. 2. Am-āte, or am-atūte,  
 3. Am-anto,

*Love thou, or do thou love.*  
*Let him love.*  
*Love ye, or do ye love.*  
*Let them love.*

## INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Am-āre,  
 PERF. Am-avisse;  
 FUT. Esse amatūrus, -a, -um,  
 visse amatūrus, -a, -um,

*To love.*  
*To have loved.*  
*To be about to love.*  
*To have been about to love.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Am-ans,  
 FUT. Am-atūrus, -a, -um,

*Loving.*  
*About to love.*

## GERUNDS.

Nom. Am-andum,  
 Gen. Am-andi,  
 Dat. Am-ando,  
 Acc. Am-andum,  
 Abl. Am-ando,

*Loving.*  
*Of loving.*  
*To loving.*  
*Loving.*  
*With loving.*

## SUPINES.

Former. Am-ātum,  
 Latter. Am-ātu,

*To love.*  
*To love, or to be loved.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.

Pres. Infm.

Perf. Part.

§ 119. Amor,

amāri,

amātus, *To be loved.*

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

S. Am-or, *I am loved.*  
 Am-āris or -āre, *Thou art loved.*  
 Am-ātur, *He is loved.*

P. Am-āmur, *We are loved.*  
 Am-amīni, *Ye or you are loved.*  
 Am-antur, *They are loved.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S. Am-ābar, *I was loved.*  
 Am-abāris, or } *Thou wast loved.*  
 -abāre, }  
 Am-abātur, *He was loved.*

P. Am-abāmur, *We were loved.*  
 Am-abamīni, *Ye or you were loved.*  
 Am-abantur, *They were loved.*

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus sum or fui,	<i>I have been loved.</i>
Amātus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved.</i>
Amātus est or fuit,	<i>He has been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti sumus or fuimus,	<i>We have been loved.</i>
Amāti, estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been loved.</i>
Amāti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been loved.</i>
Amātus eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been loved.</i>
Amātus erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti erāmus or fuērāmus,	<i>We had been loved.</i>
Amāti erātis or fuērātis,	<i>Ye or you had been loved.</i>
Amāti erant or fuerant,	<i>They had been loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

<i>S.</i> Am-abor,	<i>I shall be loved.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-abimur,	<i>We shall be loved.</i>
Am-abēris or	<i>} Thou wilt be loved.</i>	Am-abimīni,	<i>Ye or you will be loved.</i>
-abēre,		Am-abuntur,	<i>They will be loved.</i>
Am-abitur,	<i>He will be loved.</i>		

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can be.*

<i>S.</i> Am-er,	<i>I may be loved.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-ēmur,	<i>We may be loved.</i>
Am-ēris or ēre,	<i>Thou mayest be loved.</i>	Am-emīni,	<i>Ye or you may be loved.</i>
Am-ētur,	<i>He may be loved.</i>	Am-entur,	<i>They may be loved.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>S.</i> Am-ārer,	<i>I might be loved.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-arēmur,	<i>We might be loved.</i>
Am-arēris or	<i>} Thou mightest be loved.</i>	Am-aremīni,	<i>Ye or you might be loved.</i>
-arēre,		Am-arentur,	<i>They might be loved.</i>
Am-arētur,	<i>He might be loved.</i>		

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus sim or fuērim,	<i>I may have been loved.</i>
Amātus sis or fuēris,	<i>Thou mayest have been loved.</i>
Amātus sit or fuērit,	<i>He may have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti simus or fuērīmus,	<i>We may have been loved.</i>
Amāti sitis or fuērītis,	<i>Ye or you may have been loved.</i>
Amāti sint or fuērīnt,	<i>They may have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus essem or fuissem,	<i>I might have been loved.</i>
Amātus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been loved.</i>
Amātus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti essemus or fuissemus,	<i>We might have been loved.</i>
Amāti essētis or fuissetis,	<i>Ye or you might have been loved.</i>
Amāti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus fuēro,	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>
Amātus fuēris,	<i>Thou wilt have been loved.</i>
Amātus fuērit,	<i>He will have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been loved.</i>
Amāti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been loved.</i>
Amāti fuerint,	<i>They will have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-āre, or am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved.</i>
3. Am-ātor,	<i>Let him be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-amini,	<i>Be ye loved.</i>
3. Am-antor,	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āri,	<i>To be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Esse or fuisse amātus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Amātum iri,	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i> Am-ātus, -a, -um,	<i>Loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Am-andus, -a, -um,	<i>To be loved.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Dōcēo,	dōcēre,	dōcui,	doctum, <i>To teach.</i>

INDICATIVE MODE.

<i>PRESENT.</i> <i>teach, or am teaching.</i>	<i>IMPERFECT.</i> <i>was.</i>	<i>PERFECT.</i> <i>have.</i>	<i>PLUPERFECT.</i> <i>had.</i>	<i>FUTURE.</i> <i>shall or will.</i>
<i>S.</i> Doc-ēo, Doc-es, Doc-et,	<i>S.</i> Doc-ēbam, Doc-ēbas, Doc-ēbat,	<i>S.</i> Doc-ui, Doc-uisti, Doc-uit,	<i>S.</i> Doc-uēram, Doc-uēras, Doc-uērat,	<i>S.</i> Doc-ēbo, Doc-ēbis, Doc-ēbit,
<i>P.</i> Doc-ēmus, Doc-ētis, Doc-ent.	<i>P.</i> Doc-ebāmus, Doc-ebātis, Doc-ebant.	<i>P.</i> Doc-uīmus, Doc-uistis, Doc-uērunt, or -uēre.	<i>P.</i> Doc-uērāmus, Doc-uērātis, Doc-uērant.	<i>P.</i> Doc-ebīmus, Doc-ebitis, Doc-ebunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

<i>PRESENT.</i> <i>may or can.</i>	<i>IMPERFECT.</i> <i>might, could, would, or should.</i>	<i>PERFECT.</i> <i>may have.</i>	<i>PLUPERFECT.</i> <i>might, could, would, or should have.</i>	<i>FUTURE.</i> <i>shall have.</i>
<i>S.</i> Doc-eam, Doc-eas, Doc-eat.	<i>S.</i> Doc-ērem, Doc-ēres, Doc-ēret,	<i>S.</i> Doc-uērim, Doc-uēris, Doc-uērit,	<i>S.</i> Doc-uissēam, Doc-uisses, Doc-uisset,	<i>S.</i> Doc-uēro, Doc-uēris, Doc-uērit,
<i>P.</i> Doc-eāmus, Doc-eātis, Doc-eant.	<i>P.</i> Doc-erāmus, Doc-erātis, Doc-erent.	<i>P.</i> Doc-uērīmus, Doc-uērītis, Doc-uērīnt.	<i>P.</i> Doc-uissēmūs, Doc-uissētis, Doc-uissent.	<i>P.</i> Doc-uērīmus, Doc-uērītis, Doc-uērīnt.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>S.</i> 2. Doc-e or doc-ēto,	<i>Teach thou.</i>
3. Doc-ēto,	<i>Let him teach.</i>
<i>P.</i> 2. Doc-ēte or doc-etūte,	<i>Teach ye or you.</i>
3. Doc-ento,	<i>Let them teach.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ēre,	<i>To teach.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-uisse,	<i>To have taught.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Esse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to teach.</i>
Fuisse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to teach.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Doc-ens, *Teaching.*  
 FUT. Doc-tūrus, -a, -um, *About to teach.*

## SUPINES.

Former. Doc-tum, *To teach.*  
 Latter. Doc-tu, *To teach or to be taught.*

## GERUNDS.

Nom. Doc-endum, *Teaching.*  
 Gen. Doc-endi, *Of teaching.*  
 Dat. Doc-endo, *To teaching.*  
 Acc. Doc-endum, *Teaching.*  
 Abl. Doc-endo, *With teaching.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.  
 § 121. Dōcēor,

Pres. Infīn.  
 dōcēri,

Perf. Part.  
 doctus, *To be taught.*

## INDICATIVE MODE.

## PRESENT.

am.

S. Doc-ēor,  
 Doc-ēris or do-cēre,  
 Doc-ētur,  
 P. Doc-ēmur,  
 Doc-emīni,  
 Doc-entur.

## IMPERFECT.

was.

S. Doc-ēbar,  
 Doc-ebāris, or doc-ebāre,  
 Doc-ebātur,  
 P. Doc-ebāmur,  
 Doc-ebamīni,  
 Doc-ebantur.

## PERFECT.

have been, was, or am.

S. Doctus sum or fui,  
 Doctus es or fuisti,  
 Doctus est or fuit,  
 P. Docti sumus or fuimus,  
 Docti estis or fuistis,  
 Docti sunt or fuērunt or  
 fuēre.

## PLUPERFECT.

had been.

S. Doctus eram or fuēram,  
 Doctus eras or fuēras,  
 Doctus erat or fuērat,  
 P. Docti erāmus or fuerāmus,  
 Docti erātis or fuerātis,  
 Docti erant or fuērant.

## FUTURE.

shall or will be.

S. Doc-ēbor,  
 Doc-ebēris or -ebēre,  
 Doc-ebītur,  
 P. Doc-ebīmur,  
 Doc-ebimīni,  
 Doc-ebuntur.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## PRESENT TENSE.

may, or can be.

S. Doc-ear,  
 Doc-eāris or -eāre,  
 Doc-eātur,  
 P. Doc-eāmur,  
 Doc-eamīni,  
 Doc-eantur.

## IMPERFECT.

might, could, would, or should be.

S. Doc-ērer,  
 Doc-erēris or -erēre,  
 Doc-erētur,  
 P. Doc-erēmur,  
 Doc-eremīni,  
 Doc-erentur.

## PERFECT.

may have been.

S. Doctus sim or fuērim,  
 Doctus sis or fuēris,  
 Doctus sit or fuērit,  
 P. Docti simus or fuerīmus,  
 Docti sitis or fuerītis,  
 Docti sint or fuērint.

## PLUPERFECT.

might, could, would, or should have been.

S. Doctus essem or fuissem,  
 Doctus esses or fuisses,  
 Doctus esset or fuisset,  
 P. Docti essemus or fuissemus,  
 Docti essētis or fuissetis,  
 Docti essent or fuissent.

## FUTURE.

shall have been.

S. Doctus fuēro,  
 Doctus fuēris,  
 Doctus fuērit,  
 P. Docti fuērīmus,  
 Docti fuerītis,  
 Docti fuērint.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2. Doc-ēre or doc-ētor,  
 3. Doc-ētor,  
 Plur. 2. Doc-emīni,  
 3. Doc-entor.

*Be thou taught.*  
*Let him be taught.*  
*Be ye taught.*  
*Let them be taught.*



## INFINITIVE MODE.

<b>PRÆS.</b> Doc-ēri,	<i>To be taught.</i>
<b>PERF.</b> Esse or fuisse doctus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been taught.</i>
<b>FUT.</b> Doctum iri,	<i>To be about to be taught.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<b>PERF.</b> Doc-tus, -a, -um,	<i>Taught.</i>
<b>FUT.</b> Doc-endus, -a, -um,	<i>To be taught.</i>

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>PRÆS. IND.</i>	<i>PRÆS. INF.</i>	<i>PERF. IND.</i>	<i>SUPINE.</i>
§ 122. Lēgo,	lēgēre,	lēgi,	lectum, <i>To read.</i>

## INDICATIVE MODE.

<b>PRESENT.</b> <i>read, or am reading.</i>	<b>IMPERFECT.</b> <i>was.</i>	<b>PERFECT.</b> <i>have.</i>	<b>PLUPERFECT.</b> <i>had.</i>	<b>FUTURE.</b> <i>shall, or will.</i>
<b>S.</b> Leg-o, Leg-is, Leg-it,	<b>S.</b> Leg-ēbam, Leg-ēbas, Leg-ēbat,	<b>S.</b> Lēg-i, Leg-isti, Lēg-it,	<b>S.</b> Leg-ēram, Leg-ēras, Leg-ērat,	<b>S.</b> Leg-am, Leg-es, Leg-et,
<b>P.</b> Leg-īmus, Leg-ītis, Leg-unt.	<b>P.</b> Leg-ebāmus, Leg-ebātis, Leg-ēbant.	<b>P.</b> Leg-īmus, Leg-istis, Leg-ērunt or -ēre.	<b>P.</b> Leg-erāmus, Leg-erātis, Leg-erant.	<b>P.</b> Leg-ēmus, Leg-ētis, Leg-ent.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

<b>PRESENT.</b> <i>may, or can.</i>	<b>IMPERFECT.</b> <i>might, could, would, or should.</i>	<b>PERFECT.</b> <i>may have.</i>	<b>PLUPERFECT.</b> <i>might, could, would, or should have.</i>	<b>FUTURE.</b> <i>shall have.</i>
<b>S.</b> Leg-am, Leg-as, Leg-at,	<b>S.</b> Leg-ērem, Leg-ēres, Leg-eret,	<b>S.</b> Leg-ērim, Leg-ēris, Leg-erit,	<b>S.</b> Leg-issēm, Leg-isses, Leg-isset,	<b>S.</b> Leg-ēro, Leg-ēris, Leg-erit,
<b>P.</b> Leg-āmus, Leg-ātis, Leg-ant.	<b>P.</b> Leg-erēmus, Leg-erētis, Leg-erent.	<b>P.</b> Leg-erīmus, Leg-eritis, Leg-erint.	<b>P.</b> Leg-issēmus, Leg-issētis, Leg-issent.	<b>P.</b> Leg-erīmus, Leg-eritis, Leg-erint.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<b>S. 2</b> Leg-e or leg-ito,	<i>Read thou.</i>
<b>3</b> Leg-ito,	<i>Let him read.</i>
<b>P. 2</b> Leg-ite or leg-itōte,	<i>Read ye or you,</i>
<b>3</b> Leg-unto,	<i>Let them read.</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<b>PRÆS.</b> Leg-ēre,	<i>To read.</i>
<b>PERF.</b> Leg-isse,	<i>To have read.</i>
<b>FUT.</b> Esse lectūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to read.</i>
Fuisse lectūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to read.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Leg-ens, *Reading.*  
 FUT. Lectūrus, -a, -um, *About to read.*

## SUPINES.

Former. Lec-tum, *To read.*  
 Latter. Lectu, *To read or to be read.*

## GERUNDS.

Nom. Leg-endum, *Reading.*  
 Gen. Leg-endi, *Of reading.*  
 Dat. Leg-endo, *To reading.*  
 Acc. Leg-endum, *Reading.*  
 Abl. Leg-endo, *With reading.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.  
 § 123. Lēgor,

Pres. Infm.  
 lēgi,

Perf. Part.  
 lectus, *To be read.*

## INDICATIVE MODE.

## PRESENT.

*am.*  
 S. Leg-or,  
 Leg-ēris or -ēre,  
 Leg-itur,  
 P. Leg-imur,  
 Leg-imini,  
 Leg-untur.

## IMPERFECT.

*was.*  
 S. Leg-ēbar,  
 Leg-ebāris or -ebāre,  
 Leg-ebātur,  
 P. Leg-ebāmur,  
 Leg-ebamini,  
 Leg-ebantur.

## PERFECT.

*have been, was or am.*  
 S. Lectus sum or fui,  
 Lectus es or fuisti,  
 Lectus est or fuit,  
 P. Lecti sumus or fuimus,  
 Lecti estis or fuistis,  
 Lecti sunt or fuerunt or  
 fuere.

## PLUPERFECT.

*And been.*  
 S. Lectus eram or fuēram,  
 Lectus eras or fuēras,  
 Lectus erat or fuērat,  
 P. Lecti erāmus or fuerāmus,  
 Lecti erātis or fuerātis,  
 Lecti erant or fuerant.

## FUTURE.

*shall, or will be.*  
 S. Leg-ar,  
 Leg-ēris or -ēre,  
 Leg-etur,  
 P. Leg-ēmur,  
 Leg-emini,  
 Leg-entur.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## PRESENT.

*may or can be.*  
 S. Leg-ar,  
 Leg-ēris, or -ēre,  
 Leg-atur,  
 P. Leg-āmur,  
 Leg-amini,  
 Leg-antur.

## IMPERFECT.

*might, could, would, or should be.*  
 S. Leg-ēr,er,  
 Leg-ērēris or -ērēre,  
 Leg-ērēt,ur,  
 P. Leg-ērēm,ur,  
 Leg-eremini,  
 Leg-erent,ur.

## PERFECT.

*may have been.*  
 S. Lectus sim or fuērīm,  
 Lectus sis or fuēris,  
 Lectus sit or fuērit,  
 P. Lecti simus or fuerīm,us,  
 Lecti sitis or fueritis,  
 Lecti sint or fuērint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*might, could, would, or should have been.*  
 S. Lectus essem or fuissēm,  
 Lectus esses or fuisses,  
 Lectus esset or fuisset,  
 P. Lecti essēmus or fuissēm,us,  
 Lecti essētis or fuissētis,  
 Lecti essent or fuissent.

## FUTURE.

*shall have been.*  
 S. Lectus fuēro,  
 Lectus fuēris,  
 Lectus fuērit,  
 P. Lecti fuerīm,us,  
 Lecti fueritis,  
 Lecti fuērint.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

S. 2. Leg-ere or -itor,  
 3. Leg-itor,  
 P. 2. Leg-imini,  
 3. Leg-untor,

*Be thou read.*  
*Let him be read.*  
*Be ye read.*  
*Let them be read.*

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<b>PRÆS.</b> Leg-i,	<i>To be read.</i>
<b>PERF.</b> Esse or fuisse lectus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been read.</i>
<b>FUT.</b> Lectum iri,	<i>To be about to be read.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<b>PERF.</b> Leo-tus, -a, -um,	<i>Read.</i>
<b>FUT.</b> Leg-endus, -a, -um,	<i>To be read.</i>

§ 124. Example of a verb of the third conjugation ending in *io*.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<b>Præs. Ind.</b>	<b>Præs. Inf.</b>	<b>Perf. Ind.</b>	<b>Supine.</b>
Capio.	Capere,	Cēpi,	Captum, <i>to take.</i>

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<b>S.</b> Capio, Capis, Capit,	<b>S.</b> Capiēbam, Capiēbas, Capiēbat,	<b>S.</b> Cēpi, Cēpisti, Cēpit,	<b>S.</b> Cēpēram, Cēpēras, Cēpērat,	<b>S.</b> Capiam, Capiēs, Capiēt,
<b>P.</b> Capīmus, Capītis, Capiunt.	<b>P.</b> Capiēbāmus, Capiēbātis, Capiēbant.	<b>P.</b> Cēpīmus, Cēpistis, Cēperunt, or cēpēre.	<b>P.</b> Cēperāmus, Cēperātis, Cēperant.	<b>P.</b> Capiēmus, Capiētis, Capient.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<b>S.</b> Capiam, Capias, Capiat,	<b>S.</b> Capērem, Capēres, Capēret,	<b>S.</b> Cēpērim, Cēpēris, Cēpērit,	<b>S.</b> Cēpissē, Cēpissēs, Cēpisset,	<b>S.</b> Cēpēro, Cēpēris, Cēpērit,
<b>P.</b> Capiamus, Capiātis, Capiant.	<b>P.</b> Caperēmus, Caperētis, Caperēnt.	<b>P.</b> Cēperīmus, Cēperītis, Cēperīnt.	<b>P.</b> Cēpissēmus, Cēpissētis, Cēpissent.	<b>P.</b> Cēperīmus, Cēperītis, Cēperīnt.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Cape or Capito,
3. Capito.
2. Capite or Capitote,
3. Capito.

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<b>PRÆS.</b> Capere,
<b>PERF.</b> Cēpisse.
<b>FUT.</b> Esse captūrus, -a, -um, Fuisse captūrus, -a, -um.

## PARTICIPLES.

**PRESENT.** Capiens.  
**FUTURE.** Captūrus.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* Captum.  
*Latter.* Captu.

## GERUNDS.

*Nom.* Capiendum,  
*Gen.* Capiendi,  
*Dat.* Capiendo,  
*Acc.* Capiendum,  
*Ab.* Capiendo.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
§ 125. Capior,	Capi,	Captus, <i>To be taken.</i>

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.
S. Capior, Capēris or Capēre, Capītur,	S. Capiebat, Capiebāris, or -bāre, Capiebātur,	S. Captus sum or fui, Captus es or fuisti, Captus es or fuit,
P. Capimur, Capimīni, Capiuntur.	P. Capiebāmur, Capiebamīni, Capiebantur.	P. Capti sumus or fuimus, Capti estis or fuistis, Capti sunt or fuerunt or fuere.
PLUPERFECT.		FUTURE.
S. Captus eram or fuēram, Captus erās or fuēras, Captus erat or fuērat,		S. Capiar, Capieris or capiere, Capiētur,
P. Capti erāmus or fuerāmus, Capti erātis or fuerātis, Capti erant or fuerant.		P. Capiēmur, Capiamīni, Capiantur.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.
S. Capiar, Capiāris or capiāre, Capiātur,	S. Capērer, Caperēris or -erēre, Caperētur,	S. Captus sim or fuērim, Captus sis or fuēris, Captus sit or fuērit,
P. Capiāmur, Capiamīni, Capiantur.	P. Caperēmur, Caperemīni, Caperentur.	P. Capti simus or fuerimus, Capti sitis or fueritis, Capti sint or fuerint.
PLUPERFECT.		FUTURE.
S. Captus essem or fuissem, Captus esses or fuisses, Captus esset or fuisset,		S. Captus fuēro, Captus fuēris, Captus fuērit,
P. Capti essemus or fuissemus, Capti essētis or fuissetis, Capti essent or fuissent.		P. Capti fuerimus, Capti fueritis, Capti fuerint.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Capēre or capitor,  
3. Capitor.  
2. Capimīni,  
3. Capiuntor.

## INFINITIVE MODE.

- PRES. Capi.  
PERF. Esse or fuisse captus, -a, -um.  
FUT. Captum iri.

PERF. Captus, -a, -um.

FUT. Capiendus, -a, -um.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
§ 126. Audio,	audire,	audivi,	audītum, <i>To hear.</i>

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT. <i>hear, or am hearing.</i>	IMPERFECT. <i>was.</i>	PERFECT. <i>have.</i>	PLUPERFECT. <i>had.</i>	FUTURE. <i>shall or will.</i>
S. Aud-io, Aud-is, Aud-it,	S. Aud-iēbam, Aud-iēbas, Aud-iēbat,	S. Aud-īvi, Aud-īvisti, Aud-īvit,	S. Aud-ivēram, Aud-ivēras, Aud-ivērat,	S. Aud-iam, Aud-ies, Aud-iet,
P. Aud-īmus, Aud-ītis, Aud-iunt.	P. Aud-iēbāmus, Aud-iēbātis, Aud-iēbant.	P. Aud-ivīmus, Aud-ivistis, Aud-ivērunt, or -ivēre.	P. Aud-iverā- mus, Aud-iverātis, Aud-ivērant,	P. Aud-iēmus, Aud-iētis, Aud-ient.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT. <i>may or can.</i>	IMPERFECT. <i>might, could, would, or should.</i>	PERFECT. <i>may have.</i>	PLUPERFECT. <i>might, could, would, or should have.</i>	FUTURE. <i>shall have.</i>
S. Aud-iam, Aud-ias, Aud-iat,	S. Aud-irem, Aud-ires, Aud-iret,	S. Aud-ivēim, Aud-ivēris, Aud-ivērit,	S. Aud-ivissem, Aud-ivisses, Aud-ivisset,	S. Aud-ivēro, Aud-ivēris, Aud-ivērit,
P. Aud-iāmus, Aud-iātis, Aud-iant.	P. Aud-irēmus, Aud-irētis, Aud-irēnt.	P. Aud-iverī- mus, Aud-iverītis, Aud-iverint.	P. Aud-ivissē- mus, Aud-ivissētis, Aud-ivissent.	P. Aud-iverimus, Aud-iveritis, Aud-iverint.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2. Aud-i or -ito, 3. Aud-ito,	Hear thou. Let him hear.
Plur. 2. Aud-ite or -itūte, 3. Aud-iunto,	Hear ye or you. Let them hear.

## INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Aud-ire,	To hear.
PERF. Aud-ivisse,	To have heard.
FUT. Esse aud-itūrus, -a, -um, Fuisse aud-itūrus, -a, -um.	To be about to hear. To have been about to hear.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Aud-iens,	Hearing.
FUT. Aud-itūrus, -a, -um,	About to hear.

## SUPINES.

Former. Aud-itum,	To hear.
Latter. Aud-itu,	To hear, or to be heard.

## GERUNDS.

Nom. Aud-iendum,	Hearing.
Gen. Aud-iendi,	Of hearing.
Dat. Aud-iendo,	To hearing.
Acc. Aud-iendum,	Hearing.
Abl. Aud-iendo,	With hearing.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infm.	Perf. Part.
§ 127. Audior,	audīri,	audītus, To be heard.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT. <i>am.</i>	IMPERFECT. <i>was.</i>	PERFECT. <i>have been.</i>
S. Aud-ior, Aud-iris, or -īre, Aud-itur,	S. Aud-iebar, Aud-iebāris or } -iebāre, Aud-iebātur,	S. Audītus sum or fui, Audītus es or fuisti, Audītus est or fuit,
P. Aud-īmur, Aud-imīni, Aud-iuntur.	P. Aud-iebāmur, Aud-iebamīni, Aud-iebantur.	P. Audīti sumus or fuimus, Audīti estis or fuistis, Audīti sunt or fuerunt or fuere.

## PLUPERFECT.

*had been.*

- S. Audītus eram or fuēram,  
Audītus eras or fuēras,  
Audītus erat or fuērat,  
P. Audīti erāmus or fuerāmus,  
Audīti erātis or fuerātis,  
Audīti erant or fuērant.

## FUTURE.

*shall or will be.*

- S. Aud-iar,  
Aud-iēris or -iēre,  
Aud-iētur,  
P. Aud-iēmur,  
Aud-iemīni,  
Aud-ientur.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## PRESENT.

*may or can be.*

- S. Aud-iar  
Aud-iāris, or }  
-iāre, }  
Aud-iātur,  
P. Aud-iāmur,  
Aud-iamīni,  
Aud-iantur.

## IMPERFECT.

*might, could, would, or should be.*

- S. Aud-īrer,  
Aud-irēris or }  
-rēre, }  
Aud-irētur,  
P. Aud-irēmur,  
Aud-iremīni,  
Aud-irentur.

## PERFECT.

*may have been.*

- S. Audītus sim or fuērim,  
Audītus sis or fuēris,  
Audītus sit or fuērit,  
P. Audīti simus or fuerī-  
mus,  
Audīti sitis or fuerītis,  
Audīti sint or fuērint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*might, could, would, or should have been.*

- S. Audītus essem or fuissem,  
Audītus esses or fuisses,  
Audītus esset or fuisset,  
P. Audīti essemus or fuissēmus,  
Audīti essetis or fuissetis,  
Audīti essent or fuissent,

## FUTURE.

*shall have been.*

- S. Audītus fuēro,  
Audītus fuēris,  
Audītus fuērit,  
P. Audīti fuerīmus,  
Audīti fuerītis,  
Audīti fuērint,

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

- S. 2. Aud-īre or -ītor,  
3. Aud-itor,  
P. 2. Aud-imīni,  
3. Aud-iuntor,

*Be thou heard.  
Let him be heard.  
Be ye heard.  
Let them be heard.*

## INFINITIVE MODE.

- PRES. Aud-iri,  
PERF. Esse or fuisse audītus, -a, -um,  
FUT. Audītum iri,

*To be heard.  
To have been heard.  
To be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

- PERF. Aud-ītus,  
FUT. Aud-iendus,

*Heard.  
To be heard.\**

## DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

§ 128. A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lōquor*, I speak; *mōrior*, I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *crīmīnor*, I accuse, or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have *laid aside* the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lætor, lætari, lætātus*, to rejoice; *vëreor, vërëri, verītus*, to fear; *fungor, fungi, functus*, to discharge an office; *pōtior, pōtiri, pōtītus*, to enjoy, to be master of.

Conjugation of the deponent verb *Miror*, 'I admire.' *Miror, mirāris* or *-āre, mirāri, mirātus*.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

- PRES.** *Miror, I admire; mirāris* or *-āre, thou admirest, &c.*  
**IMP.** *Mirābar, -abāris* or *-ābare, &c., I admired, &c.*  
**PERF.** *Mirātus sum, or fui; mirātus es* or *tuiati, &c., I have, &c.*  
**PLUP.** *Mirātus eram, or fuëram, &c., I had admired, &c.*  
**FUT.** *Mirābor; mirabëris, or mirabëre, &c., I shall admire, &c.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

- PRES.** *Mirer; mirëris* or *-ëre, &c., I may admire, &c.*  
**IMP.** *Mirārer; arëris* or *-arëre, &c., I might admire, &c.*  
**PERF.** *Mirātus sim, or fuërim, &c., I may have admired, &c.*  
**PLUP.** *Mirātus essem, or fuissem, &c., I might have admired, &c.*  
**FUT.** *Mirātus ero, or fuëro, &c., I shall have admired, &c.*

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

- PRES.** *Mirāre* or *mirātor, &c., admire thou, or do thou admire, &c.*

## INFINITIVE MODE.

- PRES.** *Mirāri, to admire.*  
**PERF.** *Mirātus esse* or *fuisse, to have admired.*  
**FUT.** *Miratūrus esse, to be about to admire.*  
*Miratūm iri, to be about to be admired.*  
*Miratūrus fuisse, to have been about to admire.*  
*Mirandus fuisse, to have been about to be admired.*

## PARTICIPLES.

- PRES.** *Mirans, admiring.*  
**PERF.** *Mirātus, having admired.*  
**FUT.** *in rus. Miratūrus, about to admire.*  
*pus. Mirandus, to be admired.*

## GERUNDS.

*Mirandum, -di, -do, and -dum.*

## SUPINES.

*Miratūm, mirātu.*

## FORMATION OF VERBS.

§ 129. There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *O* of the present, *I* of the perfect indicative, *RE* of the infinitive, and *UM* of the supine.\* A verb is commonly said to be conjugated when only these parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present indicative is called the *Theme*, or the *Root* of the verb; because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ēre*, or *-īre*, of the infinitive, are called *radical* letters, because they always remain the same. By putting these before the *terminations*, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

§ 130 The *Imperfect indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābam*; as, *am-o*, *am-ābam*:—in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into *bam*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bam*:—in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ēbam*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-ēbam*; *audi-o*, *audi-ēbam*.

The *Pluperfect indicative* is formed from the *perfect* in all the conjugations by changing *i* into *eram*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-eram*; *docu-i*, *docu-eram*; *leg-i*, *leg-eram*; *audi-v-i*, *audi-eram*.

The *Future indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābo*; as, *am-o*, *am-ābo*; in the second conjugation by changing *o* into *bo*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bo*; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

§ 131. The *Present subjunctive* is formed from the present indicative by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *em*; as, *am-o*, *am-em*; in the second, third, and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am*; as, *doce-o*, *doce-am*; *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.

The *Imperfect subjunctive* is formed, in all the conjugations, from the present infinitive, by adding *m*; as, *amāre*, *amārem*; *docēre*, *docērem*; *legēre*, *legērem*; *audire*, *audirem*.

---

\* It is, however, much better to conjugate verbs with the perfect passive participle than with the supine, for it is more in accordance with other languages, while the supine occurs but seldom in the Latin classics, compared with the perfect participle.



The *Perfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ërim*; as, *amā-vi, amav-ërim*; *docu-i, docu-ërim*; *leg-i, leg-ërim*; *audiv-i, audiv-ërim*.

The *Pluperfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *issem*; as, *amāv-i, amav-issem*; *docu-i, docu-issem*; *leg-i, leg-issem*; *audiv-i, audiv-issem*.

The *Future subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ëro*; as, *amāv-i, amav-ëro*; *docu-i, docu-ëro*; *leg-i, leg-ëro*; *audiv-i, audiv-ëro*.

### Imperative Mode.

§ 132. The *Present imperative* is formed from the present infinitive, by taking away *re*; as, *amāre, ama*; *docere, doce*; *legere, lege*; *audire, audi*.

### Infinitive Mode.

§ 133. The *Present infinitive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *āre*; as, *am-o, am-āre*; in the second and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *re*; as, *doce-o, docē-re*; *audi-o, audi-re*; in the third conjugation, by changing *o* or *io* into *ere*; as, *leg-o, leg-ere*; *cap-io, cap-ere*.

The *Perfect infinitive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *isse*; as, *amāv-i, amav-isse*; *docu-i, docu-isse*; *leg-i, leg-isse*; *audiv-i, audiv-isse*.

The *Future infinitive* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus*, and adding *esse*, or *fuisse*; as, *amātu-m, amatū-rus, esse* or *fuisse*; *doctu-m, doctū-rus, esse* or *fuisse*; *lectu-m, lectū-rus, esse* or *fuisse*; *auditu-m, auditū-rus, esse* or *fuisse*.

### Participles.

§ 134. The *Present Participle* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ans*; as, *am-o, am-ans*; in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into *ns*; as, *doce-o, doce-ns*; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ens*; as, *leg-o, leg-ens*; *audi-o, audi-ens*.

The *Future Participle* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus*; as, *amātu-m, amatū-rus*; *doctu-m, doctū-rus*; *lectu-m, lectū-rus*; *auditu-m, auditū-rus*.

### Gerunds.

§ 135. The *Gerunds* are formed from the present participle, by changing *s* into *dum*, *di*, and *do*; as,

<i>aman-s</i> ;	<i>aman-dum,</i>	<i>aman-di,</i>	<i>aman-do</i> ;
<i>docen-s</i> ;	<i>docen-dum,</i>	<i>docen-di,</i>	<i>docen-do</i> ;
<i>legen-s</i> ;	<i>legen-dum,</i>	<i>legen-di,</i>	<i>legen-do</i> ;
<i>audien-s</i> ;	<i>audien-dum,</i>	<i>audien-di,</i>	<i>audien-do.</i>

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

*Indicative and Subjunctive Modes.*

§ 136. The *Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative*; and the *Present, and Imperfect Subjunctive*, are formed from the corresponding tenses in the active voice.

From those tenses in the active voice which end in *o*, the same tenses in the passive are formed by adding *r*; but from those which, in the active voice, end in *m*, the same tenses of the passive are formed by changing *m* into *r*.

	<i>First Conjugation.</i>		<i>Second Conjugation.</i>		<i>Third Conjugation.</i>	
	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	amo,	amor.	doceo,	doceor.	lego,	legor.
<i>Imp. Indic.</i>	amābam,	amābar.	docēbam,	docēbar.	legēbam,	legēbar.
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	amābo,	amābor.	docēbo,	docēbor.	legam,	legar.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	amem,	amer.	doceam,	docear.	legam,	legar.
<i>Imp. Subj.</i>	amārem,	amārer.	docērem,	docērer.	legērem,	legērer.

The other five tenses, namely, the *Perfect and Pluperfect Indicative*; and the *Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Subjunctive*, are composed of the perfect participle, declined with the tenses of the verb *Sum*.

*Imperative Mode.*

§ 137. The *Imperative Passive* is the same as the *Infinitive Active*.

*Infinitive Mode.*

§ 138. The *Present* tense of the *Infinitive* mode is formed from the *Infinitive Active*, by changing *e*, in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, into *i*; as, *amār-e*, *amār-i*; *docēr-e*, *docēr-i*; *audīr-e*, *audīr-i*; and in the third conjugation, by changing *ēre* into *i*; as, *leg-ēre*, *leg-i*.

The *Future Infinitive* is composed of the former supine, and *iri*, (which is the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go,) as, *amātum iri*; *doctum iri*; *lectum iri*.

*Participles.*

§ 139. The *Perfect Participle* is formed from the former supine, by changing *m* into *s*; as, *amātu-m*, *amātu-s*; *doctu-m*, *doctu-s*; *lectu-m*, *lectu-s*; *auditu-m*, *auditu-s*.

The *Future Participle* is formed from the present active participle, by changing *s* into *dus*; as, *amans*, *amandus*; *docens*, *docendus*; *legens*, *legendus*; *audiens*, *audiendus*.

## SIGNIFICATION OF THE TENSES IN THE VARIOUS MODES.

§ 140. The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive, signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, or am loving; *amābam*, I loved, did love, or was loving, &c.

*Amāvi*, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus:

*Indicative Mode.*

Perfect. *Amātus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or oftener, I was loved.  
*Amātus fui*, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Pluperfect. *Amātus eram*, I was, or had been loved.  
*Amātus fuēram*, I had been loved.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Perfect. *Amātus sim*, I may be, or may have been loved.  
*Amātus fuērim*, I may have been loved.

Pluperfect. *Amātus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be, or have been loved.  
*Amātus fuissem*, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or I had been loved.

Future. *Amātus fuēro*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus:

*Amāturus sum*, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.  
*Amātus ero*, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amātus*, *amāturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amātus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amāta est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amātum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amāti sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amābam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amāvi*; so *amor*, and *amātus sum*, I am loved; *amābar* and *amātus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amātus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connexion with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense is apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligant, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is. Cic. *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Elôquar an sileam?* Shall I speak out or be silent? *Nec vos arguerim, Teucris*, for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te fugeret, ego peritrim, for peribo*. Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperare dolorem; Et perferre, soror, potero*: for *potuissem* and *possem*. Virg. *Singula quid refertam?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædicteres mihi*, You should have told me beforehand. Ter. *At tu dictis, Albâne, manêres*, Ought to have stood to your word. Virg. *Citius, crediderim*, I should sooner believe. Juv. *Haustrēt ensis*, The sword would have destroyed. Virg. *Fuêrint irāti*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that. Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Anîmus meminisse horret, luctûque refûgit*, for *refûgit*. Virg. *Fuêrat melius, for fuisset*. Id. *Invidia dilapsea erat, for fuisset*. Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis? for venisti*. Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Ephœsum, for navigabo*. Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*. Ter. *for esses* and *sentires*. Cato *affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphare, for triumphaturum esse*. Cic. *Persuadet Castico, ut occuparet, for occupet*.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet, or fecerit*, unless he do this. Ter.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do; *valêbis meque amabis*, farewell, and love me. Cic.

The present and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb before each of them; thus:

*Dicit me scribere*; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.  
*Dixit me scribere*; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.  
*Dicit me scripsisse*; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.  
*Dixit me scripsisse*; he said that I had written.  
*Dicit me scripturum esse*; he says that I will write.  
*Dixit me scripturos esse*; he said that we would write.  
*Dicit nos scripturos fuisse*; he says that we would have written.  
*Dicit litteras scribi*; he says that letters are written, writing, or in writing.  
*Dixit litteras scribi*; he said that letters were writing, or written.  
*Dicit litteras scriptas esse*; he says that letters are, or were written.  
*Dicit litteras scriptas fuisse*; he says that letters have been written.  
*Dixit litteras scriptas fuisse*; he said that letters had been written.  
*Dicit litteras scriptum iri*; he says that letters will be written.  
*Dixit litteras scriptum iri*; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis*, or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore or futurum esse ut scribant, —ut litteræ scribantur*; I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore or futurum esse ut scriberent, —ut litteræ scriberentur*; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse ut litteræ scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed:

*Scribendum est mihi, puero, nobis, &c., litteras*; I, the boy, we, &c., must write letters.

*Scribendum fuit mihi, puero, nobis, &c.* I must have written, &c.

*Scribendum erit mihi*; I shall be obliged to write.

*Scio scribendum esse mihi lîtras* ; I know that I must write letters.

— *scribendum fuisse mihi* ; — that I must have written.

*Dixit scribendum fore mihi* ; he said that I should be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *dus* :

*Lîtræ sunt scribendæ mihi, puëro, hominîbus, &c.*, or *a me, puëro, &c.*, letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So, *lîtræ scribendæ erant, futuræ, erunt, &c.* *Si lîtræ scribendæ sint, essent, forent, &c.* *Scio lîtras scribendas esse* ; I know that letters are to be, or must be written. *Scivi lîtras scribendas fuisse* ; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

# FORMATION OF THE PRÆTERITE AND SUPINE.

## GENERAL RULES.

§ 141. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner ; as,

*Voco, vocavi, vocatum*, to call ; so, *revoco, revocavi, revocatum*, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable ; as, *pello, pèpuli*, to beat ; *repello, repuli*, never *repèpuli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do, sto, disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule ; thus, *edisco, edidici*, to get by heart ; *dèposco, dépòposci*, to demand : so, *præcurro, præcûcurri* ; *repungo, repûpûgi*.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine or perfect participle ; as, *facio, fêci, factum*, to make ; *perficio, perfêci, perfectum*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go* ; also the compounds of *habeo, plâceo, sapio, sâlio*, and *stâtuo*, observe the general rule.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 142. I. Verbs of the First Conjugation have *are* in the infinitive, *āvi* in the Perfect, and *ātus* in the Perfect Participle passive; as,

*Amo*,<sup>1</sup> *amāre*, *amāvi*, *amātus*, R. D. *love*.

Verbs marked thus \* have no Perfect Participle passive.

Verbs thus marked † have no Perfect active.

The Futures *rus* and *dus* are expressed by R. and D.; and the Supines *um* and *u*, by M. and U.; those verbs, therefore, which have not one or more of these letters prefixed to them, are deficient in those parts respectively which those letters signify.

\**Abundo*,<sup>2</sup> R. .... overflow.  
*Accūso*,<sup>3</sup> R. D. M. .... accuse.  
*Adumbro*,<sup>4</sup> .... delineate.  
*Ædificō*,<sup>5</sup> R. D. .... build.  
*Æquo*,<sup>6</sup> R. D. .... level.  
*Æstimo*,<sup>7</sup> R. D. .... value.  
\**Ambulo*,<sup>8</sup> D. M. .... walk.  
*Amplio*,<sup>9</sup> D. .... enlarge.  
\**Angario*,<sup>10</sup> ... press for public service.  
*Appello*,<sup>11</sup> D. .... call.

*Apto*,<sup>12</sup> D. .... fit.  
*Aro*,<sup>13</sup> R. D. .... plough.  
\**Ascio*,<sup>14</sup> .... chip with an axe.  
\**Ausculto*,<sup>15</sup> .... listen.  
\**Autūmo*,<sup>16</sup> .... suppose.  
†*Basio*,<sup>17</sup> D. .... kiss.  
\**Bello*,<sup>18</sup> R. M. .... wage war.  
*Beo*,<sup>19</sup> .... bless.  
\**Boo*,<sup>20</sup> .... bellow.  
*Brevio*,<sup>21</sup> .... shorten.

In the following Notes are contained such Participles in *Rus* and *Dus*, and Supines of the verbs, as are found in the classics now extant; together with the less frequent and irregular formations.

<sup>1</sup>*Amātūrus*, Gell. 1. 3. 4. *Amandus*, Ovid. *Amasse*, Gell. *Amasso*, Plaut. —  
<sup>2</sup>*Abundatūrus*, Tertull. — <sup>3</sup>*Accusātum*, Terent. *Accusatūrus*, Liv. *Accusandus*, Cic. — <sup>4</sup>The Participles in *ns*, *rus* and *dus*, do not occur. — <sup>5</sup>*Ædificatūrus*, Cic. Verr. *Ædificandus*, Cic. Fam. — <sup>6</sup>*Æquatūrus*, Claud. *Æquandus*, Ovid. — <sup>7</sup>*Estimatūrus*, Quintil. *Estimandus*, Gell. — <sup>8</sup>*Ambulātum*, Plaut. *Obambulātum*, Plaut. *Deambulātum*, Terent. *Ambulandus*, Cels. *Ambulātur*, impers. Varr. — <sup>9</sup>*Amplandus*, Cels. — <sup>10</sup>*Angario* has no participles. — <sup>11</sup>*Appellandus*, Cic. *Appellansis* for *appellaveris*, Terent. — <sup>12</sup>*Aptandus*, Claud. — <sup>13</sup>The Participle *Arans* occurs only in Cic. de Senect. c. 16. *Aratūrus*, Tibull. *Arandus*, Virg. — <sup>14</sup>Of this verb *Auscultē* only is found, Vitruv. vii. 2. — <sup>15</sup>None of the Participles are to be found. *Auscultabitur*, impers. Plaut. — <sup>16</sup>None of the Participles exist: *autumantur*, pass. Plaut. — <sup>17</sup>*Basīāvi* seems not to exist: *Basīātus*, Mart. xii. 59. *Basīandus*, Mart. i. 95. — <sup>18</sup>*Bellātum*, Nep. *Debellātum*, Liv. *Bellatūrus*, Claud. *Bellantur*, 'they fight', Virg. *Æn.* xi. 660. — <sup>19</sup>*Beāsti*, Ter. Andr. *Beātus*, said to be the Perfect Participle of *Beo*, is used as an adjective. — <sup>20</sup>*Bount*, as if from *Boo*, *bois*, Pacuv. *Bovantes*, as if from *Bovo*. — <sup>21</sup>*Breviāvit*, Quint. xii. 10. *Breviātus*, Sidon.

Cæco,<sup>1</sup> ..... blind.  
 Cælo,<sup>1</sup> ..... carve.  
 Calceo,<sup>2</sup> D. .... shoe.  
 \*Calcitro,<sup>1</sup> ..... kick.  
 Canto,<sup>3</sup> M. .... sing.  
 Capto,<sup>4</sup> D. M. .... seize.  
 Carmino,<sup>5</sup> ..... card wood.  
 Castigo,<sup>6</sup> D. M. .... chastise.  
 †\*Catomidio, .... flag on the shoulders.  
 Celébros,<sup>7</sup> D. .... make famous.  
 Celo,<sup>8</sup> D. .... conceal.  
 Centurio,<sup>9</sup> ..... divide into centuries.  
 Certo,<sup>10</sup> D. R. .... strive.  
 Cogito,<sup>11</sup> ..... think.  
 Comparo,<sup>12</sup> D. .... compare.  
 Concilio,<sup>13</sup> R. D. .... reconcile.  
 Considero,<sup>14</sup> R. D. .... consider.  
 Cremo,<sup>15</sup> D. .... burn.  
 Creo,<sup>16</sup> R. D. .... create.  
 Crucio,<sup>17</sup> D. .... torment.  
 Culpō,<sup>18</sup> R. D. .... blame.  
 Cuneo,<sup>19</sup> D. .... wedge.  
 Curo,<sup>20</sup> R. D. .... care.  
 Damno,<sup>21</sup> R. D. M. .... condemn.  
 Decōro,<sup>22</sup> D. .... adorn.  
 Decurio,<sup>23</sup> ..... divide into companies.

\*Delineo,<sup>24</sup> ..... delineate.  
 Desidero,<sup>25</sup> R. D. .... desire.  
 Destino,<sup>26</sup> D. .... tie, design.  
 Dico,<sup>27</sup> R. D. M. .... dedicate.  
 Dicto,<sup>28</sup> ..... dictate.  
 Dolo,<sup>29</sup> ..... how, cut.  
 Dono,<sup>30</sup> R. D. .... bestow.  
 Duplico,<sup>31</sup> R. D. .... double.  
 Duro,<sup>32</sup> R. .... harden.  
 Effigio,<sup>33</sup> ..... portray.  
 †Emacio,<sup>34</sup> ..... emaciate.  
 †Enucleo,<sup>35</sup> D. .... explain.  
 Equito,<sup>36</sup> ..... ride.  
 Erro,<sup>37</sup> ..... wander.  
 Existimo,<sup>38</sup> R. D. U. .... think.  
 Exploro,<sup>39</sup> D. M. .... search.  
 †Exsuo,<sup>40</sup> ..... squeeze out blood.  
 Exulo,<sup>40</sup> R. M. .... be banished.  
 Fabrico,<sup>41</sup> D. .... frame.  
 †Fascio,<sup>42</sup> ..... swath.  
 Fatigo,<sup>43</sup> R. D. .... weary.  
 Festino,<sup>44</sup> R. D. .... hasten.  
 Firmo,<sup>45</sup> R. D. .... strengthen.  
 Flagito,<sup>46</sup> D. M. .... demand.  
 \*Flagro,<sup>47</sup> R. D. .... be on fire.  
 Flo,<sup>48</sup> D. .... blow.

<sup>1</sup> The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *us*, of *Cæco*, *Cælo*, and *Calcitro*, do not occur in the classics. *Cælassis* for *Cælavēris*, Festus. — <sup>2</sup> *Calceandus*, Phædr. — <sup>3</sup> *Cantātum*, Terent. — <sup>4</sup> *Captātum*, Plaut. *Captandus*, Plant. — <sup>5</sup> The Participles *ns*, *rus*, and *us* are not to be found. *Carminātus*, Plin. N. H. ix. 38. — <sup>6</sup> *Castigātum*, Plaut. *Castigandus*, Liv. xxxix. 25. — <sup>7</sup> *Celebrandus*, Catul. — <sup>8</sup> *Celandus*, Just. — <sup>9</sup> *Centuriāvīt*, Val. Max. *Centuriātus*, Liv. — <sup>10</sup> *Certātus*, Cæs. *Certandus*, Liv. *Certātus*, 'contended for,' Sil. *Multum certāto*, 'after much contention,' Tacit. Ann. like *audītus*, 'it being heard,' *comperito*, 'it being discovered.' *Certātus*, impera. Pacuv. — <sup>11</sup> *Cogitātus*, Hirt. — <sup>12</sup> *Comparandus*, Terent. *Comparassit* for *Comparavērīt*, Plaut. — <sup>13</sup> *Conciliātus*, Cæsar. *Conciliandus*, Ovid. — <sup>14</sup> *Considerātus*, Curt. *Considerandus*, Apul. Flor. *Consideravisse* pro *considerasse*, Quint. — <sup>15</sup> *Concrematātus*, Liv. *Cremandus*, Ovid. — <sup>16</sup> *Creatus*, Liv. *Creandus*, Gell. The Participle in *ns* does not occur. — <sup>17</sup> *Cruciandus*, Ovid. — <sup>18</sup> *Culpatātus*, Apul. *Culpandus*, Apul. — <sup>19</sup> *Cuneandus*, Plin. — <sup>20</sup> *Curātus*, Plaut. *Curandus*, Cels. *Curassis*, for *curavēris*, Plaut. — <sup>21</sup> *Damnātum*, Quint. *Damnātus*, Ovid. *Dammandus*, Ovid. — <sup>22</sup> *Decorandus*, Cic. — <sup>23</sup> *Decuriasse*, Cic. pro Planc. *Decuriātus*, Liv. — <sup>24</sup> The simple *Lineo*, 'I draw lines,' has no Perfect now extant. *Lineātus* is found in Plaut. *Delineavit*, Plin. It has no participles. — <sup>25</sup> *Desiderātus*, Plin. *Desiderandus*, Cic. — <sup>26</sup> *Destinandus*, Vitruv. — <sup>27</sup> *Dicātum*, Liv. i. 7. *Dicātus*, Plin. *Dicandus*, Plin. — <sup>28</sup> *Dictātus*, Juv. vi. 390. — <sup>29</sup> The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *us*, do not occur. *Dolavit*, Cic. *Dolatus*, Juv. xii. 57. *Dolēre*, 3d Conjugation, Lucr.; hence, *dolitus*, Varr. — <sup>30</sup> *Donātus*, Apul. Met. *Donandus*, Hor. — <sup>31</sup> *Duplicātus*, Cic. Att. v. 18. *Duplicandus*, Liv. xxvii. 11. — <sup>32</sup> *Duratātus*, Lucan. — <sup>33</sup> *Effigiātus*, Apul. — <sup>34</sup> *Emaciātus*, Colum. — <sup>35</sup> The perfect of this verb cannot be found. *Enucleātus*, Cic. pro Planc. *Enucleandus*, Cic. — <sup>36</sup> *Equitātus*, 'ridden over,' Claud. *Equitāta cohors*, 'infantry intermixed with cavalry,' Inscript. ap. Murat. — <sup>37</sup> *Errātus*, 'wandered over,' Virg. *Æn.* iii. 690. *Errātus*, impera. Virg. G. iii. 249. *Errātō mihī*, for *cum erravēro*, Cic. — <sup>38</sup> *Existimātus*, Liv. *Existimātus*, Cic. *Existimandus*, Val. Max. — <sup>39</sup> *Explorātum* and *Explorandus*, Liv. — <sup>40</sup> *Exulātum*, Liv. *Exulātus*, Justin. — <sup>41</sup> *Fabricor*, deponent, Cic. Off. i. 41. *Fabricandus*, Sil. — <sup>42</sup> *Fasciātus*, Mart. — <sup>43</sup> *Fatigandus*, Cic. Off. iii. 18. — <sup>44</sup> *Festinatātus*, Plin. *Festinantur*, Tacit. Hist. iii. 37. *Festinantur*, Tacit. Germ. c. 20. — <sup>45</sup> *Firmātus*, Justin. *Firmandus*, Colum. — <sup>46</sup> *Flagitātus*, Tacit. *Flagitātum*, Cic. *Flagitandus*, Justin. — <sup>47</sup> *Flagratātus*, Cic. *Deflagrātus*, Cic. Cat. iv. 6. — <sup>48</sup> *Flatus*, 'blown,' *Flatus*, 'cast,' 'coined,' Gell. *Flandus*, Cic. *Conflandus*, ibid.

Formo, <sup>1</sup> R. D. ....	form, frame.
†Foro, <sup>2</sup> D. ....	bore.
Fræno, <sup>3</sup> ....	bridle.
Fraudo, <sup>4</sup> D. ....	defraud.
†Frio, <sup>5</sup> ....	crumble.
Fugo, <sup>6</sup> R. D. ....	put to flight.
Fundo, <sup>7</sup> R. ....	found.
†Furio, <sup>8</sup> ....	madden.
†Galeo, <sup>9</sup> ....	put on a helmet.
Gesto, <sup>10</sup> D. ....	bear.
†Glacio, ....	to congeal.
Gravo, <sup>11</sup> D. ....	to weigh down.
Gusto, <sup>12</sup> D. ....	to taste.
Habito, <sup>13</sup> D. M. ....	to dwell.
†Halo, ....	breathe.
*Hio, <sup>14</sup> D. ....	to gape.
Humo, <sup>15</sup> R. D. ....	to bury.
Hyemo, <sup>16</sup> M. ....	winter.
Ignoro, <sup>17</sup> R. D. ....	be ignorant.
Impéro, <sup>18</sup> R. D. ....	command.
Impéro, <sup>19</sup> R. D. ....	obtain by request.
Inchoo, <sup>20</sup> R. ....	begin.
Indago, <sup>21</sup> R. D. ....	trace out.
Indico, <sup>22</sup> R. D. M. ....	show.

†Inebrio, <sup>23</sup> ....	inebriate.
Initio, <sup>24</sup> ....	initiate.
Inquino, ....	pollute.
Instauro, <sup>25</sup> D. ....	renew.
Intro, <sup>26</sup> R. D. ....	enter.
Invito, <sup>27</sup> D. ....	invite.
Irrito, <sup>28</sup> D. ....	provoke.
Itëro, <sup>29</sup> D. U. ....	do again.
Jacto, <sup>30</sup> R. D. ....	throw, boast.
Judico, <sup>31</sup> R. D. ....	judge.
Jugo, <sup>32</sup> D. ....	couple.
Jugulo, <sup>33</sup> D. M. ....	butcher.
Juro, <sup>34</sup> D. ....	swear.
Labôro, <sup>35</sup> R. D. ....	labour.
Lacëro, <sup>36</sup> D. ....	tear.
*Lacto, ....	suckle, wheedle.
Lanio, <sup>37</sup> D. ....	butcher.
Laqueo, <sup>38</sup> ....	ensnare.
Latro, <sup>39</sup> ....	bark.
Laudo, <sup>40</sup> R. D. ....	praise.
Laxo, <sup>41</sup> D. ....	loose.
Lego, <sup>42</sup> ....	depute, bequeath.
Levo, <sup>43</sup> R. D. ....	lighten.
Libëro, <sup>44</sup> R. D. ....	free.

<sup>1</sup> *Formatûrus*, Justin. *Formandus*, Stat. Syl. — \*The Participles *ns* and *rus* are not in use. *Forâtus*, Vitruv. *Forandus*, Cels. — <sup>2</sup> The Participles *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, do not occur. *Frænâtus*, Hirt. — <sup>3</sup> The Participles *ns* and *rus* are not in use. *Frausus*, 'having committed a fraud,' Plaut. Asin. *Fraudandus*, Quint. Curt. *Fraudassis* for *Fraudaveris*, Plaut. — <sup>4</sup> *Friâtus*, Lucr. — <sup>5</sup> *Fugâtûrus*, Ovid. *Fugandus*, ibid. — <sup>6</sup> The Participles *ns* and *rus* do not occur. — <sup>7</sup> *Furiâtus*, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 407. — <sup>8</sup> *Galeâtus*, Juv. — <sup>10</sup> *Gestandus*, Stat. Theb. — <sup>11</sup> *Gravâtus*, 'indignant,' 'weary of bearing,' 'disdaining to carry,' as if from a deponent *Gravor*, Hor. iv. Od. ii. 27. *Gravandus*, Propert. — <sup>12</sup> The Participle *Gustans* occurs only in Petron. c. 33, and Gallus i. 98. The Participle in *rus* is not in use. *Gustandus*, Cels. — <sup>13</sup> *Habitâtum*, Plaut. *Habitandus*, Ovid. — <sup>14</sup> *Hiandus*, Pers. — <sup>15</sup> The Participle *ns* is not to be found in the classics. *Humâtûrus*, Sueton. *Humandus*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 161. — <sup>16</sup> *Hyemâtum*, Nepos. — <sup>17</sup> *Ignorâtus*, 'not known,' Cic. *Ignorâtus*, 'undiscovered,' Salust. — <sup>18</sup> *Imperâtûrus*, Cæsar. — <sup>19</sup> The Participle in *ns* seems not to exist. *Impetrâtûrus*, Liv. *Impetrandus*, Val. Max. *Impetrassere* for *imperaturum esse*, Plaut. — <sup>20</sup> *Inchoatûrus*, Curt. *Ad inchoandam rem*, Liv. — <sup>21</sup> *Indagatur*, depon. The Participle in *ns* does not occur. *Indagâtûrus*, Apul. *Indagandus*, Gell. — <sup>22</sup> *Indicatum*, Liv. *Indicâtûrus*, ibid. *Indicasso* for *indicavero*, Plaut. — <sup>23</sup> *Inebriatus*, Plin. — <sup>24</sup> *Initiari*, depon. 'to begin.' *Initiâtus*, Cic. Tusc. *Initiantes* for *qui initiantur*, Vitruv. No other participle. — <sup>25</sup> *Instaurandus*, Gell. — <sup>26</sup> *Intretur*, pass. Tacit. *Intrâri*, ibid. *Intrâri*, impers. Cæs. *Intratûrus* and *Intrandus*, Liv. — <sup>27</sup> *Invitandus*, Suet. *Invitassitis* for *invitaveritis*. — <sup>28</sup> *Irritandus*, Liv. *Irritassis* for *irritaveris*, Plaut. — <sup>29</sup> *Iterâtû*, Plaut. *Iterandus*, Colum. — <sup>30</sup> *Jactâtûrus*, Cic. *Jactandus*, Ovid. — <sup>31</sup> *Judicatûrus*, Cæs. *Judicandus*, Cic. *Judicassit* for *judicaverit*, Cic. de Leg. iii. 3. — <sup>32</sup> *Jugandus*, Hor. — <sup>33</sup> *Jugulâtum*, Cic. *Jugulandus*, Val. Max. — <sup>34</sup> *Jurâtus*, 'sworn,' passim. *Jurâtus*, 'sworn by,' Ovid. *Jurâtus*, 'having sworn,' Cic. — <sup>35</sup> *Laborâtus*, 'wrought with labour,' Virg. *Æn.* i. 643. *Laborâtus*, 'calamitous,' Val. Flac. *Laborandus*, Plin. *Laborâtur*, impers. Cæs. — <sup>36</sup> *Lacerandus*, Lucan. — <sup>37</sup> *Laniâtus*, Met. *Laniandus*, Liv. — <sup>38</sup> *Laqueâre*, Manil. *Laqueans*, ibid. *Laqueâvit*, Luctat. No other parts of this verb are to be found. *Ilaqueo* is more usual, though its Perfect is not found. *Ilaqueâtus*, Cic. — <sup>39</sup> *Latrâtus*, 'barked at.' *Latrêtur*, impers. — <sup>40</sup> *Laudatûrus*, Nep. *Laudandus*, Tibull. — <sup>41</sup> *Laxandus*, Plin. — <sup>42</sup> The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, do not occur. *Legâtus*, 'left by will.' *Legâtus*, used substantively, 'a person sent,' 'an ambassador,' passim. — <sup>43</sup> *Levatûrus*, Curt. *Levandus*, Virg. Georg. *Levasso* for *Levavero*, Enn. — <sup>44</sup> *Liberatûrus*, Liv. *Liberandus*, Cic. *Liberasso* for *Liberavero*, Plaut.



Ligo,	bind.
Liquo, <sup>1</sup> D.	melt.
Lito, <sup>2</sup>	appease by sacrifice.
Loco, <sup>3</sup> R. D.	place, let.
Lustro, <sup>4</sup> D.	survey.
Luxurio,	be wanton, abound.
Macto, <sup>5</sup> D.	slay.
Maculo,	stain.
Mando, <sup>6</sup> R. D.	command.
Mandüco, <sup>7</sup>	chew.
*Mano,	flow.
Matüro, <sup>8</sup> D.	ripen, hasten.
Memoro, <sup>9</sup> D. U.	tell.
*Meo, <sup>10</sup>	go, pass.
*Meridio, <sup>11</sup> M.	sleep at noon.
*Migro, <sup>12</sup> R. U.	depart.
*Milito, <sup>13</sup> R. M.	serve in war.
†Minio, <sup>14</sup> D.	paint red.
Ministro, <sup>15</sup>	serve.
Mitigo, <sup>16</sup> D.	pacify.
Monstro, <sup>17</sup> R.	show.
Muto, <sup>18</sup> R. D.	change.
Narro, <sup>19</sup> R. D.	tell.
Nato, <sup>20</sup> R. M.	swim.
*Nauseo, <sup>21</sup>	loathe.
Navigo, <sup>22</sup> R. D.	sail.
Navo, <sup>23</sup> R. D.	act vigorously.
Nego, <sup>24</sup> R. D. M.	deny.
*No,	swim.

Nomino, <sup>25</sup> R. D.	name.
Noto, <sup>26</sup> D.	mark.
Novo, <sup>27</sup> R. D.	renew.
Nudo, <sup>28</sup> D.	make bare.
Nuncüpo, <sup>29</sup> R. D.	name.
Nuntio, <sup>30</sup> R. M.	tell.
*Nuto, R.	nod.
Obsecro, <sup>31</sup> R. D.	beseech.
*Obtempéro, <sup>32</sup> R.	obey.
Obtrunco, <sup>33</sup> R.	kill.
Onëro, <sup>34</sup> R. D.	load.
Opto, <sup>35</sup> D.	wish.
Orbo, <sup>36</sup> R.	deprive.
Orno, <sup>37</sup> R. D.	adorn.
Oro, <sup>38</sup> R. D. M.	beg.
Paco, <sup>39</sup>	subdue.
Paro, <sup>40</sup> R. D.	prepare.
Patro, <sup>41</sup> R.	commit.
*Pecco, <sup>42</sup> R.	sin.
Pio, <sup>43</sup> D.	propitiate.
Placo, <sup>44</sup> R. D.	appease.
Ploro, <sup>45</sup> D. M.	bevail.
Porto, <sup>46</sup> R. D. U.	carry.
Postulo, <sup>47</sup> R. D. M.	demand.
Privo, <sup>48</sup> D.	deprive.
Probo, <sup>49</sup> R. D. M. U.	approve.
Proffigo, <sup>50</sup> D.	rout.
Propéro, <sup>51</sup> D.	hasten.
*Propino, <sup>52</sup>	drink to.

<sup>1</sup> *Liquandus*, Cels. The Participles *ns* and *rus* do not occur. — <sup>2</sup> *Litatus*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 50. *Litandum*, 'sacrifice must be made;' *ibid.* *Æn.* v. 118. — <sup>3</sup> *Locatürus*, Liv. *Locandus*, Ovid. *Locassim* for *Locaverim*, Cic. de Leg. — <sup>4</sup> *Lustrandus*, Virg. *Æn.* — <sup>5</sup> *Mactandus*, Ovid. — <sup>6</sup> *Mandatürus*, Cic. — <sup>7</sup> *Manducatur*, depon. Pompon. — <sup>8</sup> *Maturandus*, Cæs. — <sup>9</sup> *Memorätur*, Sall. Cat. c. 7. *Memorandus*, Virg. — <sup>10</sup> *Meäris*, Hor. i. Od. 4, 17. *Meavisse*, Tacit. *Means*, Lucan. No other Participles occur. — <sup>11</sup> *Meridiäri*, depon. Cels. The Perfect is not in use. *Meridiätum*, Catull. — <sup>12</sup> *Migrätur*, Liv. *Migrätürus*, Suet. *Migrantur*, pass. Sil. *Migrätur*, impers. Cic. *Migratur est*, impers. Liv. i. 11. — <sup>13</sup> *Militätum*, Terent. *Militätürus*, Liv. *Militabitur*, 'shall be served;' Plaut. — <sup>14</sup> The Perfect does not occur. *Miniätus*, Cic. *Miniandus*, Plin. — <sup>15</sup> *Vasa ministrandis cibis*, Tacit. — <sup>16</sup> *Mitigandus*, Liv. — <sup>17</sup> *Monstratürus*, Curt. — <sup>18</sup> *Mutandus*, Cic. — <sup>19</sup> *Narratürus*, Stat. *Narrandus*, Justin. — <sup>20</sup> *Natatum*, Cic. *Natatürus*, Ovid. *Natätur*, Ovid. — <sup>21</sup> *Nauseans*, Cic. The other Participles are not found. — <sup>22</sup> *Navigätur*, 'sailed over;' Tacit. Germ. c. 34. *Navigandus*, Ulpian. *Navigätur*, pass. Plin. *Navigätur*, impers. Cic. — <sup>23</sup> *Navatürus*, Curt. *Navandus*, Tacit. The Participle in *ns* does not occur. — <sup>24</sup> *Negätum*, Liv. *Negatürus*, *ibid.* *Negandus*, Ovid. *Negassim* for *Negaverim*. — <sup>25</sup> *Nominatürus*, Suet. *Nominandus*, Curt. — <sup>26</sup> *Notandus*, Hort. Art. Poet. — <sup>27</sup> *Novatürus*, Curt. *Novandus*, Ov. — <sup>28</sup> *Nudandus*, Cæs. — <sup>29</sup> *Nuncupatürus*, Justin. — <sup>30</sup> *Nuntiatum*, Sall. Jugur. c. 108. *Nuntiatürus*, Liv. — <sup>31</sup> *Obsecrandus*, Plin. *Obsecratürus*, Ter. — <sup>32</sup> *Obtemperätum esset*, impers. Cic. — <sup>33</sup> *Obtruncatürus*, Justin. — <sup>34</sup> *Oneratürus*, Plin. *Onerandus*, Suet. — <sup>35</sup> *Oplandus*, Stat. — <sup>36</sup> *Orbatürus*, Ovid. The Participles in *ns* and *rus* do not occur. — <sup>37</sup> *Ornatürus*, Claud. *Ornandus*, Gell. — <sup>38</sup> *Orätum*, Cic. *Oratürus*, Tacit. *Orandus*, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 232. — <sup>39</sup> *Ad pacandas Hispanias*, Cæs. — <sup>40</sup> *Paratürus*, Justin. *Parandus*, Tibull. — <sup>41</sup> *Pacis patrandæ merces*, Liv. — <sup>42</sup> *Peccatürus*, Gell. — <sup>43</sup> *Piätus*, Ovid. *Piandus*, Ovid. — <sup>44</sup> *Placatürus*, Justin. *Placandus*, Stat. Achil. — <sup>45</sup> *Ploratüm*, Cic. *Plorandus*, Stat. Theb. — <sup>46</sup> *Portatu*, Plin. *Portandus*, Virg. *Æn.* ix. 312. — <sup>47</sup> *Postulatüm*, Cæs. *Postulatürus*, Liv. *Postulandus*, Cic. — <sup>48</sup> *Privandus*, Cic. — <sup>49</sup> *Probätum*, Cic. Att. *Probätur*, Cic. Tusc. v. i. — <sup>50</sup> The Participles *ns* and *rus* do not occur in the classics. — <sup>51</sup> *Properandus*, Virg. Georg. — <sup>52</sup> None of the Participles are found.

†Propitio,<sup>1</sup> D. .... appease.  
 Pugno,<sup>2</sup> R. .... fight.  
 Pulso,<sup>3</sup> D. .... beat.  
 Purgo,<sup>4</sup> R. D. U. .... cleanse.  
 Puto,<sup>5</sup> D. .... prune, think.  
 Quasso,<sup>6</sup> D. .... shake.  
 Radio,<sup>7</sup> .... emit rays.  
 Rapto,<sup>8</sup> D. .... drag about.  
 Recupero,<sup>9</sup> R. D. M. .... recover.  
 Recuso,<sup>10</sup> R. D. .... refuse.  
 Repudio,<sup>11</sup> R. D. .... reject.  
 Resero,<sup>12</sup> D. .... unlock.  
 \*Retalio, .... retaliate.  
 Rigo, .... water.  
 Rogo,<sup>13</sup> R. D. M. .... ask.  
 Roto, .... whirl.  
 Sacrifico,<sup>14</sup> M. .... sacrifice.  
 Sacro,<sup>15</sup> D. .... consecrate.  
 Sagino,<sup>16</sup> D. .... faller.  
 Salto,<sup>17</sup> R. .... dance.  
 Saluto,<sup>18</sup> R. M. .... salute.  
 Sano,<sup>19</sup> R. D. .... heal.  
 Satio, .... satiate.  
 Saturo,<sup>20</sup> .... fill, glut.  
 Saucio,<sup>21</sup> D. .... wound.  
 †Screo,<sup>22</sup> .... hawk.  
 \*Secundo,<sup>23</sup> .... prosper.  
 Sedo,<sup>24</sup> D. M. .... allay.  
 Servo,<sup>25</sup> R. D. .... keep.  
 \*Sibilo, .... hiss.  
 Sicco,<sup>26</sup> D. .... dry.  
 Signo,<sup>27</sup> R. D. .... mark out.

Simulo,<sup>28</sup> .... pretend.  
 Socio,<sup>29</sup> D. .... associate.  
 \*Somnio,<sup>30</sup> .... dream.  
 Specto,<sup>31</sup> R. D. M. .... behold.  
 Spero,<sup>32</sup> D. .... hope.  
 \*Spiro,<sup>33</sup> .... breathe.  
 Spolio,<sup>34</sup> D. M. .... rob.  
 Spumo,<sup>35</sup> .... foam.  
 Stillo,<sup>36</sup> .... drop.  
 Stimulo, .... goad, vex.  
 Stipo, .... stuff, guard.  
 †Strio, .... flute, a column.  
 †Succenturio,<sup>37</sup> .... recruit.  
 Sudo, .... sweat.  
 Suffoco, .... strangle.  
 Sugillo,<sup>38</sup> D. .... taunt, jeer.  
 Supero,<sup>39</sup> R. D. .... overcome.  
 Suppedito,<sup>40</sup> .... afford.  
 \*Susurro,<sup>41</sup> .... whisper.  
 Tardo, .... stop, delay.  
 Taxo,<sup>42</sup> D. .... rate, reprove.  
 Temporo,<sup>43</sup> R. D. .... temper.  
 Tento,<sup>44</sup> R. D. M. .... try.  
 Terebro,<sup>45</sup> .... bore.  
 Titubo,<sup>46</sup> .... stagger.  
 Tolero,<sup>47</sup> R. D. U. .... bear.  
 Tracto,<sup>48</sup> D. U. .... handle.  
 \*†Tripudio, .... dance, caper.  
 Trucido,<sup>49</sup> R. D. .... kill.  
 Turbo,<sup>50</sup> D. .... disturb.  
 Umbro,<sup>51</sup> R. .... shade.  
 \*Vaco, .... want, be at leisure.

<sup>1</sup>The Perfect does not occur. *Propitiatus*, Tacit. *Propitiandus*, Gell. — <sup>2</sup>*Pugnatus*, Liv. *Expugnatum*, Justin. *Oppugnandus*, Gell. — <sup>3</sup>*Pulsandus*, Hor. — <sup>4</sup>*Purgatu*, Plin. *Expurgatu*, Terent. — <sup>5</sup>*Pulandus*, Catull. — <sup>6</sup>*Quassandus*, Ovid. — <sup>7</sup>*Radiatus*, 'shining'; passim. *Radiatus*, 'illuminated'; Lucan. — <sup>8</sup>*Raptandus*, Sil. — <sup>9</sup>*Recuperatum*, Justin. *Recuperaturus*, Cæs. *Recaperandus*, Liv. — <sup>10</sup>*Recusaturus*, Sueton. — <sup>11</sup>*Repudiaturus*, Sueton. *Repudiandus*, Cic. The Participle *ns* does not occur. — <sup>12</sup>*Reserandus*, Cic. — <sup>13</sup>*Rogaturs*, Sueton. *Rogandus*, Cic. Tusc. *Rogassit* for *Rogaverit*, Cic. Leg. — <sup>14</sup>*Sacrificatum*, Plaut. *Sacrificatus*, 'sacrificed,' 'slain in sacrifice.' — <sup>15</sup>*Sacrandus*, 'to be established,' 'ratified.' — <sup>16</sup>The Particles *ns* and *rus* do not occur. — <sup>17</sup>*Sallaturus*, Sueton. — <sup>18</sup>*Salutatum*, Sall. *Salutaturs*, Cic. — <sup>19</sup>*Sanaturus*, Cæs. *Sanandus*, Senec. — <sup>20</sup>The Particles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, are not found in the classics. — <sup>21</sup>*Sauciandus*, Colum. — <sup>22</sup>Neither the Perfects nor the Perfect Participles of *Screo* and *Excreo* are now in existence. — <sup>23</sup>The Participle *ns* only, is now extant. — <sup>24</sup>*Sedatum*, Plaut. *Sedandus*, Cic. — <sup>25</sup>*Servandus*, Ovid. — <sup>26</sup>Ad. corpora *siccanda*, Plin. — <sup>27</sup>*Signaturus*, Plin. *Signandus*, Stat. — <sup>28</sup>*Simulandus*, Sall. — <sup>29</sup>*Sociandus*, Hor. — <sup>30</sup>*Somniatur*, depon. Petron. — <sup>31</sup>*Spectatum*, Ovid. *Spectaturus*, Suet. *Spectandus*, Stat. Theb. — <sup>32</sup>*Sperandus*, Propert. — <sup>33</sup>The Participle in *ns* only is in use. *Exspiraturus*, Liv. — <sup>34</sup>*Spoliandus*, Lucan. — <sup>35</sup>*Spumatus*, 'sprinkled with foam,' 'foamy'; Cic. — <sup>36</sup>*Stillatus*, 'distilling,' 'dropping.' — <sup>37</sup>*Succenturiatus*, Terent. — <sup>38</sup>*Suggillandus*, Val. Max. — <sup>39</sup>*Superaturus*, Cic. — <sup>40</sup>*Suppeditor*, depon. Cic. — <sup>41</sup>*Susurratur*, impera. 'it is whispered about,' Terent. — <sup>42</sup>*Taxandus*, Senec. — <sup>43</sup>*Temperandus*, Suet. — <sup>44</sup>*Tentatum*, Terent. *Tentaturus*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 293. *Tentandus*, Virg. Georg. iii. 8. — <sup>45</sup>The Particles *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, are not found in the classics. — <sup>46</sup>*Tibudatus*, 'stumbling,' Virg. *Æn.* v. 331. — <sup>47</sup>*Toleratu*, Cic. *Toleraturus* and *Tolerandus*, Ibid. — <sup>48</sup>*Tractatu*, Plin. *Tractandus*, Juven. — <sup>49</sup>*Trucidandus*, Cic. — <sup>50</sup>*Turbatur*, impera. pass. Virg. *Æn.* Ecl. i. 12. *Turbasso* for *Turbavero*. — <sup>51</sup>*Umbraturus*, Honor. et Martial.

*Vapūlo, <sup>1</sup> M. ....	be beaten.
Vario, .....	diversify.
Vasto, <sup>2</sup> .....	lay waste.
Vellīco, <sup>3</sup> .....	pluck, rail at.
Verbēro, <sup>4</sup> R. D. ....	beat.
*Vestīgo, .....	search for.
Vexo, <sup>5</sup> D. ....	tease, harass.
*Vindēmio, <sup>6</sup> .....	gather grapes.
Vibro, <sup>7</sup> D. ....	brandish.

Viōlo, <sup>8</sup> R. D. M. ....	vibrate.
Vitio, <sup>9</sup> D. ....	vitiates.
Vito, <sup>10</sup> D. U. ....	shun.
Voco, <sup>11</sup> R. D. ....	call.
*Volo, <sup>12</sup> .....	fly.
Voro, <sup>13</sup> R. ....	devour.
Vulgo, <sup>14</sup> R. D. ....	publish.
Vulnero, <sup>15</sup> D. ....	wound.

## 143. II. DEPONENTS.

Deponent Verbs are formed like Passives; as,

Mir-or,<sup>16</sup> -āri, -ātus, U. R. D. *admire*.—So,

Abōmīnor, <sup>17</sup> D. ....	abhor.
Adūlor, <sup>18</sup> D. ....	fawn, flatter.
Āmūlor, <sup>19</sup> D. ....	vie with, envy.
*Aprīcor, <sup>20</sup> .....	bask in the sun.
Arbītror, <sup>21</sup> R. D. ....	think.
Aspernor, <sup>22</sup> D. ....	despise.
Aversor, <sup>23</sup> D. ....	dislike.
Aucūpor, <sup>24</sup> R. ....	hunt after.

Auxīlior, <sup>25</sup> .....	help.
Causor, <sup>26</sup> .....	plead in excuse, blame.
Calumniōr, .	accuse falsely, calumniate.
*Cōmissor, <sup>27</sup> M. ....	revel.
Cōmītor, <sup>28</sup> .....	accompany.
Conciōnor, .	harangue.
*Confābulor, <sup>29</sup> M. ....	discourse.
Cōnor, <sup>30</sup> D. ....	endeavour.

<sup>1</sup> *Vapulātum*, Plant. *Vapulandum*, Terent. — <sup>2</sup> *Ad vastandos agros*, Liv. x. 33. — <sup>3</sup> The Participle *Vellicātus*, occurs only in Paulin. Nolan. — <sup>4</sup> *Verberatūrus*, Sueton. *Verberandus*, Apul. — <sup>5</sup> *Vezandus*, Cic. — <sup>6</sup> The Participle *as* only is found in the classics. — <sup>7</sup> *Vibrātus*, Virg. *Vibrandus*, Claud. — <sup>8</sup> *Violatum*, Cic. *Violatūrus*, Cæs. *Violandus*, Tibull. — <sup>9</sup> *Vitandus*, Suet. — <sup>10</sup> *Vitātū*, Hor. i. Sat. 4. 115. *Vitandus*, Hor. ii. Sat. 3. 14. — <sup>11</sup> *Vocatūrus*, Liv. *Vocandus*, Ovid. — <sup>12</sup> *Devolatūrus*, Apul. — <sup>13</sup> *Voratūrus*, Justin. *Devorandus*, Apul. — <sup>14</sup> *Vulgatūrus*, Claud. *Vulgandus*, Suet. — <sup>15</sup> *Vulnerandus*, Hirt.

<sup>16</sup> *Mirātū*, Senec. *Mirātūrus*, Ovid. *Mirandus*, Stat. *Mirandus* is generally construed as an Adjective. — <sup>17</sup> *Abōmīnandus*, Quint. *Abōmīnārītūrus*, pass. Verrius — <sup>18</sup> *Adūlandus*, Val. Max. *Adūlārī*, pass. *to be flattered*, Cic. Off. i. 26. — <sup>19</sup> *Āmūlandus*, Plin. *Āmūlāvērīs*, act. Apul. — <sup>20</sup> *Aprīcārē*, act. Pallad. — <sup>21</sup> *Arbītrātūrus*, Apul. *Arbītrandus*, Ulpian. *Arbītrantur*, pass. Ulpian. *Arbītrābunt*, Plaut. — <sup>22</sup> *Aspernātus*, despising, having despised, Virg. Georg. iii. 393. et passim. *Aspernātus*, pass. despised, Liv. xxxiv. 40. *Aspernandus*, Virg. Ēn. xi. 106. *Aspernātur*, pass. Cic. — <sup>23</sup> *Aversātus*, dialiking, Ovid. et passim. *Aversātus*, pass. averted, Aurel. Vict. *Aversandus*, Liv. xxx. 25. — <sup>24</sup> *Aucupātūrus*, Cic. The active form *Aucūpo* occurs in Senec. Hence, *Aucupātus*, pass. sought after, Lact. *Aucupātus*, in an active sense, does not occur. — <sup>25</sup> *Auxīliātus*, having assisted, Stat. *Auxīlio*, Gracch. Hence *Auxīliātus*, pass. aided. Lucil. — <sup>26</sup> *Causandus*, given in some Dictionaries, does not occur in the classics. *Causādor*, pass. Ovid. de Nuce, 125. where Salmas, Heins. and Burm. read *Causa habeor*. — <sup>27</sup> *Cōmissātum*, Liv. xi. 7. Terent. Some write *Comessor*, others *Comissor*, or *Comussor*; but *Comissor* is generally found in ancient books and inscriptions. — <sup>28</sup> *Cōmūtātus*, attending, having attended, Cæs. B. G. vi. 7. *Cōmūtō*, act. Propert. *Cōmūtōr*, pass. Ov. Trist. iii. 7. 47. Hence *Cōmūtātus*, attended. — <sup>29</sup> *Confābulātum*, Terent. *Confābulābunt* in some old edd. of Plaut. Most. ii. 2. 78.; but the true reading is *conturbābunt*. — <sup>30</sup> *Cōnandus*, Cæs. B. C. i. 31. i. 65. *Cōnārem* for *cōnārer*, is quoted by some grammarians from Ennius ap. Prisc.; but it cannot be found either in the ed. of Putichius, Hanov. 1605, or in that of Krehl., Lips. 1819.

Conspicor, <sup>1</sup>	spy, see.
Contemplor, <sup>2</sup>	view.
Criminor, <sup>3</sup> M.	blame.
Cunctor, <sup>4</sup>	delay.
Dēprecōr, <sup>5</sup> M. R.	entreat, pray against.
*Digladior,	fence.
Dōminor, <sup>6</sup>	rule.
Epulor, <sup>7</sup> R. D.	feast.
*Fāmūlor, <sup>8</sup> M.	wait on.
Fāris, <sup>9</sup> or fāre, U.	.. speak.
Fērior, <sup>10</sup> R.	keep holiday.
*Frūmentor, <sup>11</sup> M.	provide corn, forage, purvey.
Fūrōr, <sup>12</sup> M.	steal.
Glōrior, <sup>13</sup> R. D.	boast.
Grātūlor, <sup>14</sup> M. D.	rejoice, congratulate.
Hortor, <sup>15</sup>	encourage.

Imītor, <sup>16</sup> U. R. D.	imitate.
Indignor, <sup>17</sup> D.	disdain.
Infūior, <sup>18</sup> D.	deny.
*Injuriōr,	injure.
Insector, <sup>19</sup>	pursue.
Insiōior, <sup>20</sup> R.	lie in wait.
Jācūlor, <sup>21</sup>	dart.
Jocor, <sup>22</sup>	jest.
Lētor, <sup>23</sup> R. D.	rejoice.
Lāmentor, <sup>24</sup> D.	bewail.
*Lignōr, <sup>25</sup> M.	gather fuel.
Luctor, <sup>26</sup>	wrestle.
Mēdicōr, <sup>27</sup> R. D.	cure.
Mēditōr, <sup>28</sup>	meditate.
Mercōr, <sup>29</sup> M. R. D.	purchase.
Mīnor,	threaten.
Mīserōr, <sup>30</sup> D.	pity.

<sup>1</sup>The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, *us*, do not occur. *Conspico*, act. Varr. Hence *Conspicatur*, Varr. & Sall. Jug. c. 49. But Curtius in the last passage reads *conspicitur*. — <sup>2</sup>*Contemplo*, Apul. & Plaut. passim. Hence *Contemplātus*, *θεωρουμένος*, Ammian, *Contemplātus*, *θεωρησας* Curt. iii. 4. et passim. 'In *contemplandis*, rebus,' Cic. Nat. Deor. i. 27. — <sup>3</sup>*Crimino*, Plaut. Hence *Criminātus*, accused, Hygin. 18. *Criminātus*, having accused, passim. *Criminātum*, Liv. ii. 37. — <sup>4</sup>*Cunctor*, Plaut. Hence 'Cunctāta, fides,' his faith was arrested, Stat. Theb. though it may be construed actively. — <sup>5</sup>*Dēprecātus*, having entreated, Cic. Orat. ii. 49. et passim. *Dēprecātus*, pass. deprecated, Justin. viii. 5. asked, Apul. Met. iii. p. 59. *Dēprecātum*, Cic. de Amic. c. 11. *Dēprecātūrus*, Hirt. 'Ad pacem dēprecandū,' Cic. 'Dēprecandæ malevolentiae, causa,' pro Balb. xviii. 7. — <sup>6</sup>*Dōmināris*, pass. Cic. Off. — <sup>7</sup>*Epulātūrus*, Val. Max. *Epulanda*, to be eaten, Ovid. — <sup>8</sup>*Fāmulo*, Tertul. *Fāmulatū*, Sil. *Fāmulatū* occurs only in Tertul. de Res. Car. c. 47. where he quotes St. Paul, Rom. vi. 22. *δουλωθεντες δε τω Θεω κ. τ. λ.* *Fāmulati autem Deo*, &c. — <sup>9</sup>*For*, Diomed. i. p. 375. Prisc. viii. p. 793. but without authority. *Fātu*, Virg. *Æn.* xii. 25. *Fandus*, Lucan. *Fāmīno* for *fāre*, Cato R. R. *Fātūr*, pass. Sueton. — <sup>10</sup>*Fēriātus*, Cic. Nat. Deor. i. 37. *Fēriātūrus*, Sidon. The Participles in *ns* and *us* are not found in the classics. — <sup>11</sup>*Frūmentātus*, Cic. Epist. ad Att. Cæs. B. G. — <sup>12</sup>*Fūrātum*, Plaut. Rud. i. 2. 23. Trin. iv. 2. 22. — <sup>13</sup>*Glōriātūrus*, Sueton. *Glōriātus*, Cic. Tusc. v. 17. — <sup>14</sup>*Grātūlatum*, Cic. in Pison. c. 22. *Grātūlatus*, Cic. Fam. iii. 11. *Grātūlandus*, Fronton. — <sup>15</sup>*Horto*, as, Prisc. *Hortor*, pass. Gell. xv. 13. Tacit. Ann. xii. 9. 'Ad quas hortandas,' &c. Justin. xi. 9. 13. — <sup>16</sup>*Imīlatu*, Val. Max. *Imīlātūrus*, Cic. *Imīlandus*, Cic. Off. *Imīto*, Var. — <sup>17</sup>*Indignandus*, Ovid. Met. — <sup>18</sup>From *in* and *Fūleor*; some derive it from *in* and *Focio*, and write *Infūior*. *Infūiandus*, Ovid. — <sup>19</sup>*Insecto*, Plaut. Hence *Insectātus*, pressed on, pursued, Hirt. *Insectātus*, having inveighed against, Tacit. Hist. ii. 96. et passim. *Insectans* *aves*, Cic. — <sup>20</sup>*Insiōiātūrin*, Callistr. *Insiōiat*, in some copies of Virg. *Æn.* i. 719. according to Servius. *Insiōiātūrus*, Hirt. 'In legatū insiōiandis,' Cic. pro Cael. c. 21. — <sup>21</sup>*Ejācūlātūrat* is found in Gell. xvi. 19. 4. and *Jācūlātus*, pass. Lucan. iii. 568. *Jācūlātus*, having hurled, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 276. et passim. — <sup>22</sup>*Jocābo*, Plaut. — <sup>23</sup>*Lēto*, *εὐφραίνω*, I gladden, Liv. ap. Non. Hence *Lētātus*, gladdened, Virg. *Æn.* xii. 841. *Lētātus*, having rejoiced, Cic. Phil. xi. 4. et passim. *Lētātūrus*, Cic. de Div. ii. 9. *Lētandus*, Cic. Leg. Manil. c. 1. These two passages may be construed actively, *ob*, or *propter*, being understood. — <sup>24</sup>*Lāmentātur*, pass. impers. Apul. Met. *Lāmentātus*, lamented, Sil. *Lāmentātus*, having lamented, Cic. Tusc. i. 31. et passim. *Lamentandus*, Fronton. de Nep. — <sup>25</sup>*Lignātum*, Liv. x. 25. This verb has no Participle. — <sup>26</sup>*Lucto*, Terent. Hence *Luctans*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 694. — <sup>27</sup>*Mēdicāre*, *λεγειν*, Sil. *Mēdicāre*, medicinis imbuiere, tingere, Virg. Georg. i. 193. Hence *Mēdicātus*, *φαρμακυνθείς*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 420. et passim. *Mēdicentur*, pass. Colum. *Mēdicātūrus*, Colum. *Mēdicandus*, Tibull. — <sup>28</sup>*Mēditantur*, pass. Minuc. Fel. Hence *Mēditatus*, pass. Cic. passim. *Mēditatus*, act. This does not occur so frequently as the other. — <sup>29</sup>*Mercātum*, Plaut. *Mercātus*, having bought, Cic. *Mercātus*, pass. Plin. *Mercātūrus*, Plin. *Mercandus*, Cic. — <sup>30</sup>*Mīserandus*, Cic. de Or. i. 37.

Mōdēror,<sup>1</sup> U. D. .... rule.  
 Mōdūlor,<sup>2</sup> D. .... play a tune.  
 Mōror,<sup>3</sup> R. D. .... delay.  
 Mūtuor,<sup>4</sup> .... borrow.  
 Negotor, .... traffic.  
 \*Nūgor,<sup>5</sup> .... trifle.  
 Obtestor,<sup>6</sup> .... beseech.  
 Opēror,<sup>7</sup> .... work.  
 Opīnor,<sup>8</sup> U. R. D. .... think.  
 Opītūlor,<sup>9</sup> M. .... help.  
 Opsonor,<sup>10</sup> M. .... cater.  
 Otior,<sup>11</sup> .... be at leisure.  
 Pabulor,<sup>12</sup> M. D. .... graze, forage.  
 Pālōr,<sup>13</sup> .... wander.  
 Percontor,<sup>14</sup> M. .... enquire.  
 Pēriclitor,<sup>15</sup> D. make trial, be in danger.  
 Piscor,<sup>16</sup> M. .... fish.  
 Pōpūlor,<sup>17</sup> R. D. .... lay waste.

Prædor,<sup>18</sup> M. .... plunder.  
 Prælor,<sup>19</sup> .... fight.  
 Præmior, .... make prizes.  
 Præcor,<sup>20</sup> M. U. R. D. .... pray.  
 Rēcorior,<sup>21</sup> .... remember.  
 Rīmōr,<sup>22</sup> .... search.  
 Rīxor,<sup>23</sup> .... scold.  
 \*Rusticor, .... dwell in the country.  
 Sciscitor,<sup>24</sup> M. .... inquire.  
 \*Scitor,<sup>25</sup> M. .... ask.  
 Scrūtōr,<sup>26</sup> .... search.  
 Sūlor,<sup>27</sup> D. .... comfort.  
 Spātior, .... walk about.  
 Spēcūlor,<sup>28</sup> M. R. .... view, spy.  
 Stīpūlor,<sup>29</sup> .... stipulate.  
 Suavior, .... kiss.  
 Suspīcor,<sup>30</sup> .... suspect.  
 Testor,<sup>31</sup> .... witness.

<sup>1</sup> *Mōdēro*, Pacuv. ap. Non. vii. 23. Hence, *Mōdēratur*, pass. *Mōdērātu*, Liv. iv. 27. *Mōdērāndus*, Cic. de Orat. i. 18. — <sup>2</sup> *Mōdūlatus*, pass. Quint. ix. 2. Hor. i. Od. 32. 5. al. passim. *Mōdūlandus*, Hor. ii. Ep. 2. 143. — <sup>3</sup> *Mōror*, Propert. iii. 20. 12. *Mōrandus*, Hor. Art. Poët. 223. — <sup>4</sup> *Mūtuo*, Cæcil. ap. Non. Hence, *Mūtūatus*, borrowed, Plin. *Mūtūatus*, having borrowed, Val. Max. The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, are not found in the classics. — <sup>5</sup> This verb has no Participles. — <sup>6</sup> *Obtestatus*, pass. conjured, Apul. *Obtestatus*, having entreated, Sallust. Catil. c. 46. et passim. — <sup>7</sup> *Opēratus*, pass. exercised, Lactant. *Opēratus*, working, sacrificing, Propert. ii. 24. 1. et passim. — <sup>8</sup> *Opinātu*, Plin. *Opināturus*, Cic. Acad. *Opināndus*, Cic. Tusc. — <sup>9</sup> *Opītūla*, Liv. Andron. ap. Non. *Opītūlātum*, Plaut. — <sup>10</sup> *Opsonō*, Ære, Ævi, Ætus, is more usual. *Opsonāvī*, Plaut. *Opsonābo*, Terent. *Opsonātum*, Plaut. Some write *Obsōno*; but contrary to its derivation, *δψων*, *δψωνιον*, *opsōnium*, any thing provided for food, except bread and wine; and particularly fish. — <sup>11</sup> *Otiātus* occurs only in Sidon, Ep. iii. 1. It has no other Participle. — <sup>12</sup> *Pabūlātum*, Plaut. *Pabūlandus*, Colum. — <sup>13</sup> This Verb is chiefly used in the Present Participle, *Pālans*, Liv. i. 11. Virg. xii. 738. al. passim. *Pālatus*, dispersed, wandering, Liv. *Pālāre*, act. occurs in the Satire of Sulpicia, vs. 43. — <sup>14</sup> *Perconto*, Apul. Met. *Percontantur*, pass. Gell. Hence, 'pretio percontato,' Apul. Met. *Percontātum*, Ter. — <sup>15</sup> *Pēriclātus*, pass. Cic. de Amic. c. 17. *Pēriclātus*, having made trial, Cic. pro Quint. c. 31. al. passim. *Pēriclātandus*, Cic. Catil. i. 5. — <sup>16</sup> *Piscātum*, Plaut. The Participle *Piscans* occurs only in Festus. — <sup>17</sup> *Pōpūlavī*, Propert. Hence, *Pōpūlor*, pass. Liv. and *Pōpūlātus*, Cic. *Pōpūlātus*, act. Stat. Theb. et passim. *Pōpūlāturus*, Cæs. B. G. *Pōpūlandus*, Ovid. Met. — <sup>18</sup> *Prædo*, Prisc. Hence *Prædātum* iri, Plaut. *Prædātum*, Liv. iv. 55. — <sup>19</sup> *Præliant*, Enn. ap. Non. — <sup>20</sup> *Præco*, Prisc. Hence *Præcantur*, pass. Varr. ap. Non. and *Præcātus*, prayed, supplicated. *Præcātus*, having prayed, Cic. Tusc. i. 47. et passim. *Præcātum*, Liv. vii. 31. *Præcātu*, Stat. Theb. *Præcāturus*, Ovid. *Præcandus*, Tacit. Ann. — <sup>21</sup> *Rēcordāvī*, Ann. ap. Non. Hence, *Rēcordātus*, remembered, Sidon. *Rēcordātus*, having remembered, Ovid Met. et passim. 'Ad ea rēcordanda,' Cic. pro Syll. c. 26. — <sup>22</sup> *Rīmābam*, Jul. Valer. *Rīmārem*, Accius ap. Non. Hence, *Rīmātus*, pass. investigated, Sidon. 'Rīmandis offensis sagax,' Tacit. Hist. iv. 11. — <sup>23</sup> *Rixant*, *Rixent*, *Rixarent*, Varr. ap. Non. 'Cum rixātus esset,' Cic. de Orat. c. 59. — <sup>24</sup> *Sciscūtāre*, act. Plaut. Hence, *Sciscūtātus*, asked, Ammian. *Sciscūtātus*, having inquired, Petron. *Sciscūtātum*, Gell. — <sup>25</sup> *Scūtābat*, Ammian.; but Vales. and Gronov. read *noscutābat*. *Scūtātum*, Virg. Æn. ii. 114. — <sup>26</sup> *Scrūtāri*, pass. Ammian. xviii. 1. and *Scrūtātus*, searched after, xv. 8. *Scrūtātus*, having searched, Plin. xxiii. 6. et passim. — <sup>27</sup> *Sōlandus*, Ovid. — <sup>28</sup> *Spēcūlātum*, Sall. Jug. c. 116. *Spēcūlāturus*, Justin. 'Ad spēcūlandos actūs Hannibālis,' Justin. — <sup>29</sup> *Stīpūlat*, Symmach. Epist. Hence, *Stīpūlari*, pass. Sueton. and *Stīpūlātus*, contracted, Cic. pro Rosc. *Stīpūlātus*, having stipulated, ibid. c. 4. et passim. The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, are not found in the classics. — <sup>30</sup> *Suspīces*, Plaut. — <sup>31</sup> *Testo*, -as, Prisc. but without example. *Testātus*, attested, Liv. xxxiv. 41. al. passim. *Testātus*, having called to witness, Cic. Fin. ii. 20. et al. passim. 'Hoc testandū est,' Cic. Orat. c. 68.

Tutor, <sup>1</sup> D. .... defend.	Versor, <sup>8</sup> be employed, frequent, haunt,
Vāgor, <sup>2</sup> ..... wander.	dwell.
Vēnēror, <sup>3</sup> D. .... worship.	Vōcīfērōr, <sup>9</sup> ..... bawl.
Vēnor, <sup>4</sup> M. .... hunt.	

## § 144. III. EXCEPTIONS.

\*Crēpo,<sup>7</sup> crēpāre, crēpui, — ..... make a noise.  
 \*Cūbo,<sup>8</sup> cūbāre, cūbui, —, cūbitum, ..... lie down.  
 Do,<sup>9</sup> dāre, dēdi, dātus, dātum, dāturus, dandus, ..... give.  
 Dōmo,<sup>10</sup> dōmāre, dōmui, dōmītus, dōmīturus, domandus, .... conquer.  
 Frīco,<sup>11</sup> frīcāre, frīcui, frictus, or frīcātus, frīcandus, ..... rub.  
 Jūvo,<sup>12</sup> jūvāre, jūvi, jūtus, jūvāturus, jūvandus, ..... help.

<sup>1</sup> *Tūtētis*, Plaut. *Tūta*, Pacuv. ap. Non. *Tūtant*, Næv. ibid. *Tūtāret*, Pompon. ibid. Hence, *Tūtantur*, pass. Plaut. and *Tūtātus*, defended, Symmach. Ep. ix. 11. *Tūtātus*, having defended, Ovid. Trist. v. 6. 15. et passim. *Tūtandus*, Phædr. — <sup>2</sup> *Vāgant*, Enn. ap. Non. vii. — <sup>3</sup> *Vēnēro*, Plaut. Hence, *Vēnērātus*, Hor. Sat. ii. 2. 124. Virg. *Æn.* iii. 460. *Vēnērātus*, having worshipped, Propert. *Vēnērāndus*, Cic. Agr. ii. 35. Virg. *Æn.* ix. 275. &c. *Vēnērantes*, i. e. *Vēnēri ōpēram dantes*, Hygin. Fab. lxxv. which is not to be imitated. Yet this, according to some etymologists, is the original meaning of the word. — <sup>4</sup> *Vēnātum*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 118. Plaut. *Vēnātus*, having hunted, Ovid. Fast. *Vēnor*, pass. Enn. ap. Non. — <sup>5</sup> *Versor*, though generally ranked with Deponents, is merely the Passive of *Verso*; 'nam qui in aliquo loco, aut re immoratur, quodammodo in ea huc et illuc sese versat, et quasi volutatur, aut corpore, aut mente.' Facciolat. — <sup>6</sup> *Vōcīfērātus*, Varr. Liv. vii. 12. viii. 38. *Vōcīfērātus*, Colum.

<sup>7</sup> So *Concrēpo*, I rattle, ring. \**Discrēpo*, I differ in sound, I disagree, makes *ui*, or *āvi*: *Discrēpuit*, Hor. Art. Poët. 219. *Discrēpāvit*, Cic. de Or. iii. 30. *Incrēpo*, I sound, strike, chide, *ui*, sometimes *āvi*; *Incrēpāvit*, Plaut. *Incrēptus*, chidden, Liv. xxiii. 26. *Incrēptus*, Prudent. Cathem. vii. 195, where the Juntine ed. has *Incrēptus*. The Perfect and Participles of *Rēcrēpo*, I resound, do not occur. — <sup>8</sup> *Cūbasse*, Quintil. viii. 2. *Cūbāris*, Propert. *Incūbāvēre*, Plin. *Incūbui*, Virg. *Æn.* vii. 88. et passim. *Sūpercūbasse*, Apul. Met. *Cūbitum*, Cic. pro Rosc. *Incūbandus*, Plin. When the compounds of *Cūbo* take an M, they are of the third conj. — <sup>9</sup> So four Compounds, *Circumdo*, I surround; *Pessumdo*, I destroy; *Sātīdo*, I give good bail; *Vēnumdo*, I set to sale. The other Compounds are of the third Conj. *Dātum iri*, Cæs. B. C. *Dāturus*, Catull. *Dandus*, Cic. Off. i. 21. The first person pass. *Dor*, does not occur except in Diomed. i. p. 375. — <sup>10</sup> *Dōmāvi*, Ennius. *Dōmāvērunt*, Flor. *Dōmātus*, Petron. Hence *Dōmātor*, a tamer, Tibull. iv. 116. *Dōmīturus*, Virg. Georg. iv. 102. *Dōmandus*, Propert. ii. 34. 50. So *Edōmo*, I subdue; *Perdōmo*, I subdue wholly. *Perdōmīturus*, Justin. ii. 13. — <sup>11</sup> Some Grammars and Dictionaries give this verb a Perfect in *-avi*; but no such Perfect exists now in the Latin classics. *Frictus*, Juv. Sat. vi. 577. *Frīcātus*, Plin. *Frīcandus*, Plin. *Afrīcātus*, Apul. Met. *Confrīcātus*, Plin. *Dīfrīctus*, Colum. *Dīfrīcātus*, Colum. *Infrīcātus*, Plin. *Perfrīctus*, Apul. Met. *Perfrīcātus*, Vitruv. *Rēfrīcāturus*, Cic. The Perfects of *Confrīco* and *Infrīco* seem not to exist. — <sup>12</sup> *Jūvērunt*, Catull. lxxv. 18. and in some edd. *Jūērunt*. Vossius quotes *Jūvāvī* from Manilius. *Jūvārit*, Pallad. but Gesner reads *jūvābit Jūtus*, Tacit. Ann. *Jūturus*, Colum. *Jūvāturus*, Sall. Jug. c. 47. *Jūvandus*, Ovid. *Adjūvi*, Cic. *Adjūvō*, for *adjūvōro*, Cic. de Senect. c. 1. *Adjūtus*, Macrob. *Adjūtum*, Corn. Nep. *Adjūturus*, Liv. *Adjūvaturus*, Petron. c. 18. *Adjūvandus*, Cic.

* <i>Lābo</i> , <sup>1</sup>	<i>lābāre</i> , —, —, —, <i>labasse</i> , .....	<i>droop, totter.</i>
<i>Lāvo</i> , <sup>2</sup>	<i>lāvāre</i> , <i>lāvi</i> , <i>lautus</i> , or <i>lotus</i> , or <i>lāvātus</i> , <i>lautum</i> , or <i>lāvātum</i> , <i>lāvātūrus</i> , <i>lāvandus</i> , .....	<i>wash.</i>
* <i>Mīco</i> , <sup>3</sup>	<i>mīcāre</i> , <i>mīcui</i> , —, .....	<i>vibrate, glitter.</i>
<i>Nēco</i> , <sup>4</sup>	<i>nēcāre</i> , <i>nēcāvi</i> , or <i>nēcui</i> , <i>nēcātus</i> , <i>nēcātūrus</i> , <i>nēcandus</i> , ..	<i>kill.</i>
* <i>Nexo</i> , <sup>5</sup>	<i>nexāre</i> , —, —, .....	<i>tie, knit.</i>
<i>Plicō</i> , <sup>6</sup>	<i>plīcāre</i> , —, <i>plīcātus</i> , or <i>plīcītus</i> , .....	<i>fold.</i>
<i>Pōto</i> , <sup>7</sup>	<i>pōtāre</i> , <i>pōtāvi</i> , <i>pōtus</i> , or <i>pōtātus</i> , <i>pōtum</i> , or <i>pōtātum</i> , <i>pōtūrus</i> , or <i>pōtātūrus</i> , <i>pōtandus</i> , .....	<i>drink.</i>
<i>Sēco</i> , <sup>8</sup>	<i>sēcāre</i> , <i>sēcui</i> , <i>sectus</i> , <i>sēcātūrus</i> , <i>sēcandus</i> , .....	<i>cut.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Of the Perfect of *Lābo* we find no trace in the classics, except that we read *Lābasse* in Plin. xiv. 28. — <sup>2</sup> *Lāvo*, *is*, *ere*, &c. Hor. iii. Od. 12. 2. iv. Od. 6. 26. i. Sat. 5. 24. Ovid. iv. 340. Virg. Georg. iii. 221. Æn. iii. 663. Plaut. passim. *Lāvāvi*, Plaut. *Lautus*, Cic. pro Deiot. c. 10. Hor. ii. Sat. 3. 292. Ter. and Plaut. *Lōtus*, Stat. *Lōvātus*, Plaut. *Lautum*, Ter. and Plaut. *Lōvātum*, Hor. i. Sat. 3. 137. i. Sat. 6. 125. & Ter. *Lōvātūrus*, Ovid. Fast. iii. 12. *Lōvandus*, Ovid. Fast. iv. 136. & Plin. — <sup>3</sup> *Mīcui*, Ovid. *Mīcāverit*, Sollin. c. 53. *Dimīco*, I fight, *avi*, sometimes *ui*: *Dimīcāvi*, Sueton. *Dimīcui*, Ovid. *Dimīcātūrus*, Cæs. B. G. iii. 24. *Emīco*, I spring forth, I shine forth, *ui*, *ere*: *Emīcui*, Virg. Æn. ii. 174. et passim. Quintil. i. 6. finds fault with those, who, too scrupulously following analogy, preferred *Emīcāvi* to *Emīcui*. *Emīcātūrus*, Senec. ad Helv. 11. The Perfects of *Internīco*, I shine among, and *Promīco*, I spring out, do not occur. *Promīcandus*, Næv. ap. Non. i. 329. — <sup>4</sup> *Nēcāvi*, Cic. pro Leg. Manil. c. 5. *Nēcui*, Phædr. *Nēcātus*, Sall. Jug. c. 50. et al. passim. *Nectus* in some edd. of Cic. de Leg. iii. 10. 'Proprie *Nectus*, FERRO, *nectus* vero ALIA VI peremptus.' *Nēcātūrus*, Ovid. *Nēcandus*, Juv. Sat. vi. 596. *Enīco*, ἀρχαίως. *Enīco*, I slay, *ui*, *ctus*; sometimes *avi*, *ctus*: *Enēcui*, Sueton. *Enēcāvi*, Plaut. *Enīcasso*, for *enīcāvērō*, Plaut. *Enectus*, Cic. de Divin. *Enēcātus*, Plin. *Enēcandus*, Cels. The Perfect of *Internēcō*, I utterly destroy, and its Participles in *ns*, *rus*, *ctus*, are not found in the classics. *Internēcātus*, Plaut. *Internectus*, quoted from Cic. Phil. xiv. 3. does not exist in correct copies. — <sup>5</sup> *Nexo* has neither Perfect nor Participle. See *Necto* and *Nexo*, third Conj. — <sup>6</sup> The perfects *Plīcui* and *Plīcāvi* are found only in Priscian, and without example. *Plīcātus*, Lucr. vi. 1085. *Plīcītus*, Mart. *Dūplīco*, I double; *Multiplīco*, I multiply; *Rēplīco*, I unfold, make *avi*, *ctus*. *Rēplīcasse*, Plin. *Rēplīcātus*, Plin. and *Rēplīctus*, Stat. Sylv. *Supplīco* makes *avi*, and has no Perfect Participle. *Supplīcātum*, Plaut. *Supplīcātūrus*, Ter. *Supplīcassia*, for *Supplīcāvērīa*, Plaut. *Dūplīcātūrus*, Cic. Att. v. 18. 'Ad *Dūplīcanda* verba,' Liv. xxvii. 11. *Applīco*, I apply, *Implicō*, I entangle, make *ui*, *ctus*, and *avi*, *ctus*. *Complicō*, *ui*, *ctus*, and *ctus*. *Complicāvi* does not occur. *Applīcui*, Justin. *Applīcāvi*, Cic. *Applīcītus*, Plin. *Applīcātus*, Cæs. B. C. iii. 101. &c. *Applīcītūrus*, Justin. *Implicui*, Virg. Æn. xi. 761. et passim. *Implicāvi*, Liv. *Implicītus*, Hor. Art. Poët. 423. Liv. i. 31. et passim. *Implicātus*, Cæs. B. G. vii. 73. &c. *Ons*. *Implicītus morbo*, not *implīcātus*. *Implicītūrus*, Ov. *Explicō* makes *ui*, *ctus*, and *avi*, *ctus*. When it means to *explain*, *avi*, *ctus*, are the more usual forms: in the sense of *unfolding*, *ui*, *ctus* are more usual. *Explicui*, Petron. Virg. Georg. ii. 280. et al. passim. *Explicāvi*, Plaut. and Cic. Gellius remarks, that *Explicui* was more usual in the time of Cicero, than *Explicāvi*. *Explicītūrus*, Stat. Theb. *Explicātūrus*, Cæs. B. C. i. 78. *Complicui*, Senec. *Complicātus*, Cic. *Complicītus*, Apul. Met. — <sup>7</sup> *Pōtus* *sum*, for *pōtāvi*, Varr. *Pōtus*, act. Cic. Fam. vii. 22. Ovid. *Pōtus* *pass*. Cic. Ovid. Hor. *Pōtātus*, Cic. Tusc. v. 5. *Pōtūrus*, Plin. *Pōtātūrus*, Sueton. *Pōtum*, Virg. Ecl. vii. 11. *Pōtātum*, Plaut. *Pōtandus*, Ovid. *Epōto*, I drink up, makes *ēpōtāvi*, *ēpōtus*; *Perpōto*, *perpōtāvi*, and has no Perfect Participle, nor the Participles in *rus* and *ctus*. *Epōto*, has not the Participles in *ns*, *rus* and *ctus*. — <sup>8</sup> *Sēcui*, Virg. Georg. iii. 444. al. passim. *Sēcāvi*, mentioned by the Oxford Commentators on Lily. and by some others, does not exist in the classics. *Sectus*, Cic. Tusc. ii. 53. et al. passim. *Sēcātūrus*, Colum. *Sēcandus*, Ovid. The Compounds make *ui*, *ctus*, *Præsēcō*, I chop off, pare off, and *Resēcō*, I cut off, *ui*, *ctus*, rarely *ctus*. *Præsēcātus*, Apul. Met. *Rēsēcātus*, Apul. The Perfects of *Circumēcō*, I cut about, and *Inter-*

\*Sōno,<sup>1</sup> sōnāre, sōnui, —, sōnātūrus, sōnandus, ..... *sound*.  
 \*Sto,<sup>2</sup> stāre, stēti, —, stātūrus, ..... *stand*.  
 \*Tōno,<sup>3</sup> tōnāre, tōnui, —, ..... *thunder*.  
 Vēto,<sup>4</sup> vētāre, vētui, vētītus, ..... *forbid*.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 145. Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *-eo*, and change *-eo* into *-ēre* long in the Infinitive; into *ui* in the Perfect; and into *-ītus* in the Perfect Participle Passive; as,

Mōneo,<sup>5</sup> mōnēre, mōnui, mōnītus, R. D. .... *advise*.

—So,

Admōneo,<sup>6</sup> R. D. .... *admonish*. | Prēmōneo, ..... *forewarn*.  
 Commōneo, ..... *warn*. | \*Arceo,<sup>7</sup> D. .... *tie hard, drive away*.

*sēco*, intersect, are not in use; nor the Participles *Intersectus*, *Persectus*. *Intersectandus*, Colum. *Rēscandus*, Cic. Cat. ii. 5.

<sup>1</sup> Sōnēre, third Conj. Lucr. Sōnūt, Accius, ap. Non. Sōnunt, Accius et Enn. Sōnivi, Non. Sōnui, Propert. Sōnāvērūt, Tertull. whence Sōnātūrus, Hor. i. Sat. 4. 43. Sōnandus, Ovid. Sōnantur, pass. Albinov. ad Liv. i. 107. For Assōno, I resound; Circumsōno, I sound around; Dissōno, I am discordant, we find no Perfect. Rēsōno, I re-echo, makes āvi; Manil. Consōno, I sound together; Exsōno, I resound; Insōno, I resound; Persōno, I sound loudly; Præsōno, I sound before, make ui. Yet Persōnāvī, Apul. Met. Resōnūt, for resōnat, Accius ap. Non. Resōnunt, Accius et Enn. ap. Prisc. — <sup>2</sup> Stātūrus, Lucan. et Liv. iii. 60. The Compounds, Consto, I consist; Ecto, I exist, appear; Insto, I press on, am near; Obsto, oppose; Persto, I persist; Præsto, I surpass, make stīti, stītūrus. Præstandus, Ovid. Liv. x. 36. Cic. Fam. vi. 8. Asto, I stand near, stīti, stītūrus; Porcin. ap. Prisc. Præsto, I stand to be hired; Resto, I remain, make stīti, without the Perfect Participle. Antesto, or antisto, I excel; Circumsto, I stand about: Intersto, I stand between; Supersto, I stand over, make stīti, without the Perfect Participle. See Cic. de Inv. Cæs. B. G. Disto, I am distant, I differ; Substo, I stand under, I bear up, have neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle. 'Multa quæ in præteritis efferuntur, ad sisto, commodè reduci possunt.' Facciolat. See the Compounds of Sistō, third Conj. Præstāvi, Ammian. Præstāvimus, Paul. Dig. Præstīturus in some edd. of Cic. Fam. vi. 8. — <sup>3</sup> Tōnīmus, third Conj. Varr. ap. Non. i. 245. Tōnāvi, given by the Oxford commentators on Lily, and by Gesner in his Thesaur. Lat. and Tōnivi, quoted from Plautus, do not exist. Attōno, I astonish, ui, ītus; Circumtōno, I thunder round, ui; Intōno, I thunder on, ui, ītus; Intōnāvī, Paulin. Epist. Intōnātus, thundered on, Hor. Epod. ii. 51. Rēsōno, I resound, has neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle. — <sup>4</sup> Vētāvi, Plaut. according to the Mss. of Langius and seven others. Vētāviatī, va. 46. according to five Palatine Mss. and three others. See the Delphin Plautus, printed by Valpy. Vētāvi, Pers. Sat. which some have altered to nōtāvi, others to rēlābi. Vētāveram, Planc. ad Cic. Fam. x. 23. where the ed. Vindel. 1469. and the Ald. 1533. have vētūram. Some from Stat. Theb. iii. 71. cite vēlātam; but the two Mss. at Cambridge, one in the Peter-house Col. and the other in St. John's, with more than twenty printed copies, have in this passage nēgātam.

<sup>5</sup> Mōnītūrus, Propert. i. Mōnendus, Plaut. — <sup>6</sup> Admōnītūrus, Ovid. Admonītum, Cic. Admōnendus, Plin. — <sup>7</sup> Arcendus, Cic. Off. i. 34.



Coerceo, <sup>1</sup> D. ....	restrain.
Exerceo, <sup>2</sup> D. ....	exercise.
Habeo, <sup>3</sup> R. ....	have.
Adhibeo, <sup>4</sup> R. D. ....	admit, use.
Cohibeo, <sup>5</sup> D. ....	restrain.
Inhibeo, <sup>6</sup> D. ....	hinder.
Exhibeo, <sup>7</sup> R. D. ....	show.
*Perhibeo, <sup>8</sup> D. ....	report.
Prōhibeo, <sup>9</sup> R. D. ....	hinder.
Posthabeo, ....	postpone.
Præbeo, <sup>10</sup> R. D. ....	afford.
Dābeo, <sup>11</sup> R. D. ....	owe.
Mérito, <sup>12</sup> R. ....	deserve.

Comméreo, <sup>13</sup> ....	deserve well or ill.
Dēméreo, <sup>14</sup> D. ....	earn.
Eméreo, ....	merit.
*Perméreo, ....	serve in war.
Prōméreo, <sup>15</sup> ....	deserve.
Terreo, <sup>16</sup> D. ....	terrify.
Absterreo, <sup>17</sup> ....	deter.
Conterreo, <sup>18</sup> ....	affright.
Dēterreo, <sup>19</sup> D. ....	deter.
Exterreo, ....	scare.
Perterreo, ....	frighten.
Tāceo, <sup>20</sup> R. D. ....	be silent, conceal.

§ 146. Neuter Verbs of the Second Conjugation generally make *-ui*, and have no Perfect Participle:

*Aceo, <sup>21</sup> ....	be sour.
*Arceo, <sup>22</sup> ....	be dry.
*Cāleo, <sup>23</sup> R. ....	be warm, hot.
*Cādeo, <sup>24</sup> ....	be white, hot.
*Cāneo, <sup>25</sup> ....	be hoary.
*Cāreo, <sup>26</sup> R. ....	want.
Clāreo, <sup>27</sup> ....	be bright, renowned.
Dōleo, <sup>28</sup> R. D. ....	grieve.
Egeo, <sup>29</sup> R. ....	want.
*Eminéo, <sup>30</sup> ....	be raised above.

*Flacceo, <sup>31</sup> ....	wither.
*Flōreo, <sup>32</sup> ....	flourish.
*Horreo, <sup>33</sup> D. ....	be rough, tremble with cold.
*Jāceo, <sup>34</sup> R. ....	lie.
*Languéo, <sup>35</sup> ui, ....	languish.
*Lāteo, <sup>36</sup> ....	lie hid.
*Līceo, <sup>37</sup> ....	be put to sale, be valued.
*Mādeo, <sup>38</sup> ....	be wet.
*Nīgreo, <sup>39</sup> ....	be black.
*Nīteo, <sup>40</sup> ....	shine.

<sup>1</sup> *Coercendus*, Cels. — <sup>2</sup> *Exercendus*, Cic. de Orat. i. 187. — <sup>3</sup> *Habitus*, Cic. Philip. iii. 27. *Habendus*, Ovid. — <sup>4</sup> *Adhibitus*, Curt. *Adhibendus*, Aulon. — <sup>5</sup> *Cohibendus*, Cels. *Cohibessit*, for *cohibuerit*, Lucr. iii. 445. — <sup>6</sup> *Inhibendus*, Sen. — <sup>7</sup> *Exhibitus*, Petron. *Exhibendus*, Plin. Epist. — <sup>8</sup> *Perhibendus*, Cic. The Perfect Participle, and the Participles in *ns* and *rus* do not occur. — <sup>9</sup> *Prōhibitus*, Liv. xxi. 25. *Prōhibendus*, Cic. Off. i. 25. *Prōhibeo*, is, *id*, for *prōhibeam*, or *prōhibeam*, Plaut. — <sup>10</sup> *Præbitus*, Liv. *Præbendus*, Cic. Off. i. 41. — <sup>11</sup> *Dābitus*, Curt. *Debitu iri*, for *debitum iri*, ap. Ulp. — <sup>12</sup> *Méritus*, Cic. Acad. i. 7. Liv. ii. 38. — <sup>13</sup> *Commēritus*, pass. Plaut. *Commēritus*, having deserved, comes from the Deponent *Commētor*. — <sup>14</sup> *Dēmērendus*, Colum. i. 4. The Participles in *ns* and *rus* do not occur. — <sup>15</sup> *Prōmēritus*, pass. Plaut. *Prōmēritus*, having deserved, from *Prōmētor*, Virg. Æn. iv. 333. '*Prōmērendi*, *āmōris stādium*,' Sueton. Calig. c. 3. — <sup>16</sup> *Terrendus*, Aul. Gell. — <sup>17</sup> *Absteritus*, Liv. — <sup>18</sup> *Conteritus*, Virg. Æn. iii. 507. — <sup>19</sup> *Dēterrendus*, Hirt. B. G. — <sup>20</sup> *Tāctus*, concealed, Virg. Æn. iv. 67. *Tāctus*, Cic. *Tācendus*, Hor. Ode. The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *us* of *Commōneo*, *Posthabeo*, *Comméreo*, *Eméreo*, *Absterreo*, *Conterreo*, *Exterreo*, *Perterreo*, do not occur in the classics. *Perméreo* has no Participle.

<sup>21</sup> *Acui*, Ulpian. — <sup>22</sup> *Arui*, Prudent. — <sup>23</sup> *Cālui*, Stat. Theb. *Cālūrus*, Ovid. — <sup>24</sup> *Cāndui*, Ovid. — <sup>25</sup> *Cānuī*, Ovid. Fast. iii. 880. *Cānēt*, Propert. — <sup>26</sup> *Cūruī*, Plaut. *Carūrus*, Ovid. Met. — <sup>27</sup> *Clāruī*, Sueton. — <sup>28</sup> *Dōlui*, Virg. Æn. i. 673. *Dōlūrus est*, for *dōlui*, Inscr. *Dōleatur*, for *dōleat*, ibid. *Dōlūri*, Stat. *Dōlūrus*, Liv. xxxix. 43. *Dōlendus*, Ovid. — <sup>29</sup> *Egūi*, Cic. in Brut. c. 67. *Egūitūrus*, Tertul. *Egūrus*. See Sciop. — <sup>30</sup> The Perfect of the simple *Mīneo* does not occur. *Emīnuī*, Vell. — <sup>31</sup> *Flaccui*, Varr. where Gesner reads *Flacui*. '*Flaccante*, sententia,' Mamert. — <sup>32</sup> *Flōruī*, Ovid. — <sup>33</sup> *Horruī*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 502. *Horrendus*, Virg. Æn. ix. 112. — <sup>34</sup> *Jācuī*, passim. *Jāctūrus*, Stat. Theb. — <sup>35</sup> *Languī*, three syll. Lucan. vii. 245. Ovid. Met. — <sup>36</sup> *Lītui*, Virg. Æn. i. 134. et passim. — <sup>37</sup> *Līcuī*, Cic. — <sup>38</sup> *Mādūi*, Ovid. — <sup>39</sup> *Nīgrui*, Colum. — <sup>40</sup> *Nītui*, Tibull.

*Oléo, <sup>1</sup> .....	emit a smell.	*Rübeo, <sup>10</sup> .....	be red.
*Palleo, <sup>2</sup> .....	be pale.	*Sordeo, <sup>11</sup> .....	be filthy.
*Päreo, <sup>3</sup> M. R. ....	appear, obey.	*Squäleo, <sup>12</sup> .....	be foul.
*Päteo, <sup>4</sup> .....	be open.	*Saüdeo, <sup>13</sup> .....	study.
*Percalleo, <sup>5</sup> .....	be hardened, understand well.	*Stüpeo, <sup>14</sup> .....	be amazed.
*Pläceo, <sup>6</sup> .....	please.	*Tépeo, <sup>15</sup> .....	be warm.
*Pubeo, <sup>7</sup> .....	arrive at puberty.	*Torpeo, <sup>16</sup> .....	be torpid, numb.
*Puteo, <sup>8</sup> .....	stink.	*Tümeo, <sup>17</sup> .....	swell.
*Pütreo, <sup>9</sup> .....	be rotten.	*Väleo, <sup>18</sup> R. ....	be able.
*Rigeo, <sup>9</sup> .....	be stiff.	*Vigeo, <sup>19</sup> .....	be strong.
		*Vireo, <sup>20</sup> .....	be green.

To these add the Actives *Tümeo*,<sup>21</sup> *äre, ui, endus*, fear: and *Nöceo*,<sup>22</sup> *äre, ui, nöctum, nöctürus*, hurt. Also *Sileo*,<sup>23</sup> *äre, ui, silendus*, keep silent, conceal.

## EXCEPTIONS.

### § 147. Verbs in -beo and -ceo :

Jübeo, <sup>24</sup> jübäre, jüssi, jussus, jussürus, .....	order.
*Sorbeo, <sup>25</sup> sorbäre, sorbui, —, .....	sup.
Döceo, <sup>26</sup> döcäre, döcui, doctus, döcendus, .....	teach.
Misceo, <sup>27</sup> miscäre, miscui, mistus or mixtus, R. D. ....	mix.

<sup>1</sup> *Olui*, Hor. The compounds of *Oleo*, when they signify to smell, make *ui*: *Adöleo*, I smell, burn, *ui*, Varr. *Adultus*, Antias *ibid.* *Adölendus*, Ovid. *Oböleo*, smell, *ui*, Plaut. *Rödöleo*, smell strongly, *ui*; *Rödölüdrat*, had got a scent, Capitolin. in Gordian. *Sübdöleo*, smell a little, *ui*; but of this there is no classical proof: *Subölēvi* certainly does not exist. *Perolesse*, to have smelt strongly, is cited from Lucil. by Prisc. In the signification, to grow, grow out of use, fade, &c., they make *xvi*: *Aböleo*, I efface, *ēvi*, Gell. *Abolitus*, Tacit. *Abolütürus*, Sueton. *Abolendus*, Sueton. *Adolesco*, I grow up, *ēvi*, Sall. Jug. c. 2. *Adolesse*, Ovid. *Exoleo* occurs only in Prisc. *Exolesco*, I fade, *ēvi*, Plin. *Exolētus*, Cic. pro Mil. *Obsoleo*, or *Obsolesco*, I grow out of use, *ēvi*, Cic. Manil. c. 17. *Obsoletus*, Cic. *Inolesco*, I grow upon, implant, *ēvi*, Gell. *Inolescendus*, Gell. The Perfects *Abölui*, *Adölui*, I have grown up; *Adölēvi*, I have burned. *Exölui*, *Inölui*, do not occur in the entire body of classical Latinity. Priscian, gives *Abölui*, but without authority. — <sup>2</sup> *Pallui*, Propert. — <sup>3</sup> *Pärui*, Mart. *Pärütürus*, Justin. *Pärütum*, Symmach. — <sup>4</sup> *Pätui*, Ovid. Met. — <sup>5</sup> *Percallui*, Cic. Milon. The Perfect of the simple *Calleo* does not occur. — <sup>6</sup> *Pläcui*, Ovid. — <sup>7</sup> *Pübui*, Ulp. Dig. — <sup>8</sup> *Pütuit*, Hor. ii. Sat. 4. 66. So the Mss. of Cruquius, Torrentius, Bentley, three of the Harleian Mss. in the British Museum, and most of the modern edd. *Pütruit*, one of the Harleian Mss. with the edd. Mediol. 1477, Florent. 1482, and some others. — <sup>9</sup> *Rigui*, Ovid. Met. iv. 554. — <sup>10</sup> *Rübui*, Ovid. — <sup>11</sup> *Sordui*, Alcim. — <sup>12</sup> *Squälui*, Paulin. Nolan. — <sup>13</sup> *Stüdüi*, Cic. — <sup>14</sup> *Stüpuui*, Val. Flac. — <sup>15</sup> *Tépui*, Mart. — <sup>16</sup> *Torpuui*, Ovid. — <sup>17</sup> *Tümuui*, Ovid. — <sup>18</sup> *Välui*, Tibull. *Välütürus*, Cic. — <sup>19</sup> Anciently *Vigo*. *Vigui*, Ovid. Met. xv. 426. — <sup>20</sup> *Virui*, Flor. — <sup>21</sup> *Tümuui*, Cæs. *Tümendus*, Hor. — <sup>22</sup> *Nöcui*, Cic. Att. et passim. *Nöcui*, -is, -it, for *nöcuērüm*, Lucil. ap. Fest. in 'Tama.' *Nöcütum iri*, Cæs. B. G. v. 36. *Nöcütürus*, Cic. Off. *Nöcütus*, Vet. Interp. — <sup>23</sup> *Silui*, Senec. Med. *Silütum est*, August. de Civ. Dei. *Silendus*, Ovid.

<sup>24</sup> Anciently *Jüsi*. See Quintil. i. 7. *Jussürus*, Lucan. — <sup>25</sup> *Sorbui*, Plin. *Sorpsi*, Diomed. but without authority. *Absorbui*, Plin. *Absorpsi*, Lucan. *Exsorbui*, Plin. — <sup>26</sup> *Döcendus*, Cic. de Or. ii. 17. — <sup>27</sup> *Mistus* seems preferable to *Mixtus*; though in the ancient Mss. of Virgil and Inscript. ap. Manut. this Participle is written with *xv*. which is approved of by Dausquius. *Mistürus*, Lucan. *Miscendus*, Ovid.

<i>Mulceo</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>mulcēre</i> , <i>mulsi</i> , <i>mulsus</i> , <i>mulcendus</i> , .....	<i>soothe</i> .
<i>*Lūceo</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>lūcēre</i> , <i>luxi</i> , —, .....	<i>shine</i> .
<i>Taceo</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>tacēre</i> , <i>tacui</i> , <i>tacitus</i> , <i>R. D.</i> .....	<i>shine</i> .

§ 148. Verbs in *deo* :

<i>Ardeo</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>ardēre</i> , <i>arsi</i> , <i>arsus</i> , <i>arsūrus</i> , .....	<i>burn</i> .
<i>Audeo</i> , <sup>5</sup> <i>audēre</i> , <i>ausus sum</i> , <i>ausūrus</i> , <i>audendus</i> , .....	<i>dare</i> .
<i>Gaudeo</i> , <sup>6</sup> <i>gaudēre</i> , <i>gavisus sum</i> , <i>gavisūrus</i> , .....	<i>rejoice</i> .
<i>Mordeo</i> , <sup>7</sup> <i>mordēre</i> , <i>mōmordi</i> , <i>morsus</i> , <i>mordendus</i> , .....	<i>bite</i> .
<i>*Pendeo</i> , <sup>8</sup> <i>pendēre</i> , <i>pēpendi</i> , —, .....	<i>hang</i> .
<i>Prandeo</i> , <sup>9</sup> <i>prandēre</i> , <i>prandi</i> , <i>pransus</i> , <i>pransūrus</i> , .....	<i>dine</i> .
<i>Rideo</i> , <sup>10</sup> <i>ridēre</i> , <i>risi</i> , <i>risus</i> , <i>risum</i> , <i>risūrus</i> , <i>ridendus</i> , .....	<i>laugh</i> .
<i>*Sēdeo</i> , <sup>11</sup> <i>sēdēre</i> , <i>sēdi</i> , —, <i>sessum</i> , <i>sessūrus</i> , .....	<i>sit</i> .
<i>Spondeo</i> , <sup>12</sup> <i>spondēre</i> , <i>spōpondi</i> , <i>sponsus</i> , .....	<i>promise</i> .
<i>Suādeo</i> , <sup>13</sup> <i>suādēre</i> , <i>suāsi</i> , <i>suāsus</i> , <i>suāsūrus</i> , <i>suadendus</i> , .....	<i>advise</i> .
<i>Tōndeo</i> , <sup>14</sup> <i>tōndēre</i> , <i>tōtondi</i> , <i>tonsus</i> , .....	<i>clip</i> .
<i>Vīdeo</i> , <sup>15</sup> <i>vīdēre</i> , <i>vidi</i> , <i>visus</i> , <i>visum</i> , <i>visū</i> , <i>visūrus</i> , <i>videndus</i> , .....	<i>see</i> .

<sup>1</sup> *Mulsi*, Enn. ap. Prisc. The Participle *Mulsus* is used only in the sense of *sweet*, as in Plaut. or *mixed with honey*, as in Colum. Plin. xxii. 24., *Mulcendus*, Ovid. *Permulsus*, Pacuv. ap. Gell. *Permulsus*, Cæs. B. G. iv. 6. *Permulsus*, Sall. in Frag. Hist. iv. ap. prisc. l. 1. Gell. i. 11., where some read *Permulsus*. — <sup>2</sup> So the Compounds, *Dilūceo*, 'dawn'; *Elūceo*, 'shine forth'; *Pellūceo*, 'shine through'; *Prælūceo*, 'shine before,' without the Perfect Participle. But *Pollūceo*, 'I offer in sacrifice,' 'prepare a banquet,' 'consecrate,' makes *xi. ctus*. — <sup>3</sup> *Tacitus*, Terent. *Tacitūrus*, Cic. *Thcndus*, ibid. — <sup>4</sup> *Ardui*, Inscr. *Arduerint*, Inscript. *Arsus*, in the sense of *tostus*, Plin. *Arsūrus*, Ovid. — <sup>5</sup> *Ausi*, for *ausus sum*, Cato ap. Prisc.; hence *Ausim*, for *ausērim*, Liv. in Pref. *Ausint*, Stat. Theb. *Ausērim*, Lactant. where Cellarius reads *ausis*. *Ausius*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 624. *Ausūrus*, Ovid. *Audendus*, Liv. xxxv. 35. — <sup>6</sup> *Gavisi*, for *gavisus sum*, Liv. in Odyss. ap. Prisc. ix. 868. *Gavisūrus*, Terent. *Gaudendus*, pass. Symmach. — <sup>7</sup> *Mēmordi*, Gell. The Compounds do not double the first syllable: *Admordeo*, *admordi*, *admorsus*, &c. Yet *Admēmordi*, Plaut. *Mordendus*, Ovid. — <sup>8</sup> The Participle *Pensus*, occurs only in the compound, *Prōpendeo*, Pers. Sat. *Pensūrus* comes from *Pendo*, -is, of the third Conj., which also makes *Pēpendi*. — <sup>9</sup> Some give this Verb another Perfect, *Pransus sum*. See Liv. xxviii. 14. *Pransūrus*, Plaut. — <sup>10</sup> *Rido*, -is, Lucr. *Irridunt*, Brut. ap. Diomed. *Ridear*, pass. Ovid. *Ridētur*, Mart. *Risus est*, was laughed at, Val. Max. *Risūrus*, Plaut. *Ridendus*, Hor. *Risum*, Cic. *Irrisum*, Plaut. *Dērisum*, Id. — <sup>11</sup> *Sessum*, Cic. *Sessūrus*, Hor. Art. Poet. *Sēdeatur*, imper. Gell. — <sup>12</sup> *Spōpondi*, Liv.; never *Spospondi*. The Compounds do not double the first syllable: *Despondeo*, *despondi*, *desponsus*, Cic.; yet *Despōpondi*, Plaut. *Spēpondi*, Valer. *Spondērat*, Tertull. — <sup>13</sup> *Suāsus*, Plaut. *Suāsūrus*, Quintil. iii. 8. *Suādenus*, Trajan. — <sup>14</sup> The Perfect, though not found in the classics, is acknowledged by all the old Grammarians; and is confirmed by the Compound *Dētōndērat* in Varr. ap. Prisc. ix. p. 868., and *Dēque tōtondit* in Enn. ibid., though *Dētōndeo* generally makes *Dētōndi*; see Colum. vii. 4.; and so the other compounds, without doubling the syllable *to*. — <sup>15</sup> *Visum*, Cic. *Visu*, Juv. *Vīsūrus*, Virg. Georg. ii. 68. *Æn.* v. 107. *Vīdendus*, Terent. We use the tense *Vīdēris*, -i, -int, imperatively, when we disclaim the care of any thing, and leave it entirely to others. *Viderint alii*, let others look to it; for it is no concern of mine. The passive *Vīdeor* is often used in a neuter sense, *I seem*, *I appear*; and generally with the datives *mihī*, *tibi*, *alibi*: *Vīdeor mihī*, *Vīdēris tibi*, &c.

§ 149. Verbs in *-geo* :

*Algeo, <sup>1</sup> algēre, alsi, —, .....	<i>be cold, shiver with cold.</i>
Augeo, <sup>2</sup> augēre, auxi, auctus, auctūrus, .....	<i>increase.</i>
*Fulgeo, <sup>3</sup> fulgēre, fulsi, —, .....	<i>shine.</i>
Indulgeo, <sup>4</sup> indulgēre, indulsi, indultus, R. D. ....	<i>indulge.</i>
*Lūgeo, <sup>5</sup> lūgēre, luxi, —, lūgendus, .....	<i>mourn.</i>
*Mulgeo, <sup>6</sup> mulgēre, mulsi, —, .....	<i>milk.</i>
Tergeo, <sup>7</sup> tergēre, tersi, tersus, .....	<i>wipe.</i>
*Turgeo, <sup>8</sup> turgēre, tursi, —, .....	<i>swell, be angry.</i>
*Urgeo, <sup>9</sup> urgēre, ursi, —, urgendus, .....	<i>press.</i>

§ 150. Verbs in *-ieo* and *-leo* :

Cieo, <sup>10</sup> ciēre, [civi,] cītus, .....	<i>stir up.</i>
Compleo, <sup>11</sup> complēre, complēvi, complētus, .	<i>fill.</i>
Dēleo, <sup>12</sup> dēlēre, dēlēvi, dēlētus, dēlendus, .....	<i>blot out.</i>
Fleo, <sup>13</sup> fiēre, fiēvi, flētus, flētūrus, flendus, .....	<i>weep.</i>
Sōleo, <sup>14</sup> sōlēre, sōlītus sum or sōlui, .....	<i>be accustomed.</i>

§ 151. Verbs in *-neo*, *-queo*, *-reo*, *-seo* :

Censeo, <sup>15</sup> censēre, censui, census, censendus, .....	<i>think, judge.</i>
*Hæreo, <sup>16</sup> hære, hæsi, —, hæsurus, .....	<i>stick, hesitate.</i>
*Mañeo, <sup>17</sup> mănēre, mansi, —, mansum, mansūrus, .....	<i>stay.</i>
Neo, <sup>18</sup> nēre, nēvi, nētus, .....	<i>spin.</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Alsit*, Hor. Art. Poët. 413. *Alsus*, Cic. Att. iv. 8, as if from *Alsus*. — <sup>2</sup> *Auctūrus*, Liv. i. 7. 'Ad fruges augendas,' Lucr. *Auxim*, -is, -it, for *augeam*, -as, -at, or *auxerim*, -is, -it, Liv. xxix. 7. — <sup>3</sup> *Fulceo*, Diomed. *Fulgo*, Prisc. *Fulgit*, Lucr. *Fulgēre*, Virg. Æn. vi. 827. — <sup>4</sup> *Indultus*, Ovid. *Indultūrus*, Ulpian. *Indulgendus*, Ulpian. — <sup>5</sup> *Luxti*, for *luxisti*, Catull. *Lūgendus*, Ovid. *Lūgētur*, imper. Catull. — <sup>6</sup> *Mulsi*, Virg. Georg. iii. 400. 'Mulxi, differentie causa, quidam protulerunt, quia Mulceo quoque Mulsi facit.' Prisc. ix. p. 870. Neither *Mulxi* nor *Mulctus* occurs in the classics. — <sup>7</sup> *Tergunt*, Cic. *Terguntur*, Varr. L. L. *Tersi*, for *tersisti*, Catull. 'Tergendus mensis utilis,' Mart. The Participles in *ns* and *rus* do not occur. — <sup>8</sup> *Tursērat*, Enn. ap. Prisc. ix. p. 870. *Turgo* and *Turgit* occur in the ancient Glossaries. — <sup>9</sup> Some write *Urgueo*, contrary to the opinion of Longus, Papir., Cassiodor., Bede, Dausq.; but Pierius on Virg. Æn. v. 202, Barth., Heins., Cort., Drakenb. and Oudend. seem to prefer it, from its more frequent occurrence in *Man.* *Ursi*, Cic. *Urgendus*, Quintil. — <sup>10</sup> *Civi* properly belongs to *Cio* of the Fourth Conj., which see in List i. The Perfect *Cii*, mentioned by Charis. iii. init. takes place only in the Compounds. *Cītus*, Cels. *Concītus*, Ovid. *Excītus*, Virg. Æn. iv. 301. — <sup>11</sup> Of the simple Verb we find only *Plentur*. *Complērent*, for *complēvērunt*, Cæs. B. G. 'Ad fossas, complendas,' Hirt. B. H. — <sup>12</sup> *Dēlendus*, Cic. pro Leg. Manil. c. 7. — <sup>13</sup> *Flesse*, for *flēvisse*, Plin. *Flētus*, Virg. Æn. vi. 481. *Flētūrus*, Hor. Epod. v. 74. *Flendus*, Ovid. Trist. — <sup>14</sup> *Soluerat*, Sallust, in Fragm. *Soluerint*, Cœl. Antipater ap. Non. *Sōlītus sum*, Cic. de Orat. i. 30. et passim. *Sōlens*, Plaut. — <sup>15</sup> *Census*, Liv. iii. 3. *Rēcensus*, Sueton. *Censītus*, Cod. Justin; hence *Rēcensītus*, Sueton. *Censendus*, Ovid. — <sup>16</sup> *Hæsurus*, Ovid. — <sup>17</sup> *Mansi*, for *mansiisti*, Lucil. ap. Gell. *Mansum*, Terent. *Mansūrus*, Virg. Æn. iii. 85. *Manenda*, Lucr. — <sup>18</sup> *Nēus*, Ovid. *Nesse*, Claud. in Eutrop. i. 274. *Nētus*, Alcim. Avit.

<i>Sēneo</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>sēnere</i> , <i>sēnui</i> , <i>sēnectus</i> , .....	<i>grow old.</i>
<i>Tēneo</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>tēnere</i> , <i>tēnui</i> , <i>tentus</i> , <i>tentūrus</i> , <i>tēnendus</i> , .....	<i>hold.</i>
<i>Torqueo</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>torquēre</i> , <i>torsi</i> , <i>tortus</i> , <i>torquendus</i> , .....	<i>whirl.</i>
<i>Torreo</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>torrēre</i> , <i>torrui</i> , <i>tostus</i> , .....	<i>roast.</i>

## § 152. Verbs in *-veo* :

<i>Cāveo</i> , <sup>5</sup> <i>cāvēre</i> , <i>cāvi</i> , <i>cautus</i> , <i>cautum</i> , <i>cavendus</i> , .....	<i>beware of.</i>
* <i>Conniveo</i> , <sup>6</sup> <i>connivēre</i> , <i>connivi</i> , —, .....	<i>wink at.</i>
* <i>Fāveo</i> , <sup>7</sup> <i>fāvēre</i> , <i>fāvi</i> , —, <i>fautūrus</i> , .....	<i>favour.</i>
* <i>Ferveo</i> , <sup>8</sup> <i>fervēre</i> , <i>ferbui</i> , —, .....	<i>boil, be hot.</i>
<i>Fōveo</i> , <sup>9</sup> <i>fōvēre</i> , <i>fōvi</i> , <i>fōtus</i> , <i>fōvendus</i> , .....	<i>cherish.</i>
<i>Mōveo</i> , <sup>10</sup> <i>mōvēre</i> , <i>mōvi</i> , <i>mōtus</i> , <i>mōtūrus</i> , <i>mōvendus</i> , .....	<i>move.</i>
* <i>Pāveo</i> , <sup>11</sup> <i>pāvēre</i> , <i>pāvi</i> , —, <i>pāvendus</i> , .....	<i>fear.</i>
<i>Vōveo</i> , <sup>12</sup> <i>vōvēre</i> , <i>vōvi</i> , <i>vōtus</i> , .....	<i>vow.</i>

## § 153. The Perfects of the following Verbs are doubtful :

\**Dirībeo*,<sup>13</sup> *ui*, ... *count over, distribute.*  
*Frēndeo*,<sup>14</sup> *ui*, *fressus* or *frēsus*, . *gnash.*  
 \**Frigeo*,<sup>15</sup> *frixi*, ..... *be cold.*  
 \**Frondeo*,<sup>16</sup> *ui*, ..... *bear leaves.*

*Splendeo*,<sup>17</sup> *ui*, ..... *shine.*  
*Strideo*,<sup>18</sup> *ui*, ..... *kiss, creak.*  
*Vico*,<sup>19</sup> *viēvi*, *viētus*, *bind with twigs,*  
*hoop.*

<sup>1</sup> *Sēnui*, Sueton. *Sēnectus*, Lucr. Sall. in Orat. — <sup>2</sup> *Tēnui*, Virg. Georg. iv. 483. et passim. *Tēnui*, Charis. *Tētni*, Festus. *Tētnērīm*, -is, -it, Accius et Pacuv. ap. Non. ii. 838. *Tētnisse*, Pacuv. ibid. *Tentus*, held, Ammian. *Tentūrus*, Claud. de Torp. 19. *Tēnendus*, Ovid. — <sup>3</sup> *Tortus*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 575. So *Contorquo*, -si, -tus, whirl about; *Detorqueo*, -si, -tus, turn aside; but the Participle *Dētorsus* is used by Cato ap. Prisc. ix. p. 871., and the Supine *Torsum* is given by Prisc. ibid., but without authority. *Torquendus*, Liv. xxiv. 5. — <sup>4</sup> *Torrui*, Ovid. *Tostus*, Cic. Tusc. iii. 19. et passim. — <sup>5</sup> *Cāvi*, Ter. Cic. et passim. *Cautus*, legally secured, Hor.; avoided, Plaut.; defended, Mart. *Cautus* is a contraction of *Cāvitus*. It is more frequently used in an active sense, cautious, circumspect. *Cautum*, Liv. *Cāvendus*, Propert. Cic. Or. ii. 195. *Cāvērem*, for *cāvērem*, Tibull.; hence *Cāvē*, Hor. ii. Sat. 3. — <sup>6</sup> *Connivi*, Camius ap. Prisc. ix. 866. Plaut. 'Dum ego connizi somne,' Turpil. ap. Prisc. l. c.; but this seems to come from *Connico*, -is, of the third Conj. *Connivēre*, Calvus ap. Prisc. ibid. At all events *Connivi* is more certain, and more consonant with analogy. — <sup>7</sup> *Fāvi*, Cic. pro Plane. 'Huic Romæ ita fautum est, ut,' &c. Spartian. *Fautūrus*, Cic. — <sup>8</sup> *Ferbui*, Pallad. *Deferbui*, Cato R. R. c. 96. *Conferbui*, Cels. *Fervērit*, Cato R. R. c. 157., where some Mss. have *ferbuerit*. 'Fervit aqua, et fervet; servit nunc, fervet ad annum,' Lucil. ap. Quintil. *Fervat* Pompon et Accius ap. Non. *Fervēre*, Virg. Georg. i. 455. — <sup>9</sup> *Fōvi*, Virg. *Æn.* xii. 420. *Fōtus*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 699. *Fōvendus*, Colum. vi. 12. — <sup>10</sup> *Mōtus*, Liv. *Mōvendus*, Virg. Georg. ii. 418. *Mōtia*, for *mōvisis*, Mart. *Mōrant*, for *mōvērunt*, Sil. — <sup>11</sup> *Pāvi*, Petron. *Expāvi*, Hor. i. Od. 37. 23. *Pāvendus*, Plin. — <sup>12</sup> *Vōtus*, Cic. de Nat. Deor. — <sup>13</sup> *Dirībui* is found in dictionaries only. — <sup>14</sup> *Frēndui*, Bibl. Vulgat. Psalms. xxiv. 16. *Frēndi*, Lowe Gramm. p. 14. *Fressus*, Cels. *Frēsus*, Colum. — <sup>15</sup> *Frizi*, Diomed.; also *Perfrigesco* makes *perfrizi*, Cels., and *Rēfrigesco*, *rēfrizi*, Cic. Att. i. 11. — <sup>16</sup> *Frondui*, Prisc. — <sup>17</sup> *Splēndui*, Charis. — <sup>18</sup> *Strīdui*, Prisc. *Strīdēre*, Hor. ii. Sat. 8. 78. Vid. Heins. et Burmann. ad Ovid. Met. ix. 171. 'rostrisque stridentibus,' in some Mss. — <sup>19</sup> *Viēvi*, Grammatici. *Viētus*, weak, flaccid, is used as a mere adjective. *Vietis* in Hor. Epod. xii. 7. is considered by some as an Anapest; it would be more correct to make it a Spondee by Synæresis.

*Morceo*, I fade, is said to have *Marcui*, which does not occur in the classics; but is confirmed by the compound *Emarcesco*, *emarcui*, fade away, *Plin.* xv. 22.

### § 154. These Verbs have neither Perfects nor Perfect Participles:

*Albeo, <sup>1</sup>	.....	be white.
*Aveo,	.....	covet.
*Calveo, <sup>2</sup>	.....	be bald.
*Cæveo, <sup>3</sup>	.....	fawn as a dog.
*Clueo,	.....	be famous, exist, be.
*Denseo, <sup>4</sup>	.....	thicken.
*Flæveo,	.....	be yellow.
*Fæteo,	.....	stink.
*Glåbreo, <sup>5</sup>	.....	be bare.
*Hæbeo,	.....	be dull.
*Hūmeo,	.....	be moist.
*Lacteo,	.....	suck milk.

*Lenteo,	.....	be slow.
*Livæo,	.....	be black and blue.
*Mæceo,	.....	be lean.
*Mæreo, <sup>6</sup>	.....	grieve.
*Mūceo, <sup>7</sup>	.....	be mouldy.
*Nideo, <sup>8</sup>	.....	shine.
*Polleo,	.....	be powerful.
*Rēnideo, <sup>9</sup>	.....	glitter.
*Scæteo, <sup>10</sup>	.....	overflow.
*Uveo, <sup>11</sup>	.....	be moist.
*Vægeo,	.....	be strong.

### § 155. DEPONENTS.

Pollicéor, <sup>12</sup>	-āris or -ēre, -ēri, -ytus,	.....	promise.
Fāteor, <sup>13</sup>	fassus, R. D.	.....	confess.
Confīteor, <sup>14</sup>	confessus, D.	.....	acknowledge.
*Diffīteor,	.....	.....	deny.
Prōfīteor, <sup>15</sup>	professus, D.	.....	declare.
Līceor, <sup>16</sup>	licitus,	.....	bid a price.
*Mēdeor, <sup>17</sup>	....., D.	.....	cure.
Misēreor, <sup>18</sup>	misēritus or misertus,	.....	pity.
Reor, <sup>19</sup>	rātus,	.....	think.
Tueor, <sup>20</sup>	tultus, D.	.....	see, protect.
Vēreor,	vērītus, <sup>21</sup> D.	.....	fear.

<sup>1</sup> *Albui* Grammatici. — <sup>2</sup> *Calvi* occurs only in dictionaries. — <sup>3</sup> *Cævi*, *Valer. Prob.* in *Cathol.* p. 1482. *Cævo*, *cævis*, *cævi*, *Idem* *ibid.* p. 1484. — <sup>4</sup> *Denseo*, *densi*, *Charis.* iii. p. 233. See *Heinsius* on *Ovid. Fast.* iii. 820. — <sup>5</sup> Of this verb *Glåbrentibus* only occurs, and that in *Colum.* ii. 9. 8. ed. *Gesn.*, where *Schneider* and others read *cålentibus*. — <sup>6</sup> *Mæru* debuit facere, sed in usu non est. *Prisc.* viii. p. 817. Some give this Verb *Mæstus* sum as a Perfect, which does not differ in signification from *Mæreo*, since *Mæstus* is a mere adjective. — <sup>7</sup> *Mūcui* is found in dictionaries only. — <sup>8</sup> This Verb occurs only in *Petron.* 'Areaqua attritis nidei,' &c. where others read *ridet*. — <sup>9</sup> *Rēniduit*, *Gloss. Vett.* — <sup>10</sup> Præteritum *Scætui* analogia defenditur, ut *Pttui*, *Låtui*, &c. *Facciolat.* — <sup>11</sup> Of this Verb the Participle *Uvens* only occurs in the classics.

<sup>12</sup> *Pollicitus*, having promised, *Cæs. B. G.* ii. 4. *Pollicitus*, pass. promised, *Ovid. Polliceor*, pass. *Ulpian.* *Pollicēres*, act. *Varr. ap. Non.* — <sup>13</sup> *Fassus*, *Plaut. Fassurus*, *Ovid. Fātendus*, *Id. Trist.* i. 9. 16. *Fāteatur*, pass. *Cic.* But see *Ernesti.* — <sup>14</sup> *Confessus*, act. *Plaut. passim.* *Confessus*, pass. confessed, manifest, *Cic. Quintil. et Plin. Confītētur*, pass. *Ulpian. Confītendus*, *Cic.* — <sup>15</sup> *Professus*, *Cic. passim.* *Professus*, pass. *Ovid. Prōfītendus*, *Cic. de Orat. Prōfītēmino*, for *prōfītēatur*, *Vet. Tab. æn. ap. Murator. p. 582.* — <sup>16</sup> *Licitus*, *Cic. Verr.* v. 11. — <sup>17</sup> *Mēdeor* has no Perfect; but in its stead *Mēdicātus* from *Mēdicor*, I heal, is used. See *Diomed.* i. p. 376. *Mēdendus*, *Stat. Theb. Mēdendo*, pass. *Virg. Æn.* xii. 46. 'Ut huic vitio mēdeatur,' that this fault may be obviated, *Vitruv.* — <sup>18</sup> *Ipse sui misēret*, *Lucr. Misēritus*, *Phædr. Misertus*, *Justin. Misērier*, for *misēreri*, *Lucr. Misēreatur*, pass. *Cic.* — <sup>19</sup> Of this Verb the following forms only are found in the classics: *Reor*, *Hor. ii. Ep. i. 69. Rēris*, *Virg. Æn.* vi. 96. *Rērin*, for *rēris ne?* *Plaut. Rēre*, *Virg. Æn.* vii. 437. *Rētur*, *Stat. Theb. Rēmur*, *Cic. Off. Rēmīni*, *Arnob. Rētur*, *Plaut. Rēbar*, *Cic. Rēbare*, *Virg. Æn.* x. 608. *Rēbatur*, *Cic. Rēbāmur*, *Plaut. Rēbantur*, *Cic. de Nat. Deor. Rēbor*, *Senec. Rēbūtur*, *Plaut. Rear*, *Id. Rēare. Rēaris*, *Auson. Reantur*, *Plaut. Rātus*, *Cic.* See *Quintil.* viii. 3. and *Cic. Or. iii. 33.* Wherefore this and many other Verbs might, with as much propriety, be classed among the Defectives, as *Aio*, *Inquio*, &c. — <sup>20</sup> *Tuor*, *Stat. Theb. Hēnce Tūtus*, protected, *Sall. Jug. c. 56. Liv. x. 37. Tūtus*, *Quintil. v. 13. Tuentur*, pass. *Varr. Tuendus*, *Cic. Virg. Æn.* ix. 175. — <sup>21</sup> *Vērītus*, *Cic. Vērendus*, *Ovid. Met. Vēreri*, pass.

## § 156. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Dēcet, <sup>1</sup> dēcēre, dēcuit, .....	it becomes.
Lībet, <sup>2</sup> lībēre, libuit or lībūtum est, .....	it pleases.
Lūbet, <sup>3</sup> lūbēre, lūbuit or lūbūtum est, .....	it pleases.
Līcet, <sup>4</sup> līcēre, līcuit or līcūtum est, .....	it is lawful.
Līquet, <sup>5</sup> līquēre, liquit or līcuit, .....	it is clear.
Mīseret, <sup>6</sup> mīserēre, mīseruit or mīserūtum est, .....	it pities.
Oportet, <sup>7</sup> oportēre, oportuit, .....	it behoves.
Pīget, <sup>8</sup> pīgēre, pīguit or pīgūtum est, .....	it grieves.
Pōnitet, <sup>9</sup> pōnitēre, pōnituit, .....	it repents.
Pūdet, <sup>10</sup> pūdēre, pūduit or pūdūtum est, .....	it shames.
Tædet, <sup>11</sup> tædēre, tæduit or tæsum est, .....	it wearies.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 157. Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in -o, and change -o into -i or -si in the Perfect; into -ēre short in the Infinitive; and into -ītus, -tus, or -sus in the Perfect Participle Passive; as,

Trībuo, trībuēre, trībui, trībūtus, R. D. .... give, divide.

## § 158. Verbs in -co, -cto, and -go generally take

<sup>1</sup> *Dēcant*, Cic. *Dēcūtrint*, Sall. Jug. c. 53. 'Si non *dēdēcui*,' If I have not dishonoured, Stat. Theb. — <sup>2</sup> 'Sciendum, quod hæc omnia inveniuntur perfectorum declinationem, habentia in usu veterum, teste, Capro, *Pīgeo*, *Pūdeo*, *Tædeo*, *Panīleo*, *Līqueo*, *Līceo*, *Lībeo*, *Oporteo*, quomodo, *Pūleo*, *Contingo*,' &c. Priscian. xi. p. 528. *Lībūtum* ērit, Plaut. Asin. i. 1. 9. — <sup>3</sup> *Lūbet* is the ancient form for *Lībet*, especially in the comic writers. *Lūbet*, Plaut. *Lūbui*, Pseud. *Lūbēre*, Cic. Att. *Līcessit*, for *līcūtrint*, Plaut. *Līcūtum*, ērit, Cic. *Līcūtum* esset, Id. Att. ii. 1. — <sup>4</sup> *Līquēret*, Cic. Nat. Deor. i. 42. *Lūcūtrint*, Ulp. Dig. For *līcuit* some write *līquuit*. *Līcūtum*, which some give to this Verb, belongs to *Līcet*. — <sup>5</sup> *Mīserēte*, Enn. ap. Non. *Mīserērent*, Enn. ap. Prisc. 'Ipse sui *miseret*,' Lucr. *Mīseruit*, Apul. Met. *Mīserūtum* est, Terent. — <sup>6</sup> *Oportēbant*, Terent. *Oportent*, Id. Andr. *Oportuērint*, Cæcil. ap. Prisc. *Oportēto*, for *oporteat*, Vet. Leg. — <sup>7</sup> *Pīguet*, Petron. *Pīgūtum*, Sil. *Pīgens*, Apul. Met. *Pīgendus*, Propert. — <sup>8</sup> *Pōnitēbunt*, Pacuv. ap. Non. *Panīleus*, Cic. Phil. xii. 2. *Pōnitūrus*, Quintil. *Pōnitendus*, Colum. Liv. i. 35. Some write *Pōnitet* with Æ; and so it is in an Inscript. ap. Grut. p. 502., and in some ancient Mss. of Virgil. Gellius seems to have written it in the same manner, since he derives it, xvii. 1., not from *Pana*, but from *Pane*, or *Penūria*. — <sup>9</sup> *Pūdeo*, Plaut. *Pūdent*, Terent. *Pūdēbunt*, Lucan. *Pūdītum* est, Plaut. *Pūdītum* esset, Cic. — <sup>10</sup> *Tædvi*, Sidon. Ep. *Tæsum* est, Plaut. Mostel. So *Pertædet*, *pertæduit*, *pertæsum* est, Cic. Virg. Æn. v. 714. *Pertæduissent*, Gell. i. 2. Some of the ancients used to write *Pertisum*, (as from *Cædo*, *Concisum*,) which is disapproved of by Cic. Orat. 159.

*-si* ; but the letters *cs* and *gs* unite to form *x* ; as, *Dico*, I say, (*dic**si*) *dixi* ; *Rēgo*, I rule, (*reg**si*.) *rex**i*.

§ 159. *G* before *-tus* becomes *c* ; as, *Lēgo*, I read, (*lēg**it**us*, *leg**it**us*) *lectus* ; *Jungo*, I join, (*jung**it**us*, *jung**it**us*) *junctus*, &c.

§ 160. *B* before *-si* and *-tus* becomes *p* ; as, *Nūbo*, I veil, *nup**si*, *nuptus* ; *Scribo*, I write, *scrip**si*, *scriptus*.

§ 161. *R* before *-si* and *-tus* becomes *s* ; as, *ūro*, I burn, *uss**i*, *ustus* ; *Gēro*, I carry, *gess**i*, *gestus*.

§ 162. *D* and *t* are generally dropped before *-si*, *-sus*, *-tus* ; as, *Claudo*, I shut, *claus**i*, *clausus*, *Divido*, I divide, *divis**i*, *divisus* ; *Lædo*, I hurt, *læs**i*, *læsus* ; *Lūdo*, I play, *lūs**i*, *lūsus* ; *Plaudo*, I applaud, *plaus**i*, *plausus* ; *Rādo*, I shave, *rās**i*, *rāsus* ; *Trūdo*, I thrust, *trūs**i*, *trūsus* ; *Vādo*, I go, *vās**i* ; *Flecto*, I bend, (*flec**si*.) *flexi*, (*flec**sus*.) *flexus*, &c.

§ 163. *D* and *t* sometimes become *s* before *s* ; as, *Cēdo*, I yield, *cess**i*, *cessus* ; *Mitto*, I send, *mīs**i*, *missus* ; *Quātio*, I shake, *quass**i*, *quassus*, &c.

§ 164. *G* is sometimes dropped before *-si* and *-sus* ; as, *Spargo*, I scatter, *spars**i*, *sparsus* ; *Vergo*, I incline, *vers**i*, *versus* ; *Mergo*, I dip, *mers**i*, *mersus*, &c. So *Parco*, I spare, drops *c* in *parsūrus* ; and *Pasco*, I feed, drops *c* in *pastus*.

§ 165. Verbs in *-sco* change *-sco* into *-vi* for the Perfect, and drop *sc* before *-tus* ; as, *Cresco*, I grow, *crēvi*, *crētus* ; *Nosco*, I learn to know, *nōvi*, *nōtus*.

§ 166. *M* and *n* are frequently dropped both in the Perfect and Perfect Participle Passive ; as, *Temno*, I despise, *tem**si* ; *Frango*, I break, *frēgi*,



*fractus* ; *Rumpo*, I burst, *rūpi*, *ruptus*, &c. *M* becomes *s* before *-si* in *Prēmo*, I press, *pressi*, *pressus* : *n* becomes *s* in *Pōno*, I place, *pōsui*, *pōsitus*.

§ 167. Verbs changing *-o* into *-i* for the Perfect, and into *-itus. tus*, or *-sus*, for the Perfect Participle Passive :

* <i>Abnuo</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>abnuēre</i> , <i>abnui</i> , —, <i>abnuītūrus</i> , <i>abnuendus</i> , . . . . .	<i>refuse</i> .
<i>Accendo</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>accendēre</i> , <i>accendi</i> , <i>accensus</i> , . . . . .	<i>set on fire</i> .
<i>Acuo</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>acuēre</i> , <i>acui</i> , <i>acūtus</i> , <i>acuendus</i> , . . . . .	<i>sharpen</i> .
<i>Appendo</i> , <i>appendēre</i> , <i>appendi</i> , <i>appensus</i> , . . . . .	<i>weigh</i> .
<i>Arguo</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>arguēre</i> , <i>argui</i> , <i>argūtus</i> , <i>argūtum</i> , <i>arguītūrus</i> , <i>arguendus</i> , . . . . .	<i>show, prove, accuse</i> .
* <i>Bātuo</i> , <sup>5</sup> <i>bātuēre</i> , <i>bātui</i> , —, <i>bātuendus</i> , . . . . .	<i>beat</i> .
<i>Bībo</i> , <sup>6</sup> <i>bībēre</i> , <i>bībi</i> , <i>bībītus</i> , <i>bībendus</i> , . . . . .	<i>drink</i> .
* <i>Congruo</i> , <sup>7</sup> <i>congruēre</i> , <i>congrui</i> , —, . . . . .	<i>come together, agree</i> .
<i>Dēfendo</i> , <sup>8</sup> <i>dēfendēre</i> , <i>dēfendi</i> , <i>dēfensus</i> , <i>n. d.</i> . . . . .	<i>ward off</i> .
* <i>Dēgo</i> , <sup>9</sup> <i>dēgēre</i> , <i>dēgi</i> , —, <i>dēgendus</i> , . . . . .	<i>live, dwell</i> .
<i>Edo</i> , <sup>10</sup> <i>ēdēre</i> , <i>ēdi</i> , <i>ēsus</i> , <i>ēsum</i> , <i>ēsūrus</i> , <i>ēdendus</i> , . . . . .	<i>eat</i> .
<i>Emo</i> , <sup>11</sup> <i>ēmēre</i> , <i>ēmi</i> , <i>emtus</i> , <i>emtūrus</i> , <i>ēmendus</i> , . . . . .	<i>buy</i> .
<i>Excūdo</i> , <sup>12</sup> <i>excūdēre</i> , <i>excūdi</i> , <i>excūsus</i> , . . . . .	<i>shake out, stamp</i> .
<i>Exuo</i> , <sup>13</sup> <i>exuēre</i> , <i>exui</i> , <i>exūtus</i> , <i>exuendus</i> , . . . . .	<i>put off, strip</i> .
<i>Fervo</i> . See <i>Ferveo</i> , Second Conj. List. viii.	
<i>Findo</i> , <sup>14</sup> <i>findēre</i> , <i>fīdi</i> , <i>fissus</i> , <i>findendus</i> , . . . . .	<i>cleave</i> .
<i>Fundo</i> , <sup>15</sup> <i>fundēre</i> , <i>fūdi</i> , <i>fūsus</i> , <i>fūsūrus</i> , <i>fundendus</i> , . . . . .	<i>pour</i> .
<i>Ico</i> , <sup>16</sup> <i>icēre</i> , <i>ici</i> , <i>ictus</i> , <i>ictūrus</i> , . . . . .	<i>strike</i> .

<sup>1</sup> Neither the Participle *Abnūtus* nor the Supine *Abnūtum* are found except in dictionaries. *Abnuītūrus*, Sallust. Fragm. Hist. i. *Abnuendus*, Senec. — <sup>2</sup> *Accendendis* *offensionibus* *callidi*, Tacit. Ann. — <sup>3</sup> *Acūtus*, Prisc.; but it is used as a rare Adjective. *Acuendus*, Cic. Phil. ii. — <sup>4</sup> *Argui*, Liv. *Argūtus*, Plaut. *Argūtum*, Supine, Festus. *Arguītūrus*, Sallust. *Arguendus*, Tacit. — <sup>5</sup> *Bātui*, Cic. Fam. *Bātuendus*, Næv. ap. Fulgent. 21. Some incorrectly write *Battuo*; hence *Battūrum*, Vett. Gloss. — <sup>6</sup> *Bībītus*, Plin. Valer. *Bībendus*, Ovid. — <sup>7</sup> *Congrui*, Val. Flac. — <sup>8</sup> *Dēfensūrus*, Claud. *Dēfendendus*, Cæs. B. G. & Terent. *Dēfensum*, Nepos. *Dēfensu*, Sallust. — <sup>9</sup> The Perfect of *Dēgo* occurs only in Auson. Epist. xvii. ad Symmach., where some copies have *Dēgūtus*. *Dēgendus*, Cic. de Amic. — <sup>10</sup> See Irregular verbs. — <sup>11</sup> *Emtus*, not *Emptus*; because *P.* is never inserted in the Present *Emo*. So *Sumtus*, *Comtus*, *Demtus*, &c. See the old Grammarians, Terentius Scaurus and Marius Victorinus. *Emtūrus*, Justin. *Emendus*, Cic. *Emissim*, for *ēmērim*, Plaut. — <sup>12</sup> The Perfect of the simple *Cūdo* does not occur. It makes *Cūsi* according to some; according to others, *Cūdi*. See Priscian. x. p. 889. In Colum. xi. we have *Excūdūt*, and viii. 5. *Percūdērint*. The Participle *Cūsus* does not occur in the classics; yet we find *Excūsus*, hatched, Varr. R. R. *Inclūsus*, Virg. Georg. i. 275. 'Pullis *excudendis* triginta diebus opus est.' Colum. — <sup>13</sup> *Exuendam* ad fidem, *hostes* *emercari*, Tacit. Ann. xii. 14. — <sup>14</sup> *Findo* quoque *fīdi* *facit*; licet quidam *fīsi* putaverunt. Prisc. x. p. 890. *Fidērit*, Cels. *Findendus*, Cels. — <sup>15</sup> *Fūsūrus*, Lucan. *Fundendus*, Curt. — <sup>16</sup> Of this Verb the following forms only are found: *Ice*, infin. Plaut. *Ici*, Lucr. *Ictūrus*, Cels. ap. Prisc. x. p. 886. *Ictur*, Plin. *Ictur*, Lucr. *Ici*, perf. Plaut. *Ictras*, Cic. in Pison. *Ictris*, Turpil. ap. Non. *Icisse*, Cic. pro Balb. *Ictus*, passim. *Ictūri*, Senec.

Imbuo, <sup>1</sup>	imbuere, imui, imbūtus, imbuendus, .....	<i>imbrue.</i>
Induo, <sup>2</sup>	induere, indui, indūtus, .....	<i>put on.</i>
Insuo, <sup>3</sup>	insuere, insui, insūtus, .....	<i>sow in, join to.</i>
*Lambo, <sup>4</sup>	lambere, lambi, —, .....	<i>lick.</i>
Lēgo, <sup>5</sup>	lēgere, lēgi, lectus, lectūrus, legendus, .....	<i>gather, read.</i>
*Linquo, <sup>6</sup>	linquere, liqui, —, .....	<i>leave.</i>
*Luo, <sup>7</sup>	luere, lui, —, luītūrus, luendus, .....	<i>pay, atone.</i>
Mando, <sup>8</sup>	mandere, mandi, mansus, mandendus, .....	<i>chew.</i>
Mēto, <sup>9</sup>	mētūre, mēti, mētūtus, mētendus, .....	<i>fear.</i>
Mīnuo, <sup>10</sup>	mīnuere, mīnui, mīnūtus, mīnuendus, .....	<i>lessen.</i>
Pinso, <sup>11</sup>	pinsere, pinsi or pinsui, pinsītus, pinsus or pistus, .....	<i>bake.</i>
*Pluo, <sup>12</sup>	pluere, plui or plui, —, .....	<i>rain.</i>
Prēhendo, <sup>13</sup>	prēhendere, prēhendi, prēhensus, R. D. or	
Prendo, prendere, prendi, prensus, R. D. ....		<i>take, seize.</i>
*Psallo, psallere, psalli, —, .....		<i>play on an instrument.</i>
Rumpo, <sup>14</sup>	rumpere, rūpi, ruptus, ruptūrus, D. ....	<i>break.</i>
Ruo, <sup>15</sup>	ruere, rui, rūtus, rūtūrus, .....	<i>rush, fall.</i>
*Scābo, <sup>16</sup>	scābere, scābi, —, .....	<i>scratch.</i>
*Scando, <sup>17</sup>	scandere, scandi, —, .....	<i>climb.</i>
*Sido, <sup>18</sup>	sidere, sidi, —, .....	<i>sink down.</i>
Solvo, <sup>19</sup>	solvere, solvi, sōlūtus, sōlūtūrus, D. ....	<i>loose.</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Imbui*, perf. Catull. *Imbuendus*, Curt. — <sup>2</sup> *Indui*, Cic. Tusc. *Indūtus*, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 275. It has no other Participle. — <sup>3</sup> The Perfect of the simple *Suo* occurs only in Prisc.; but we have *Insuere*, Plin. *Insuisses*, Cic. and *Insuerat*, Liv. *Sūtus*, Ovid. *Suendus*, Cels. *Assūtus* does not occur. *Consūtus*, Plaut. *Circumsuo* is not found in the classics; yet *Circumsūtus*, Plin. *Dissūtus*, Ovid. *Dissuendus*, Cic. Off. i. 33. — <sup>4</sup> *Lambērat*, Lucil. ap. Prisc. *Lambui*, Bibl. Vulgat. Priscian ibid. gives the supine *Lambitum*, but without authority. *Lambo*, -is, -ivi, Cassiodor. de Orthogr. p. 2309. Putsch. — <sup>5</sup> *Lectūrus*, Ovid. Met. *Lēgendus*, Ovid. — <sup>6</sup> *Lictus*, particip. quidam putant legi ap. Capitolm. in M. Anton. Philosc. c. 7., sed locus ille incertus valde est, et mendo corruptus. *Facciolat. Relictus*, Virg. Georg. iv. 127. et passim. *Linquendus*, Ovid. Met. — <sup>7</sup> *Lui*, Justin. 'In præteritis U dicimus longum. *luīt*, *pluīt*; in præsentī breve, *luīt*, *pluīt*.' So writes Varro, *Luītūrus*, Claud. *Luendus*, Tacit. *Eluendus*, Cic. Off. *Ablūtūrus*, August. *Abluendus*, Plin. *Diluendus*, Liv. — <sup>8</sup> 'Quidam præteritum *mandui*, alii *mandidi* esse voluerunt; sed neutrum obtinuit.' Priscian. *Mandisset*, Liv. *Mansus*, Quintil. *Mandendus*, Cels. — <sup>9</sup> *Mētui*, Terent. *Mētūtus*, Lucr. *Mētendus*, Senec. — <sup>10</sup> *Mīnuendus*, Cic. Off. — <sup>11</sup> *Pinsērunt*, Varr. R. R. *Pinsui*, Pompon. ap. Diomed. *Pinsītus*, Colum. *Pinsus*, Vitruv. *Pistus*, Plin. — <sup>12</sup> *Pluisse*, Cic. Dic. *Pluvērat*, Plaut. The Perfect *Pluīt* according to Varro L. L. viii. 60, had the first syllable long. See *Luo*. — <sup>13</sup> *Prendērat*, Stat. Theb. *Prēhensūrus*, Ovid. 10. *Prēhendendus*, Ovid. Some write *Prēhendo*, others *Preendo*. See Dausqu. in Orthogr. — <sup>14</sup> *Ruptūrus*, Plaut. *Rumpendus*, Justin. — <sup>15</sup> This Verb is mostly used in the imperfect Tenses. *Ruērunt*, Claud. *Rūtus* is found only in the Neut. pl. *Rūta cæsa*, Cic. Varro de L. L. viii. 60., makes the U long in the simple *Rutus*. *Rūtūrus*, Ovid. *Diruendus*, Vell. *Obruendus*, Colum. — <sup>16</sup> *Scābērat*, Lucil. None of the Participles are found. — <sup>17</sup> The Perfect *Scandi* cannot be found: Ainsworth cites *scandisse*, Liv. xxi. 62.; but the reading is *escendisse*, *ascendisse*, Cic. *Consendērat*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 646. *Descendērit*, Liv. xxxvi. 7. Yet *Descendērit*, Gell. *Descendēderat*, ibid. *Ascendi*, Cic. pro Dom. c. 28. *Scandendus*, Propert. *Ascensūrus*, Tibull. *Ascendendus*, Cæc. B. C. — <sup>18</sup> *Sidērat*, Stat. Sylv. *Sidērit*, Colum. *Considērant*, Tacit. Ann. The Perfect *Sēdi* given in grammars and dictionaries does not come from *Sido*, but from *Sideo*. — <sup>19</sup> *Solvi*, Cic. Off. iii. 12. et passim. *Sōluisse*, Tibull. *Sōlūtūrus*, Cic. Off. *Solvendus*, Plin. Epist.

* <i>Spuo</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>spuere</i> , <i>spai</i> , —, .....	<i>spit.</i>
<i>Statio</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>stātuere</i> , <i>stātui</i> , <i>stātūtus</i> , <i>stātuendus</i> , .....	<i>place.</i>
* <i>Sternuo</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>sternuere</i> , <i>sternui</i> , —, .....	<i>sneeze.</i>
<i>Strido</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>stridēre</i> , <i>stridi</i> , —, .....	<i>kiss, creak.</i>
<i>Tribuo</i> , <sup>5</sup> <i>tribuere</i> , <i>tribui</i> , <i>tribūtus</i> , <i>tribūturus</i> , <i>D.</i> .....	<i>give.</i>
<i>Verro</i> , <sup>6</sup> <i>verrere</i> , <i>verri</i> , <i>versus</i> , <i>verrendus</i> , .....	<i>brush.</i>
<i>Verto</i> , <sup>7</sup> <i>vertēre</i> , <i>verti</i> , <i>versus</i> , <i>versurus</i> , <i>vertendus</i> , .....	<i>turn.</i>
<i>Vinco</i> , <sup>8</sup> <i>vincere</i> , <i>vici</i> , <i>victus</i> , <i>victurus</i> , <i>D.</i> .....	<i>conquer.</i>
<i>Volvo</i> , <sup>9</sup> <i>volvere</i> , <i>volvi</i> , <i>volutus</i> , <i>volvendus</i> , .....	<i>roll.</i>

§ 168. Verbs changing *-o* into *-si* for the Perfect, and into *-tus*, or *-sus*, for the Perfect Participle Passive :

<i>Carpo</i> , <sup>10</sup> <i>carpere</i> , <i>carpsi</i> , <i>carptus</i> , <i>carpendus</i> , .....	<i>pluck.</i>
<i>Cedo</i> , <sup>11</sup> <i>cedere</i> , <i>cessi</i> , <i>cessus</i> , <i>cessurus</i> , .....	<i>yield.</i>
<i>Claudo</i> , <sup>12</sup> <i>claudere</i> , <i>clausi</i> , <i>clausus</i> , <i>clausurus</i> , <i>claudendus</i> , .....	<i>shut.</i>
* <i>Clēpo</i> , <sup>13</sup> <i>clēpere</i> , <i>clepsi</i> , —, .....	<i>steal.</i>
<i>Cōmo</i> , <sup>14</sup> <i>cōmere</i> , <i>comsi</i> , <i>comtus</i> , .....	<i>deck.</i>
<i>Dēmo</i> , <sup>15</sup> <i>dēmere</i> , <i>dēmsi</i> , <i>dēmtus</i> , <i>dēmturus</i> , <i>dēmendus</i> , ....	<i>take away.</i>
<i>Divido</i> , <sup>16</sup> <i>dividere</i> , <i>divisi</i> , <i>divisus</i> , <i>divisurus</i> , <i>D.</i> .....	<i>divide.</i>
<i>Gēro</i> , <sup>17</sup> <i>gērere</i> , <i>gessi</i> , <i>gestus</i> , <i>gesturus</i> , <i>gērendus</i> , .....	<i>carry.</i>
<i>Lædo</i> , <sup>18</sup> <i>lædere</i> , <i>læsi</i> , <i>læsus</i> , <i>læsum</i> , <i>læsurus</i> , .....	<i>hurt.</i>
<i>Lūdo</i> , <sup>19</sup> <i>lūdere</i> , <i>lūsi</i> , <i>lūsus</i> , <i>lūsurus</i> , .....	<i>play.</i>
<i>Mergo</i> , <sup>20</sup> <i>mergere</i> , <i>mersi</i> , <i>mersus</i> , <i>mersurus</i> , .....	<i>dip.</i>
<i>Nūbo</i> , <sup>20</sup> <i>nūbere</i> , <i>nupsi</i> , <i>nuptus</i> , <i>nuptum</i> , <i>R.</i> .....	<i>veil, marry.</i>

<sup>1</sup>*Spuisse*, Solin. This Verb has no Participle. *Respuerit*, Cic. Nat. Deor. *Respuendus*, Aul. Gell. — <sup>2</sup>*Stātūtus*, Varr. *Stātuendus*, Colum. *Constituendus*, Aul. Gell. — <sup>3</sup>*Sternuerit*, Plin. — <sup>4</sup>*Striderat*. See *Strideo*, Second Conj. List. ix. — <sup>5</sup>*Tribūturus*, Ovid. Met. *Tribuendus*, Lucr. — <sup>6</sup>*Verrērint*, Hieronym. in Helvid. in fin. The Perfect *Verri* occurs nowhere else, except in Charis. iii. p. 218.; and in Prisc. x. p. 900. But Servius on Virg. *Æn.* i. 63. gives *Versi*. *Versus*, Propert. *Vorsus*, Plaut. *Verrendus*, Ovid. — <sup>7</sup>*Verti*, Cic. Propert. The Perfect *Versi*, found in Ovid. ex Pont. i. 9. 52., does not come from *Verto*, as some suppose, but from *Vergo*. See Heinsius and Burman on the passage. *Versus*, Hor. iii. Od. 29. 2. et passim. *Versurus*, Liv. *Vertendus*, Colum. — <sup>8</sup>*Victurus*, Liv. *Vincendus*, Martial. — <sup>9</sup>*Volvi*, Virg. vi. 748. *Volutus*, Virg. Georg. iii. 521. *Volvendus*, Cic. — <sup>10</sup>*Carptus*, Ovid. *Carpendus*, Cic. de Orat. iii. 49. — <sup>11</sup>*Cessi*, Ovid. *Cesse*, for *cessisse*, Lucr. *Cessus*, Liv. *Cessurus*, Tacit. Ann. — <sup>12</sup>*Clausi*, Hor. ii. Od. 4. et passim. *Clūsi*, Nummus Neronis, ap. Patin. *Claudo*, -is for *claudus sum*, I am lame, has no Perfect. *Clausus*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 734. et passim. *Clūsus*, Senec. *Clausurus*, Ovid. *Claudendus*, Ovid. *Clūdendus*, Scribon. Larg. c. 42. The Compounds drop A of the root. — <sup>13</sup>*Clepsi*, Manil. *Clepsit*, for *clepsērit*, Liv. xxii. 10. The Perfect *Clēpi* is found in Cic. de Leg. ii. 9. This Verb has no Participles. *Cleptus* is found only in dictionaries. — <sup>14</sup>*Comsi*, Tibull. See note on *Emo*, foregoing list. — <sup>15</sup>*Dēmsi*, Liv. *Dēmturus*, Justin. *Dēmendus*, Cels. — <sup>16</sup>*Divisse*, for *divisasse*, Hor. ii. Sat. 3. 169. *Divisurus*, Liv. *Dividendus*, *Dividundus*, Aul. Gell. — <sup>17</sup>*Gesturus*, Lucan. *Gērendus*, Cic. de Senec. — <sup>18</sup>*Læsum*, Cic. Fam. *Læsurus*, Lucan. The compounds make *lædi*; *Allido*, I dash against; *Collido*, I dash together; *Elido*, I dash out; *Illido*, I dash against. — <sup>19</sup>*Lūsus*, played, Ovid. Trist. deluded. Id. Fast. *Lūsurus*, Id. Trist. — <sup>20</sup>*Mersurus*, Ovid.

**Plaudo,**<sup>1</sup> *plaudere, plausi, plausus, plaudendus, . . applaud by clapping the hands.*

**Præmo,**<sup>2</sup> *præmere, pressi, pressus, pressurus, D. . . . . press.*

**Promo,**<sup>3</sup> *promere, promsi, promptus, prompturus, promendus, . bring out.*

**Rado,**<sup>4</sup> *radere, rasi, rasus, radendus, . . . . . shave.*

**\*Rêpo,**<sup>5</sup> *rêpere, repsi, —, . . . . . creep.*

**Rodo,**<sup>6</sup> *rodere, rōsi, rōsus, rōsurus, . . . . . gnaw.*

**Scalpo,**<sup>7</sup> *scalpere, scalpsi, sculptus, . . . . . scratch.*

**Scribo,**<sup>8</sup> *scribere, scripsi, scriptus, scripturus, D. . . . . write.*

**Sculpo,**<sup>9</sup> *sculpere, sculpsi, sculptus, sculpendus, . . . . . carve.*

**\*Serpō,**<sup>10</sup> *serpere, serpsi, —, . . . . . creep.*

**Spargo,**<sup>11</sup> *spargere, sparsi, sparsus, sparsurus, D. . . . . spread.*

**Sūmo,**<sup>12</sup> *sūmere, sumsi, sumtus, sumturus, D. . . . . take.*

**\*Temno,**<sup>13</sup> *temnere, temsi, —, temnendus, . . . . . despise.*

**Tergo.** See *Tergeo*, Second Conj. List V.

**Trūdo,**<sup>14</sup> *trudere, trūsi, trūsus, . . . . . thrust.*

**Uro,**<sup>15</sup> *ūrere, ussi, ustus, ūrendus, . . . . . burn.*

**\*Vado,**<sup>16</sup> *vadere, vāsi, —, . . . . . go.*

**Vergo,**<sup>17</sup> *vergere, versi, versus, . . . . . incline.*

<sup>1</sup> *Nupsi*, Cic. *passim*. *Nūpsi*, Valer. Prob. in Cathol. *Nupta sum*, Cic. 'Novus nuptus,' Plaut. *Nuptum*, Cæs. B. G. We should always say, 'Nuptum dare collōcare,' never *Nuptui*, as is found in some grammars and dictionaries. See Drakenborch on Liv. i. 49. *Nupturus*, Ovid. — <sup>2</sup> *Plausus*, Virg. Georg. iii. 185. *Plaudendus*, Ovid. *Plōdere*, Varr. ap. Non. whence the compounds, *Complōdo*, I clap together; *Explōdo*, I hiss or clap off, explode, &c. — <sup>3</sup> *Pressurus*, Ovid. *Præmendus*, Cic. Tusc. The Compounds make *primo*, *pressi*, *pressus*; *Comprimo*, I press together; *Exprimo*, I squeeze out, &c. *Dēpressum* eunt, Plaut. — <sup>4</sup> *Promptus*, Apul. Florid. *Prōmendus*, Cic. *Dēpromptum*, Plaut. See note on *Emo*, foregoing List. — <sup>5</sup> *Rāsi*, Plin. xxviii. 4. *Radendus*, Tacit. Ann. — <sup>6</sup> *Rōsise*, Plin. *Circumrōserit*, Plin. *Corrōserint*, Cic. de Divin. ii. 27. *Perrōserint*, Cels. *Rōsus*, Stat. *Rōsurus*, Phædr. The Perfects of *Abrōdo*, *Arrōdo*, *Erōdo*, *Obrōdo*, *Prærōdo*, are not found in the classics. — <sup>7</sup> *Scalpsi*, Plin. *Scalptus*, Cic. Acad. *Circumscalptus*, Plin. *Inscalptus*, Plin. though *Circumscalpo*, *Inscalpo*, do not occur. *Escalpo*, Varr. L. L. Quintil. *Exscalptus*, Cato, R. R. — <sup>8</sup> *Scripsi*, for *scripsisti*, Plaut. *Scripæ*, for *scripsisse*, Auson. *Scripturus*, Tacit. Ann. Decemvir legibus scribendis, Sueton. *Describendus*, Aul. Gell. — <sup>9</sup> *Diomed.* i. p. 574., does not admit of *Sculpo*; but derives the Compounds, *Exscalpo*, *Inscalpo*, from *Scalpo*. It is rejected also by Geeser in his Thesaur. L. L. *Sculpsit*, Ovid. where some read *Scalpsit*, others *Sculpit* or *Scalpit*. *Sculpendus*, Vitruv. 'Sculpendis gemmis laus,' Apul. where others read *Scalpendis*. Cf. Plin. xxxvi. 4. — <sup>10</sup> *Serpserit* is found only in Festus, lib. xvii., where he says, 'Serpserit, antiqui pro serpsit usi sunt.' — <sup>11</sup> *Sparsi*, Virg. Georg. iv. 28. *Sparsurus*, Ovid. *Spargendus*, Vell. The Compounds make *spargo*, *spersi*, *spersus*. — <sup>12</sup> *Sumse*, for *sumsisse*, Næv. ap. Gell. *Sumturus*, Ovid. *Sūmendus*, Sueton. The difference between *Sūmo* and *Accipio* is this: *Sūmimus*, *ipsi*; *accipimus*, *ab alio*. — <sup>13</sup> *Temnere*, Lucil. where Scaliger reads *Temnere*, supposing the Perfect to be *Temni*. *Temsi* does not occur elsewhere in the classics, except in the Compound *Contemsi*, Cic. pro Mur. Tibull. *Temtus* occurs only in the Compound *Contemtus*, Cic. *Temnendus*, Ovid. — <sup>14</sup> *Trūsi*, Claud. *Trusus*, Tacit. — <sup>15</sup> *Ussi*, Plin. *Urendus*, Hor. — <sup>16</sup> *Vāsi*, Tertull. It occurs nowhere else, except in the Compounds *Evāsi*, Cic. Catil. *Invāsi*, Cic. Phil. *Pervāsi*, Tacit. Ann. *Evāsurus*, Liv. xxv. 11. *Invāsurus*, x. 35. *Invādendus*, xxiii. 44. *Pervāsurus*, xxxvii. 25. — <sup>17</sup> *Versi*, Ovid. See note on *Verto*, foregoing List. *Verzi*, Diomed. but without example. The Compounds, *Dūvergo*, I incline downwards, *Evergo*, I send forth, *Invergo*, I invert, pour out, have neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle. Yet we read in Festus, 'Deversus, dicebant, deorsum versus.' *Versus*, Liv.

# § 169. Verbs making *-xi* in the Perfect, and *-rus*, or *-ctus* in the Perfect Participle Passive :

*Ango, <sup>1</sup>	angere, anxi, —, .....	strangle, vex.
Cingo, <sup>2</sup>	cingere, cinxi, cinctus, cingendus, .....	surround.
Côquo, <sup>3</sup>	côquere, coxi, coctus, coctum, côquendus, .....	cook.
Dico, <sup>4</sup>	dicere, dixi, dictus, dictu, dicturus, dicendus, .....	say.
Diligo, <sup>5</sup>	diligere, dilexi, dilectus, .....	love dearly.
Dûco, <sup>6</sup>	dûcere, duxi, ductus, ductum, ducturus, D. ....	lead.
Emungo, <sup>7</sup>	emungere, emunxi, emunctus, .....	wipe.
Extinguo, <sup>8</sup>	extinguere, extinxi, extinctus, R. D. ....	quench.
Figô, <sup>9</sup>	figere, fixi, fixus, fixurus, .....	fix, fasten.
Fingo, <sup>10</sup>	ingere, faxi, fictus, fingendus, .....	feign, form.
Flecto, <sup>11</sup>	flectere, flexi, flexus, flectendus, .....	bend.
*Fligo, <sup>12</sup>	ligere, fixi, —, .....	dash.
Fluo, <sup>13</sup>	fluere, fluxi, fluxus, fluxurus, .....	flow.
Intelligo, <sup>14</sup>	intelligere, intellexi, intellectus, intellectu, intellecturus, intelligendus, .....	understand.
Jungo, <sup>15</sup>	jungere, juaxi, junctus, juncturus, D. ....	join.
*Mingo, <sup>16</sup>	ingere, minxi, —, mictum, .....	make water.
Mungo,	See <i>Emungo</i> .	
Necto, <sup>17</sup>	nectere, nexui or nexi, nexus, nectendus, .....	knit.
Negligo, <sup>18</sup>	negligere, neglexi, neglectus, R. D. ....	neglect.

<sup>1</sup> *Anxi*, Gell. The Participles *Anxus* and *Anctus*, and Supine *Anxum*, given by Prisc. do not exist elsewhere, though Scaliger would read, '*Anctos, excruciatos*,' in Festus, where others read *Antios*. — <sup>2</sup> *Cinxi*, Virg. *Æn.* v. 13. *Cingendus*, Ovid. — <sup>3</sup> *Cozi*, Cic. *Tusc.* *Coctum*, Plaut. *Côquendus*, Id. — <sup>4</sup> *Dicti, dixi*, for *dixisti, dix-eris*, Gell. *Dixe*, for *dixisse*, Varr. ap. Non. *Dice*, for *dic*, Plaut. *Dictu*, Plin. *Dicturus*, Liv. *Dicendus*, Vell. — <sup>5</sup> An irregular compound of *Lêgo*. *Dilexi*, Cic. *Fam.* So *Colligo*, I collect, *collexi*. *Collectu*, Plin. — <sup>6</sup> *Duce*, for *duc*, Plaut. *Duxi*, for *duxisti*, Varr. ap. Non. *Ductum*, Cæs. B. C. *Ducturus*, Liv. i. 44. *Ducendus*, Cels. — <sup>7</sup> *Emunxi*, for *emunxisti*, Plaut. The simple *Mungo* occurs only in the Vett. Gloss., and in the various reading of a Fragment of Cato, where the text has *emungentur*. — <sup>8</sup> Some derive *Extinguo* from *Tinguo*, 'quia ignis aqua tinctus opprimitur.' *Extinxi*, for *extinxerit*, Plaut. *Extincturus*, Liv. *Extinguendus*, Cic. de Orat. i. 14. — <sup>9</sup> *Fixus*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 495 et passim. *Fictus*, for *fixus*, Varr. R. R. So '*confictus sagittis*,' Scaur. ap. Diomed. *Fixurus*, Ovid. *Affixit*, for *affixisset*, Sil. — <sup>10</sup> *Fingendus*, Auson. — <sup>11</sup> *Flectendus*, Plin. — <sup>12</sup> *Flaxi*, Lucr. Some cite *Fluctus* from Virgil, but no such Participle occurs in that poet. *Afflictus*, Cæs. B. G. et passim. *Conflictus* does not occur. — <sup>13</sup> *Fluxus*, Apul. Met. *Fluxurus*, Lucan. *Flucturus*, Prisc. — <sup>14</sup> An irregular compound of *Lêgo*. *Intellexi*, Cic. *Intellexi*, for *intellexisti*, Cic. *Intellexes*, for *intellexisses*, Plaut. *Intelligi*, for *intellexi*, Ulpian. ap. Voss. *Intellectus*, Ovid. *Intellectu*, Nepos. *Intellecturus*, Ovid. *Intelligendus*, Cic. — <sup>15</sup> *Juncturus*, Liv. xxix. 5. *Jungendus*, Cels. *Ad junctum iri*, Cic. *Fam.* — <sup>16</sup> The imperfect tense of *Mingo* and its Compounds are scarcely ever found. *Minxi*, Hor. Art. Poët. 471. *Meio*, which is of more frequent use, has no Perfect, though Valer. Prob. Cathol. p. 1483, gives it *Mezi*, and Diomed. i. p. 366, *Meizvi*. The latter also gives *Mio*, *-is*, *-it*, but cites no example to prove either. *Mictum*, Hor. i. Sat. 8. 38. — <sup>17</sup> *Nexui*, Sallust. *Fragm.* *Nexi*, Propert. *Annexui*, Plin. *Connexui*, Claud. Rufin. *Innexui*, Virg. *Æn.* v. 425. *Nixus*, Cic. *Tusc.* *Annexus*, Id. de Iuv. *Connexus*, Id. Nat. Deor. et passim. *Innexus*, Virg. *Æn.* v. 510. *Nectendus*, Hor. — <sup>18</sup> An irregular Compound of *Lêgo*. *Neglexi*, Cic. *Fam.* et passim. *Negligi*, for *neglexi*, Æmil. Macer ap. Diomed. *Neglecturus*, Cæs. B. G. *Negligendus*, Id. B. G.

- Pango,<sup>1</sup> pangēre, panxi or pēgi, pactus, pacturus,  
pangendus, ..... drive in, fix, fasten.  
Pecto,<sup>2</sup> pexui or pexi, pectēre, pexus or pectītus,  
pectendus, ..... comb, dress, beat.  
\*Pergo,<sup>3</sup> pergēre, perrexi, ———, perrectūrus, ..... go forward.  
\*Plango,<sup>4</sup> plangēre, planxi, ———, planctūrus, ..... beat, bewail.  
Plecto,<sup>5</sup> plectēre, plexi, plexus, plectendus, ..... twine.  
Rēgo,<sup>6</sup> rēgēre, rexi, rectus, rectūrus, rēgendus, ..... rule.  
Stinguo. See *Extinguo*.  
Stringo,<sup>7</sup> stringēre, strinxi, strictus, strictūrus,  
stringendus, ..... tie hard, graze, strip.  
Struo,<sup>8</sup> struēre, struxi, structus, struendus, ..... build.  
Sūgo,<sup>9</sup> sūgēre, suxi, suctus, ..... suck.  
Surgo,<sup>10</sup> surgēre, surrexi, surrectus, surrectūrus, ..... rise.  
Tēgo,<sup>11</sup> tēgēre, texi, tectus, teetūrus, tēgendus, ..... cover.  
Tingo,<sup>12</sup> tingēre, tinxi, tinctus, tinctūrus, D. .... dip, die.  
Trāho,<sup>13</sup> trāhēre, traxi, tractus, tractūrus, D. .... draw.  
Ungo,<sup>14</sup> ungēre, unxi, unctus, ungendus, ..... anoint.  
Vēho,<sup>15</sup> vēhēre, vxi, vectus, vectūrus, ..... carry.  
\*Vivo,<sup>16</sup> vivēre, vixi, ———, victūrus, ..... live.

## § 170. Verbs changing -o into -ui :

- \*Accumbo,<sup>17</sup> accumbēre, accūbui, ———, ..... lie down.

<sup>1</sup>This Verb should be carefully distinguished from *Pāgo*, List. xvi. *Panxi*, Colum. *Pēgērūt*, Cic. de Leg. (ubi Steph. et al. *Pēpīgērūt*); *Pēgi*, Pacuv. ap. Fest. *Pactus*, fixed, fastened, Pallad. *Panctūrus*, Id. *Pangendus*, Colum. — <sup>2</sup>*Pexisti*, Mecenas. ap. Prisc. *Pexui*, plerique ap. Prisc. *Pectivi*, Asper. l. c. et ap. Prisc. The Perfects of *Dēpecto*, I trim, I curry, and *Rēpecto*, I comb again, do not exist. *Perus*, Hor. i. Epist. i. 95. et passim. *Pectītus*, Colum. *Pectendus*, Ovid. *Imperus*, Hor. though *Impecto* does not occur in the classics. — <sup>3</sup>*Porgo*, Lucr. i. 930. *Perrexi*, Cic. pro Planc. *Perrectūrus*, Cic. Tusc. — <sup>4</sup>*Planxi*, Stat. Theb. *Planctūrus*, Germanic. in Arat. 198. — <sup>5</sup>*Plecto*, in the sense of *implico*, *necto*, *texo*, has the Perfect *Plexi*, Liv. Erotopsegn. ap. Prisc. ix. p. 903. The Perfect *Plexui*, given by Voss. Gram. v. 31, is found only in St. Jerome's translation of the Bible, called the Vulgate, Jud. xvi. 13. *Plecto*, in the sense of *verbēro*, has no Perfect, and is scarcely ever used in the Active. '*Plectēre eum*,' Imp. Dioclet. et Maxim. Cod. '*Fustis plectito*,' Plaut. '*Plecte pugnīs*,' Id.; but the true reading is *pectito*, *pecte*. *Plexus*, Lucr. *Plectendus*, Solin. xv. 25. — <sup>6</sup>*Rexi*, Propert. passim. *Rectus*, Sidon. Carm. *Rectūrus*, Manil. *Regendus*, Ovid. So the Compounds *Arrigo* and *Erigo*, I raise up; *Dirigo*, I direct; *Corrigo*, I correct; *Surrigo*, I raise up; *Porrigo*, I stretch out, sometimes contracted to *Porgo*, whence *Porxit*, Stat. — <sup>7</sup>*Strinxi*, Stat. *Strictus*, Id. *Strictūrus*, Sueton. *Stringendus*, Cic. Off. — <sup>8</sup>*Struxi*, Ovid. Met. *Struendus*, Tacit. Ann. *Obstructum iri*, Justin. — <sup>9</sup>*Suxisse*, Cic. Tusc. *Suctus*, Pallad. — <sup>10</sup>*Surrexi*, Cic. de Inv. *Surrexi*, for *surrexisti*, Martial. v. 80. *Surrectus*, Liv. passim. *Surrectūrus*, Colum. — <sup>11</sup>*Texi*, Propert. *Tectūrus*, Lucan. *Tēgendus*, Ovid. — <sup>12</sup>Manut. Pier. on Virg. Dausq. and Broukhus. on Propert. prefer *Tinguo*. *Tinxi*, Ovid. Met. *Tinctus*, Hor. iii. Od. 10. 14. et passim. *Tinctūrus*, Ovid. *Tingendus*, Propert. — <sup>13</sup>*Traxi*, Senec. *Tractus*, Ovid. Met. *Tractūrus*, Liv. xxxiii. 9. *Trāhendus*, Plin. *Attractum iri*, Cic. Att. *Distrahendus*, Gell. — <sup>14</sup>Some write *Unguo*, whence the Perfect *Ungui*, ap. Prisc. but without authority. *Unxi*, Ovid. *Uunctus*, Hor. *Ungendus*, Cels. — <sup>15</sup>*Vexi*, Cic. Nat. Deor. *Vectus*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 528. et passim. *Vectūrus*, Claud. — <sup>16</sup>*Vixi*, Cic. Off. iii. 2. et passim. *Vixet*, for *vixisset*, Virg. *Æn.* xi. 118. *Vivēbo*, Nonius ap. Vos. v. 35. *Victūrus*, Cic. Verr. iv. 47. Cæs. B. C. — <sup>17</sup>The Compounds of *Cūbo*, of this Con-

Alo, <sup>1</sup> <i>ālere, ālui, ālītus or altus, ālendus, . . . . .</i>	<i>nourish.</i>
Assēro, <sup>2</sup> <i>assērere, assēruī, assertus, R. D. . . . .</i>	<i>assert, claim.</i>
Cōlo, <sup>3</sup> <i>cōlère, cōlui, cultus, cōlendus, . . . . .</i>	<i>till, adorn, worship.</i>
*Compesco, <sup>4</sup> <i>compescere, compescui, —, compescendus, . . . . .</i>	<i>restrain.</i>
Consēro, <sup>5</sup> <i>consērere, consēruī, consertus, consertūrus, . . . . .</i>	<i>join together.</i>
Consūlo, <sup>6</sup> <i>consulere, consūlui, consultus, consultum, . . . . .</i>	<i>consult.</i>
Depso, <sup>7</sup> <i>depeere, depsui, depstus, . . . . .</i>	<i>knead, tan leather.</i>
Dēsēro, <sup>8</sup> <i>deserere, dēsēruī, desertus, dēsertūrus, . . . . .</i>	<i>forsake.</i>
*Desterto, <sup>9</sup> <i>destertere, destertui, —, . . . . .</i>	<i>cease snoring.</i>
*Dissēro, <sup>10</sup> <i>dissērere, dissēruī, —, . . . . .</i>	<i>discourse, debate.</i>
Excello, <sup>11</sup> <i>excellere, excellui, excelsus, . . . . .</i>	<i>be raised high, excel.</i>
Exsēro, <sup>12</sup> <i>exserere, exsēruī, exsertus, . . . . .</i>	<i>put forth.</i>
*Frēmo, <sup>13</sup> <i>frēmere, frēmui, —, frēmendus, . . . . .</i>	<i>roar.</i>
*Gēmo, <sup>14</sup> <i>gēmere, gēmui, —, gēmendus, . . . . .</i>	<i>groan.</i>
Gēno, <sup>15</sup> <i>gēnuī, or</i>	
Gigno, <i>gignere, gēnuī, gēnītus, gēnītūrus, . . . . .</i>	<i>beget, produce.</i>
Insēro, <sup>16</sup> <i>insērere, insēruī, insertus, insērendus, . . . . .</i>	<i>ingraft.</i>
*Malo. See Irregular Verbs.	
Mōlo, <sup>17</sup> <i>mōlere, mōlui, mōlītus, . . . . .</i>	<i>grind.</i>
*Nōlo. See Irregular Verbs.	
Occūlo, <sup>18</sup> <i>occūlere, occūlui, occultus, . . . . .</i>	<i>hide.</i>

jugation, take M in the imperfect Tenses, and drop it in forming the Perfect and Supine. *Accūbui*, Liv. xviii. 18. *Discūbui*, Cic. *Discūbūtum*, Plaut.

<sup>1</sup> *Alui*, Hor. *Altus*, Curt. *Altus*, Cic. Nat. Deor. *Alendus*, Ovid. — <sup>2</sup> The Perfect of the simple *Stero*, I knit, does not exist now. Its Participle is *Sirtus*, Lucan. passim. *Assēruī*, Ovid. *Assertus*, Sueton. *Assertūrus*, Sueton. Claud. *Assērendus*, Sueton. Jul. So the other Compounds, *Consēro*, I join together; *Dēsēro*, I forsake; *Diasēro*, I discuss; *Edissēro*, I declare, discourse of; *Exsēro*, I put forth; *Instēro*, I ingraft. — <sup>3</sup> *Cōlui*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 19. et passim. *Cōlendus*, Curt. — <sup>4</sup> *Compescuit*, Ovid. The Perfect Participle does not occur in the classics: yet we have 'saxo compescita,' in an ancient inscription. The Supine *Compescitum* is found only in Priscian. x. p. 887. *Compescendus*, Plin. Epist. — <sup>5</sup> See *Assēro*. *Consertūrus*, Liv. vi. 12. — <sup>6</sup> *Consūlui*, Cæs. B. C. *Consultus*, Stat. Achill. *Consultum*, Plaut. Bacch. *Consultūrus*, Tacit. Ann. *Consulendus*, Aul. Gell. *Consulitūrus*, ap. Fortunat. Carm., is a barbarism not to be imitated. — <sup>7</sup> *Depsui*, Cato R. R. *Depsi*, Varr. ap. Non. *Condepsui*, Pompon. ap. Prob. *Perdepsui*, Catull. *Depstus*, Cato R. R. It has no other Participle. — <sup>8</sup> *Dēsēruī*, Quintil. *Dēsertus*, Cic. Fam. *Dēsertūrus*, Terent. Andr. '*Dēsērendæ* Italiæ conjuratio,' Liv. xxiv. 43. — <sup>9</sup> *Destertui*, Pers. This Verb has no Participles. *Stertui*, the Perfect of the simple *Stero*, does not occur in the classics; but it is given by Prisc. x. p. 903. *Stertens*, Cic. de Div. — <sup>10</sup> See *Assēro*. *Dissertus*, disputed, debated, occurs only in St. Jerome on Isaia. xi. 4. — <sup>11</sup> *Excelleas*, of the second Conj. is found in Cic. Fragm. ap. Prisc. The simple *Cello* does not exist; though many grammars and dictionaries give it the Perfects *Cēcūli* and *Cellui*. *Cillērentur*, i. e. *mōvērentur*, is read in Servius on Virg. Georg. ii. 389., and *Cillēntur*, for *mōcēntur*, in Isid. *Excellui*, Gell. *Anticello*, I excel; *Præcello*, I surpass, *Rēcello*, I move or draw back, have no Perfects. See *Percello*, List xviii. *Celsus* and *Excelsus* are used adjectively. — <sup>12</sup> See *Assēro*. *Exsertus*, Plin. passim. — <sup>13</sup> *Frēmui*, Martial. *Frēmendus*, Stat. Theb. — <sup>14</sup> *Gēmui*, Propert. *Gēmendus*, Ovid. — <sup>15</sup> *Gēnunt*, Varr. ap. Prisc. *Gēnendi*, Id. R. R. *Gēnuī*, Cic. Nat. Deor. *Gēnītus*, Virg. *Æn.* ix. 642. et passim. *Gēnītūrus*, Curt. '*Gignendæ* herbæ aptior,' Curt. — <sup>16</sup> See *Assēro*. *Insērendus*, Cels. See *Stero*, List xviii. — <sup>17</sup> *Mōlui*, Petron. Sat. *Mōlītus*, Cæs. B. G. — <sup>18</sup> A Compound of *Cōlo*. *Occūlui*, Ovid. Met. *Occultus*, Virg. Georg. iii. 397. et passim. The other Participles do not occur.

**Pōno,**<sup>1</sup> *pōnere, pōsui, pōsītus, pōsītūrus, D. .... put, place.*  
**Sterto.** See *Dēsterto*.

**\*Strēpo,**<sup>2</sup> *strēpere, strēpui, —, .... make a noise, murmur.*

**Texo,**<sup>3</sup> *texere, texui, textus, texendus, .... weave.*

**\*Trēmo,**<sup>4</sup> *trēmere, trēmui, —, trēmendus, .... tremble.*

**\*Vōlo.** See *Irregular Verbs*.

**Vōmo,**<sup>5</sup> *vōmere, vōmui, vōmītus, vōmītūrus, D. .... cast up.*

### § 171. The following make *-ivi*:

**Arcesso,**<sup>6</sup> *arcessere, arcessivi, arcessitus, arcessitūrus, arcessendus, .... call, send for.*

**\*Cāpresso,**<sup>7</sup> *cāpressere, cāpressivi or capessii, —, cāpessitūrus, cāpessendus, .... take in hand.*

**\*Incesso,**<sup>8</sup> *incessere, incessivi or innessi, —, .... attack.*

**Lācesso,**<sup>9</sup> *lācessere, lācessivi, lācessii or lācessi, lācessitūrus, lācessendus, .... provoke.*

**Pēto,**<sup>10</sup> *pētere, pētivi or pētii, pētītus, pētītum, pētītūrus, pētendus, .... ask.*

**Quæro,**<sup>11</sup> *quærere, quæsi or quæsi, quæsitūrus, quæsitum, quæsitūrus, quærendus, .... seek.*

**Fācesso,**<sup>12</sup> *I execute, go away, makes fācessi, fācessitus.*

### § 172. Verbs doubling the first syllable in the Perfect:

**\*Cādo,**<sup>13</sup> *cādere, cēcīdi, —, cāsūrus, .... fall.*

<sup>1</sup> *Pōsui*, Cæs. B. C. *Pōsivi*, Plaut. Pseud. So *Appōsivi*, Plaut. Mil. iii. 3. 30. *Compōsivi*, Inscript. *Dēpōsivi*, Plaut. Curc. iv. 3. 4. Catull. xxxiv. 8. *Dēpōsisse*, for *dēpōsivisse*, Catal. Virg. de Sab. *Expōsivi*, Plaut. *Impōsivi*, Id. *Impōsisse*, for *impōsivisse*, Most. *Oppōsivi*, Curt. *Rēpōsivi*, Asin. *Suppōsivi*, Truc. Terent. Eun. *Pōsītus*, Virg. Ecl. ii. 54. et passim. *Postus*, Lucr. *Pōsītūrus*, Ovid. Met. *Pōnendus*, Cic. Orat. *Præpōsītum iri*, Terent. Eun. — <sup>2</sup> *Strēpui*, Virg. Æn. viii. 2. The Participle in *ns* only is found in the classics. — <sup>3</sup> *Texui*, Martial. Some dictionaries add *Texi*, which, however, does not occur in the classics, except as the Perfect of *Tēgo*. *Textus*, Ovid. Fast. *Texendus*, Virg. Georg. ii. 371. — <sup>4</sup> *Trēmui*, Virg. Æn. viii. 296. *Trēmendus*, Stat. Theb. — <sup>5</sup> *Vōmui*, Pers. Sat. *Vōmītus*, Cæsar. Aurel. *Vōmītūrus*, Plin. *Vōmendus*, Lucr. — <sup>6</sup> *Arcesso*, not *accesso*, Voss. in Etym. *Arcessivi*, Cic. Quint. *Arcessitus*, Propert. *Arcessitūrus*, Plant. Cas. *Arcessendus*, Cels. — <sup>7</sup> *Cāpressivi*, Tacit. Ann. *Cāpressii*, Ann. xii. 30. *Cāpessitūrus*, Apul. Met. Tacit. Ann. *Cāpessendus*, Plin. Paneg. — <sup>8</sup> *Incessivi*, Plin. *Incesserint*, Tacit. Hist. ii. 23, which is also the Perfect of *Incēdo*, I go. — <sup>9</sup> *Lācessivi*, Colum. *Lācessivi*, Cic. Fam. *Lācessii*, Liv. xxviii. 12. *Lācessisti*, Cic. Phil. *Lācessitus*, Virg. Æn. vii. 526. *Lācessitūrus*, Liv. *Lācessendus*, Cæs. B. G. — <sup>10</sup> *Pētivi*, Cic. *Pētii*, Cæs. B. G. *Pētisse*, Cic. *Pētītus*, Ovid. Met. *Pētītum*, Catull. *Pētītūrus*, Claudian. *Rēpētītum*, Liv. iii. *Pētītūrus*, Tibull. *Pētendus*, Propert. — <sup>11</sup> *Quæsi*, Cic. *Quæsi*, Cic. pro Quint. c. 3. *Quæsitus*, Virg. Æn. vii. 758. et passim. *Quæsitum*, Terent. *Quæsitūrus*, Cic. *Quærendus*, Lucr. *Exquisitum*, Plaut. *Inquisitum*, Liv. xl. 20. — <sup>12</sup> *Fācesseris*, Cic. *Fācessisset*, Tacit. Hist. Neither the Perfect *Fācessivi*, nor the Participle *Fācessus*, given in some grammars and dictionaries, occurs in the classics. *Fācessitus*, Cic. Verr. iv. 64. — <sup>13</sup> *Cēcīdi*, Virg. Æn. i. 158. et passim. *Cāsūrus*, Cic. *Cādīt*, for *cādat*, Plaut.



<i>Cædo</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>cædere</i> , <i>cæcidi</i> , <i>cæsus</i> , <i>cæsûrus</i> , D. ....	<i>cut, beat.</i>
* <i>Cāno</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>cānere</i> , <i>cēcīni</i> , —, <i>cānendus</i> , .....	<i>sing.</i>
* <i>Curro</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>currere</i> , <i>cūcurri</i> , —, <i>cursûrus</i> , .....	<i>run.</i>
* <i>Disco</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>discere</i> , <i>dīdici</i> , —, <i>discitûrus</i> , <i>discendus</i> , .....	<i>learn.</i>
<i>Fallo</i> , <sup>5</sup> <i>fallere</i> , <i>fēfelli</i> , <i>falsus</i> , <i>fallendus</i> , .....	<i>deceive.</i>
<i>Pāgo</i> , <sup>6</sup> <i>pāgere</i> , <i>pēpigi</i> , <i>pactus</i> , .....	<i>bargain, lay a wager.</i>
* <i>Parco</i> , <sup>7</sup> <i>parcere</i> , <i>pēperci</i> or <i>parsi</i> , —, <i>parsûrus</i> , .....	<i>spare.</i>
* <i>Pēdo</i> , <sup>8</sup> <i>pēdere</i> , <i>pēpēdi</i> , Hor. l. Sat. 8. 46. —, .....	<i>weigh.</i>
<i>Pello</i> , <sup>9</sup> <i>pellere</i> , <i>pēpūli</i> , <i>pulsus</i> , <i>pellendus</i> , .....	<i>drive.</i>
<i>Pendo</i> , <sup>10</sup> <i>pendere</i> , <i>pēpendi</i> , <i>pensus</i> , <i>pensûrus</i> , .....	<i>weigh.</i>
* <i>Posco</i> , <sup>11</sup> <i>poscere</i> , <i>pōposci</i> , —, <i>poscendus</i> , .....	<i>demand.</i>
<i>Pungo</i> , <sup>12</sup> <i>pungere</i> , <i>pūpigi</i> , <i>punctus</i> , .....	<i>prick, sting.</i>
<i>Tango</i> , <sup>13</sup> <i>tangere</i> , <i>tētigi</i> , <i>tactus</i> , <i>tactûrus</i> , <i>tangendus</i> , .....	<i>touch.</i>
<i>Tendo</i> , <sup>14</sup> <i>tendere</i> , <i>tētendi</i> , <i>tensus</i> or <i>tentus</i> , .....	<i>stretch.</i>
<i>Tundo</i> , <sup>15</sup> <i>tundere</i> , <i>tūtūdi</i> , <i>tunsus</i> or <i>tusus</i> , .....	<i>beat, pound.</i>

Also *Pārio*, I bring forth, List XXV.

### § 173. The Compounds of *do* make *-didi*, *-ditus* :

<i>Abdo</i> , <sup>16</sup> <i>abdere</i> , <i>abdīdi</i> , <i>abdītus</i> , <i>abdendus</i> , .....	<i>hide.</i>
<i>Addo</i> , <sup>17</sup> <i>addere</i> , <i>addīdi</i> , <i>addītus</i> , <i>addītûrus</i> , D. ....	<i>add.</i>
<i>Condo</i> , <sup>18</sup> <i>condere</i> , <i>condīdi</i> , <i>condītus</i> , <i>condendus</i> , ...	<i>hide, lay up, build.</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Cēcidi*, Juvenal. *Cæsus*, Liv. *Cæsûrus*, Justin. *Cædendus*, Cic. *Occisum iri*, Cic. Att. — <sup>2</sup> *Cēcīni*, Virg. Georg. i. 378. et passim. *Cānērit*, for *cēcīnērit*, Festus in 'Rumentum.' *Cāni*, for *cēcīni*, Serv. ad. Virg. Georg. ii. 384. hence *Cānītûrus*, Vulgat. Apocalyps. viii. 13. *Cante*, for *cānte*, Carmen Saliare ap. Varr. L. L. vi. 3. *Cānendus*, Stat. Theb. — <sup>3</sup> *Cūcurri*, Cic. *Cēcurre*, Gell. *Curristi*, Tertull. *Cur-sûrus*, Ovid. — <sup>4</sup> *Dīdici*, Cic. de Senect. *Discītûrus*, Apul. Fragm. ap. Prisc. *Dis-cendus*, Plaut. — <sup>5</sup> *Fēfelli*, Cic. *Falsus sum*, I am deceived, Plaut. *Fēfellitûs sum*, Petron. *Fallendus*, Catull. — <sup>6</sup> *Pāgunt*, Quintil. *Pēpigi*, Quintil. *Pēgi*, Prisc. but he does not prove it by any authority. *Paxim*, for *pēpīgērīm*, I will lay a wager, Plaut. *Pactus*, Cic. Off. i. 10. See *Pango*, List xiii. and *Paciscor*, List xxix. — <sup>7</sup> *Pēperci*, Cic. *Parsi*, Terent. *Parcuit*, for *parsi*, Næv. ap. Non. *Parso*, for *peppercero*, Plaut. *Parcītum est*, in some edd. of Plin. xxxiii. 4., where Har-duin reads *parci*. *Parsûrus*, Liv. — <sup>8</sup> *Pēpūli*, Liv. — <sup>9</sup> *Pēpūli*, Liv. *Pulsi*, for *pēpūli*, Ammian. but this is not to be imitated. *Pulsus*, Cic. de Orat. *Pellendus*, Justin. — <sup>10</sup> *Pē-pendi*, Justin. *Pendissent*, Liv. xlv. 26. So in all the Mss. and in all edd. except Sigonius and Drakenborch., who read from conjecture, *pēpendissent*. See Voss. Gram. v. 26. *Pensus*, Ovid. Met. *Pensûrus*, Liv. — <sup>11</sup> *Pōposci*, Cic. *Pēposci*, Valer. Antias ap. Gell. vii. 9. *Dēpōposci*, Cic. *Expōposci*, Liv. *Rēpōposci* seems not to exist in the classics. See Morden, Second Conj. List iv. *Poscendus*, Sil. *Poscītus*, given by Priscian and other grammarians, does not exist. — <sup>12</sup> *Pūpigi*, Cic. *Pēpūgi*, Atta ap. Gell. *Punzi*, Diomed. i. p. 369., but without authority. *Pūpīgērat*, with the second syllable long, occurs in Prudent. *Punctus*, Cic. Of the Compound *Rēpungo*, I vex again, *Rēpungere* only is found, Cic. Fam. *Compungo*, I puncture, makes *Compunzi*, Senec. *Compunctus*, Cic. Off. *Dispungo*, I mark off, reckon. *Dispunzi*, Vell. i. 13. *Dispunctus*, Tertull. — <sup>13</sup> *Tāgo*, for *tango*, Pacuv. ap. Fest. *Tētigi*, Cic. *Taxis*, for *tīgīgēris*, Varr. ap. Non. *Tactûrus*, Cic. *Tangendus*, Hor. — <sup>14</sup> *Tētendi*, Virg. Æn. v. 508. *Tendisti*, Propert. in the Mss. and early edd., but two Vatican Mss., and the edd. since Scaliger, have *nezisti*. *Car-bōsa tendērant*, Senec. *Tensus*, Lucan. *Tentus*, Lucr. — <sup>15</sup> *Tūtūdi*, Varr. de L. L. *Tunsi*, Diomed. *Tūsērunt*, Næv. ap. Merulam in Collect. Fragm. Ennii p. 42. *Tunsus*, Virg. Georg. iv. 302. *Tusus*, Vitruv. The Compounds of *Tango*, *Tendo*, and *Tundo*, drop the reduplication of the Perfect. The Compounds of *Tundo* make *tūdi*, *tūsus*; yet *Dētunsus*, Apul. Met. *Obtunsus*, Virg. Georg. i. 252. *Rē-tunsus*, Plaut. — <sup>16</sup> *Abdendus*, Liv. — <sup>17</sup> *Addītûrus*, Tacit. Ann. *Addendus*, Ovid. — <sup>18</sup> *Condendus*, Liv.

Crêdo, <sup>1</sup> crêdêre, crêdîdi, crêdîtus, crêdîtûrus, D. ....	<i>believe.</i>
Dêdo, <sup>2</sup> dêdêre, dêdîdi, dêdîtus, dêdîtûrus, D. ....	<i>surrender.</i>
Dîdo, <sup>3</sup> dîdêre, dîdîdi, dîdîtus, ....	<i>give out, divide.</i>
Edo, <sup>4</sup> êdêre, êdîdi, êdîtus, êdîtûrus, êdendus, ....	<i>publish.</i>
Indo, <sup>5</sup> indêre, indîdi, indîtus, indendus, ....	<i>put in.</i>
Obdo, <sup>6</sup> obdêre, obdîdi, obdîtus, ....	<i>oppose.</i>
Perdo, <sup>7</sup> perdêre, perdîdi, perdîtus, perdîtum, perdîtûrus, perdendus, ....	<i>destroy.</i>
Prôdo, <sup>8</sup> prôdêre, prôdîdi, prôdîtus, prôdîtûrus, prôden- dus, ....	<i>betray.</i>
Reddo, <sup>9</sup> reddêre, reddîdi, reddîtus, reddîtûrus, ....	<i>restore.</i>
Subdo, <sup>10</sup> subdêre, subdîdi, subdîtus, ....	<i>put under.</i>
Trâdo, <sup>11</sup> trâdêre, trâdîdi, trâdîtus, trâdîtûrus, D. ....	<i>deliver.</i>
Vendo, <sup>12</sup> vendêre, vendîdi, vendîtus, vendîtûrus, D. ....	<i>sell.</i>

§ 174. Verbs that cannot be classed with any of the foregoing :

*Conquînisco, <sup>13</sup> conquînsicere, conquexi, —, ....	<i>stoop, sit, squat.</i>
Fêro, <sup>14</sup> ferre, [tûli,] [lâtus, lâtûrus,] fêrendus, ....	<i>bear, suffer.</i>
Confido, <sup>15</sup> confidêre, confissus sum or confidi, ....	<i>rely on.</i>
Mêto, <sup>16</sup> mêtêre, messui, messus, mêtendus, ....	<i>mow, reap.</i>
Mitto, <sup>17</sup> mittêre, mîsi, missus, missûrus, mittendus, ....	<i>send.</i>
Percello, <sup>18</sup> percellêre, percûli or percusi, percussus, ....	<i>strike, shock.</i>
*Rûdo, <sup>19</sup> rûdêre, rûdivi, —, ....	<i>bray like an ass.</i>
Scindo, <sup>20</sup> scindêre, scîdi, scissus, scindendus, ....	<i>cut.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Crêdîtûrus, Gell. Crêdendus, Cic. pro Cœl. — <sup>2</sup> Dêdîtûrus, Cæs. B. G. Dêden-  
dus, Cic. — <sup>3</sup> The Participles in *ns, rus, and dus*, do not occur. — <sup>4</sup> Edîtûrus, Sue-  
ton. Edendus, Cic. Fam. — <sup>5</sup> Indendus, Cels. — <sup>6</sup> Perduis, perdui, perduint, for  
perdas, at, ant, Plaut. Perduint, for perdunt, Plaut. Perdtum, Sallust. Catil. 52.  
Perdtûrus, Cic. de Orat. Perendus, Ovid. — <sup>7</sup> Prôdûi, in Lege Censorina ap.  
Fest. Prôdtûrus, Terent. Prôdendus, Cic. — <sup>8</sup> Reddûbo, Plaut. Reddtu iri,  
Paul. Dig. Reddtûrus, Tacit. 'Ad vota Herculi reddenda,' Justin. — <sup>9</sup> Trâdtu  
iri, Paul. Dig. Trâdtûrus, Liv. Trâdendus, Cic. de Orat. — <sup>10</sup> Vendîtûrus, Plaut.  
Vendendus, Cic. — <sup>11</sup> Conquexi, Pompon. ap. Prisc. — <sup>12</sup> Tûli comes from the obso-  
lete Tûlô, or Tôlo, whence Tôlêro, -as, -avi. See Diomed. Hence Têtûli, Plaut.  
Têtûlissem, Terent. Andr. Têtûlêro, Plaut. Têtûlisce, Rud. See note on Tollo.  
Ferre is a contraction of Fêrêre. Lâtus, seems to be formed from Tûlâtus. See  
Voss. Lâtûrus, Hor. Fêrendus, Cic. — <sup>13</sup> Confisus sum, Cæs. Confiderunt, Liv.  
Fisus sum. The Perfect of the simple Fîdo, given by Prisc. viii. p. 818. Charis. and  
Diomed. does not occur. Fidêbo, Næv. ap. Non. — <sup>14</sup> Messui, Cato, ap. Prisc. Dê-  
messui, Cæs. Hemina ap. Prisc. Messum fêci, for messui, Charis. Another Perfect,  
Messûvi is quoted by Prisc., but he condemns it. Messus, Virg. Æn. iv. 513. Mêt-  
endus, Cic. — <sup>15</sup> Mîsi, Ovid. Met. iii. 38. et passim. Mîsti, for mîsisti, Catull. Mîs-  
sus, Virg. Æn. iii. 595. et passim. Missûrus, Hor. Art. Poët. 476. Mittendus, Jus-  
tin. — <sup>16</sup> Percûli, Val. Flac. Terent. Cic. pro Mil. Perculsi, Ammian. Percussit  
in some edd. of Horace, i. Od. 7. 11., and Terent. Andr. i. 1. 98.; but the true read-  
ing in the two last passages is percussit. Percûli, passively for percussus fuit,  
Flor. Percussus, Catull. passim, which is also often confounded with Percussus.  
See Bentl. on Hor. Epod. xi. 2. Burm. on Ovid. Met. iv. 138. — <sup>17</sup> Persius Sat. iii. 9.  
makes the first syllable in Rûdo long. Rûdivi, as if from Rûdio, Apul. Met. Rûdi  
occurs only in grammars and dictionaries. — <sup>18</sup> Scîdi, Stat. iii. Sylv. Sciscîdi, Afran.  
ap. Prisc. Scîactîdi, Gell. Scissus, Liv. passim. Scindendus, Liv. Abscissûrus,  
Quintil. Discindendus, Cic.

Sēro,<sup>1</sup> sērēre, sēvi, sātus, sātūrus, sērendus, ..... sow.  
 \*Sīno,<sup>2</sup> sīnēre, sīvi, —, sītūrus, ..... suffer.  
 \*Tollo,<sup>3</sup> tollēre, tolli, —, tollendus, ..... raise, lift up.  
 Sustollo,<sup>4</sup> sustollēre, sustūli, sublātus, sublātūrus, .. raise, take away.  
 Vello,<sup>5</sup> vellēre, velli or vulsi, vulsus, vellendus, ..... pull, pinch.

## § 175. Verbs forming the Perfect by transposition or elision:

Cerno,<sup>6</sup> cernēre, crēvi, crētus, cernendus, *sift, distinguish, see, decree, &c.*  
 Sperno,<sup>7</sup> spernēre, sprēvi, sprētus, spernendus, *separate, spurn, despise.*  
 Sterno,<sup>8</sup> sternēre, strāvi, strātus, sternendus, ..... *strew.*  
 Tēro,<sup>9</sup> tērēre, trīvi, trītus, tērendus, ..... *rub, wear.*  
 Sisto,<sup>10</sup> sistēre, stīti, stātus, ..... *stop, make stand.*

<sup>1</sup> Sēvi, Cic. Verr. Sātus, Tibull. Sātūrus, Plin. Sērendus, Tibull. Sērendus, Varr. R. R. Consēro, in the sense of sowing, planting, makes ēvi, ūtus; in the sense of joining, putting together, it makes erut, ertus; as in Quintil. Decl. ix. 3. Ovid. Heroid. Epist. ii. 58, &c. Yet 'arbōrem consēruisset,' Liv. x. 24., where some read sēruisset, others consēruisset. Consertūrus, Liv. vi. 12. Assertūrus, Sueton. Consērendus, Arnob. So, Insēro, I sow, plant, ēvi, ūtus; Insēro, I ingraft, inoculate, insert, ērui, ertus. Yet these are sometimes used one for the other. Insūtūrus, Colum. See Sēro, List xviii. — <sup>2</sup> Sīvi, Cic. Sītūrus, Cic. Plaut. Sīi, for sīvi, Varr. ap. Diomed. Terent. Siēri, Liv. Scistis, Cic. Sissem, Liv. iii. 18. Sīni, for sīvi, in some edd. of Plaut. and Terent. Andr. i. 2. 17. But this may have arisen from the similarity of n and v in the ancient Mss. — <sup>3</sup> Tollisse, Ulpian. Dig. Tollit, Pern. Sat. iv. 2., which is undoubtedly a Perfect, and the reading of all the Mss. and printed copies. See the passage, and Scaliger on Varr. R. R. i. 69. Teūli, Diomed. See following note. Tollendus, Hor. i. Sat. 10. 51. — <sup>4</sup> Sustollēre, Plaut. Sustolle, Plaut. Pœn. Sustolli, inf. Plaut. Sustollens, Catull. Sustollant, Id. Sustollat, Plaut. Sustollit, Seren. Samn. xxviii. 716. Sustūli, Cic. Sublātus, Cœs. B. G. Sublātūrus, Cic. Att. — <sup>5</sup> Velli, Cic. Verr. Vulsi, Lucan. Vulsus, Propert. Vellendus, Colum. So Avello, I tear away; Avelli, Curt. Avulsi, Lucan. Avellendus, Cic. Verr. Divello, I tear asunder; Divelli, Hirt. B. A. Divulsi, Senec. Hippol. Evello, I pluck up; Evelli, Cic. pro Sext. c. 28. Phædr. ii. 2. 10. Evulsi, Quintil. Decl. Evellendus, Cic. Prævello, I pluck before; Prævelli, Tertull. adv. Gnost. c. 13. Prævulsi, Labr. ap. Diomed. Rēvello, I tear away; Rēvelli, Cic. Revulsi, Ovid. Met. In the former passage Heins. and Burm. read rēvellit, and in the latter rēvelli; which renders Rēvulsi doubtful; though Pierius reads so in Virg. Æn. iv. 427. the Vatican Ms. Convello, I tear in pieces, makes Convelli, Cic. pro Dom. c. 21. Convellendus, Cels. iii. 4. Convulsūrus, Cic. 2. Dēvello, I pull away, Dēvelli, Plaut. Pœn. iv. 2. 50. Pervello, I twitch, Pervelli, Cic. Tusc. ii. Ascon. Intervello, I pluck here and there, Intervulsi only, Colum. v. 10. — <sup>6</sup> The Perfect Crēvi is used in the signification of I have decreed, Cic. de Leg. iii. 3. I have resolved, Plaut. I have taken possession of an inheritance, Cic. Att. vi. 1. I have perceived, i. e. I have heard, Titin. ap. Prisc. In this sense it occurs nowhere else. Cerno, I see, has no Perfect. Crētus, separated, sifted, Pallad. Cernendus, Ovid. — <sup>7</sup> Sprēvi, Virg. Æn. iv. 679. Sprētus, Id. Georg. iv. 233. Spērendus, Colum. — <sup>8</sup> Strāvi, Virg. Æn. viii. 719. et passim. Strārat, Manil. Strasset, Varr. ap. Non. Strātus, Virg. Ecl. vii. 54. et passim. Sternendus, Liv. — <sup>9</sup> Trīvi, Hor. i. Sat. 1. 45. et passim. Tristi, for trivisti, in some edd. of Catull. See Tergeo, Second Conj. List v. Intrīsti, for intrivisti, Terent. Terui, for trivi, Plaut. Hence Atūruisse, for attrivisse, Tibull. Trītus, Ovid. Tērendus, Ovid. Art. Am. — <sup>10</sup> The Perfect Stīti seems to be used only in the sense of appearing in court to a summons, or of appearing to one's recognizance. See Cic. pro Quint. c. 6. Corn. Nep. Att. c. 9., and particularly Aul. Gell. ii. 14. The grammarians make the Perfect Stīti,

### § 176. These change the vowel of the root :

Ago,<sup>1</sup> āgēre, ēgi, actus, actūrus, āgendus, ..... do, drive.  
 Frango,<sup>2</sup> frangēre, frēgi, fractus, fractūrus, d. .... break.  
 Līno,<sup>3</sup> līnēre, livi or lēvi, lītus, ..... anoint, daub.

To which add *Allicio*, *Cāpio*, *Fācio*, *Jācio*, and *Pārio*, from List XXV.

### § 177. These Verbs in -sco make -vi, -tus :

\*Cresco,<sup>4</sup> crescēre, crēvi, —, ..... grow.  
 Nosco,<sup>5</sup> noscēre, nōvi, nōtus, nōscītūrus, noscendus, ... learn to know.  
 Ignosco,<sup>6</sup> ignoscēre, ignōvi, ignōtus, ignōtūrus, ignoscendus, ..... pardon.  
 Agnosco,<sup>7</sup> agnoscēre, agnōvi, agnītus, agnōtūrus, agnoscendus, ..... recognize.  
 Cognosco,<sup>8</sup> cognoscēre, cognōvi, cognītus, cognītū, cognōtūrus, cognoscendus, ..... know.  
 Pasco,<sup>9</sup> pascēre, pāvi, pastus, pastum, pastūrus, pascendus, ..... feed.  
 Quiesco,<sup>10</sup> quiscēre, quiēvi, quiētus, quiētūrus, ..... rest.

when the verb is used absolutely, and *Stātus*, when it is used actively. But they adduce no authority. *Stātus*, Cic. Off. & Ovid. These Compounds make *stāti*, but have no Perfect Participle: \**Absisto*, I stand off, desist; \**Assisto*, I stand by; \**Consisto*, I stand fast, halt; \**Desisto*, I desist; \**Existo*, I come forth, appear; \**In-sisto*, I tread upon, insist; \**Intersisto*, I stop in the midst; \**Obsisto*, I oppose; \**Per-sisto*, I persevere; \**Rēsisto*, I stand still; and \**Subsisto*, I stop, withstand. \**Circumsisto*, has neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle.

<sup>1</sup> *Egi*, Hor. *Actus*, Id. iii. Od. 7. 5. et passim. *Actūrus*, Liv. *Agendus*, Cæs. B. G. *Actim*, for *ēgērim*, Pacuv. Vid. Voss. Gramm. — <sup>2</sup> *Frēgi*, Ovid. Met. *Fractus*, Cic. Phil. *Fractūrus*, Claud. *Frangendus*, Vell. — <sup>3</sup> Some grammars and dictionaries give us three perfects for *Līno*: *Livi*, *Lēvi*, and *Lini*; and the Oxford annotators on Lily add a fourth, *Līni*. *Lēvi*, Juvenal. Sat. Quintil. *Levi*, Hor. (*Oblīvērunt*, Gell.); and this seems to be the Perfect of the obsolete *Leo*. For *Lini* we have only the authority of Prisc., who quotes *Oblīnērunt* from Varr., where no such word is to be found; and of Voss. Gram. v. 29., who cites *Līnisti*, from Quintil. Decl. i. 15., where the Mss. and best edd. have *Lūsisti*. *Līni* is a contraction of *līnivi*, and comes from *Līnio* of the Fourth Conj. So *Oblīnītrīt*, for *oblīnīverīt*, Paul. *Lītus*, Plin. *Lisse*, for *līvisse*, Spartian. in Adrian. — <sup>4</sup> *Crēvi*, Cic. *Crētus*, born, descended, comes by Syncope from *creātus*; neither does the Supine *Crētum*, nor the Participle *Crētūrus*, as coming from *Cresco*, occur in the classics. *Cresse*, for *crēvisse*, Lucr. — <sup>5</sup> *Nōvi*, Ter. *Nosti*, *nōram*, *nosse*, *nōrim*, &c. Cic. passim. *Nōmus*, for *nōvīmus*, Enn. ap. Diomed. *Nōtus*, Cic. passim. *Nōscītūrus*, Liv. viii. 32. ap. Ainsworth. *Noscendus*, Liv. — <sup>6</sup> *Ignōvi*, Cic. *Ignōtus*, Hirt. *Ignōtūrus*, Cic. *Ignoscītūrus*, Piso Frugi. *Ignoscendus*, Virg. Georg. iv. 489. *Ignosset*, for *ignōvisset*, Sil. — <sup>7</sup> *Agnōvi*, Cic. *Agnōrunt*, Ovid. *Agnītus*, Tacit. Ann. *Agnōtus*, Pacuv. ap. Prisc. *Agnōtūrus*, Sallust. Hist. ii. ap. Prisc. *Agnosendus*, Sil. — <sup>8</sup> *Cognōvi*, Virg. Æn. ix. 245. *Cognossem*, *Cognōram*, *Cognōro*, &c. Cic. passim. *Cognītus*, Cic. Off. i. 6. et passim. *Cognītū*, Val. Max. *Cognītūrus*, Aul. Gell. *Cognoscendus*, Ovid. — <sup>9</sup> *Pāvi*, Tibull. *Pastus*, Cic. c. 25. *Pastum*, Plaut. *Pastūrus*, Varr. R. R. *Pascendus*, Hor. *Pascor*, in Plin. ix. 3. Virg. Georg. iii. 314. iv. 181. Æn. ii. 471. &c. &c., may be considered as a Deponent, (see Serv. on Virg. Æn. i. 189. ii. 215.) or as a Passive, with a Greek construction. But the former seems preferable. Prisc. cites the Supine *Compescītum*, but without authority. *Compescīta*, Inscript. — <sup>10</sup> *Quiēvi*, Virg. Æn. vi. 226. *Quiētus* is used as an adjective. *Quiētūrus*, Cic. de Orat.

Scisco,<sup>1</sup> sciscēre, scīvi, scītus, sciscendus, ..... *ordain.*  
 Suesco,<sup>2</sup> suescēre, [suēvi,] suētus, ..... *be accustomed.*

§ 178. Inceptives in -sco, when their Primitives exist, have no Perfect of their own. The following, whose Primitives are obsolete, make -ui :

Coālesco,<sup>3</sup> coālescēre, coālui, coālītus, ..... *grow together.*  
 \*Consānesco,<sup>4</sup> consānescēre, consānui, —, ..... *grow sound.*  
 \*Consēnesco,<sup>5</sup> consēnescēre, consēnui, —, ..... *grow old.*  
 \*Contīcesco,<sup>6</sup> contīlescēre, contīcui, —, ..... *be silent.*  
 \*Convālesco,<sup>7</sup> convālescēre, convālui, —, ..... *grow strong.*  
 \*Crēbresco,<sup>8</sup> crēbrescēre, crēbrui or crēbui, —, ..... *increase more and more.*  
 \*Dēlīquesco,<sup>9</sup> dēlīlescēre, dēlīcui, —, ..... *become liquid.*  
 \*Dēlītesco,<sup>10</sup> dēlītescēre, dēlītui, —, ..... *lurk.*  
 \*Dulcesco,<sup>11</sup> dulcessēre, dulcui, —, ..... *grow sweet.*  
 \*Dūresco,<sup>12</sup> dūrescēre, dūrui, —, ..... *grow hard.*  
 \*Elanguesco,<sup>13</sup> elanguescēre, elanguui, —, ..... *become feeble.*  
 \*Emarcesco,<sup>14</sup> emarcescēre, emarcui, —, ..... *fade away.*  
 \*Erubescō,<sup>15</sup> ērūlescēre, ērūbui, —, ..... *blush.*  
 \*Evānesco,<sup>16</sup> evānescēre, evānui, —, evānītūrus, ..... *disappear.*  
 \*Evileasco,<sup>17</sup> ēvīlescēre, ēvīlui, —, ..... *grow cheap.*  
 \*Exāresco,<sup>18</sup> exārescēre, exārui, —, ..... *grow dry, wither.*  
 \*Excandesco,<sup>19</sup> excandescēre, excandui, —, ..... *grow hot, be enraged.*  
 \*Exhorresco,<sup>20</sup> exhorrescēre, exhorruui, —, ..... *shudder, dread.*  
 \*Expallesco,<sup>21</sup> expallescēre, expallui, —, ..... *turn pale, dread.*  
 \*Extīmesco,<sup>22</sup> extīlescēre, extīmui, —, ..... *be afraid.*  
 \*Frācesco,<sup>23</sup> frācescēre, frācui, —, ..... *grow mouldy.*  
 \*Ināresco,<sup>24</sup> inārescēre, inārui, —, ..... *grow dry, wither.*  
 \*Incrēbresco,<sup>25</sup> incrēbrescēre, incrēbrui or incrēbui, —, ..... *increase, grow frequent.*

<sup>1</sup> Scīvi, Cic. Off. Scītus, decreed, Cic. de Leg. i. 15. Sciscendus, ibid. Sciscor, depon. Prisc. Rescītum, Terent. — <sup>2</sup> Suēvi, dissyll. Propert.; but this seems to come rather from Sueo of the Second Conj., which we find in Lucr. i. 54. 301. Suērunt, for suēvērunt, Cic. de Nat. Deor. Suērunt, dissyll. for suēvērunt, Sil. Suesti, for suēviasti, Cic. Fam. xv. 8. Suētus, Lucan. or Suētus, Hor. i. Sat. 8. 17. — <sup>3</sup> Coālui, Sallust. Jug. Coālītus, Tacit. Hist. iv. 55. — <sup>4</sup> Consānui, Cels. — <sup>5</sup> Consēnui, Ovid. — <sup>6</sup> Contīcui, Ovid. — <sup>7</sup> Convālui, Ovid. — <sup>8</sup> Crēbresco and its Compounds make *bui* oftener than *brui*: Crebuerat, Apul. Met. al. crebruerat. 'Libri et Mss. variant, et cum iis eruditorum sententia.' Facciolat. — <sup>9</sup> Delīcui, Ovid. Trist. — <sup>10</sup> Dēlītui, Cæs. B. G. Though *Dilīteo* does not exist now, yet we find its Participle *Dēlītens* in Plin. xxxv. 1. — <sup>11</sup> Dulcui, Paulin. Nolan. *Dulcit* occurs in Lucr. ii. 473, where some read *Dulcis*; others *Dulcet*, as if from *Dulcea*. — <sup>12</sup> Dūrui, Ovid. Met. *Dureo*, mentioned by Prisc., and by Servius on Virg. Georg. i. 91., does not exist. — <sup>13</sup> Elanguui, Val. Flac. iv. 572. — <sup>14</sup> Emarcui, Plin. — <sup>15</sup> Erūbui, Ovid. Fast. — <sup>16</sup> Evānui, Virg. Aen. ix. 658. Evānītūrus, Lactant. — <sup>17</sup> Evīlui, Sueton. Claud. — <sup>18</sup> Exārui, Cic. Fam. — <sup>19</sup> Excandui, Cic. Tusc. — <sup>20</sup> Exhorruui, Ovid. Met. Yet *Exhorreat* is found in Colum. x. 154. — <sup>21</sup> Expallui, Hor. — <sup>22</sup> Extīmui, Terent. Hec. *Extīmērentur* occurs in Tacit. Ann. xv. 71., but it is rendered doubtful by various readings. — <sup>23</sup> Frācui, Cato, R. R. — <sup>24</sup> Inārui, Colum. — <sup>25</sup> Some prefer writing *Incrēbresco*. See *Crēbresco*. *Incrēbrui*, Cic. Orat. c. 20. Phil. xiv. 5.

- \*Indolesco,<sup>1</sup> indolescēre, indölui, —, indölescendus, ..... *grieve.*  
 \*Innōtesco,<sup>2</sup> innōtescēre, innötui, —, ..... *become known.*  
 \*Intūmesco,<sup>3</sup> intūmescēre, intūmui, —, ..... *begin to swell.*  
 \*Irraucesco,<sup>4</sup> irraucescēre, irraucui, —, ..... *grow hoarse.*  
 \*Mācresco,<sup>5</sup> mācrescēre, mācrui, —, ..... *grow lean.*  
 \*Mātūresco,<sup>6</sup> mātūrescēre, mātūrui, —, ..... *ripen.*  
 \*Obbrūtesco,<sup>7</sup> obbrūtescēre, obbrütui, —, *become brutish, or senseless.*  
 \*Obcallesco,<sup>8</sup> obcallescēre, obcallui, —, ..... *become callous.*  
 \*Obdūresco,<sup>9</sup> obdūrescēre, obdūrui, ..... *grow hard.*  
 \*Obmūtesco,<sup>10</sup> obmūtescēre, obmütui, —, *grow dumb, become silent.*  
 \*Obstūpesco,<sup>11</sup> obstūpescēre, obstūpai, —, ..... *he amazed.*  
 \*Obsurdesco,<sup>12</sup> obsurdescēre, obsurdui, —, ..... *grow deaf.*  
 \*Pērāresco,<sup>13</sup> pērārescēre, pērārui, —, ..... *grow dry.*  
 \*Percrebresco,<sup>14</sup> percrebrescēre, percrebrui or percrebui, ..... *be divulged, prevail.*  
 \*Pērhorresco,<sup>15</sup> pērhorrescēre, pērhorruui, —, ..... *shudder, dread.*  
 \*Pertimesco,<sup>16</sup> pertimescēre, pertīmui, —, pertimescendus, ..... *fear greatly.*  
 \*Rēcrūdiesco,<sup>17</sup> rēcrūdescēre, rēcrūdui, —, *grow raw, be sore again.*  
 \*Rēlanguesco,<sup>18</sup> rēlanguescēre, rēlangui, —, ..... *be languid.*  
 \*Rēviresco,<sup>19</sup> rēvirescēre, rēvīrui, —, ..... *become green again.*  
 \*Vilesco,<sup>20</sup> vilescēre, vilui, —, ..... *become worthless.*

### § 179. These make -ēvi :

- Adolesco,<sup>21</sup> ādolescēre, ādölēvi, ādultus, ..... *grow up.*  
 Exolesco,<sup>22</sup> exolescēre, exölēvi, exölētus, ..... *grow old.*  
 Mansuesco,<sup>23</sup> mansuescēre, mansuēvi, mansuētus, *grow mild, become tame; make tame.*

To which add :

- Exardesco,<sup>24</sup> exardescēre, exarsi, exarsus, ..... *be inflamed.*  
 \*Rēfrigesco,<sup>25</sup> rēfrigescēre, rēfrīxi, —, ..... *grow cool.*  
 \*Rēvivisco,<sup>26</sup> rēviviscēre, rēvīxi, —, rēvictūrus, *revive, come to life.*

<sup>1</sup> Indölui, Ovid. Trist. Indölescendus, Sidon. — <sup>2</sup> Innötui, Ovid. Am. — <sup>3</sup> Intūmui, Ovid. Fast. — <sup>4</sup> Irraucuērui, Cic. Or. i. 61., where some read irrausērit. — <sup>5</sup> Mācrui, Festus in 'Curionem.' — <sup>6</sup> Mātūrui, Ovid. — <sup>7</sup> Obbrütui, Festus in 'Obrutuit.' — <sup>8</sup> Obcallui, Cels. — <sup>9</sup> Obdūrui, Cic. Tusc. — <sup>10</sup> Obmütui, Plin. Virg. Æn. iv. 279. — <sup>11</sup> Obstūpai, Cic. de Div. — <sup>12</sup> Obsurdui, Cic. Somn. Scip. — <sup>13</sup> Pērārui, Colum. — <sup>14</sup> Percrebrui, Cæs. B. C. Percrebui, Cic. Verr. Tacit. Ann. xii. 6. — <sup>15</sup> Pērhorruui, Ovid. Met. vi. 704. — <sup>16</sup> Pertīmui, Nepos in Alcib. c. 5. Yet Pertimens, Lactant. Pertimescendus, Cic. Fam. i. 9. — <sup>17</sup> Rēcrūdui, Liv. x. 19. — <sup>18</sup> Rēlangui, Ovid. Amor. ii. 9. 27. — <sup>19</sup> Rēvīrui, Auct. ad Heren. iv. 34. Rēvirens occurs in Albinor. ii. A13. — <sup>20</sup> Vilui, Avien. in Arat. 318. Of this Verb the Perfect only is found. See Evileleo. — <sup>21</sup>, <sup>22</sup> See Oleo, Second Conj. List ii. Adölui, in the same sense, Varr. ap. Prisc. Adultus, Cic. Tusc. Exöleo, mentioned by Prisc. does not exist in the classics. — <sup>23</sup> Mansuēvi, Lucan. Mansuētus, Varr. R. R.; but it is generally used as a mere Adjective. — <sup>24</sup> Exarsi, Virg. Æn. viii. 219. Exarsus, Cod. Justin. — <sup>25</sup> Rēfrīxi, Cic. Rēfrīgui, Veget. R. V. — <sup>26</sup> Rēvīxi, Cic. Verr. Yet Revivent, Paulin. Nolan. Revicturus, Senec. Med.

§ 180. The following Inceptives, though having no other verbal form, want the Perfect :

* <i>Ægresco</i> , ..... grow sick.	* <i>Mollesco</i> , ..... grow soft.
* <i>Ditesco</i> , ..... grow rich.	* <i>Pinguesco</i> , ..... grow fat.
* <i>Grandesco</i> , ..... grow big.	* <i>Plumesco</i> , ..... be flegged.
* <i>Gravesco</i> , ..... grow heavy.	* <i>Puërasco</i> , ..... play the child.
* <i>Fátisco</i> , ..... gape, grow faint.	* <i>Rancesco</i> , ..... grow mouldy.
* <i>Incurvesco</i> , ..... bow down.	* <i>Rëpuërasco</i> , ..... become childish.
* <i>Intëgrasco</i> , ..... be renewed.	* <i>Stërilesco</i> , ..... grow barren.
* <i>Jüvenesco</i> , ..... grow young.	* <i>Tënërasco</i> , or
* <i>Läpidesco</i> , ..... petrify.	* <i>Tënëresco</i> , ..... grow tender.
* <i>Mitesco</i> , ..... grow mild.	* <i>Uvesco</i> , ..... grow moist.

§ 181. Twelve Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in -io:

<i>Allicio</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>allïcëre</i> , <i>allexi</i> or <i>allïcui</i> , <i>allectus</i> , <i>allïcïendus</i> , ..... allure.
<i>Aspicio</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>aspicëre</i> , <i>asperi</i> , <i>aspectus</i> , <i>aspïcïendus</i> , ..... behold.
<i>Cäpio</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>cäpëre</i> , <i>cëpi</i> , <i>captus</i> , <i>captûrus</i> , <i>cäpiendus</i> , ..... take.
<i>Cupio</i> , <i>cupëre</i> , <i>cupui</i> or <i>cupii</i> , <i>cupitus</i> , <i>cupiendus</i> , ..... desire.
<i>Fäcio</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>fäcëre</i> , <i>fëci</i> , <i>factus</i> , <i>factum</i> , <i>factu</i> , <i>factûrus</i> , <i>fäciendus</i> , ..... do make.
<i>Födio</i> , <sup>5</sup> <i>födëre</i> , <i>födi</i> , <i>fossus</i> , ..... dig.
* <i>Fügio</i> , <sup>6</sup> <i>fügëre</i> , <i>fügi</i> , —, <i>fügïtûrus</i> , <i>fügiendus</i> , ..... fly.
<i>Jäcio</i> , <sup>7</sup> <i>jäcëre</i> , <i>jëci</i> , <i>jactus</i> , <i>jäciendus</i> , ..... cast.
<i>Pärio</i> , <sup>8</sup> <i>pärëre</i> , <i>pëpëri</i> , <i>partus</i> , <i>pärïtûrus</i> , <i>päriendus</i> , bring forth, pro- cure, get.
<i>Concütio</i> , <sup>9</sup> <i>concütëre</i> , <i>concussi</i> , <i>concussus</i> , <i>concütien-</i> <i>du</i> , ..... shake, move violently.

<sup>1</sup> *Allexi*, Plaut. *Allïcui*, Piso. Hist. ap. Prisc. et Hygin. Poët. Astron. Charis. iii. p. 217., and Diomed. i. p. 364., give *Allïceo*, -es; and the latter adds that *Allïcio* was the ancient form. *Allectûrus* comes from *Allïgo*. *Allïcïendus*, Ovid. Art. Am. *Elïcio*, I draw out, makes *Elïcui*, Liv. v. 15. *Elëxi*, Arnob. *Ilïcio*, I inveigle, *Illexi*, Plaut. Sallust. Cat. c. 59. *Pelïcio*, I entice, deceive, *Pellexi*, Cic. pro Cluent. Terent. *Pelïcui*, Liv. Laodam, ap. Prisc. *Pelïceo*, -es, Charis. — <sup>2</sup> *Asperi*, Cic. passim. *Asperit*, for *aspezërit*, Plaut. *Aspectus*, Tacit. Agric. c. 40. *Aspïcïendus*, Ovid. *Inspëctûrus*, Virg. Æn. ii. 47. *Inspïcïendus*, Ovid. *Perspectu*, Festus. — <sup>3</sup> *Cëpi*, Propert. *Captus*, Cic. Cat. iii. 7. et passim. *Exceptum iri*, Cic. *Captûrus*, Sueton. Vesp. *Cäpiendus*, Terent. *Capsis*, for *cäpt si vis*, Cic. Orat. 45. Quintil. i. 5. *Capsis*, is, it, for *cëpëro*, is, it, Plaut. — <sup>4</sup> *Fëci*, Virg. Ecl. i. 6. et passim. *Factus*, Cic. Verr. vi. 18. et passim. *Factum iri*, Cic. Fam. *Factu*, Id. ibid. vii. 3. *Factûrus*, Liv. xvi. 25. *Fäciendus*, Val. Flac. *Fäct*, for *fac*, Val. Flac. *Fäciem*, for *fäciam*, Cato ap. Quintil. *Färo*, -is, -it. See Irreg. Verba. — <sup>5</sup> *Födi*, Sil. *Fossus*, Plin. 'Ad födiendos, puteos,' Hirt. B. Alex. — <sup>6</sup> *Fügi*, Stat. Theb. Albinov. shortens the first syllable; 'Sic illi vixere, quibus fuit aurea virgo, Quæ bene præcinctos postmodo pulsa fûgit;' unless this can be accounted for by Heterosis. *Fügïtûrus*, Ovid. *Fügiendus*, Cic. Off. 'Mors fûgitur,' Cic. de Leg. — <sup>7</sup> *Jëci*, Liv. i. 12. et passim. *Jactus*, Virg. Ecl. vi. 41. et passim. *Dëjectum*, Hor. *Rëjectum*, Cic. *Jäciendus*, Curt. *Abjëtûrus*, Cic. *Adjïcïendus*, Quintil. — <sup>8</sup> *Pëpëri*, Tibull. *Pärii*, for *pëpëri*, Cato, R. R. *Päribit*, for *päriet*, Pompon. ap. Non. *Pärire*, for *pärëre*, Enn. ap. Varr. L. L. *Partus*, Virg. Æn. vi. 89. *Partus* is used like the Participle of a Deponent in Colum., having brought forth. *Pärïtûrus*, Cic. Orat. *Päriendus*, Cic. Fam. — <sup>9</sup> See *Quatio*, List xxviii. *Concussi*, Juv. Sat. x. 328. *Concussus*, Virg. Georg. i. 159. *Concütïendus*, Cels. *Discussûrus*, Liv. *Discütïendus*, Cels. *Dëcussu*, Plin.

Rāpio,<sup>1</sup> rāpēre, rāpui, raptus, raptūrus, rāpiendus, ..... *snatch*.  
 \*Sāpio,<sup>2</sup> sāpēre, sāpīvi or sāpii, —, ..... *savour, be wise*.

### § 182. To which add four Deponents in -ior :

Grādior,<sup>3</sup> grādēris or grādēre, [grādi,] gressus, ... *go, walk, advance*.  
 Mōrior,<sup>4</sup> mōrēris or mōrēre, mōri or mōriri, mortuus,  
 mōrītūrus, ..... *die*.  
 Orior,<sup>5</sup> ōrēris or ōrēre, ōriri, ortus, ōrītūrus, ōriundus, *rise, spring up*.  
 Pātior,<sup>6</sup> pātēris or pātēre, pāti, passus, passūrus, pāti-  
 endus, ..... *suffer, endure*.

### § 183. The following have neither the Perfect nor the Perfect Participle Passive :

*Ambigo, ..... <i>doubt</i> .	*Glisco, <sup>9</sup> ..... <i>grow, increase</i> .
*Clango, <sup>7</sup> ..... <i>sound as a trumpet</i> .	*Gruo, <sup>10</sup> ..... <i>crunk like a crane</i> .
*Claudo, ..... <i>be lame</i> .	*Nexo, <sup>11</sup> ..... <i>bind, tie</i> .
*Cluo, <sup>8</sup> ..... <i>be famous</i> .	*Sātāgo, ..... <i>be busily employed</i> .

*Sallo*,<sup>12</sup> I reason with salt, makes *salsus, salsūrus*; but has no Perfect.

### § 184. The Perfects of the following are doubtful :

Frendo,<sup>13</sup> frendēre, frendi, fressus or frēsus, .. *gnash the teeth, break, bruise*.

<sup>1</sup> Rāpui, Phædr. *Raptus*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 382. et passim. *Raptūrus*, Stat. *Theb.* *Rāpiendus*, Ovid. *Direptum*, Sil. *Ereptum*, Terent. *Præreptum*, Plaut. — <sup>2</sup> Sāpīvi, Næv. ap. Prisc. *Sāpiati*, Mart. *Sāpisset*, Plaut. *Rud.* iv. l. 8, where Priscian, vii. p. 328. ed. Krehl. reads *sāpisset*; but two of Krehl's Mss. of Priscian have *sāpisset*, and another *sāpivisset*. The editio princeps of Plautus in the British Museum, the Mediol. an. 1490., and the edd. of Carpenter, Lucas Olchinnensis, and Lambinus, exhibit *sāpisset*; but the Burney Ms., No. 228., in the British Museum, all the Palatine Mss. and the edd. since Lambinus, have *sāpisset*. The Mss. of Bohte seem to have the same, since he does not mention a various reading. *Rēsīpio*, I savour of, makes *īvi*, *ii*, or *ui*: *Rēsīpīvi*, Sueton. *Rēsīpui*, Cic. *Rēsīpisti*, Plaut. *Rēsīpisse*, Terent. *Consīpui* and *Dēsīpui*, the Perfects of *Consīpio*, I am perfectly in my senses, and *Dēsīpio*, I am foolish, occur only in grammars and dictionaries. — <sup>3</sup> The infinitive does not occur except in the Compounds. *Gressus*, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 633. The Compounds make *grēdior*: *Prōgrēdior*, I advance, *prōgrēdēris* or *prōgrēdēre*, *prōgrēdi*, *prōgressus*, *prōgressūrus*, &c. — <sup>4</sup> Mōrīmur, Enn. ap. Prisc. *Mōri*, Tibull. *Mōriri*, Ovid. *Met.* *Mortuus*, Cic. passim. *Mōrītūrus*, Tacit. *Hist.* iii. 10. — <sup>5</sup> *Oriri*, Lucr. Cic. Quintil. *Ortus*, Hor. *Orūrus*, ibid. *Oriundus*, *descendet*, Liv. i. 49. et passim. — <sup>6</sup> *Passus*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 203. et passim. *Passūrus*, Ovid. *Pātiendus*, Id. *Trist.* — <sup>7</sup> Some give this verb the Perfect *Clanzi*, others *Clangui*; but we have not any authority for either. — <sup>8</sup> *Clui*, Prudent. *Cluērent*, Auson. Prof. — <sup>9</sup> *Glisco* seems to be an Inceptive. *Gliscrētus*, pass. Sempron. ap. Non. — <sup>10</sup> This Verb occurs in the *Carmen* de Philom. v. 23, and in Paul. ex Festo. — <sup>11</sup> Neither *Nexo*, *is*, nor *Nexo*, *as*, has a Perfect. See *Necto*, List. xiii. — <sup>12</sup> *Sallērent*, Sallust. ap. Prisc. *Sallēre*, Lucil. *Sallunt*, Id. ap. Diomed. *Salsus*, salted. Colum. *Salsūrus*, Mummius ap. Prisc. See *Sallia*, Fourth Conj. List. iv. — <sup>13</sup> *Frendi* and *Frendui* are given in some grammars and dictionaries. See *Frendeo*, Second Conj. List. ix.



<i>Friġo</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>frigġere</i> , <i>frixi</i> , <i>frictas</i> or <i>frixus</i> , .....	<i>fry</i> , <i>parch</i> .
* <i>Fūro</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>fūrġere</i> , <i>fūrui</i> , —, .....	<i>be mad</i> , <i>rage</i> .
<i>Lingo</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>lingġere</i> , <i>linxi</i> , <i>linctus</i> , <i>lingendus</i> , .....	<i>lick</i> .
<i>Pando</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>pandġere</i> , <i>pandi</i> , <i>passus</i> or <i>pansus</i> , .....	<i>open</i> .
<i>Quātio</i> , <sup>5</sup> <i>quātġere</i> , <i>quassi</i> , <i>quassus</i> , .....	<i>shake</i> , <i>agitate</i> .
* <i>Viso</i> , <sup>6</sup> <i>visġere</i> , <i>visi</i> , —, .....	<i>go see</i> , <i>visit</i> .

## § 185. DEPONENTS.

<i>Amplector</i> , <sup>7</sup> <i>amplectġeris</i> or <i>amplectġere</i> , <i>amplecti</i> , <i>am-</i> <i>plexus</i> , <i>amplectendus</i> , .....	<i>embrace</i> , <i>encircle</i> .
<i>Apiscor</i> , <sup>8</sup> <i>āpiscġeris</i> or <i>āpiscġere</i> , <i>āpisci</i> , <i>aptus</i> , .....	<i>get</i> .
<i>Commīniscor</i> , <sup>9</sup> <i>commīniscġeris</i> or <i>commīniscġere</i> , <i>com-</i> <i>mīnisci</i> , <i>commentus</i> , .....	<i>devise</i> , <i>invent</i> .
<i>Complector</i> , <sup>10</sup> <i>complectġeris</i> or <i>complectġere</i> , <i>complecti</i> , <i>complexus</i> , .....	<i>embrace</i> , <i>compass</i> , <i>comprehend</i> .
* <i>Dġfġtiscor</i> , <sup>11</sup> <i>dġfġtiscġeris</i> or <i>dġfġtiscġere</i> , <i>dġfġtisci</i> , —, ...	<i>be weary</i> .
<i>Experġiscor</i> , <sup>12</sup> <i>experġiscġeris</i> or <i>experġiscġere</i> , <i>exper-</i> <i>gisci</i> , <i>experrectus</i> , .....	<i>awake</i> , <i>rise</i> .
<i>Fruor</i> , <sup>13</sup> <i>fruġeris</i> or <i>fruġere</i> , <i>frui</i> , <i>fructus</i> or <i>fructus</i> , <i>fructū-</i> <i>rus</i> , <i>fruendus</i> , .....	<i>enjoy</i> , <i>reap the fruits of</i> .

<sup>1</sup> *Frixi*, Diomed. *Frictus*, Cels. *Frixus*, Cels. Sidon. — <sup>2</sup> *Fūrui*, Serv. ad *Æn.* i. 45. *Fūrūrunt*, Sedul. i. 196., where some read *ferūrunt*; *Fūrui*, Plin. xxxiii. 53. edd. Harduin. Bipont. Miller. Franz. *Fuġeris* in the edd. before Harduin. *Fūrui*, Brotier.; but he does not say on what authority. *Fūro*, *fūrġis*, and all the persons of the Futures and Imperative are nowhere to be found. We meet with *Fūrġmus* and *fūrġant* in Senec. Ep. 95. *Fūrġo*, *is*, Sidon. Carm. xxii. 94. — <sup>3</sup> *Linzi*, given in grammars and dictionaries, does not occur in the classics now extant. Yet we have *Linctus*, Plin. xxxv. 15. and *Lingendus*, xxi. 9. — <sup>4</sup> *Pandi*, Prisc. x. p. 891.; but he cites no authority. *Passus*, Ovid. Virg. *Æn.* i. 483. et passim. *Pansus*, Vitruv. The Compounds also want their Perfects. *Dispando*, I spread abroad, has only *Dispansus*, Plin. *Expando*, I spread out, *Expansus*, Tacit. Hist. Cæcil. ap. Non. *Expansus*, Plin. *Oppando*, I spread over against, *Oppassus*, Tertull. Apol. *Oppansus*, Id. *Prōpando* does not occur; yet *Prōpassus*, Apul. Florid. *Prōpansus*, Id. — <sup>5</sup> *Quassi* is found only in grammars and dictionaries. *Quassus*, Ovid. *Dġcussu*, Plin. See *Concūtio*, List. xxv. — <sup>6</sup> The Perfects *Visi*, *Invisi*, *Rġvisi*, are found only in grammars and dictionaries.

<sup>7</sup> *Amplecto*, *is*, Prisc. and Diomed. *Amplexġtur*, *amplecti*, pass. Prisc. viii. p. 791. *Amplector*, *āris*, Prisc. ibid. *Amplexus*, having embraced, Ovid. *Amplexus*, pass. Petron. ap. Prisc. *Amplectendus*, Manil., where some Mss. have *amplectandus*. — <sup>8</sup> *Apiscuntur*, pass. C. Fannius ap. Prisc. viii. p. 791. *Aptus*, Plaut. '*Apiscendi*, favoris facultas,' Tacit. Ann. i. 31. The compounds make *-eptus*. — <sup>9</sup> *Commīniscġmus*, act. Apul. Met. *Commentus*, having devised, Cic. Nat. Deor. *Commentus*, pass. feigned, fictitious, Ovid. — <sup>10</sup> *Complecto*, act. Pompon. ap. Non. *Complecti*, pass. Cic. ap. Prisc. *Complexus*, having embraced, Stat. Sylv. *Complexus*, enfolded, interwoven, Lucr. and Plaut. Amph. — <sup>11</sup> *Dġfġtiscens*, Plin. as if from *Dġfġtiscor*. *Dġfġscus* is a mere adjective. The simple *Fġtiscor* occurs in Lucr. v. 309. *Fġtisco*, I faint, am exhausted, Val. Flac. and Stat. Sylv. passim. — <sup>12</sup> *Experrectus* *esse*, Cic. Att. — <sup>13</sup> *Fruġtus*, Senec. Epist. *Fructus*, Lucr. iii. 953. *Perfructus*, Cic. Fragm. ap. Prisc. x. p. 883. *Fruġtġrus*, Cic. Tusc. *Fruġtġrum*, Apul. Apol. where some read *Fructġrum*. See Voss. Anal. iii. 32. *Fruendus*, Ovid.

Fungor,<sup>1</sup> fungēris or fungēre, fungi, functus, functūrus, *discharge, perform a duty.*

\*Irascor,<sup>2</sup> irascēris or irascēre, irasci, —, ..... *be angry.*  
Labor,<sup>3</sup> labēris or labēre, labi, lapsus, lapsūrus, *glide, slip, err, fall gently, decay.*

Lōqnor,<sup>4</sup> lōquēris or lōquēre, lōqui, lōcūtus, lōcūtūrus, lōquendus, ..... *speak.*

Nanciscor,<sup>5</sup> nanciscēris or nanciscēre, nancisci, nactus, *find by chance, find, obtain.*

Nascor,<sup>6</sup> nascēris or nascēre, nasci, nātus, nātu, nascitūrus, ..... *be born, spring up.*

Nitor,<sup>7</sup> nitēris or nitēre, nīti, nixus or nīsus, nīsurus, *strive, endeavour, be in labour.*

Obliviscor,<sup>8</sup> obliviscēris or obliviscēre, oblivisci, oblitus, obliviscendus, ..... *forget.*

Pāciscor,<sup>9</sup> pāciscēris or pāciscere, pācisci, pactus, pāciscendus, ..... *bargain.*

Prōficiſcor,<sup>10</sup> prōficiſceris or prōficiſcēre, prōficiſci, prōfectus, prōfectūrus, ..... *set out on a journey, go.*

Quēror,<sup>11</sup> quērēris or quērēre, quēri, questus, questum, questūrus, quērendus, ..... *lament, bewail.*

\*Rēmīniscor,<sup>12</sup> rēmīniscēris or rēmīniscēre, rēmīnisci, —, *call to mind, recollect.*

\*Ringor, ringēris or ringēre, ringi, —, .... *grin, show the teeth.*  
Sēquor,<sup>13</sup> sēquēris or sēquēre, sēqui, sēcutus, sēcutūrus, sēquendus, ..... *follow.*

<sup>1</sup>Fungi, pass. Sex. Pedius ap. Paul. Dig. *Functus*, Hor. *Functūrus*, Apul. Met. 'Ad suum munus fungendum.' Cic. Tusc. iii. 7. — <sup>2</sup>Irascēre, act. for *irasci*, Pompon. *Irātus* is an adjective. — <sup>3</sup>Lapsus, Val. Flac. Some Mss. of Virgil have *lapsus*, Georg. iii. 448. and *elapsus*, ii. 305. *Lapsūrus*, Ovid. — <sup>4</sup>Lōquēre, lōquia, act. Petron. Frag. Trag. *Lōcūtus*, Cic. *Lōcūtūrus*, Ovid. *Lōquendus*, Mart. v. 26. — <sup>5</sup>Nactus, Cic. in Orat. et passim. *Nactus*, optt. codd. Liv. xiii. 2. and Plaut. — <sup>6</sup>Nātus, Terent. Andr. et passim. *Nātu*, Plin. vi. 33. *Nascitūrus*, Pallad. Jun. *Nascēre*, for *nasci*, Cato R. R.; but the reading is doubtful. — <sup>7</sup>Nīsus, Ovid. passim. *Nīsus*, Cic. pro Cluent. c. 57. Vitruv. i. 2. In all the Mss. of Livy, *Nīsus* is more frequent than *Nīxus*. Some distinguish them from each other, thus: *Nīxus* CORPORE, *nīsus* ANIMO; but this distinction does not appear from the classics. *Nīsurus*, Cæs. B. C. ii. 37. *Annitor*, I lean upon, makes *Annixus*, Virg. Æn. i. 148. et passim.; *Annixus*, Liv. v. 25. *Connitor*, I struggle, bring forth, *Connixus*, Liv. i. 33. et passim.; *Connixus*, Val. Flac. iii. 193. *Enitor*, I struggle hard, bring forth, *Enixus*, Liv. vi. 24. et passim. *Enixus*, Cic. an Q. Fr. iii. 9. Diomed. i. p. 371. confines *Enixus* to the labour of bringing forth, and takes *Enixus* in a sense of general exertion; but this distinction is not favoured by Mss. authority. *Innitor*, I lean upon, *Innixus*, Cæs. B. G. ii. 27. et passim.; *Innixus*, Tacit. *Obnitor*, I struggle against, *Obnixus*, Virg. ix. 724. et passim. *Obnixus*, Liv. xxxiv. 46. *Rēnitor*, I resist, has no Perfect Participle Passive. *Subnitor* is not found in the classics; yet *Subnixus*, Virg. Æn. i. 510. et passim. — <sup>8</sup>Oblītus, Cic. *Obliviſcendus*, Hor. — <sup>9</sup>Pācisco, Næv. ap. Non. *Pactus sum*, Cic. Servius on Virg. Æn. xi. 133. gives this Verb another Perfect, *Pēpigi*. See *Pango* and *Pāgo*, Lists. xiii. xvi. *Pāciscendus*, Ammian. xxi. 12. — <sup>10</sup>Prōficiſcio, Plaut. Mil. iv. 8. 19. *Prōfectus sum*, Cic. passim. *Prōfectūrus*, Justin. — <sup>11</sup>Questus sum, Liv. *Questum*, Nepos in Chabr. Plaut. *Questūrus*, Stat. Theb. *Quērendus*, Ovid. Met. — <sup>12</sup>Rēmīnisco, Rufus ap. Auson. Epigr. — <sup>13</sup>Sēcutus sum, Virg. Ecl. x. 23. et passim. *Sēcutūrus*, Lucan. *Sēquendus*, Ovid. *Sēquo*, Prisc. viii. p. 799.

Tuor,<sup>1</sup> tuëris or tuëre, —, tütus, tuendus, ..... *see, protect.*  
 Ulciscor,<sup>2</sup> ulciscëris or ulciscëre, ulcisci, ultus, ultum,  
 ulciscendus, ..... *avenge, punish.*  
 Utor,<sup>3</sup> ütëris or ütëre, üti, üsus, üsürus, ütendus, ..... *use.*  
 \*Vescor,<sup>4</sup> vescëris or vescëre, vesci, —, vescendus, .... *feed upon.*

## IMPERSONALS.

Ningit,<sup>5</sup> ningëre, ninxit, ..... *it snows.*  
 Vespërascit,<sup>6</sup> vespërascëre, —, ..... *it draws towards evening.*

<sup>1</sup> See *Tuor*, Second Conj. p. 140. — <sup>2</sup> *Ultus sum*, Propert. *Ultum*, Sallust. Jug. c. 71. Tacit. Ann. iv. 73. *Ulciscendus*, Cic. Fam. xii. 23. *Ulciscërem*, Enn. ap. Non. *Ulcisci*, pass. Sallust. Jug. c. 34. Hence *Ultus*, avenged, punished, Liv. ii. 17. — <sup>3</sup> *Utor*, pass. Novius ap. Gell. *Uto*, is, Cato R. R. *Usus sum*, Nepos Att. *Usürus*, Cic. Verr. *Utendus*, Cic. Verr. iv. 18. — <sup>4</sup> *Vescet*, Tertul. de Jejun. c. 5., quoting the Old Test. Num. xi. 4., where the Vulgate has, 'Quis dabit nobis ad vescendum carnes?' *Vescendus*, Plin. xx. 5. — <sup>5</sup> *Ningitur*, pass. impera. Apul. Florid. i. 2. 2. *Ningunt*, Lucr. ii. 627., where some read *pingunt*. *Ninzërit*, Accius ap. Prisc. *Ningit* is approved of by Pierius on Virg. Georg. iii. 367.; and by Prisc. ibid. *Ningit* by Caper de Verb. Dub. p. 2249. — <sup>6</sup> *Vespërascit* has no Perfect. *Vespërascens* occurs in Nepos Pelop. c. 2., and in Tacit. Ann. xvi. 34.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

§ 186. Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation end in *-io*, and change *-io* into *-is* long in the Second Person Present; into *-ivi* long in the Perfect; into *-ire* long in the Infinitive, and into *-itus* long in the Perfect Participle Passive; as,

*Audio*,<sup>1</sup> *audire*, *audivi* or *audii*, *auditus*, *auditum*, *auditu*,  
*audītūrus*, *audiendus*, ..... *hear*.—So,

\**Cio*,<sup>2</sup> *cīvi*, ..... *move, excite*.  
*Condio*,<sup>3</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, ..... *season*.  
*Custodio*,<sup>4</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, D. .... *keep*.  
*\*Dormio*,<sup>5</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, M. R. D. .... *sleep*.  
*Erūdio*,<sup>6</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, D. .... *instruct*.  
*Esurio*, *īvi*, ..... *to desire, to eat*.  
*Expēdio*,<sup>7</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, ..... *disentangle*.  
*Finio*,<sup>8</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, R. D. .... *finish*.  
*\*Gestio*,<sup>9</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, ..... *leap, desire*.  
*Impēdio*,<sup>10</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, D. .... *entangle*.

\**Insānio*,<sup>11</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, ..... *be mad*.  
*Irrētio*,<sup>12</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, ..... *ensnare*.  
*Lēnio*,<sup>13</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, D. .... *mitigate*.  
*Mollio*,<sup>14</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, D. .... *soften*.  
*\*Mūgio*,<sup>15</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, ..... *believe*.  
*Mūnio*,<sup>16</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, R. D. .... *fortify*.  
*Mūtio*,<sup>17</sup> *īvi*, ..... *mutter*.  
*Nūtrio*,<sup>18</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, D. .... *nourish*.  
*Partio*,<sup>19</sup> *īvi* or *ii*, R. .... *divide*.  
*Pōlio*,<sup>20</sup> *īvi*, D. .... *polish*.

<sup>1</sup> *Audibam*, Ovid. *Audibis*, Plaut. Many of the Verbs of this Conj. making *-ivi*, have also *-ii* in the Perfect. *Audii*, Virg. Ecl. vi. 83. *Auditum*, Hor. *Auditu*, Cæs. B. Afr. *Auditurus*, Lucan. *Audiendus*, Cæs. B. G. — <sup>2</sup> *Civi*, Tacit. Ann. xv. 33. & Plaut. The Participle *Citus* exists only in the Compounds, *Concitus*, summoned, Val. Flac. excited, Lucan. v. 597. *Excitus*, called out, Virg. Æn. x. 38. *Exciturus*, Liv. *Excibat*, Liv. xxxii. 13. See *Cleo*, Second Conj. — <sup>3</sup> *Condivi*, Cic. pro Cluent. Colum. *Condii*, Varr. R. R. *Conditus*, Cic. de Orat. iii. 25. — <sup>4</sup> *Custodibant*, Catull. *Custodibitur*, Plaut. *Custodivi*, Plin. *Custodii*, Sueton. *Custodisset*, Auson. Epist. *Custoditus*, Ovid. *Custodiendus*, Cæs. B. G. — <sup>5</sup> *Dormibo*, Plaut. *Dormivi*, Ovid. *Dormii*, Cic. Att. *Dormitum*, Hor. i. Sat. 5. 48. *Dormiturus*, Cels. *Dormiendus*, Catull. — <sup>6</sup> *Erūdivi*, Cic. Tusc. i. 26. *Erūdii*, Val. Flac. *Erūditus*, Cic. passim. *Erūdiendus*, Ovid. — <sup>7</sup> *Expēdibo*, Plaut. *Expēdivi*, Liv. ix. 9. *Expēdii*, Val. Flac. *Expēdisset*, Cic. *Expēditus*, Cic. Mil. c. 10. 'Ad expēdiendas pecunias,' Sueton. Jul. — <sup>8</sup> *Fīnivi*, Ovid. Met. Finii, Id. *Finitus*, Ovid. Trist. *Finiturus*, Id. Art. Am. *Finiendus*, Tertull. Scorp. — <sup>9</sup> *Gestibant*, Plaut. *Gestivi*, Gell. *Gestierunt*, Vell. — <sup>10</sup> *Impēdivi*, Cic. *Impēdii*, Hor. i. Sat. 6. 27. Ovid. Met. *Impēditus*, Cic. pro Cæl. et passim. *Impēdiendus*, Ovid. Met. — <sup>11</sup> *Insānivi*, Plaut. *Insānist*, Cic. Or. c. 67. — <sup>12</sup> *Irrēdivi*, Colum. *Irrētisses*, Cic. Catil. i. 6. *Irrētitus*, Cic. Fin. v. 18. et passim. — <sup>13</sup> *Lēnibam*, *Lēnibo*, Virg. Æn. v. 527. vi. 468. Propert. *Lēnivi*, Cic. Att. vi. 2. *Lēnii*, Id. Phil. ii. 45. *Lēnitus*, Liv. i. 16. *Lēniendus*, Cels. *Lēniendus*, Sallust. Cat. c. 48. — <sup>14</sup> *Mollivi*, Vell. *Mollii*, Ovid. Met. *Mollitus*, Sil. *Molliendus*, Cic. — <sup>15</sup> *Mūgivi*, Propert. *Mūgissent*, Liv. i. 7. — <sup>16</sup> *Mūnio*, anciently. *Mūnivi*, Cic. Cat. i. 4. *Mūnū*, Nep. Hannib. c. 3. Liv. ix. 29. et passim. *Mūnitus*, Cic. passim. *Mūnīturus*, Hirt. *Mūniendus*, Cic. *Mūnibis*, Veget. de R. V. — <sup>17</sup> *Mūtiv*, Plaut. *Mūtitus*, Terent. — <sup>18</sup> *Nūtribam*, Virg. Æn. vii. 484. *Nūtribo*, Rhemm. *Nūtrimus*, for *Nūtrivimus*. *Nūtritor*, for *nūtrito*, Virg. Georg. ii. 425. *Nūtrivi*, Senec. *Nūtrii*, Pers. Sat. *Nūtrissent*, Ovid. *Nūtritrus*, Hor. *Nūtriendus*, Cels. — <sup>19</sup> *Partior*, depon. Virg. Æn. i. 198. et passim. *Partivi*, Sallust. Jug. c. 47. *Partisses*, Lucil. *Partitus*, Cic. Orat. iii. 30. *Partiturus*, Cæs. B. Civ. i. 4. — <sup>20</sup> *Pōtivi*, Phædr. *Pōtitus*, Cic. passim. *Pōtiendus*, Vitruv. *Pōtibant*, Virg. Æn. viii. 435.

*Pānio*,<sup>1</sup> īvi or ii, D. .... *punish*.  
*Rēdmio*,<sup>2</sup> īvi, .... *crown, encircle*.  
*Scio*,<sup>3</sup> scivi, U. R. .... *know*.  
*\*Servio*,<sup>4</sup> īvi or ii, M. .... *serve, obey*.

*Sōpio*,<sup>5</sup> īvi or ii, .... *lull asleep*.  
*Stāblio*,<sup>6</sup> īvi or ii, .... *establish*.  
*Tinnio*,<sup>7</sup> īvi or ii, R. .... *tinkle*.  
*Vestio*,<sup>8</sup> īvi or ii, .... *clothe*.

§ 187. The following are irregular either in the Perfect, or Perfect Participle Passive, or in both:

*Amīcio*,<sup>9</sup> amīcīre, amīxi or amīcui, amīctus, amīciendus, .... *clothe*.  
*Apērio*,<sup>10</sup> apērire, apēriui, apertus, apertūrus, apēriendus, .... *open*.  
*Bullio*,<sup>11</sup> bullire, bullii, bullitus, .... *boil, bubble*.  
*Compērio*,<sup>12</sup> compērire, compēri, compertus, .... *find out*.  
*Farcio*,<sup>13</sup> farcīre, farsī, farctus, .... *cram*.  
*Fastidio*,<sup>14</sup> fastidīre, fastidii, fastiditus, fastidiendus, .... *disdain*.  
*Falcio*,<sup>15</sup> fulcīre, fulsi, fultus, fulciendus, .... *prop*.  
*\*Glūtio*,<sup>16</sup> glūtīre, glūtii, —, .... *swallow*.  
*\*Grunnio*,<sup>17</sup> grunīre, grunnii, —, .... *grunt*.  
*Haurio*,<sup>18</sup> haurire, hausi, rarely haurii, haustus, haustūrus or hausūrus, hauriendus, .... *draw, drink up, absorb*.  
*\*Lascivio*,<sup>19</sup> lascivire, lascivii, —, .... *be wanton, frisk*.

<sup>1</sup> *Pānivi*, Apul. Met. *Pānii*, Sueton. Jul. c. 74. *Pūnisse*, Tib. c. 61. *Pūnitus*, punished, Cic. Inv. *Pūnitus*, having punished, Cic. Mil. *Pūniendus*, Cic. *Pāniat*, anciently, Lucr. See *Mānio* in this List. — <sup>2</sup> *Rēdmīviui*, Sueton, where Baumgarten-Crusius reads *rēdmīui*. *Rēdmītus*, Tibull. passim. *Rēdmībat*, Virg. *Æn.* x. 538. — <sup>3</sup> *Scīvi*, Terent. 'Pro scivisse, rectius dicimus scisse.' Facciolat. *Scisse*, Liv. Ovid. Fast. *Scisti*, Ovid. *Scissent*, Cic. Att. The Participle *Scītus* is used in an active signification, *knowing, shrewd*. *Scītūrus*, Liv. iii. Senec. Epist. 6. *Scītā facile*, Terent. — <sup>4</sup> *Servīvi*, Plaut. 21. *Servīi*, Vell. *Servissat*, Cic. *Servistia*, Liv. *Servitum*, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 786. *Servitum est*, impera. Cic. Or. *Servibas*, Plaut. *Servibo*, Merc. — <sup>5</sup> *Sōpīvi*, Liv. *Sōpiit*, Vell. *Sōpiērat*, Tibull. *Sōpiāsis*, Ovid. Met. *Sōpitus*, Virg. *Æn.* x. 642. et passim. — <sup>6</sup> *Stābīlīvi*, Plin. *Stābīlisset*, Gell. *Stābīlītus*, Lucr. — <sup>7</sup> *Tinnīvi*, Tinnii, Plant. *Tinnītūrus*, Sueton. — <sup>8</sup> *Vestīvi*, Cic. de Nat. Deor. *Vestīerint*, Colum. *Vestītus*, Propert. passim. — <sup>9</sup> *Amīcui*, Brut. ap. Diomed. *Amizi*, Varr. ibid. Some add *Amīcīvi*, but without authority. *Amictus*, Hor. *Amīciendus*, Fronton. ad M. Aurel. — <sup>10</sup> *Apēribo*, Plaut. *Apēriui*, Liv. passim. Some think the Perfect *Apērii* might also be used, reading in Cic. Att. vii. 3. *Apēriērimus*, where the true lection is *Apēriērimus*. *Apertus*, Cic. passim. *Apertūrus*, Liv. *Apēriendus*, Sallust. Cat. c. 58. — <sup>11</sup> *Bullii*, Apic. *Bullitus*, Veget. Veter. — <sup>12</sup> *Compēri*, Cic. passim. *Compertus*, Cic. passim. *Compērior*, depon. *I know assuredly*, Sall. Jug. c. 49. Hence *Compertus est*, for *compērit*, Tertull. — <sup>13</sup> *Farsī*, Senec. Epist. *Farctus*, Cic. passim. 'Ita in melioribus libris exaratum est.' Voss. Anal. iii. 33. Some write *Fartus*. The Oxford Annotators on Lily quote *Farcītus* from Cicero; others quote it from Varro; but this appears to be a mistake. *Farsus*, Hygin. Fab. — <sup>14</sup> *Fastidii*, Mart. *Fastidīvi* is found only in grammars and dictionaries. *Fastiditus*, Ovid. Trist. *Fastidiendus*, Plin. — <sup>15</sup> *Fulsi*, Cic. *Fulzi*, Prisc. *Fulcīvi*, Vet. Inscript. sub Honor. et Theodos. ap. Murator. p. 466. *Fultus*, Virg. Ecl. vi. 53. *Fulcītus*, Cael. Aurel. Tard. *Fulciendus*, Cels. — <sup>16</sup> *Glūtisse*, Juv. Sat. iv. 28. *Glūtīvi*, found in grammars and dictionaries, does not occur in the classics. 'Mors glūtīta,' Tertull. adv. Marc. — <sup>17</sup> *Gruanisse*, Juv. *Grunnīvi* is found only in grammars and dictionaries. — <sup>18</sup> *Hausi*, Virg. *Æn.* i. 742. *Haurii*, Varr. ap. Prisc. *Haustus*, Val. Flac. et passim. *Hausei*, Solin. *Haurītus*, Apul. Met. *Hauritum*, ibid. *Haurītu*, ibid. *Haustūrus*, Cic. *Hausūrus*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 384. *Haurītūrus*, Juvenc. *Hauriendus*, Colum. *Hauribant*, Lucr. — <sup>19</sup> *Lascivisset*, Gell.

- \**Līgūrio*,<sup>1</sup> *līgūrire*, *līgūrii*, —, ..... *feed delicately*.  
 \**Obēdio*,<sup>2</sup> *obēdire*, *obēdii*, —, *obēditūrus*, ..... *obey*.  
*Opērio*,<sup>3</sup> *opērire*, *opērii*, *opertus*, *opēriendus*, ..... *cover, hide*.  
 \**Prōsilio*,<sup>4</sup> *prōsilire*, *prōsilui* or *prōsilivi*, —, ..... *sally forth*.  
*Rēperio*,<sup>5</sup> *rēperire*, *rēperi*, *rēpertus*, *rēpertūrus*, D. .... *find*.  
 \**Sævio*,<sup>6</sup> *sævire*, *sævii*, —, *sævītūrus*, ..... *rage*.  
 \**Sālio*,<sup>7</sup> *sālire*, *sālui* or *sālīi*, —, ..... *leap*.  
*Sancio*,<sup>8</sup> *sancire*, *sanxi* or *sancii*, *sancītus* or *sanctus*,  
*sanciendus*, ..... *establish, ratify*.  
*Sarcio*,<sup>9</sup> *sartus*, *sarci*, *sarcire*, ..... *patch, repair*.  
*Sarrio*,<sup>10</sup> *sarrire*, *sarrivi* or *sarrui*, *sarrītus*, *sarriendus*, ... *weed with a*  
*hook, hoe*.  
*Sentio*,<sup>11</sup> *sentire*, *sensi*, *sensus*, *sensūrus*, ..... *feel, perceive*.  
*Sēpēlio*,<sup>12</sup> *sēpēlire*, *sēpēlivi*, *sēpēlii* or *sēpēli*, *sēpultus*,  
*sēpultūrus*, *sēpēliendus*, ..... *bury, inter*.  
*Sēpio*,<sup>13</sup> *sēpire*, *sepi*, *septus*, ..... *hedge in, enclose*.  
 \**Sītio*,<sup>14</sup> *sītire*, *sītīi*, —, ..... *thirst, thirst after*.

<sup>1</sup> *Līgūrii*, Hor. *Obtīgūrii*, Cic. Catil. ii. 5. *Līgūrīvi*, given in grammars and dictionaries, does not exist. — <sup>2</sup> *Obēdībo*, Afran. ap. Non. *Obēdisse*, Apul. Florid. *Obedīvi* is not found in the classics. *Obēditūrus*, Plin. — <sup>3</sup> *Opērii*, Terent. *Operatus*, Virg. Georg. i. 465. et passim. *Opēriendus*, Cels. — <sup>4</sup> *Prōsilui*, Val. Flac. Lucan. *Prōsilivi*, Curt. vii. 4., and so some read in Liv. l. c.; but the Perfect in *ui* seems more correct. See *Sālio* in this List. *Transilio*, I leap over, makes *Transilui*, Liv. i. 7. *Transilivi*, Plin. et Plaut. or *Transilii*, Hirt. *Transiliendus*, Ovid. — <sup>5</sup> *Rēperi*, Ovid. Met. et passim. When the first syllable of this Perfect is made long, some double the P. *Rēpertus*, Virg. Æn. vi. 343. *Rēpertūrus*, Curt. *Rēperiendus*, Cic. *Rēperībo*, Cæcil. et Pompon. ap. Non. — <sup>6</sup> *Sævii*, Gell. *Sævī*, for *Sævīi*, Ovid. Met. *Sævītum est* impers. *cruelty was exercised*, Liv. i. 1. Curt. viii. 10. 6. *Sævītūrus*, Liv. *Sævībat*, Lucr. — <sup>7</sup> *Sālui*, Virg. Georg. ii. 384. Ovid. *Sālīi*, Claud. See Heins on Ovid. *Sālīvi*, found in grammars and dictionaries, does not exist in the classics. So *Dēlīlio*, I dismount, I alight, *dēsīlui*, Virg. Æn. xi. 501. *dēsīlii*, Cæs. B. G. iv. 12. *Exsilio*, I spring forth, *exsīlui*, Plaut. *exsīlii*, Sil. *Subsilio*, I spring up, *subsīlui*, Propert. iv. 8. 46. *subsīlii*, Senec. Epist. 13. Three have *ui* only: *Assilio*, I leap upon, *assīlui*, Val. Flac. i. 258. *Dissilio*, I fly asunder, I burst, *dissīlui*, Virg. Æn. iii. 415. *Insilio*, I leap upon, *insīlui*, Ovid. Met. iii. 367. & Plaut. See *Prosilio*. — <sup>8</sup> *Sanxi*, Cic. Tusc. i. 27. Liv. xxiv. 8. Propert. *Sancii*, Pompon. ap. Diomed. *Sancīvi* is quoted by Nizolius from Cic. pro Planc., where no such form is to be found; and by others from Liv. x. 9., where the Mss. and best edd. have *sanxi*. *Sancītus*, Cic. de Harusp. Resp. *Sanctus*, Liv. x. 9. & Quintil. *Sanciendus*, Liv. viii. 7. — <sup>9</sup> *Sarci*, Cato R. R. *Sartus*, Juvenal. iii. 254. et passim. 'Sarcienda infamia,' &c. Cæs. B. C. iii. 74. — <sup>10</sup> *Sarrīvi*, Colum. *Sarrui*, Cato R. R. *Sarrīi*, given in some dictionaries, does not occur, except in the various reading of Cato. *Sarrītus*, Colum. *Sarriendus*, Colum. — <sup>11</sup> *Sensi*, Cæs. B. G. v. 32. & Hor. *Sensī*, for *sensisti*, Terent. *Sensus*, Arnob. *Sensūrus*, Ovid. Met. — <sup>12</sup> *Sēpēlivi*, Senec. Epist. *Sēpēlii*, Petron. *Sēpēli*, Pers. Sat. *Sēpultus*, Virg. Æn. ii. 265. et passim. *Sēpēlītus*, Cato. ap. Prisc. *Sēpultūrus*, Sidon. Carm. *Sēpēliendus*, Cic. Tusc. ii. 13. — <sup>13</sup> *Dausqu*. Cellar. Noris. Pier. write *Sēpia*, with a diphthong; Voss. Heins. Erythreus and others write it with a single vowel. *Sēpi*, Cic. Fam. xv. 4. Nat. Deor. Virg. Æn. i. 415. & Tacit. Ann. Dictionaries give *Sēpui*, *Sēpītum*; but neither *sēpītus*, nor *sēpītum* have any place in the classics; nor is *sēpīvi* to be found, with the exception of the contracted form *sēpissent* in Liv. xlv. 39., where the true reading is *sepsissent*. See Gronov. on the passage, Voss. Anal. iii. 33. *Septus*, Virg. Æn. ix. 551. et passim. — <sup>14</sup> *Sītīsti*, Justin. *Sītīvi*, given by grammars and dictionaries, does not occur in the classics.

*Suffio*,<sup>1</sup> suffire, suffii, suffitus, suffiendus, ..... *fumigate*.  
*\*Vāgio*,<sup>2</sup> vāgīre, vāgii, —, ..... *cry as a child*.  
*\*Vēnio*,<sup>3</sup> venīre, veni, —, ventūrus, ..... *come*.  
*Vincio*,<sup>4</sup> vincīre, vinxi, victus, victūrus, vinciendus, ..... *bind*.

### § 188. These Verbs end in -eo :

*\*Eo*,<sup>5</sup> ire, ii or ivi, —, itūrus, ..... *go*.  
*\*Queo*,<sup>6</sup> quire, quivi or quii, —, ..... *be able*.  
*\*Nēqueo*,<sup>7</sup> nēquire, nēquivi or nēquii, —, ..... *cannot*.  
*Vēneo*,<sup>8</sup> venīre, veni, —, venitūrus, ..... *be sold*.

### § 189. The Perfects of the following Verbs are doubtful :

<i>*Cambio</i> , <sup>9</sup> campai, ..... <i>exchange</i> .	<i>*Lippio</i> , <sup>13</sup> ivi, R. .... <i>be blear-eyed</i> .
<i>*Dēmentio</i> , <sup>10</sup> ivi, ..... <i>be mad</i> .	<i>*Rancio</i> , <sup>14</sup> rausi, R. .... <i>be hoarse</i> .
<i>Effatio</i> , <sup>11</sup> ivi, itus, .... <i>speak foolishly</i> .	<i>Sallio</i> , <sup>15</sup> ivi, itus, R. D. <i>season with salt</i> .
<i>*Fērio</i> , <sup>12</sup> fērii, D. .... <i>strike</i> .	

### § 190. These have neither Perfects nor Perfect Participles :

<i>*Balbütio</i> , <sup>16</sup> ..... <i>stammer</i> .	<i>*Fērocio</i> , ..... <i>be fierce</i> .
<i>*Cæcütio</i> , ..... <i>be dim-sighted</i> .	<i>*Gannio</i> , ..... <i>yelp, whine</i> .

<sup>1</sup> *Suffi*, Propert. iv. 8. 83. See Broukhuis & Burman on the passage. *Suffitus*, Ovid. Fast. *Suffiendus*, Colum. — <sup>2</sup> The author of the Carmen de Philom. makes the first syllable short. *Vāgii*, Ovid. — <sup>3</sup> *Vēnio*, Pompon. ap. Non. *Vēni*, Cic. *Ventūrus*, Virg. vi. 66. *Vēnitur*, ventum est, impers. passim. *Inventu* ardua, Plin. ii. 46. — <sup>4</sup> *Vinxi*, Virg. Æn. xi. 81. *Vinxus*, Ovid. et passim. *Vinctūrus*, Virg. Georg. ii. 94. *Vinciendus*, Cic. — <sup>5</sup> *Ivi* is rare; it occurs in Aul. Gell. xiii. 12. 3. *ii*, Liv. Cic. Fam. Virg. Æn. i. 376. et passim. These Compounds make ii: *Adeo*, I depart, *ādii*; *Adeo*, I approach, *ādii*; *Anteo*, I go before, *antei*; *Coō*, I meet, *coi*; *Exeo*, I go out, *exi*; *Intēreo*, I die, *intērii*; *Introō*, I enter, *introi*; *Prōdeo*, I come forth, *prōdii*; *Transo*, I pass over, *transi*. But *Ineo*, I enter, makes *inui*, Cic. et passim; *ini*, Stat. Theb. *Odeo*, I go about, undergo, die, *ōdvi*, Virg. Æn. vi. 802. *Obii*, Lucr. *Pereo*, I perish, *pērii*, Ovid. *Pērii* occurs only in Apul. Met. *Præo*, I go before, *prævi*, Plin. *præi*, Liv. *Prætēreo*, I go beyond, *prætērii*, Ovid. Art. Am. et passim; *prætērii*, Apul. Met. *Rideo*, I return, *rēdii*, Cic. et passim; *rēdvi*, Lucil. ap. Non. *Sūbeo*, I go under, *sūbvi*, Ovid. *sūbii*, Hor. i. Sat. 9. 21. *Itūrus*, Cic. — <sup>6</sup> *Quivi*, Virg. Æn. vi. 463. Terent. Quī, Lucr. vi. 855. See Irregular Verbs. *Quitus*, Accius ap. Diomed. — <sup>7</sup> *Nēquivi*, Virg. Æn. vi. 507. *Nēquii*, Sall. Jug. c. 18. See Irregular Verbs. — <sup>8</sup> *Vēni*, Cic. Cato R. R. et passim. *Vēnisse*, Liv. ii. 14. *Vēnivi*, given in grammars and dictionaries, does not occur in the classics. Some give this Verb a Supine, *Vēnum*, which is a noun, and one of its component parts, (*Vēnum eo*), and of which the ablative *Vēno* occurs in Tacit. Ann. xiii. 51. *Vēnitus*, Sedul. Hymn. *Vēnitūrus*, Senec. de Const. Sap. c. 3. See Irregular Verbs. — <sup>9</sup> *Campai*, Prisc. x. p. 906. — <sup>10</sup> *Dēmentivi*, Grammatici. — <sup>11</sup> *Effāvi*, Grammatici. *Effūtitus*, Cic. Div. — <sup>12</sup> *Fērii*, Acron in his commentary on Hor. i. Od. 7. 11. The Perfect of the Compound *Rēfērio*, I strike again, does not occur. — <sup>13</sup> *Lippivi*, Grammatici. *Lippitūrus*, Plin. — <sup>14</sup> The Perfect *Rausi*, and Supine *Rausum* occur only in Prisc. x. p. 907. *Rausūrus*, Lucil. ap. Prisc. ibid. — <sup>15</sup> *Sallvi*, or *salvi*, Grammatici. *Sallitus*, or *salitus*, Colum. *Sallitūrus*, Næv. ap. Prisc. ibid. *Sallendus*, Colum. The Participles *Salsus*, Colum. and *Salsūrus*, Mumm. ap. Diomed. I. c. come from *Sallo*, *is*, of the Third Conjugation — <sup>16</sup> *Balbütivi* in some dictionaries.





[AN ALPHABETICAL LIST of the preceding verbs of the four conjugations for easy reference. If the compound verb cannot be found in this list, look for the simple; then refer to it on its page, and the compound may be found in the notes.]

Abdo ....	Page 139	Augeo .....	126	Clueo .....	128	Curro .....	139
Abnuo .....	131	Ausculo .....	112	Cluo .....	146	Custodio .....	150
Abominor .....	117	Autumo .....	112	Coalesco .....	143	Damno .....	113
Abisto .....	142	Auxilior .....	117	Coerceo .....	123	Debeo .....	123
Absterreo .....	123	Aveo .....	128	Cogito .....	113	Decet .....	129
Abundo .....	112	Aversor .....	117	Cognosco .....	142	Decoro .....	113
Accendo .....	131	Balbutio .....	153	Cohibeo .....	123	Decurio .....	113
Accumbo .....	136	Basio .....	112	Colo .....	137	Dedo .....	140
Accuso .....	112	Batuo .....	131	Comissor .....	117	Defendo .....	131
Aceo .....	123	Bello .....	112	Comitor .....	117	Defetiscor .....	147
Aeno .....	131	Beo .....	112	Commisissor .....	147	Dego .....	131
Addo .....	139	Bibo .....	131	Commereo .....	123	Deleo .....	126
Addibeo .....	123	Blandior .....	154	Commoneo .....	122	Delineo .....	113
Admoneo .....	122	Boo .....	112	Como .....	133	Deliquesco .....	143
Adolesco .....	144	Brevio .....	112	Comparo .....	113	Delitescio .....	143
Adulor .....	117	Bullio .....	151	Comperio .....	151	Dementio .....	153
Adumbro .....	112	Cado .....	138	Compesco .....	137	Demereo .....	123
Ædifico .....	112	Cæco .....	113	Complector .....	147	Demo .....	133
Ægresco .....	145	Cæcutio .....	153	Compleo .....	126	Denseo .....	128
Æmulor .....	117	Cædo .....	139	Concilio .....	113	Deprecor .....	118
Æquo .....	112	Cælo .....	113	Concionor .....	117	Depso .....	137
Æstimo .....	112	Calceo .....	113	Concutio .....	145	Desero .....	137
Agnosco .....	142	Calcitro .....	113	Condo .....	150	Desidero .....	113
Ago .....	142	Caleo .....	123	Condo .....	139	Desisto .....	142
Albeo .....	128	Calumnior .....	117	Confabulor .....	117	Desterto .....	137
Algeo .....	126	Calveo .....	128	Confido .....	140	Destino .....	113
Allicio .....	145	Cambio .....	153	Confiteor .....	128	Deterreo .....	123
Alo .....	137	Candeo .....	123	Congruo .....	131	Dico, -äre .....	113
Ambigo .....	146	Caneo .....	123	Conniveo .....	127	Dico, -äre .....	135
Ambulo .....	112	Cano .....	139	Conor .....	117	Dicto .....	113
Amicio .....	151	Canto .....	113	Conquinsco .....	140	Dido .....	140
Amplector .....	147	Cappso .....	138	Considero .....	113	Diffiteor .....	128
Amplio .....	112	Capio .....	145	Conspicor .....	118	Digladior .....	118
Angario .....	112	Capto .....	113	Consanesco .....	143	Diligo .....	135
Ango .....	135	Careo .....	123	Consenesco .....	143	Diribeo .....	127
Aperio .....	151	Carmino .....	113	Consero .....	137	Disco .....	139
Apiscor .....	147	Carpo .....	133	Consisto .....	142	Dissero .....	137
Appello .....	112	Castigo .....	113	Consulo .....	137	Ditesco .....	145
Appendo .....	131	Catimidio .....	113	Contemplor .....	118	Divido .....	133
Apricor .....	117	Causor .....	117	Conterreo .....	123	Do .....	120
Apto .....	112	Caveo .....	127	Conticesco .....	143	Doceo .....	124
Arbitror .....	117	Cedo .....	133	Convalesco .....	143	Doleo .....	123
Arcesso .....	138	Celebro .....	113	Coquo .....	135	Dolo .....	113
Areo .....	123	Celo .....	113	Crebreasco .....	143	Dominor .....	118
Arguo .....	131	Censeo .....	126	Credo .....	140	Domo .....	120
Aro .....	112	Centurio .....	113	Cremo .....	113	Dormio .....	150
Arceo .....	122	Cerno .....	141	Creo .....	113	Dono .....	113
Ardeo .....	125	Certo .....	113	Crepro .....	120	Duco .....	135
Ascio .....	112	Ceveo .....	128	Cresco .....	142	Dulcesco .....	143
Aspernor .....	117	Cieo .....	126	Criminor .....	118	Duplico .....	113
Aspicio .....	145	Cinge .....	135	Crucio .....	113	Duresco .....	143
Assentior .....	154	Cio .....	150	Cubo .....	120	Duro .....	113
Assero .....	137	Clango .....	146	Culpo .....	113	Edo (eat) .....	131
Assisto .....	142	Clareo .....	123	Cuneo .....	113	Edo (publish) .....	140
Aucupor .....	117	Claudo (be lame) .....	146	Cunctor .....	118	Effugio .....	113
Audeo .....	125	Claudo (shut) .....	133	Cupio .....	145	Effutio .....	153
Audio .....	150	Clepo .....	133	Curo .....	113	Egeo .....	123

Elanguesco ...	143	Finio .....	150	Gravo .....	114	Jacto .....	114
Emacio .....	113	Firmo .....	113	Grunnio .....	151	Jaculor .....	118
Emarcesco ...	143	Flacceo .....	123	Gruo .....	146	Jocor .....	118
Emereo .....	123	Flagito .....	113	Gusto .....	114	Jubeo .....	124
Emineo .....	123	Flagro .....	113	Habeo .....	123	Judico .....	114
Emo .....	131	Flaveo .....	128	Habito .....	114	Jugo .....	114
Emungo .....	135	Flecto .....	135	Hareo .....	126	Jugulo .....	114
Enucleo .....	113	Fleo .....	126	Halo .....	114	Jungo .....	135
Eo .....	153	Fligo .....	135	Haurio .....	151	Juro .....	114
Epulor .....	118	Flo .....	113	Hebeo .....	128	Juvenesco ...	145
Equito .....	113	Floreo .....	123	Hinnio .....	154	Juvo .....	120
Erro .....	113	Fluo .....	135	Hio .....	114	Labo .....	121
Erubescio ...	143	Fodio .....	145	Horreo .....	123	Labor .....	148
Erdio .....	150	Foeteo .....	128	Hortor .....	118	Laboro .....	114
Eurio .....	150	Formo .....	114	Humeo .....	128	Lacerp .....	114
Evanesco ...	143	Foro .....	114	Humo .....	114	Lacesso .....	138
Evilesco .....	143	Foveo .....	127	Hyemo .....	114	Lacteo .....	128
Exardesco ...	144	Fracesco .....	143	Ico .....	131	Lacto .....	114
Exaresco .....	143	Fræno .....	114	Ignoro .....	114	Lædo .....	133
Excandesco ...	143	Frango .....	142	Ignosco .....	142	Lætor .....	118
Excello .....	137	Fraudo .....	114	Imbuo .....	132	Lambo .....	132
Excudo .....	131	Fremo .....	137	Imitor .....	118	Lamentor ...	118
Exerceo .....	123	Fredeo .....	127	Impedio .....	150	Langueo ...	123
Exhibeo .....	123	Frendo .....	146	Impero .....	114	Lanio .....	114
Exhorresco ...	143	Frico .....	120	Impetro .....	114	Lapidesco ...	145
Existimo .....	113	Frigeo .....	127	Inaresco .....	143	Laqueo .....	114
Existo .....	142	Frigo .....	147	Incesso .....	138	Lascivio .....	151
Exolesco .....	144	Frio .....	114	Inchoo .....	114	Largior .....	154
Expallesco ...	143	Frondeo .....	127	Increbresco ...	143	Lateo .....	123
Expedio .....	150	Frumentor ...	118	Incurvesco ...	145	Latro .....	114
Expergiscor ...	147	Frugeo .....	142	Indago .....	114	Laudo .....	114
Experior .....	154	Fruor .....	147	Indico .....	114	Lavo .....	121
Exploro .....	113	Fugio .....	145	Indignor .....	118	Laxo .....	114
Exsanio .....	113	Fugo .....	114	Indo .....	140	Lego, -ère ...	132
Exsero .....	137	Fulcio .....	151	Indolesco ...	144	Lego, -äre ...	114
Exulo .....	113	Fulgeo .....	126	Indulgeo .....	126	Lenio .....	150
Exterreo .....	123	Fundo, -äre ...	114	Induo .....	132	Lenteo .....	128
Extinguo .....	135	Fundo, -ère ...	131	Ineptio .....	154	Levo .....	114
Extimesco ...	143	Fungor .....	148	Inebrio .....	114	Libero .....	114
Exuo .....	131	Furio .....	114	Inhibeo .....	123	Libet .....	129
Fabrico .....	113	Furo .....	147	Infitor .....	118	Liceo .....	123
Facesso .....	138	Furor .....	118	Initio .....	114	Liceor .....	128
Facio .....	145	Fundo .....	131	Injuriar .....	118	Licet .....	129
Fallo .....	139	Galeo .....	114	Innotesco ...	144	Lignor .....	118
Famulor .....	118	Gannio .....	153	Inquino .....	114	Ligo .....	115
Farcio .....	151	Gaudéo .....	125	Insanio .....	150	Ligurif. ....	152
Faris, or Fare.	118	Gemo .....	137	Insector .....	118	Linguo .....	132
Fascio .....	113	Geno .....	137	Insero .....	137	Lingo .....	147
Fastidio .....	151	Gero .....	133	Insidior .....	118	Lino .....	142
Fateor .....	128	Gestio .....	150	Instauro .....	114	Lippio .....	153
Fatigo .....	113	Gesto .....	114	Insuo .....	132	Liquet .....	129
Fatisco .....	145	Gigno .....	137	Integrasco ...	145	Liquo .....	115
Faveo .....	127	Glabreo .....	128	Intelligo .....	135	Lito .....	115
Ferio .....	153	Glacio .....	114	Intro .....	114	Liveo .....	128
Feror .....	118	Gliaco .....	146	Intumesco ...	144	Loco .....	115
Fero .....	140	Glocio .....	154	Invito .....	114	Loquor .....	148
Ferocio .....	153	Glorior .....	118	Irascor .....	148	Lubet .....	129
Ferveo .....	127	Glutio .....	151	Irratio .....	150	Luceo .....	125
Fervo .....	131	Gradior .....	146	Irrito .....	114	Luctor .....	118
Festino .....	113	Grandesco ...	145	Irraucesco ...	144	Ludo .....	133
Figo .....	135	Grandio .....	154	Itero .....	114	Lugeo .....	126
Findo .....	131	Gratulor .....	118	Jaceo .....	123	Luo .....	132
Fingo .....	135	Gravesco ...	145	Jacio .....	145	Lustro .....	115

Luxurio .....	115	Mutia .....	150	Orior .....	146	Pono .....	138
Maceo .....	128	Muto .....	115	Ordior .....	154	Populor .....	119
Macresco .....	144	Mutuor .....	119	Orno .....	115	Porto .....	115
Macto .....	115	Nanciscor .....	148	Oro .....	115	Posco .....	139
Maculo .....	115	Narro .....	115	Otor .....	119	Posthabeo .....	123
Madeo .....	123	Nascor .....	148	Pabulor .....	119	Postulo .....	115
Malo .....	137	Nato .....	115	Paciscor .....	148	Potior .....	154
Mando, -äre .....	132	Nauseo .....	115	Paco .....	115	Poto .....	121
Mando, -äre .....	115	Navigo .....	115	Pago .....	139	Præbeo .....	123
Manduco .....	115	Navo .....	115	Palleo .....	124	Prædor .....	119
Maneo .....	126	Neco .....	121	Palor .....	119	Prælior .....	119
Mano .....	115	Necto .....	135	Pando .....	147	Præmior .....	119
Mansuesco .....	144	Negligo .....	135	Pango .....	136	Præmoneo .....	122
Marceo .....	128	Nego .....	115	Parco .....	139	Prædeo .....	125
Matur .....	115	Negotior .....	119	Pareo .....	124	Precor .....	119
Maturesco .....	144	Neo .....	126	Pario .....	145	Prehendo .....	132
Medeor .....	128	Nequeo .....	153	Paro .....	115	Premo .....	134
Medicor .....	118	Nexo, -äre .....	121	Partio .....	150	Prendo .....	132
Meditor .....	118	Nexo, -äre .....	146	Partior .....	154	Privo .....	115
Memoro .....	115	Nideo .....	128	Pasco .....	142	Probo .....	115
Mentior .....	154	Nigreo .....	123	Pateo .....	124	Prodo .....	140
Meo .....	115	Ningit .....	149	Pator .....	146	Proficiscor .....	148
Mercor .....	118	Niteo .....	123	Patro .....	115	Profiteor .....	128
Mereo .....	123	Nitor .....	148	Paveo .....	127	Profligo .....	115
Mergo .....	133	No .....	115	Pavio .....	154	Prohibeo .....	123
Meridio .....	115	Noceo .....	124	Pecco .....	115	Promereo .....	123
Metior .....	154	Nolo .....	137	Pecto .....	136	Promo .....	134
Meto .....	140	Nomino .....	115	Pedo .....	139	Propero .....	115
Metuo .....	132	Nosco .....	142	Pello .....	139	Propino .....	115
Mico .....	121	Noto .....	115	Pendeo .....	125	Propitio .....	116
Migro .....	115	Novo .....	115	Pendo .....	139	Prosilio .....	152
Militio .....	115	Nubo .....	133	Peraresco .....	144	Prurio .....	154
Minio .....	115	Nudo .....	115	Percalleo .....	124	Psallo .....	132
Mingo .....	135	Nugor .....	119	Percallo .....	140	Pubeo .....	124
Ministro .....	115	Nuncupo .....	115	Percontor .....	119	Pudet .....	129
Minor .....	118	Nuntio .....	115	Percrebresco .....	144	Puerasco .....	145
Minuo .....	132	Nuto .....	115	Perdo .....	140	Pugno .....	116
Misceo .....	124	Nutrio .....	150	Pergo .....	136	Pulso .....	116
Misereor .....	128	Obbrutesco .....	144	Perhibeo .....	123	Pungo .....	139
Miseret .....	129	Obcallesco .....	144	Perhorresco .....	144	Punio .....	151
Miseror .....	118	Obdo .....	140	Periclitor .....	119	Purgo .....	116
Mitesco .....	145	Obduresco .....	144	Permereo .....	123	Puteo .....	124
Mitigo .....	115	Obedio .....	152	Perterreo .....	123	Puto .....	116
Mitto .....	140	Obliviscor .....	148	Pertimesco .....	144	Putreo .....	124
Moderor .....	119	Obmutesco .....	144	Peto .....	138	Quæro .....	138
Modulor .....	119	Obsecro .....	115	Piget .....	129	Quasso .....	116
Mareo .....	128	Obstupesco .....	144	Pinguesco .....	145	Quatio .....	147
Molo .....	137	Obsurdesco .....	144	Pinso .....	132	Queo .....	153
Molior .....	154	Obtempero .....	115	Pio .....	115	Queror .....	148
Mollesco .....	145	Obtestor .....	119	Piscor .....	119	Quiesco .....	142
Mollio .....	150	Obtrunco .....	115	Placeo .....	124	Radio .....	116
Moneo .....	122	Oculo .....	137	Placo .....	115	Rado .....	134
Monstro .....	115	Oleo .....	124	Plango .....	136	Rancesco .....	145
Mordeo .....	125	Onero .....	115	Plaudo .....	134	Rapio .....	146
Morior .....	146	Operio .....	152	Plecto .....	136	Rapto .....	116
Moror .....	119	Operor .....	119	Plico .....	121	Raucio .....	153
Moveo .....	127	Opinor .....	119	Ploro .....	115	Recordor .....	119
Muceo .....	128	Opitulator .....	119	Plumesco .....	145	Recrudesco .....	144
Mugio .....	150	Opotet .....	139	Pluo .....	132	Recupero .....	116
Mulceo .....	125	Opperior .....	154	Poenitet .....	129	Recuso .....	116
Mulgeo .....	126	Opponor .....	119	Polleo .....	128	Reddo .....	140
Mungo .....	135	Opto .....	115	Polio .....	150	Redimio .....	151
Munio .....	150	Orbo .....	115	Polliceor .....	128	Refrigesco .....	144

Rego .....	136	Sedeo .....	125	Stupeo .....	126	Tumio .....	154
Relanguesco ..	144	Sedo .....	116	Suadeo .....	125	Tutor .....	120
Reminascor ..	148	Seneo .....	127	Suavior .....	119	Ulciscor .....	149
Renideo .....	128	Sentio .....	152	Subdo .....	140	Umbro .....	116
Reor .....	128	Sepelio .....	152	Succenturio ..	116	Ungo .....	136
Reperio .....	152	Sepio .....	152	Sudo .....	116	Urgeo .....	126
Repo .....	134	Sequor .....	148	Suesco .....	143	Uro .....	134
Repudio .....	116	Sero .....	141	Suffio .....	153	Utor .....	149
Repuerasco ..	145	Serpo .....	134	Suffoco .....	116	Uveo .....	128
Rasero .....	116	Servio .....	151	Sugillo .....	116	Uveasco .....	145
Retalio .....	116	Servo .....	116	Sugo .....	136	Vaco .....	116
Revivisco .....	144	Sibilo .....	116	Sumo .....	134	Vado .....	134
Reviresco .....	144	Sicco .....	116	Supero .....	116	Vagio .....	153
Rideo .....	125	Sido .....	132	Suppedito .....	116	Vagor .....	120
Rigeo .....	124	Signo .....	116	Surgo .....	136	Valeo .....	124
Rigo .....	116	Sileo .....	124	Suspicio .....	119	Vapulo .....	117
Rimor .....	119	Simulo .....	116	Sustollo .....	141	Vario .....	117
Ringor .....	148	Singultio .....	154	Susurro .....	116	Vasto .....	117
Rixor .....	119	Sino .....	141	Taceo .....	125	Vegeo .....	128
Rodo .....	134	Sisto .....	141	Tædet .....	129	Veho .....	136
Rogo .....	116	Sitio .....	152	Tango .....	139	Vellico .....	117
Roto .....	116	Socio .....	116	Tardo .....	116	Vello .....	141
Rubeo .....	124	Soleo .....	126	Taxo .....	116	Vendo .....	140
Rudo .....	140	Solor .....	119	Tego .....	136	Venio & Veneo	153
Rugio .....	154	Solvo .....	132	Temno .....	134	Veneror .....	120
Ruo .....	132	Somnio .....	116	Tempero .....	116	Venor .....	120
Rumpo .....	132	Sono .....	122	Tendo .....	139	Verbero .....	117
Rusticor .....	119	Sopio .....	151	Teneo .....	127	Vereor .....	128
Sacrifico .....	116	Sorbeo .....	124	Tenerasco .....	145	Vergo .....	134
Sacro .....	116	Sordeo .....	124	Tento .....	116	Vernio .....	153
Savio .....	152	Sortior .....	154	Tepeo .....	124	Verro .....	133
Sagino .....	116	Spargo .....	134	Terebro .....	116	Versor .....	120
Sagio .....	154	Spatior .....	119	Tergeo .....	126	Verto .....	133
Salio .....	152	Specto .....	116	Tergo .....	134	Vescor .....	149
Salio .....	153	Specular .....	119	Tero .....	141	Vesperascit ..	149
Sallo .....	146	Sperno .....	141	Terreo .....	123	Vestigo .....	117
Salto .....	116	Spero .....	116	Testor .....	119	Vestio .....	151
Saluto .....	116	Spiro .....	116	Texo .....	138	Veto .....	122
Sancio .....	152	Spolio .....	116	Timeo .....	124	Vexo .....	117
Sano .....	116	Splendeo .....	127	Tingo .....	136	Vibro .....	117
Sapio .....	146	Spondeo .....	125	Tinnio .....	151	Video .....	125
Sarcio .....	152	Spumo .....	116	Titubo .....	116	Vieo .....	127
Sarrio .....	152	Spuo .....	133	Tolero .....	116	Vigeo .....	124
Satago .....	146	Squaleo .....	124	Tollo .....	141	Villesco .....	144
Satio .....	116	Statuo .....	133	Tondeo .....	125	Vincio .....	153
Saturo .....	116	Stabilio .....	151	Tono .....	122	Vinco .....	133
Saucio .....	116	Sterilesco .....	145	Torpeo .....	124	Vindemio .....	117
Scabo .....	132	Sterno .....	141	Torqueo .....	127	Violo .....	117
Scalpo .....	134	Sternuo .....	133	Torreo .....	127	Vireo .....	124
Scando .....	132	Storto .....	138	Tracto .....	116	Viso .....	147
Scateo .....	128	Stillo .....	116	Trado .....	140	Vito .....	117
Scaturio .....	154	Stimulo .....	116	Traho .....	136	Vito .....	117
Scio .....	151	Stinguo .....	136	Tremo .....	138	Vivo .....	136
Scindo .....	140	Stipo .....	116	Tribuo .....	133	Vociferor .....	120
Scisco .....	143	Stipulor .....	119	Tripudio .....	116	Voco .....	117
Scimitor .....	119	Sto .....	122	Trucido .....	116	Volo, -vis .....	138
Scitor .....	119	Strepto .....	138	Trudo .....	134	Volo, -are .....	117
Screo .....	116	Strideo .....	127	Tueor .....	128	Volvo .....	133
Scribo .....	134	Strido .....	133	Tumeo .....	124	Vomo .....	138
Scrutor .....	119	Stringo .....	136	Tundo .....	139	Voro .....	117
Sculpo .....	134	Strio .....	116	Tuor .....	149	Vovco .....	127
Seco .....	121	Struo .....	134	Turbo .....	116	Vulgo .....	117
Secundo .....	116	Studeo .....	124	Turgeo .....	126	Vulnero .....	117

IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 194. The IRREGULAR VERBS are, *Sum*, 'I am ;' *Eo*, 'I go ;' *Queo*, 'I am able ;' *Volo*, 'I am willing ;' *Fero*, 'I bear or suffer ;' *Fio*, 'I am made,' 'I become ;' *Edo*, 'I eat,' and their compounds.

*SUM* has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds.<sup>1</sup>

*Prosum*, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*.

*Prosum*, *prodesse*, *profui*.

*Indicative Mode.*

**PR.** *Pro-sum*, *prod-es*, *prod-est* ; *pro-sūmus*, *prod-estis*, &c.  
**IMP.** *Prod-eram*, *prod-eras*, *prod-erat* ; *prod-erāmus*, &c.  
**PER.** *Pro-fui*, *pro-fuisti*, *pro-fuit* ; *pro-fuīmus*, *pro-fuistis*, &c.  
**PLU.** *Pro-fuēram*, *pro-fuēras*, *pro-fuērat* ; *pro-fuerāmus*, &c.  
**FUT.** *Prod-ēro*, *prod-ēris*, *prod-ērit* ; *prod-erīmus*, &c.

*Subjunctive Mode*

**PR.** *Pro-sim*, *pro-sis*, *pro-sit* ; *pro-sīmus*, *pro-sitis*, *pro-sint*.  
**IMP.** *Prod-essem*, *prod-esses*, *prod-esset* ; *prod-essēmus*, &c.  
**PER.** *Pro-fuērim*, *pro-fuēris*, *pro-fuērit* ; *pro-fuerīmus*, &c.  
**PLU.** *Pro-fuissem*, *pro-fuisses*, *pro-fuisset* ; *pro-fuissēmus*, &c.  
**FUT.** *Pro-fuēro*, *pro-fuēris*, *pro-fuērit* ; *pro-fuerīmus*, &c.

*Imperative Mode.*

**PR. 2.** *Prod-es* or *prod-esto*,                      2. *Prod-este* or *prod-estōte*,  
           3. *Prod-esto* ;                                      3. *Pro-sunto*.

<sup>1</sup> Compounds of *Sum* :—*Absum*, I am absent ; *Adsum*, I am present ; *Dēsum*, I am wanting ; *Intersum*, I am present ; *Obsum*, I am against, I hurt ; *Possūm*, I am able ; *Præsum*, I am before, I preside over ; *Prōsum*, I avail, I do good ; *Subsum*, I am under, I lurk ; *Sūpersum*, I am over and above, I survive ; and *Insum*, I am in, which wants the Perfect. *Prōsum* takes *n* after *pro*, when the simple Verb begins with *e* ; as, *Prosum*, *prodest*, *prodesse*, &c. Compounds of *Eo* :—*Adeo*, I depart ; *Adeo*, I approach ; *Anteo*, I go before ; *Coeū*, I assemble, I meet ; *Exeo*, I go out ; *Ineo*, I enter ; *Intēreo*, I perish, I die ; *Introeo*, I come in ; *Obeo*, I am about, I manage, I die ; *Pereo*, I perish ; *Præeo*, I go before ; *Prætereo*, I pass by ; *Prōdeo*, I go forth ; *Rēdeo*, I return ; *Sūbeo*, I go under ; *Transeō*, I pass over ; *Veneo*, I am sold. Compound of *Queo* :—*Nēqueo*, I am unable. Compounds of *Volo* :—*Nōlo*, I am unwilling ; *Mālo*, I am more willing. Compounds of *Fero* :—*Affero*, I bring ; *Antifero*, I prefer ; *Aufero*, I take away ; *Circumfero*, I carry round ; *Confero*, I contribute ; *Dēfero*, I convey ; *Differo*, I disperse ; *Effero*, I carry forth ; *Infero*, I bring in ; *Offero*, I offer ; *Perfero*, I carry through ; *Præfero*, I prefer ; *Prōfero*, I bring forward ; *Rēfero*, I bring back ; *Suffero*, I take up, I endure. Compounds of *Edo* :—*Adēdo*, I devour ; *Ambēdo*, I eat around, I gnaw ; *Cōmēdo*, I eat up ; *Estēdo*, I consume ; *Pērēdo*, I eat through.

*Infinitive Mode.*

PR. Prod-esse.  
PER. Pro-fuisse.

FUT. Esse pro-futūrus, -a, -um.  
Fuisse pro-futūrus.

*Participle.*

FUT. Pro-futūrus.

§ 195. *Possum* is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*: and is thus conjugated:

*Possum*,<sup>1</sup> posse, pōtai. *To be able.*

*Indicative Mode.*

PR.	Possum,	pōtes,	pōtest;	possūmus,	potestis,	possunt,
IMP.	Pot-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
PER.	Pot-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uīmus,	-uistis,	-uērunt
						} or -uēre.
PLU.	Pot-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uērant.
FUT.	Pot-ēro.	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-erunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR.	Pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-simus,	-sitis,	-sint.
IMP.	Pos-sem,	-ses,	-set;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
PER.	Pot-uērim,	-uēris	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.
PLU.	Pot-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
FUT.	Pot-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.

*Infinitive Mode.*

PR. Posse.

PER. Potuisse.

*The rest wanting.*

NOTE: *Possum* wants the Fut. Infin. and has no Gerunds or Supines. *Pōtens* is considered as a mere Adjective, and not as a Participle.

<sup>1</sup> *Possum* is compounded of *pōtis* and *sum*. They sometimes occur separately, (Virg. *Æn.* iii. 671. xi. 148. Ter. Eun. ii. 2. 32. Adolph. iv. 1. 5. Lucr. i. 451. ii. 849. 911. iv. 718. v. 718. Catull. lxxi. 7. lxxv. 24. Varr. R. R. ii. 2. Cic. Tusc. ii. 16. Gell. xix. 9, &c.) and then *pōtis* is Masc. Fem. or Neut. and Plur. as well as Sing. Cf. Plaut. *Poen.* i. 2. 17. We find the following forms also:—*Pōtessim*, Plaut. *Pers.* i. 1. 41. *Pōtesset*, Lucil. ap. Non. v. 98. where some read *Pōtisset*. Cf. Ascon. in Divin. Verr. 13. *Pōtissum*, Plaut. *Curc.* v. 3. 23. *Possiem*, *ēs*, *ēt*, Cic. in *Arat.* 304. Plaut. *Bacch.* iv. 5. 2. Most. ii. 2. 34. iv. 2. 68. *Pōtestūr*, Lucr. iii. 1024. Pacuv. ap. Non. x. 34. cf. Pier. ad Virg. *Æn.* viii. 402. *Possūtūr*, Cat. R. R. 154. *Possūtūr*, Claud. *Quadrig.* Ap. Non. x. 30. *Pōtesse*, Lucr. i. 665. Ter. Eun. iv. 3. 24. Charis. iii. p. 231. cites, *Pōteste*, *pōtesto*, *pōtestōle*, *possunt*, but without authority.

## § 196. EO, 'ire, ivi, —. To go.

*Indicative Mode.*

PR. Eo,	is,	it;	imus,	itis,	eunt.
IMP. Ibam,	ibas,	ibat;	ibāmus,	ibātis,	ibant.
PER. Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivimus,	ivistis,	ivērunt or ivēre.
PLU. Ivēram,	ivēras,	ivērat;	iverāmus,	iverātis,	ivērant.
FUT. Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR. Eam,	eas,	eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
IMP. Irem,	ires,	iret;	irēmus,	irētis,	irent.
PER. Ivērim,	ivēris,	ivērit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	ivērint.
PLU. Ivissēm,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissēmus,	ivissētis,	ivissent.
FUT. Ivēro,	ivēris,	ivērit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	ivērint.

*Imperative Mode.*

PR.	{ I,	{ ite,	eunto.
	{ Ito,	{ itōte,	

*Infinitive Mode.*

PR. Ire.
PER. Ivisse.
FUT. Esse itūrus, -a, -um.
Fuisse itūrus, -a, -um.

*Participles.*

PR. Iens,	Gen. euntis.
FUT. Itūrus, -a, -um.	
PASS. Itus	

*Gerunds.*

Eundum.
Eundi.
Eundo, &c.

The compounds of *Eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-, ab-, ex-, cō-, in-, inter-, ob-, rēd-, sub-, p̄r-, prae-, ante-, prōd-eo*; only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *Adeo, adii, seldom adivi, aditum, adire*, to go to; perf. *Adii, adiisti, or adisti, &c. adieram, adierim, &c.* So likewise *VENEO venii, —*, to be sold, compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *AMBIO, -ivi, -itum, -ire*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

<sup>1</sup> Of this Verb the Infinitive Passive *Iri* occurs frequently joined with the Perfect Participle Passive of other verbs. We also find the Impersonals, *Itur, eatur, ibatur, eratur, ibitur, itum, est, &c.* Virg. *Æn.* vi. 179. Plaut. *Truc.* iii. 1. 21. Senec. *Med.* 460. Cic. *Att.* ii. 1. *Eundus* occurs in Claud. *Eutrop.* ii. 419. *Iscem, Iase*, Cic. *Phil.* xii. 12. Verr. iii. 44. and in Ovid. *Propert. Stat. Sil. passim. Istis*, Lucan. vii. 834. *Iam, ias, iam*, Cic. *Agr.* ii. 25. Cf. *Tibull.* i. 4. 23. Senec. *Benef.* ii. 1. *Apul. Met.* vi. p. 122. Most of the Compounds of *Eo* make *ii* in the Perfect, rather than *ivi*. *Adeo, Ineo, Prætereo, Subeo, Transeo*, being used transitively, are found in the Passive. Cic. *Q. Fr.* i. 2. 5. *Offic.* i. 19. *Cæs. B. G.* vii. 9. Cic. *Tusc.* v. 19. *Manil.* iv. 398. *Juv.* xvi. 2. *Ambio* is conjugated regularly like *Audio, Veneo, venii* is conjugated like *Eo*; yet we find *Veniet*, Murator. p. 1311. ii. n. 2. *Veneat*, and *Veneatur*, *Diomed.* l. p. 365. *Venitus*, *Sedul. Hymn.* i. 21. *Venitum*, (*Supine*) *Priscian.* x. p. 907.

*EO*, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it*, he is going; *ivit*, he is gone; *ivērat*, he was gone; *ivērit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So, *vēnit*, he is coming; *vēnit*, he has come; *vēnerat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally; as, *pericūla adeuntur*, are undergone. Cic. *Libri sibyllini aditi sunt*, were looked into. Liv. *Flumen pedibus transiri potest*. Caps. *Inimicitie subeantur*. Cic.

*QUEO*, I can, and *NEQUEO*,<sup>1</sup> I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

## § 197. *VOLO*,<sup>2</sup> *velle*, *vōlui*. To will, or to be willing.

### Indicative Mode.

PR.	Vōl-o,	vis,	vult;	vōlūmus,	vultis,	volunt.
IMP.	Vol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Vol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt or -uere.
PLU.	Vol-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uērant.
FUT.	Vol-am,	-ea,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.

### Subjunctive Mode.

PR.	Velim,	velis,	velit;	velimus,	velitis,	velint.
IMP.	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.
PER.	Vol-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.
PLU.	Vol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
FUT.	Vol-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.

### Infinitive Mode.

### Participle.

PR. *Velle*.PER. *Voluisse*.PR. *Volens*.

The rest not used.

<sup>1</sup> Of *Queo* and *Nequeo* these forms occur: *Quii*, Priscian, x. p. 905. 907. *Quiit*, Accius ap. Macrob. vi. 1. *Quiitis*, Juvenc. Hist. Ev. ii. 679. *Quissent*, Auson. Epigr. cxxxix. 7. *Quisse*, Lucr. v. 1421. *Quiens*, Apul. Met. vi. 113. ix. 206. *Quitur*, Cæcil. ap. Diomed. i. p. 380. *Quitus*, Id. ibid. Apul. Apol. p. 402. Terent. Hecyr. iv. 1. 57. *Queuntur*, Cæcil. ap. Diomed. i. p. 380. *Queatur*, Lucr. i. 1043. *Queantur*, Plaut. Pers. ii. 2. 12. *Qui-tum*, (Supine) Priscian, ix. p. 867. *Nequissent*, Lucr. iv. 1248. Sallust. Jug. c. 18. *Nequitur*, Sallust. Jug. c. 34. Plaut. Rud. iv. 4. 20. *Nequitum*, Pacuv. ap. Fest. et Cato ibid. *Nequitus*, Caper Priscian. x. p. 899. *Nequiens*, Sallust. Fragu. Apul. Met. viii. p. 162. Auson. Prof. ii. sub. fin. Ammian. xv. 10.

<sup>2</sup> *Vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, or, as they were anciently written, *vōl*, *vōltis*, (Auson. Epigr. xxxix. Ter. Andr. v. 3. 1. Plaut. Most. iii. 2. 68. 71. Novius ap. Non. x. 18. &c.) are contractions of *vēlis*, *vērit*, *vēlitis*. In Lucil. lib. xxvii. ap. Non. vii. 88. and Plaut. Asin. i. 2. 26. we find *Vōlam* for *velim*.



§ 198. NOLO,<sup>1</sup> nolle, nolui. *To be unwilling.**Indicative Mode.*

PR.	Nôlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nolūmus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
IMP.	Nol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Nol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uīmus,	-uistis,	{ -uērunt or -uēre.
PLU.	Nol-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	
FUT.	Nolam,	noleas,	nolet;	-nolēmus,	-nolētis,	-polent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR.	Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolimus,	nolitis,	nolint.
IMP.	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollēmus,	nollētis,	nollent.
PER.	Nol-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.
PLU.	Nol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
FUT.	Nol-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.

*Imperative.**Infinitive.**Participle.*

## 2. Sing.      2. Plur.

PR.	{ Noli or	{ nolite or	PR. Nolle.	PR. Nolens.
	{ Nolito.	{ nolitôte.	PER. Noluisse.	The rest wanting.

§ 199. MALO,<sup>2</sup> malle, malui. *To be more willing.**Indicative Mode.*

PR.	Mal-o,	mavis,	mavult;	malūmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
IMP.	Mal-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Mal-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uīmus,	-uīstis,	{ -uērunt or -uēre. -uērant.
PLU.	Mal-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	
FUT.	Mal-am,	-es,	-et; &c.	<i>This is scarcely in use.</i>		

<sup>1</sup> *Nolo* is a contraction of *nōn vōlo*. For *nōnvis* we find *nēvis*, Plaut. Trin. v. 2. 32. Most. iii. 2. 75. for *nōnvult*, *nēvult*, Plaut. Most. i. 2. 29. *Nolitis* for *nonvultis*, Lucil. ap. Diomed. i. p. 381. Putsch.

<sup>2</sup> *Malo* is a contraction of *māgīs*, or *māgē vōlo*. Of this Verb we find the following forms: *Māvōlo*, Plaut. Asin. v. 1. 8. Pœn. i. 2. 90. *māvōlet*, Asin. i. 1. 108. *māvōlunt*, Næv. ap. Fest. in 'Stuprum'; *māvōluit*, Petron. Fragm. *māvōllim*, Plaut. Truc. iv. 2. 29. *māvōllie*, Capt. ii. 2. 90. Pœud. i. 2. 8. *māvōllit*, Trin. ii. 2. 25. *māvōllem*, Plaut. Mil. ii. 2. 16. Amph. i. 3. 14. Pœud. i. 1. 128.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR.	Malim,	malis,	malit;	malimus,	malitis,	malint.
IMP.	Malle,	malle,	mallet;	mallēmus,	mallētis,	mallent.
PER.	Mal-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.
PLU.	Mal-nissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
FUT.	Mal-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.

*Infinitive Mode.*

PR.	Malle.	PER.	Maluisse.	<i>The rest not used.</i>
-----	--------	------	-----------	---------------------------

§ 200. FERO, ferre, tūli, lātum. *To carry, to bring, or suffer.*

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

PR.	Fēro,	fers,	fert;	ferīmus,	feritis,	ferunt.
IMP.	Fer-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ebant.
PER.	Tuli,	tulisti,	tulit;	tulīmus,	tulistis,	tulērunt or -ēre.
PLU.	Tul-ēram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
FUT.	Feram,	feres,	feret;	ferēmus,	ferētis,	ferent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR.	Feram,	feras,	ferat;	ferāmus,	ferātis,	ferant.
IMP.	Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret;	ferrēmus,	ferrētis,	ferrent.
PER.	Tul-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.
PLU.	Tul-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
FUT.	Tul-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.

*Imperative Mode.**Infinitive Mode.*

PR.	Fer,	ferto;	{ ferte,	ferunto.	PR.	Ferre.
	Ferto,		{ fertôte,		PER.	Tulisse.
					FUT.	Esse latūrus, -a, -um.
						Fuisse latūrus, -a, -um.

*Participles.**Gerunds.**Supines.*

PR.	Fērens.	Ferendum,	1. Lātum,
FUT.	Latūrus, -a, -um.	Ferendi,	2. Lātu.
		Ferendo, &c.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, ferri, latus. To be brought.

*Indicative Mode.*

PR. Fēror,	{ feris, or ferre,	{ fertur; ferimur, ferimīni, feruntur.
IMP. Fer-ēbar,	{ -ebāris, or -ebāre,	{ -ebātur; -ebāmur, -ebāmīni, -ebantur.

PER. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.

PLU. Latus eram, &c. latus fuēram, &c.

FUT. Ferar,	{ ferēris, or ferēre,	{ ferētur; ferēmur, feremīni, ferentur.
-------------	--------------------------	---

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR. Ferar.	{ ferāris, or ferāre,	{ ferātur; ferāmur, feramīni, ferantur.
IMP. Ferrer.	{ ferrēris, or ferrēre,	{ ferrētur; ferrēmur, ferremīni, ferrentur.

PER. Latus sim, &c. latus fuērim, &c.

PLU. Latus essem, &c. latus fuisset, &c.

FUT. Latus fuēro, &c.

*Imperative Mode.*

PR. Ferre or fertor,	fertor;	ferimīni,	feruntor.
----------------------	---------	-----------	-----------

*Infinitive Mode.*

*Participles.*

PR. Ferri.	PER. Latus, -a, -um.
PER. Esse or fuisse latus, -a, -um.	FUT. Ferendus, -a, -um.

In like manner are conjugated the Compounds of *fēro*; as, *affēro*; *attūli*, *allatum*; *aufēro*, *abstūli*, *ablatum*; *diffēro*, *distūli*, *dilatatum*; *confēro*, *contūli*, *collatum*; *infēro*, *intūli*, *illatum*; *offēro*, *obtūli*, *oblatum*; *effēro*, *extūli*, *elatum*. So, *circum*, *per*, *trans*, *de*, *pro*, *ante*, *præ*, *re*-*fēro*. In some writers we find *adfēro*, *adtūli*, *adlatum*; *conlatum*; *inlatum*; *obfēro*, &c. for *affēro*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo* for *magis volo*; *fēro*, *fers*, *feri*, &c. for *feris*, *ferit*, &c. *Ferror*, *ferris* or *ferre*, *fertur*, for *ferrēris*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dīco*, *dūco*, and *fācio*, are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic*, *duc*, *fac*; instead of *dīce*, *dūce*, *fāce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

§ 201. FIO,<sup>1</sup> fiēri, factus. To be made or done, to become.

*Indicative Mode.*

PR.	Fio,	fi,	fit;	simus,	fitis,	fiunt.
IMP.	Fiēbam,	fiēbas,	fiēbat;	fiēbāmus,	fiēbātis,	fiēbant.
PER.	Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.					
PLU.	Factus eram, &c. factus fuēram, &c.					
FUT.	Fiam,	fies,	fiet;	fiēmus,	fiētis,	fient.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR.	Fiam,	fias,	fiat;	fiāmus,	fiātis,	fiant.
IMP.	Fiērem,	fiēres,	fiēret;	fiērēmus,	fiērētis,	fiērent.
PER.	Factus sim, &c. factus fuērīm, &c.					
PLU.	Factus essem, &c. factus fuissēm, &c.					
FUT.	Factus fuēro, &c.					

*Imperative Mode.*

*Infinitive Mode.*

PR.	{ Fi, fito:	{ fite, fiunto.	PR.	Fiēri.
			PER.	Esse or fuisse factus, -a, -um.
			FUT.	Factum iri.

*Participles.*

*Supine.*

PER.	Factus,	-a, -um.
FUT.	Faciendus,	-a, -um.

Factu.

NOTE.—The Compounds of *fācio* which retain *a*, have also *fo* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *calefacio*, too warm, *calefo*, *calēfac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confice*; *conficior*, *confici*, *confectus*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confēri*; *defit*, it is wanting; *infit*, he begins.

§ 202. Edo,<sup>2</sup> edērē, ēdi, or esse, ēsūs, eat.

*Infinitive Mode.*

Present. Edērē, or esse.

Past. Edisse.

Future. Esūs, or ēsūrū esse.

<sup>1</sup> *Fācior*, the Passive of *Fācio*, very rarely occurs in the classics. *Fio* was used in its stead. *Fācitur*, however, is read Nigid. ap. Non. x. 19. *Fāciātur*, Petron. Frag. Priscian. viii. p. 101. Putsch. The Indicatives, *Fis*, *Fimus*, and the Imperatives, *Fi*, *Fito*, *Fite*, *Fitōte*, rarely occur. *Fis* is read in Hor. ii. Ep. 2. 211. *Fimus*, Arnob. ii. p. 53. and in some edd. of Terent. Heaut. iii. 1. 74. ubi. al. *Sūmus*. *Fi*, Hor. ii. Sat. 5. 38. Plaut. Curc. i. 87. *Fito*, 2d Pers. Cato ap. Non. vii. 62. *Fite*, Plaut. Curc. i. 1. 89. *Fitōte*, Cato. Crassus, Liv. in Odys. ap. Non. l. c. Of *Fitis* no trace can be found. *Fiens* occurs only in Diomed. i. pp. 352. 177. *Fitur*, Cato ap. Priscian. viii. p. 789. *Fiēbantur*, id. ibid. *Fitum* est, Liv. in Odys. ap. Non. l. c.—*Fio* is sometimes used impersonally: *Fit*, it happens; *Fiēbat*, it happened, &c.

<sup>2</sup> *Edo* is a regular Verb of the third Conjugation; but in the Infinitive and Imperative Modes, in the Present-imperfect Indicative, and the Imperfect Subjunc-

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Edo,	ēdya, or ēs,	ēdīt, or est;	ēdīmūs,	ēdītis, or estis,	ēdunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ed-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt;	-ēbāmūs,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Ed-ī,	-īstī,	-īt;	-īmūs,	-istis,	{ -ērunt, or -ēre
<i>Plup.</i>	Ed-ēram,	-ērās,	-ērāt;	-ērāmūs,	-ērātis,	-ērant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ed-am,	-ēs,	-ēt;	-ēmūs,	-ētis,	-ent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Ed-am,	-ās,	-āt;	-āmūs,	-ātis,	-ant.
<i>Imp.</i>	{ Ed-ērem,	-ērēs,	-ērēt,	-ērēmūs,	-ērētis,	-ērant,
	or	or	or	or	or	or
<i>Perf.</i>	Ed-ērim,	-ērīs,	-ērīt;	-ērīmūs,	-ērītis,	-ērint.
<i>Plup.</i>	Ed-issem,	-issem,	-isset;	-issemūs,	-issetis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ed-ēro,	-ērīs,	-ērīt;	-ērīmūs,	-ērītis,	-ērint.

*Imperative Mode.*

*Singular.*

- No first person.  
2. Edē, ēdīto, or ēs, esto,  
3. \*Edāt, ēdīto, or esto.

*Plural.*

1. \*Edāmūs,  
2. Edīte, ēdītote, or estē, estōtē,  
3. \*Edant, ēdunto.

*Participles.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Edens.	<i>Fut. in -RUS,</i> Esūrus.
<i>Perf.</i>	Esūs.	<i>Fut. in -DUS,</i> Edendus.

*Gerunds.*

<i>Gen.</i>	Eden-di,
<i>Dat. &amp; Abl.</i>	Eden-do,
<i>Nom. &amp; Acc.</i>	Edendum.

*Supines.*

<i>Former,</i>	Esum.
<i>Latter,</i>	Esū.

tive, it assumes other forms, as if from the Verb *Sum*. *Esse*, Cic. Nat. Deor. II. 3. *Esse*, 'to be eaten,' Plaut. Most. IV. 2. 42. *Es*, Plaut. Cas. II. 3. 32. *Est*, Hor. II. Sat. 2. 57. I. Epist. 2. 39. Virg. *Æn.* IV. 66. v. 683. *Essēs*, Val. Max. IV. 3. *Esset*, Virg. Georg. I. 151. *Essēmūs*, Terent. Eun. III. 4. 2. *Esto*, Cato R. R. 156. *Este*, Plaut. Most. I. 1. 61. *Esus*, Gell. IX. 6. *Esūrus*, Ovid. Heroid. Epist. IX. 37. *Edens*, Ovid. Met. II. 768. *Edendus*, Cic. de Amic. 69. Ovid. Heroid. Epist. I. 95. *Esum*, Plaut. Stich. I. 3. 29. *Esu*, Plaut. Pseud. III. 2. 35. *Estum*, Priscian x. p. 893. These forms also occur: *Esus sum*, 'I have eaten,' Solin. 17—27. *Edim*, *is*, *it*, for *Edam*, *as*, *at*, Plaut. Aul. III. 2. 16. Pæn. III. 1. 34. IV. 2. 45. Capt. III. 1. 1. *Edītis* for *Edātis*, Cecil. Nov. and Pompon. ap. Non. II. 114. x. 18. Cf. Virg. *Æn.* XII. 801. Hor. Epod. III. 3. *Cōmēdim*, *is*, *it*, Cic. Fam. IX. 20. Plaut. Cure. IV. 4. 4. *Esērim*, for *Edērim*. Apul. Met. IV. p. 152. 32. *Estur*, Sen. de Ira, III. 15. Cels. v. 97. 3. Ovid. ex. Pont. I. 1. 69. Plaut. Pæn. IV. 2. 13.—Of the quantity of *Es* no proof can be found. It would therefore be better to follow Servius, Vossius, Alvarez, and others, who suppose it long, than pronounce it short with some later grammarians.

## § 203. NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER PASSIVE Verbs, which, like *ſio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *ſoleo, ſolere, ſolitus*, to use; *audeo, audere, ausus*, to dare; *gaudeo, gaudere, gavisus*, to rejoice; *ſido, fidere, ſiſus*, to trust. So, *confido*, to trust; and *diffido*, to distrust; which also have *confidi*, and *diffidi*. Some add *mæreo, mære, mæſtus*, to be ſad; but *mæſtus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise ſay *jurātus ſum* and *cenātus ſum*, for *jurāvi* and *cenāvi*, but theſe may alſo be taken in a paſſive ſenſe.

To theſe may be referred verbs wholly active in their termination, and paſſive in their ſignification; as, *vapūlo, -āvi, -ātum*, to be beaten or whipped; *vēneo*, to be ſold; *exūlo*, to be baniſhed, &c.

## § 204. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

DEFECTIVE VERBS are thoſe of which ſeveral Tenses and Persons are not found in the ancient classics. The verbs uſually ſo called are, 1. *Aio*, 'I ſay;' 2. *Inquio*, 'I ſay;' 3. *Fari*, 'to ſpeak;' 4. *Apāge*, 'begone;' 5. *Ave*, 'hail;' 6. *Salve*, 'hail;' 7. *Auſim*, 'I dare;' 8. *Cedo*, 'give me, tell me;' 9. *Confit*, 'it is done;' 10. *Deſit*, 'it is wanting;' 11. *Inſit*, 'he begins;' 12. *Ovat*, 'he rejoices;' 13. *Quæſo*, 'I pray;' 14. *Faxo*, 'I will take care;' 15. *Odi*, 'I hate;' *Memini*, 'I remember;' *Cæpi*, 'I have begun;' 16. *Forem*, 'I ſhould be.'

§ 205. IND. Pres. Sing. *Aio*, Plaut. Capt. i. 1. 3. *Ais*, Hor. ii. Sat. 7. 67. *Ait*, Terent. Andr. v. 4. 4. Plur. *Aiunt*, Terent. Andr. ii. 1. 21.—Imp. Sing. *Aiēbam*, Hor. i. Sat. ix. 12. *Aiēbas*, Plaut. Men. iii. 3. 9. *Aiēbat*, Cic. Verr. iii. 18. Plur. [*Aiēbamus*, Diomed. p. 371. Putsch.] *Aiēbātis*, Plaut. Capt. iii. 5. 18. *Aiēbant*, Salluſt. Cat. c. 49. [*Aiēbant*, Accius ap. Priscian. x. p. 906.]—Perf. Sing. [*Ai*, Prob. Gram. p. 1482. *Aiſti*, idem. ibid. et Auguſtin. Epist. 54. et 174. *Ait*, Prob. ibid. Plur. *Aiſtis*, Gramm. *Aiērunt*, Tertul. de Fug. in Perſec. c. 6.]

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Aias*, Plaut. Rud. ii. 4. 14. *Aiat*, Cic. de Fin. ii. 22. Plur. [*Aiēmus*, Priscian. i. 1.] *Aiant*, Apul. Apol. p. 448.

IMPERAT. *Ai*, Nev. ap. Priscian. x. p. 906. et Plant. Truc. v. 49.

PARTICIP. *Aiens*, Cic. Top. c. 11. et Apul. Met. vi. p. 118.

The Infinitive *Aiēre*, occurs in St. Auguſtin, de Trinit. ix. 10. '*Aiē*', do you ſay ſo? Plaut. Amph. i. 1. 188. Apul. Met. i. p. 6. The ancients wrote, *Aito, aiſis, aiſit*. See Quintil. i. 4. Voſſ. Etym. Lat. p. 132. and Anal. iii. p. 140.

§ 206. IND. Pres. Sing. *Inquis*, Catul. x. 37. or *Inquam*, Cic. Phil. II. 44. *Inquit*, Hor. I. 4. 78. *Inquit*, Nepos Alcibi. c. 8. *Inquisimus*, Hor. I. Sat. 2. 66. *Inquistis*, Arnob. II. p. 44. *Inquiunt*, Cic. Verr. VI. 14.—Imp. Sing. *Inquidbat*, al. *Inquibat*, Cic. Top. 12. Plur. [*Inquibant*, Grammatici].—Fut. Sing. *Inquies*, Catull. XXIV. 7. *Inquiet*, Cic. Verr. IV. 18.—Perf. Sing. *Inquisti*, Cic. de Orat. II. 64. *Inquit*, Cic. pro Cluent. c. 34.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Inquiat*, Auct. ad Heren. IV. 3.

IMPERAT. Sing. *Inquē*, Terent. Heaut. IV. 7. 1. *Inquēto*, Plaut. Aulul. IV. 10. 58. Rud. V. 2. 55.

PARTICIP. [*Inquiens*, Grammatici.]

*Inquis*, according to Priscian, lib. x. is of the third Conj. but according to Diomed. I. p. 375. of the fourth. *Inquit* occurs in some edd. of Catull. x. 14. and *Inqui* ibid. vs. 27. *Inquit* and *Inquam* are of frequent occurrence. Vid. Voss. Etym. Lat. p. 133. and Anal. III. 40.

§ 207. INFIN. *Fārē*, Horat. IV. Od. 6. 18. *Fārier*, Virg. Æn. XI. 242.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Fātur*, he speaks, Val. Flac. III. 616. Virg. Æn. I. 131. et passim. *Fātur*, is spoken, Sueton. ap. Priscian. VIII. p. 793.—Fut. *Fābor*, Propert. IV. 4. 1. *Fābitur*, Gell. xv. 6.

SUBJ. Imp. *Fārer*, St. August. Conf. I. 8.

IMPERAT. *Fāre*, Virg. Æn. V. 389. et passim. *Fāmāno*, Cato R. R. c. 141.

PARTICIP. Pres. *Fans*, Plaut. Pers. II. 1. 7. Propert. III. 5. 19.—Perf. *Fātus*, Virg. Æn. II. 323. et passim.—Fut. in *-dus*, *Fandus*, Pacuv. ap. Cic. de Divin. I. 31.

GERUNDS. *Fandī*, Virg. Æn. X. 225. et passim. *Fando*, in or by speaking, Stat. Theb. I. 655. *Fando*, by report, by hearsay, Cic. Nat. Deor. I. 29.

SUPINE: *Fātu*, Virg. Æn. XII. 25.

*Fēr* and *Fāris* do not occur in the classics, although cited by Diomed. I. p. 375. and by Priscian. VIII. p. 791. Neither does, *Dor*, nor the Subjunctives *Fēr*, *Der*. Similarly defective are the Compounds *Affāri*, *Effāri*, *Profāri*.

§ 208. IMPERAT. Sing. and Plur. *Apāgē*, is considered by some as an Interjection. *Apāgēte* is found in Oudenstorp's ed. of Apul. Met. I. p. 13. Elmenh. also in Cic. Fam. V. 10. Terent. Eun. V. 2. 65. Plaut. Cas. II. 8. 24. Amph. II. 1. 82. where the best Mss. and most edd. have *Apāgē te*. See Fasciati's Lat. Lex.

§ 209. INFIN. *Avēre*, Martial, I. 109. III. 5.

IMPERAT. Sing. *Ave*, Martial, III. 95. et passim. *Avēto*, Sallust. Cat. c. 35. Plur. *Avēte*, Grut. Inscr. p. 735. n. 6. Sueton. Claud. c. 21.

The Eton and other grammars add *Avēlōte* for which there is no authority. Some write *Hāvē*, *hāvēre*, &c. Quintil. Inst. I. 6. finds fault with many learned men of his day for writing and saying *Apēte*, with the second syllable long, in place of *Hāvēte*, with an aspiration and the second syll. short.—The Verb *Aveo*, I covet, is complete.

§ 210. INFIN. *Salvāre*, Plaut. Rud. I. 5. 5. Petron. c. 98.

IND. Fut. *Salvābis* (for *Salve*) Cic. Att. VI. 2.

IMPERAT. Sing. *Salve*, Virg. Geo. II. 173. Æn. XI. 97. et passim. *Salvāto*, Plaut. Rud. II. 4. 3. Men. V. 9. 17. Plur. *Salvēte*, Plaut. Trin. III. 2. 39.

*Salvo* is humorously put in the mouth of a clown by Plautus, Truc. II. 2. 4. To the Defectives *Ave* and *Salve*, some add *Vāle*, *vālēte*, *vālēbis*, *vālēte*; but these come from *Vāleo*, I am well.

§ 211. SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Ausim*, Virg. Ecl. III. 32. et passim; *Ausis*, Fest. et Lactant. de Pass. Dom. vs. 66. where some read *Ausēris*; *Ausit*, Stat. Theb. XII. 101. Achil. I. 544. Plur. *Ausint*, Stat. Theb. XI. 126. See Voss. de Anal. III. 41. p. 124.

§ 212. IMPERAT. Sing. *Cēdō*, Cic. de Orat. c. 86. et passim. Plur. *Cette*, Plaut. Merc. v. 4. 4. Enn. ap. Non. II. 122. Accius, ibid.

*Cēdō* is used in the Plur. Cic. Senect. c. 6. *Cette* is a contraction of *Cēdite*, which last some cite from the Fragm. of Plautus, p. 1216. ed. Gronov., but it is very uncertain.

§ 213. INFIN. *Confiteri*, Cæs. B. G. VII. 58.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Confit*, Lucr. IV. 292. Terent. Adelph. v. 8. 23. Plur. *Confiant*, Arnob. VI. p. 219.—Fut. Sing. *Confiet*, Lucr. III. 413.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Confiat*, Colum. I. 8. Imp. Sing. *Confiteret*, Liv. v. 50. Cic. ad Att. IX. 8. VIII. 15. Liv. v. 50. Plur. *Conficerent*, Arnob. II. p. 73.

§ 214. INFIN. *Defteri*, Terent. Hecyr. v. 2. 1. Liv. IX. 11.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Defit*, Virg. Ecl. II. 22. et passim; Plur. *Defiant*, Gell. XX. 8.—Fut. Sing. *Defiet*, Liv. IX. 11. ubi al. *Deficiet*.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Defiat*, Plaut. Men. I. 4. 3. Rud. IV. 4. 63.

§ 215. INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Infat*, Virg. Æn. v. 708. Lucr. III. 516. et passim; Plur. *Infiant*. Mart. Capell. II. in fin.

*Infio*, Varr. ap. Priscian. VIII. p. 818. '*Inse, ap̄ai*, i. e. incipe,' in Glossis. Some to these add *Explicit*, it is finished.

§ 216. INDIC. Pres. Sing. [*Ovas*, Grammatici:] *Ovat*, Val. Flac. II. 506. IV. 342. Virg. Æn. x. 500.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Ovet*, Stat. Sylv. IV. 1. 8.—Past-imp. Sing. *Ovāret*, Gell. VI. 7.

PARTICIP. *Ovans*, Liv. v. 31. Cic. de Orat. c. 47. et passim. *Ovātus*, Persius, II. 55. *Ovāturus*, Solin. cap. 45—57.

GERUND. *Ovandi*, Sueton. Claud. c. 1. Gell. v. 6. 5.

§ 217. INFIN. *Quasere*, Plaut. Bacch. II. 2. 1.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Quæso*, Terent. Eun. III. 2. 13. *Quæsit*, Lucr. v. 1229. Plur. *Quæsumus*, Sil. XVI. 250. et passim.

IMPERAT. *Quæse*, Plaut. ap. Non. I. 213. IV. 39.

PARTICIP. *Quæsens*, Apul. Met. IV. p. 70. Elmenh.

*Quæsio*, given in some grammars, does not occur in the classics. *Quæsi*, Perf. Priscian, x. p. 505. ed. Krehl. *Quæsivit*, Sallust. ap. Priscian. ibid. who says that *Quæsivi* is a perfect common to *Quæso* and *Quæro*.

§ 218. INDIC. Fut. Sing. *Faxo*, for *fāciam*, or *fēcēro*, Virg. Æn. IX. 158. et passim.

SUBJ. Perf. Sing. *Faxim*, for *fēcērim*, Plaut. Amph. I. 3. 13. et passim; *Faxis*, Terent. Andr. IV. 4. 14. *Faxit*, Cic. de Leg. II. 8. *Faximus*, Plaut. Truc. I. 1. 40. Plur. *Faxitis*, Liv. XXIX. 27. *Faxint*, Terent. Heaut. I. 1. 9. et passim.—Imp. *Faxim*, for *fācērem*, or *fēcisse*, Plaut. Pseud. I. 5. 84.

§ 219. These three, *Odi*, *Copi*, and *Mēmīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification; thus,

*Odi*, I hate, or have hated, *odēram*, *odērim*, *odissem*, *odēro*, *odisse*. Participles *osus*, *osurus*; *exosus*, *perosus*.



*Cœpi*, I begin, or have begun, *cœpëram*, -ërim, -issem, -ëro, -isse. Supine, *cœptus*. Participles, *cœptus*, *cœpturus*.

*Mēmīni*, I remember, or have remembered, *meminëram*, -ërim, -issem, -ëro, -isse. Imperative, *memento*, *mementôte*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *osus sum*: and always *exôsus*, *perôsus sum*, and not *exôdi*, *perôdi*. We say, *opus cœpit fieri*, or *cœptum est*.

The following forms also occur: *Odio*, C. Gracch. ap. Fest. *Odivit*, Cic. Phil. XIII. 19. *Odiit*, Tertul. de An. c. 10. *Odiēs*, Tertul. adv. Marc. iv. 35. *Osus sum*, Plaut. Amph. III. 2. 19. Gell. iv. 18. *Osûrus*, Cic. de Amic. c. 16. *Odiendi*, Apul. de D. Plat. III. p. 631. *Odiens*, Petron. c. 132. *Odientes*, Tertul. adv. Marc. iv. 16. *Odërem et Odëre*, infin. Charis. III. p. 228. *Oditur*, Tertul. Apol. III. in fin. *Odîremur*, Hieronym. Epist. 43.—*Cœpio*, Plaut. Men. v. 5. 57. *Cœpiam*, Cato ap. Fest. *Cœpiat*, Plaut. Truc. II. 1. 23. *Cœpëret*, Terent. An. III. 3. 43. edd. Rivii, Faërm. et Bothe; sic. codd. Bentl. Bæcl. et Donat. et Priscian. x. p. 879. *Cœpërit* al. *Cœpëre*, Plaut. Pers. I. 3. 41. *Cœptus est*, Cæs. B. G. IV. 18. *Cœpturus*, Quintil. x. 1. Plin. N. H. XVI. 25. Cf. Cæcil. ap. Non. II. 159.—*Mēmīnens*, Liv. ap. Priscian. XI. p. 922. Auson. Prof. II. 4. Sidon. II. 10. ad. fin. IV. 12. VI. 3. VII. 6.

Some to the *Defective Verbs* add *Nôvi*, I know; but this is the Perfect of *Nosco*, I am learning. See Voss. Anal. III. 39.

§ 219<sup>1</sup>. Forem, es, et, —ent, sub. imp. 'I should be;' and *Fore*, inf. to be hereafter,' same as *futurum esse*.

## § 220. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any person or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs, in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *dilectat*, it delights; *dëcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *ëvenit*, it happens.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Ind.	PR. Delectat, IMP. Delectäbat, PER. Delectävërat, PLU. Delectavërat, FUT. Delectäbit.	Dëcet, Decëbat, Decuit, Decuërat, Decäbit.	Contingit, Contingëbat, Contigît, Contigërat, Continget.	Evënit, Eveniëbat, Evënit, Evenërat, Eveniet.
Sub.	PR. Delectet, IMP. Delectäret, PER. Delectävërit, PLU. Delectavisset, FUT. Delectävërit.	Dëceat, Decëret, Decuërit, Decuisset, Decuërit.	Contingat, Contingëret, Contigërit, Contigisset, Contigërit.	Eveniat, Eveniret, Evenërit, Evenisset, Evenërit.
Inf.	PR. Delectäre. PER. Delectavisse.	Decëre. Decuisse.	Contingëre. Contigisse.	Evenire. Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnätur*, *fävëtur*, *currëtur*, *veniëtur*: from *pugno*, to fight; *faveo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come.

Ind.	PR. Pugnätur, IMP. Pugnabätur, PER. Pugnätum est, PLU. Pugnätum erat, FUT. Pugnabätur.	Fävëtur, Fävëbätur, Fautum est, Fautum erat, Fävëbitur.	Currëtur, Currebätur, Cursum est, Cursum erat, Currëtur.	Vënëtur, Veniebätur, Ventum est, Ventum erat, Veniëtur.
------	--	---	--	---

Sub. Pr.	Pugnētur,	Favētur,	Currātur,	Veniātur.
Impr.	Pugnārētur,	Favērētur,	Currērētur,	Venirētur,
Præ.	Pugnātum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
Pluv.	Pugnātum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
Fut.	Pugnātum fuērit.	Fautum fuērit.	Cursum fuērit.	Ventum fuērit.

Inf. Pr.	Pugnāri.	Favēri.	Curri.	Veniri.
Præ.	Pugnātum esse.	Fautum esse.	Cursum esse.	Ventum esse.
Fut.	Pugnātum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative; but instead of that we use the subjunctive; as, *delectet*, let it delight; &c. nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pēnitens, -dum, -dus, &c.* *Indūci aut pudendum et pigendum.* Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dēcet*, it becomes; *pēnitet*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *misēret*, it pities; *piget*, it irketh; *pūdet*, it shameth; *licet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *lūbet*, it pleaseth; *taedet*, it wearieth; *liquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *misēret*, *miseruit*, or *miserum est*; *piget*, *piguit*, or *pigitum est*; *pūdet*, *pudivit*, or *puditum est*; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *taedet*, *taeduit*, *tasum est*, *ostēder*, *perlasum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

In the first, *Jūvat*, *spectat*, *vīcat*, *stat*, *constat*, *præstat*, *restat*, &c.

In the second, *Apparet*, *attinet*, *perfinet*, *dēbet*, *dēbet*, *nācet*, *lūlet*, *liquet*, *placet*, *plācet*, *displacet*, *sēdet*, *sōlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accidit*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *sufficit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convēnit*, *expēdit*, &c.

Also, irregular verbs, *Est*, *obest*, *prōdest*, *pōtest*, *intērest*, *supērest*; *fi*, *præfiri*, *nāquit*, and *nāquitur*, *subit*, *confert*, *rēfert*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgūrat*, *fulminat*, *tōnat*, *grandīnat*, *gēlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lucēscit*, *advesperācit*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mihi, tibi, illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; or I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So, *Curratur, venitur a me, a te, &c.* I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally, or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus, we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So we can say, *multa hominū contingunt*, many things happen to a man; but instead of *ego contigi esse domi*, we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mihi contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

## § 221. REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called REDUNDANT VERBS, which have different forms to express the same sense. Some are *Redundant* 1. in Signification; as, *Criminor*, 'I blame or I am blamed;' 2. in Termination; as, *Fabrīco*

and *Fabricor*, 'I frame;' 3. In Conjugation; as, *Lavo*, *lavāre*, and *Lavo*, *lavēre*, 'I wash;' 4. in Tenses; as, *Suesco*, 'I am accustomed,' Perf. *Suēvi* and *Suetus sum*.

§ 222. Verbs of the same signification used in different Conjugations:

*Cio*, *ēs*, \**Cio*, *is*, ..... *stir up*.  
*Claudo*, *is*, *Claudeo*, *ēs*, ..... *be blame*.  
 \**Denseo*, *ēs*, \**Denseo*, *ās*, ..... *thicken*.  
*Excello*, *is*, *Excelleo*, *ēs*, ..... *excel*.  
 \**Ferveo*, *ēs*, \**Fervo*, *is*, ..... *be hot*.  
*Fodio*, *is*, *Fodio*, *is*, ..... *dig*.  
 \**Fulgeo*, *ēs*, *Fulgo*, *is*, ..... *shine*.  
*Lāvo*, *ās*, *Lāvo*, *is*, ..... *wash*.

*Līno*, *is*, *Līnio*, *is*, ..... *anoint*.  
 \**Nexo*, *ās*, \**Nexo*, *is*, ..... *knit*.  
 \**Oleo*, *ēs*, *Olo*, *is*, ..... *smell*.  
 \**Scāteo*, *ēs*, \**Scato*, *is*, ..... *abound*.  
 \**Strideo*, *ēs*, *Strido*, *is*, ..... *creek*.  
*Tergeo*, *ēs*, *Tergo*, *is*, ..... *wipe*.  
*Tueor*, *ēris*, *Tuor*, *ēris*, .. *behold, protect*.

§ 223. Verbs spelt alike, or nearly alike, but differing in sound or signification:

*Abdico*, *ās*, ..... *abdicate*.  
*Abdico*, *is*, ..... *refuse*.  
 \**Accido*, *is*, ..... *happen*.  
*Accido*, *is*, ..... *cut short*.  
*Addo*, *is*, ..... *add*.  
*Adeo*, *is*, ..... *go to*.  
*Aggēro*, *ās*, ..... *heap up*.  
*Aggēro*, *is*, ..... *lay in a heap*.  
*Allēgo*, *ās*, ..... *plead, send*.  
*Allēgo*, *is*, ..... *choose*.  
*Apello*, *ās*, ..... *call*.  
*Apello*, *is*, ..... *drive, land*.  
 \**Cādo*, *is*, ..... *fall*.  
*Cādo*, *is*, ..... *beat*.  
*Cēdo*, *is*, ..... *yield*.  
 \**Cāleo*, *ēs*, ..... *be hot*.  
 \**Calleo*, *ēs*, ..... *be hard*.  
 \**Cāno*, *is*, ..... *sing*.  
 \**Cāneo*, *ēs*, ..... *be while*.  
 \**Cāreo*, *ēs*, ..... *want*.  
 \**Cāro*, *is*, ..... *card wool*.  
*Cēlo*, *ās*, ..... *conceal*.  
*Cālo*, *as*, ..... *carve*.  
*Censeo*, *ēs*, ..... *think*.  
*Sentio*, *is*, ..... *feel*.  
*Claudo*, *is*, ..... *shut*.  
 \**Clando*, *is*, ..... *be lame*.  
*Colligo*, *ās*, ..... *tie together*.  
*Colligo*, *is*, ..... *collect*.  
*Cūlo*, *ās*, ..... *strain*.  
*Cōlo*, *is*, ..... *till, deck*.  
*Compello*, *ās*, ..... *accost*.  
*Compello*, *is*, ..... *force*.  
*Concido*, *is*, ..... *chop off*.  
 \**Concido*, *is*, ..... *fall*.  
*Conscendo*, *is*, ..... *climb*.  
*Conscindo*, *is*, ..... *cut in pieces*.  
*Consterno*, *ās*, ..... *terrify*.  
*Consterno*, *is*, ..... *strew over*.  
 \**Dācido*, *is*, ..... *fall down*.

*Dēcido*, *is*, ..... *cut off*.  
*Dēscipio*, *is*, ..... *deceive*.  
 \**Dēsāpio*, *is*, ..... *dote*.  
*Dēligo*, *ās*, ..... *tie up*.  
*Dēligo*, *is*, ..... *choose*.  
*Dīligo*, *is*, ..... *love*.  
*Dico*, *is*, ..... *say*.  
*Dīco*, *ās*, ..... *dedicate*.  
*Edo*, *is*, ..... *eat*.  
*Edo*, *is*, ..... *speak, publish*.  
*Edūco*, *ās*, ..... *educate*.  
*Edūco*, *is*, ..... *draw out*.  
*Effēro*, *ās*, ..... *make wild*.  
*Effēro*, *effers*, ..... *carry off, lift up*.  
 \**Excido*, *is*, ..... *fall out*.  
*Excido*, *is*, ..... *cut off*.  
 \**Fērio*, *is*, ..... *strike*.  
*Fēro*, *fers*, ..... *bear*.  
*Fērior*, *āris*, ..... *keep holiday*.  
 \**Frigeo*, *ēs*, ..... *be cold*.  
*Frigo*, *is*, ..... *fry*.  
*Fūgo*, *ās*, ..... *put to flight*.  
 \**Fugio*, *is*, ..... *fly*.  
*Fundo*, *ās*, ..... *found*.  
*Fundo*, *is*, ..... *pour out*.  
 \**Incido*, *is*, ..... *fall into*.  
*Incido*, *is*, ..... *cut*.  
*Indīco*, *ās*, ..... *show*.  
*Indīco*, *is*, ..... *proclaim*.  
*Inficio*, *is*, ..... *infect*.  
*Infutior*, *āris*, ..... *deny*.  
 \**Intercido*, *is*, ..... *happen*.  
*Intercido*, *is*, ..... *cut asunder*.  
*Jāceo*, *ēs*, ..... *lie, lie down*.  
*Jācio*, *is*, ..... *throw*.  
 \**Lābo*, *ās*, ..... *totter*.  
*Lābor*, *ēris*, ..... *slip, glide*.  
 \**Lacto*, *ās*, ..... *suckle, suck*.  
 \**Lacto*, *ās*, ..... *deceive*.  
 \**Lacteo*, *ēs*, ..... *grow milky*.

Lāgo, ās, ..... send.  
 Lāgo, īs, ..... gather, read.  
 Līceo, ēs, ..... be lawful.  
 Līceo, ēris, ..... bid for.  
 Līquo, ās, ..... melt.  
 \*Līqueo, ēs, become liquid, be manifest.  
 \*Līquo, ēris, ..... melt.  
 \*Māno, ās, ..... flow.  
 \*Māneo, ēs, ..... stay.  
 Mando, ās, ..... deliver.  
 Mando, īs, ..... eat.  
 Mēto, īs, ..... mow, reap.  
 Mētor, āris, ..... measure.  
 Mētor, īris, ..... measure.  
 Mētuo, īs, ..... fear.  
 Mīsēror, āris, ..... pity.  
 Mīsēreor, ēris, ..... pity.  
 Mōror, āris, ..... delay.  
 \*Mōror, āris, ..... play the fool.  
 Mōrior, ēris, ..... die.  
 \*Nīcto, ās, ..... wink.  
 Nīcto, īs, ..... open as a hound.  
 \*Nīteo, ēs, ..... glitter.  
 Nītor, ēris, ..... stride.  
 Obsēro, ēs, ..... lock up.  
 Obsēro, īs, ..... sow, plant.  
 \*Occīdo, īs, ..... fall.  
 Occīdo, īs, ..... kill.  
 Opērio, īs, ..... cover.  
 \*Oppērior, īris, ..... wait for.  
 Operor, āris, ..... work.  
 Pando, ās, ..... bend, bow.  
 Pando, īs, ..... open, spread.  
 Pāro, ās, ..... prepare.  
 \*Pāreo, ēs, ..... appear.  
 Pārio, īs, ..... beget.  
 \*Pārio, ās, ..... balance.  
 \*Pādo, īs, ..... πᾶνδω.  
 Pēdo, āre, ..... prop up.

\*Pendeo, ēs, ..... hang.  
 Pendo, īs, ..... weigh.  
 Percōlo, ās, ..... filter.  
 Percōlo, īs, ..... adorn.  
 \*Permāneo, ēs, ..... remain.  
 \*Permāno, ās, ..... flow over.  
 Prædīco, ās, ..... publish.  
 Prædīco, īs, ..... foretell.  
 Prælēgo, ās, ..... bequeath in the first place.  
 Prælēgo, īs, ..... read to one.  
 Prōdo, īs, ..... betray.  
 \*Prūdeo, ēs, ..... come forth.  
 \*Rēcēdo, īs, ..... retire.  
 \*Rēcīdo, īs, ..... fall back.  
 Rēcīdo, īs, ..... cut off.  
 Reddo, īs, ..... restore.  
 \*Redeo, īs, ..... return.  
 Rēfēro, refers, ..... bring back.  
 \*Rēfērio, īs, ..... strike again.  
 Rēlēgo, ās, ..... remove.  
 Rēlēgo, īs, ..... read over.  
 Sēdo, ās, ..... allay.  
 \*Sēdeo, ēs, ..... sit.  
 \*Sīdo, īs, ..... sink.  
 \*Sēro, īs, ..... sow.  
 Sēro, īs, ..... knit, join.  
 Sēro, ās, ..... lock, bolt.  
 \*Succīdo, īs, ..... fall down.  
 Succīdo, īs, ..... cut down.  
 \*Vādo, īs, ..... go, walk.  
 Vādor, āris, ..... give bail.  
 \*Vēneo, īs, ..... be sold.  
 \*Vēnio, īs, ..... come.  
 Vēnor, āris, ..... hunt.  
 Vincio, īs, ..... bind.  
 Vinco, īs, ..... conquer.  
 Vōlo, ās, ..... fly, hasten.  
 \*Vōlo, vīs, ..... be willing.

### § 224. Verbs having the same Perfect:

\*Aceo, ācui, ..... be sharp.  
 Cresco, crēvi, ..... grow.  
 \*Fulgeo, fulsi, ..... shine.  
 \*Lūceo, luxi, ..... shine.  
 Mulceo, mulsi, ..... soothe.  
 \*Pāveo, pāvi, ..... fear.  
 \*Pendeo, pēpendi, ..... hang.

Acuo, ācui, ..... sharpen.  
 Cerno, crēvi, ..... take possession.  
 Fulcio, fulsi, ..... prop.  
 \*Lūgeo, luxi, ..... mourn.  
 \*Mulgeo, mulsi, ..... milk.  
 Pasco, pāvi, ..... feed.  
 Pendo, pēpendi, ..... weigh.

To these add *Sto*, *Sisto*, and some of their Compounds.

### § 225. Verbs having the same Perfect Participle:

Cerno, crētus, ..... sift.  
 Cresco, crētus, ..... grow.  
 Pāciscor, pactus, ..... bargain.  
 Pango, pactus, ..... lay a wager.  
 Pango, pactus, ..... feast.

Pando, passus, ..... expand.  
 Pātor, passus, ..... suffer.  
 Verge, versus, ..... cackles.  
 Verro, versus, ..... brush.  
 Verto, versus, ..... turn.

## DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

§ 226. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as,

*Cæno*, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapido*, to throw stones; *opëror*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel; &c. from *cæna*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patrisso*, *Græcor*, *bûbûla*, *cornicor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father a Grecian, an owl, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *bubo*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

§ 227. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *âtû* into *itû*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamitû*, to cry frequently; *terreo*, *terrû*; *verto*, *versû*; *dormio*, *dormitû*.

1. In like manner, Deponent verbs form *Frequentatives* in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minûtor*, to threaten frequently.

2. Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato*, from *no*; *noscitû*, from *nosco*, *scitor*, or rather *sciscitor*, from *scio*; *pavitû*, from *paveo*; *sector*, from *sequor*; *loquitûr*, from *loquor*. So, *quæritû*, *funditû*, *agitû*, *fluitû*, &c.

3. From *Frequentative* verbs are also formed other *Frequentatives*; as, *curro*, *curatû*, *curatitû*; *pello*, *pulsû*, *pulsitû*, or by contraction *pultû*; *capio*, *capitû*, *capititû*; *cano*, *cantû*, *cantitû*; *defendo*, *defensû*, *defensitû*; *dico*, *dictû*, *dictitû*; *gero*, *gestû*, *gestitû*; *jacio*, *jactû*, *jactitû*; *venio*, *ventû*, *ventitû*; *mutio*, *musso*, (for *mutitû*), *musstitû*, &c.

4. Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

§ 228. *INCEPTIVE* Verbs mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person singular of the present of the indicative, by adding *eo*; as, *caleo*, to be hot; *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labasco*, from *labo*; *tremasco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hiſco*, from *hio*, is contracted for *hiaseo*. *Inceptives* are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvênis*.

All *Inceptives* are neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

§ 229. *DESIDERATIVE* Verbs signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *cænâtûrio*, I desire to sup, from *cænâtû*.

They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *ēsūrio, -īvi, -itum*, to desire to eat; *par-tūrio, -īvi*,—to be in travail; *nuptūrio, -īvi, —*, to desire to be married.

2. There are a few verbs in *LLO*, which are called *DIMINUTIVE*; as, *cantillo, sorbillo, -āre*, I sing, I sup a little. To these some add *albīco*, and *candico, -are*, to be, or to grow whitish; also, *nigrīco, fodico*, and *vellico*. 3. Some verbs in *SSO* are called *Intensive*; as, *Capesso, facesso, petesso*, or *petisso*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

4. Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of the simple verbs are not in use; as *Fūto, fendo, specio, gruo*, &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeo*, for *pro-eo*; or taken away; as, *asporto, omillo, tradō, pejero, pergo, debeo, prabeo*, &c. for *absporto, obmitto, transō, perjero, perrēgo, dehideo, prahideo*, &c. So, *demo, promo, sumo*, of *de, pro, sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified, *to take, or to take away*. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition is changed; as, *damno, con-demno; calco, conculco; laedo, collido; audio, obedio*, &c. *Affero, aufero, collauda-implico*, &c. for *adfero, abfero, concludo, implico*, &c.

## § 230. REMARKS ON THE VERB.

Rem. 1. A *VERB* has been defined as a word which signifies *doing, suffering, or being*. It would have been more simple and much more intelligible to have said, *A verb is that part of speech which MENTIONS SOME ACT, EVENT, or CIRCUMSTANCE of or concerning PERSONS, PLACES, THINGS, or IDEAS*; as, *Cæsar vicit*, Cæsar conquered; *Rōma ruit*, Rome falls; *Argentum splendet*, silver shines; *Prōbitas laudatur et alget*, honesty is praised and starves. A Verb being the most essential word in a sentence, and without which a sentence cannot subsist, any word that, placed after the names of Persons, Places, Things, or Ideas, will make full sense, is a Verb. An English Verb may be known by its making sense with the words *he will*, or *it shall*, placed before it; as, *He will conquer, It shall fall*.

Rom. 2. The letters which precede the Infinitive terminations, *-āre, -ēre, -īre*, are called *Radicals*, and always remain unchanged. Thus, *Am* is the radical part of *Amāre*; *Mōn* of *Mōnēre*; *Rēg* of *Rēgēre*; *Aud* of *Audire*. By prefixing the radicals to the changeable parts, or terminations, which are the same in all Verbs of a similar Conjugation, every person of the simple Tenses of a regular Verb may be formed with the greatest facility.

Rem. 3. Verbs seem to have had but one uncontracted Conjugation originally. At present there are four Conjugations; one uncontracted in *-ēre*, as *Lēgēre*; and three contracted in (*āre*) *-āre*, as *Amāre*; in (*ēre*) *-ēre*, as *Mōnēre*; and in (*īre*) *-īre*, as *Audire*. Charis. lib. II. and some other ancient grammarians admit of but three Conjugations; and Vossius de Anal. III. 33. shows the fourth to be a mere contraction of the third.

Rem. 4. The Participles in *-rus* and *-dus* in the Future Infinitive and the Perfect Participle in the Past Infinitive Passive are used only in the Nom. and Accus. but in all Genders and Numbers; as, *Amātūrus, -a, -um, esse; Amatur-um, -am, -um, esse; Amatur-i, -æ, -a esse; Amatur-os, -as, -a esse; Amatur-us, -a, -um fuisse; Amatur-um, -am, -um fuisse*, &c. *Amāt-us, -a, -um esse; Amat-um, -am, -um esse; Amat-i, -æ, -a esse*, &c. In the Future Infinitive Passive the termination *-um* of the Supine remains always unchanged. The Past Infinitive Passive seems to have been anciently of no certain Gender. In Plautus, Amph. Prol. 33. we read, *Justam rem et facilem esse oratum a vobis volo*; and in Cic. Att. VIII. 18. *Cohortes ad nos missum facias*. The Neuter of the Future in *-rus* is found construed in the same manner. See Cic. II. Ver. v. 65. Aul. Gell. I. 7. Lambin. ad Plaut. Casin. III. 5. 37. Jan. Gulielm. Quæst. Plaut. p. 4. Voss. de Anal. III. 16. Perizon. ad Sanct. Min. I. 15. p. 125.

Rem. 5. To the Present Infinitive Passive the syllable *-er* was occasionally added by the early poets; as, *Amārier* for *Amari*; *Fārier* for *Fāri*. So *Diēter*, Pers. Sat. i. 28.

Rem. 6. The Future Infinitive Active occurs sometimes in *-ssere*; as, *Expugnassere*, Plaut. Amph. i. 1. 55. *Impetrassere*, Aul. iv. 7. 6. *Casin*. ii. 3. 53. *Mil*. iv. 3. 35. *Stich*. i. 2. 23. *Pæconciliassere*, Capt. i. 2. 65.

Rem. 7. The Perfect Infinitive Active is frequently contracted; the syllable *vi* is omitted before *s*; as, *Amasse*, *Complesse*, *Nosse*, *Isse*, &c. Also, *Cesse*, Lucr. i. 1104. *Consumse*, i. 234. *Divisse*, Hor. ii. Sat. 3. 169. *Dize*, Non. v. 17. *Produze*, Ter. Ad. iv. 2. 22. *Prömissee*, Catul. cx. 5. *Subduze*, Varr., &c. In the 4th Conj. *vi* or *v* only is omitted; as, *Perisse*, Plaut. Capt. iii. 5. 35. *Pertisse*, Aul. ii. 4. 21. A similar contraction takes place in the Perfects of the Indicative and Subjunctive; *vi* is dropped before *s*, and *ve* before *r*. Of Perfects in *-ovi*, *Növi* and *Mövi* alone admit of contraction. Also, *Dixi* and *Dixis*, Cic. pro Cæcin. c. 29. Quintil. ix. 3. Terent. And. iii. 1. 1. Gell. vii. 17. *Accessi*, Virg. Æn. i. 205.

Rem. 8. The Imperfect Indicative in the 4th Conj. anciently ended in *-ibam*, and the Future in *-ibo*; thus, *Sciöb*, Plaut. Asin. i. 1. 13. Most. iv. 3. 5. Truc. ii. 6. 69. *Servöbas*, Ter. And. i. 1. 11. Plaut. Capt. ii. 1. 50. *Custödiöbam*, Catull. lxiv. 319. *Vestibät*, Virg. Æn. viii. 160. *Expödiöb*, Plaut. Truc. i. 2. 36. *Largöbère*, Bacch. iv. 7. 30. *Servöb*, Terent. Hec. iii. 5. 45. *Mölibü*, Hor. iii. Od. 23. 19. *Reddöbitur*, Plaut. Epid. i. 1. 22. &c. &c.

Rem. 9. The termination *-ère* in the third Person Plur. Perf. Indicative is not so usual as that in *-erunt*, especially in prose.

Rem. 10. In the second Person Sing. of the Present Indic. Passive the termination *-re* for *-ris* is rare. In Cicero *-re* for *-ris* in the Imperfect and Future Indicative, and the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, occurs frequently.

Rem. 11. The Present Subjunctive anciently ended in *-im*; as, *Duim*, *Duis*, *Duät*, *Duunt* for *Dem*, *Des*, &c. *Perduim*, *is*, *it*, *int*, for *Perdam*, *as*, &c. Vid. Plaut. Amph. ii. 2. 215. Aul. i. 1. 23. iv. 6. 6. Terent. Andr. iv. 1. 42. Cic. Cat. i. 9. Att. xv. 4. Deiot. c. 7. Liv. x. 19. xxii. 10, &c. We also find such forms as *Perduunt*, Plaut. Rud. Prol. 24. *Creduis*, Amph. ii. 2. 40. Capt. iii. 4. 73. Truc. ii. 2. 52. *Creduam*, *as*, *at*, Plaut. Pæn. iii. 5. 2. Trin. iii. Bacch. iv. 8. 6. *Siem*, *es*, *et*, for *Süm*, &c. Plaut. Amph. Prol. 57. Lucr. ii. 1078. Terent. Eun. i. 1. 21. *Fuät*, for *sü*, Virg. Æn. x. 108.

Rem. 12. The Future Subj. in a few instances occurs in *-ssö*, and the Perfect Subjunctive in *-ssim*; thus, *Lévasso*, Cic. de Senect. c. 1. *Abjürassit*, Plaut. Pers. iv. 3. 9. *Invidassitis*, Rud. iii. 5. 31. *Irritassis*, Amph. i. 1. 298. Pers. v. 2. 47. *Stich*. ii. 2. 21. *Servassint*, Asin. iii. 3. 64. *Casin*, iii. 5. 16. *Pseud*. i. 1. 35. *Servassit*, Cistel. iv. 2. 76. *Servasso*, Most. i. 3. 71. *Licessit*, Asin. iii. 3. 13. *Pröhibessis*, Plaut. Pseud. i. 1. 11. Cic. de Leg. iii. 3. So *Jusso* for *Jussöro*, Virg. Æn. xi. 467.

Rem. 13. The Imperatives of *Dico*, *Düco*, *Fero*, and *Fäcio*, drop the final *e*; thus, *Dic*, *Düc*, *Fër*, *Fäc*. So *Ingër*, Catull. xxvii. 2. But the Compounds of *Fäcio* retain the *e*; as, *Conficè*, *Perficè*. *Dicè*, *Dücè*, *Fäcè*, occur sometimes in the early poets. Vid. Voss. Gr. p. 131.

Rem. 14. The Present Subjunctive is frequently used for the Imperative; as, *Nè faciäs*, do not do it; and sometimes the Future-Indic.; as, *Nön occidès*, thou shalt not kill. So *Välëbis* and *Vidëbis* in Cic. for *Väle* and *Vide*. The Perfect Subjunctive is used also in the same manner; as, *Tü vidërüs*, see you to it; *Nè dixëris*, do not say it.

Rem. 15. The termination *-mïno* in the second Person Sing. Passive, and *-mïnor*, for *-mëui*, in the Plural, are exceedingly rare. *Arbiträrmïnor*, Plaut. Epid. v. 2. 30. *Progrädärmïnor*, Pseud. iii. 2. 70. *Fämïno* for *Färe*, Cato, R. R. c. 141.

Rem. 16. The third Person in *-to* and *-nte* is used chiefly in law-giving; as, *Ad Divos ðdeunto caste, piëtatem còtunt*, Cic. Leg. ii. 19. Sometimes in the comic writers; as, *Phormiònem læcessito*, Ter. Phorm. v. 7. 38.

Rem. 17. The termination *-ôte* is rare. It occurs in Ennius, Cicero, Ovid, and Plautus. See Voss. Anal. iii. 4.

Rem. 18. The Participle in *-rus*, and the Participle in *-dus* are found joined with most of the tenses of *Sum*. But the Participle in *-rus* does not occur joined with *Fuïro*.

## PARTICIPLE.

§ 231. A Participle is a kind of Adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having in Latin, gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only Participles in *dus*, are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

§ 232. Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *amâtûrus*, about to love; and the perfect and future passive; as, *amâtus*, loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

§ 233. The Latin language has no participle perfect, that is, no participle of a completed action, in the perfect; as, *having written*; nor, in the passive voice, any participle present, that is, one that expresses a state of ~~suffering~~ still going on; as, *being written* (that is, being in the act of being written). The deponent is the only kind of verb which has a participle of completed action; *imitâtus*, 'having imitated.' This defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the pluperfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence; as, *he having loved*; *quum amavisset*, &c.

§ 234. Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sêdens*, *sessûrus*; *stans*, *atûrus*.

From some Neuter verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Errâtus*, *festinâtus*, *jurâtus*, *laborâtus*, *vigilâtus*, *cessâtus*, *sudâtus*, *triumphâtus*, *regnâtus*, *decursus*, *desîtus*, *emerîtus*, *emersus*, *obîtus*, *placîtus*, *successus*, *occûsus*, &c.; and also of the future in *dus*; as, *Jurandus*, *vigilandus*, *regnandus*, *carendus*, *dormiendus*, *erubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle: *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fisus*; *soleo*, *sotens*, and *solûsus*; *vapûlo*, *vapûlans*, and *vapulatûrus*; *Gaudeo*, *gaudens*, *gavisus*, and *gavisûrus*; *Audeo*, *audens*, *ausus*, *ausûrus*, *audendus*. *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes immâne, nefas, ausôque potiti*. Virg. Æn. vi. 624.



§ 235. Deponent and Common Verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

*Loquens*, speaking; *locutūrus*, about to speak; *locūtus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken. *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignatūrus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignātus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominātus*, *conātus*, *confessus*, *adortus*, *amplexus*, *blandītus*, *largītus*, *mentītus*, *obītus*, *testātus*, *venerātus*, &c.

§ 236. There are several Participles, compounded with *in*, signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition; as,

*Insciens*, *inspērans*, *indicens* for *non dicens*, *inopinans* and *necopinans*, *immērens*; *Illarus*, *imprunsus*, *inconsultus*, *incustodītus*, *immetātus*, *impunītus*, *imparātus*, *incomītātus*, *incomptus*, *indemnātus*, *indotātus*, *in corruptus* *interrītus*, and *im perterrītus*, *intestātus*, *inausus*, *inopinātus*, *inultus*, *incensus* for *non census*, not registered; *infectus* for *non factus*; *invisus* for *non visus*; *indictus*, for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo*; *infectus* from *inficio*; *invisus* from *invideo*; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

§ 237. If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

*Amans*, loving, *amantior*, *amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus*; or a substantive; as, *Prefectus*, a commander or governor; *consōnans*, f. sc. *littera*, a consonant; *confīnens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

§ 238. There are many words in *atus*, *itus*, and *utus*, which, although resembling participles, are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs; as, *alātus*, *barbātus*, *cordātus*, *caudātus*, *cristātus*, *aurītus*, *pellātus*, *terrītus*; *astūtus*, *cornūtus*, *nasūtus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *aurātus*, *arātus*, *argenātus*, *ferrātus*, *plumbātus*, *gypsatūs*, *calceātus*, *clypeātus*, *galeātus*, *unicātus*, *larvātus*, *palliātus*, *lymphātus*, *purpurātus*, *prætextātus*, &c., covered with gold, brass, silver, &c., are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistrātus*, frizzled, crisped, or curled; *crinītus*, having long hair; *perītus*, skilled, &c.

§ 239. There is a kind of VERBAL ADJECTIVE ending in *BUNDUS*, formed chiefly from verbs of the first conjugation, which, in its general signification, very much resembles that of the Present Participle, but with the meaning very much strengthened, denoting an abundance or great deal of the action: as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, 'avoiding much'. Sal. Jug. 60, and 101. Liv. xxv. 13. So, *hesitabundus*, 'full of hesitation'; *mirabundus*, 'full of wonder'; *lacrimabundus*, 'weeping profusely'. Few are formed from the third conjugation, *fremebundus*, *gemebundus*, *furibundus*, *moribundus*, *ludibundus*; one from a verb of the second, *pudibundus*; and one from a verb of the fourth, *lascivibundus*.

II. Some Verbal Adjectives in *cundus* have a similar sense; as, *verecundus*, 'full of modesty'; *rubicundus*, 'very ruddy'; *iracundus*, 'full of anger'.

## GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

§ 240. GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the Gerund, *Delector legendo Cicerōnem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Cicerōnis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of Verbs in *-io*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as, *faciundum*, *-di*, *-do*, *-dus*; *experiundum*, *potiundum*, *gerundum*, *potundum*, *ducundum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

§ 241. SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulatum*, *dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem*, or *verberarer*, to be beaten. Plaut.

## ADVERB.

§ 242. An Adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality*, *Manner*, &c.

I. Adverbs denoting **CIRCUMSTANCE** are chiefly those of *Place*, *Time*, and *Order*.

§ 243. 1. Adverbs of *Place* are five-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. *Motion or rest in a place.*

Ubi ?	Where ?
Hic,	Here.
Illic,	} ..... There.
Isthic,	
Ibi,	
Intus,	Within.
Fōris,	Without.
Ubique,	Every where.
Nusquam,	No where.
Alieubi,	Some where.
Alibi,	Else where.
Ubivis,	Any where.
Ibidem,	In the same place.

2. *Motion to a place.*

Quo ?	Whither.
Huc,	Hither.
Iluc,	} ..... Thither.
Istuc,	
Intro,	In.
Fōras,	Out.
Eō,	To that place.
Aliō,	To another place.
Aliquō,	To some place.
Eodem,	To the same place.

3. *Motion towards a place.*

Quovsum ?	Whitherward ?
Versus,	Towards.
Horsum,	Hitherward.

Illorsum,	Thitherward.
Sursum,	Upward.
Deorsum,	Downward.
Antrorsum,	Forward.
Retrorsum,	Backward.
Dextrorsum,	Towards the right.
Sinistrorsum,	Towards the left.

4. *Motion from a place.*

Unde ?	Whence ?
Hinc,	Hence.
Illinc,	} ..... Thence.
Isthinc,	
Inde,	} ..... From the same place.
Indidem,	
Aliunde,	From elsewhere.
Alieunde,	From some place.
Sicunde,	If from any place.
Utrinque,	On both sides.
Sūperne,	From above.
Inferne,	From below.
Cœlitus,	From heaven.
Funditus,	From the ground.

5. *Motion through or by a place.*

Quā ?	Which way ?
Hāc,	This way.
Illac,	} ..... That way.
Istac,	
Aliā,	Another way.

§ 244. Adverbs of *Time* are three-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. *Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.*

Nunc,	Now.
Hōdie,	To-day.
Tunc,	} ..... Then.
Tum,	
Hēri,	Yesterday.
Dūdum,	} ..... Heretofore.
Pridem,	
Pridie,	The day before.
Nūdina tertina,	Three days ago.
Nūper,	Lately.
Janjam,	} ..... Presently.
Mox,	
Scātīm,	} ..... By and by.
Prōtinus,	
Illico,	Instantly.
Crās,	Straightway.
Crās,	To-morrow.
Postridie,	The day after.

Pōrendie,	Two days hence.
Nondum,	Not yet.
Quando ?	When ?
Alquando,	} ..... Sometimes.
Namunquam,	
Interdum,	} ..... Ever, always.
Semper,	
Nunquam,	Never.
Intērim,	In the meantime.
Quōtidie,	Daily.

2. *Continuance of time.*

Dia,	Long.
Quandiu,	How long ?
Tandiu,	So long.
Jamdiu,	} ..... Long ago.
Jamdūdum,	
Jampridem,	

3. *Vicissitude or repetition of time.*

Quōdies?.....	<i>How often?</i>
Sæpe, .....	<i>Often.</i>
Raro, .....	<i>Seldom.</i>
Tōties, .....	<i>So often.</i>
Alquōties, .....	<i>For several times.</i>
Vicissim, {	<i>By turns.</i>
Alternatim, }	
Rursus, }	<i>Again.</i>
Iterum, }	
Sūbinde, }	<i>Ever and anon,</i>
Identidem, }	
Sēm̄el, .....	<i>Once.</i>
Bis, .....	<i>Twice.</i>
Ter, .....	<i>Thrice.</i>
Quāter, .....	<i>Four times, &amp;c.</i>

3. *Adverbs of Order.*

Inde, .....	<i>Then.</i>
Deinde, .....	<i>After that.</i>
Dehinc, .....	<i>Henceforth.</i>
Porro, .....	<i>Moreover.</i>
Deinceps, .....	<i>So forth.</i>
Dēnuo, .....	<i>Anew.</i>
Dēnique, .....	<i>Finally.</i>
Postremō, .....	<i>Lastly.</i>
Primo, -um, .....	<i>First.</i>
Sēcundo, -um, .....	<i>Secondly.</i>
Tertio, -um, .....	<i>Thirdly.</i>
Quarto, -um, .....	<i>Fourthly, &amp;c.</i>

II. Adverbs denoting **QUALITY, MANNER, &c.**, are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called *Absolute* denote,

§ 245. 1. **QUALITY**, simply; as, *benè*, well; *malè*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. **CERTAINTY**; as, *prōfectò*, *certè*, *sānè*, *plānè*, *nā*, *utique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidnī*, why not? *omnino*, certainly.

3. **CONTINGENCE**; as, *forte*, *forsan*, *fortassis*, *fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. **NEGATION**; as, *non*, *haud*, not; *nequāquam*, not at all; *neutiquam*, by no means; *minime*, nothing less.

5. **PROHIBITION**; as, *ne*, not.

6. **SWEARING**; as, *hercle*, *pol*, *edēpol*, *mēcastor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. **EXPLAINING**; as, *utpōte*, *videlicet*, *scilicet*, *nimirum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. **SEPARATION**; as, *seorsum*, apart; *sēparatim*, separately; *sīgūl*, -atim, one by one; *virūm*, man by man; *oppidatim*, town by town, &c.

9. **JOINING TOGETHER**; as, *simul*, *undē*, *pārīter*, together; *gēnērālītēr*, generally; *ūnīversālītēr*, universally; *plērūmq̄ue*, for the most part.

10. **INDICATION or POINTING OUT**; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.

11. **INTERROGATION**; as, *cur*, *quāre*, *quāmobrem*, why, wherefore? *num*, *an*, whether? *quōmōdō*, *quā*, how? To which add, *Ubi*, *quō*, *quorūm*, *undē*, *quō*, *quādo*, *quāmdīu*, *quōties*.

Those Adverbs which are called *Comparative* denote,

§ 246. 1. **EXCESS**; as, *valde*, *maximē*, *magnop̄re*, *maximop̄re*, *summop̄re*, *admōdum*, *oppidō*, *perquam*, *longē*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nimis*, *nimum*, too much; *prorsus*, *penitus*, *omnino*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *melius*, better; *pejus*, worse, *fortius*, more bravely; and *optimē*, best; *pestimē*, worst; *fortissimē*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2. **DEFECT**; as, *Fermē*, *fērē*, *prōpemōdum*, *pēnē*, almost; *pārum*, little; *paulō*, *paulūlum*, very little.

3. **PREFERENCE**; as, *pētius*, *adtiūs*, rather; *pētissimūm*, *præcipue*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially; *imō*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. **LIKENESS or EQUALITY**; as, *ita, sic, ided*, so; *ut, uti, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quasi*, as, as if; *quemadmodum*, even as; *satis*, enough; *itidem*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.

5. **UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY**; as, *aliter, secus*, otherwise; *alioqui or alioquin*, else; *nedum*, much more, or much less.

6. **ABATEMENT**; as, *sensim, paulatim, pedetentim*, by degrees, piecemeal; *vix*, scarcely; *ægrè*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. **EXCLUSION**; as, *tantum, solum, modò, tantummòdo, duntaxat, dènum*, only.

#### DERIVATION, COMPARISON, AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

§ 247. Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in *tim* or *tus*; as, *Parim*, partly, by parts; *nominatim*, by name; *generatim*, by kinds, generally; *speciatim*: *vicatim, gregatim*; *radicitus*, from the root, &c.

2. From adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in *e*; as, *liberè*, freely; *plene*, fully; some in *o, um*, and *ter*, as, *falsò, tantum, graviter*; a few in *a, itus*, and *im*; as, *recta, antiquitus, privatim*. Some are used two or three ways; as, *primum*, or *-ò, purè, -iter, certè, -ò*; *caute, -tim*; *humanè, -iter, -itus*; *publicè, publicitus*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in *ter*, seldom in *e*; as, *turpiter, feliciter, acriter, pariter*; *facile, repente*; one in *o, omnino*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter*; *perfidum ridens*, for *perfidè*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multum* or *valdè*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud, high*, &c. for *loudly, highly*, &c. In many cases a substantive is understood; as, *primò, sc. loco*; *optatò advenis*, *sc. tempore*; *hàc, sc. vià*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille, iste, hic, is, idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as, from *Ille*, *illic, illuc, illorsum, illinc*, and *illac*. So from *Quis, ubi, quo, quorsum, unde* and *quà*; also of time; thus, *quando, quamdù, &c.*

4. From verbs and participles; as, *casim*, with the edge; *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cedo, pingo, stringo*; *amanter, prosperanter, dubitanter*; *distincè, emendatè, meritò, inopinatò*; &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus, intro*, from in; *clanculum*, from *clam*; *sultus*, from *sub*, &c.

§ 248. Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *durè, facilè, acriter*; the *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *durius, facilius, acrius*; the *superlative*, in *ime*; as, *durissime, facillimè, accerrimè*.

Rem. 1. If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too; as, *benè, melius, optime*; *malè, pejùs, pessimè*; *parim, minùs, minimò, & -iam*; *multum, plus, plurimùm*; *prope, propius, proximè*; *ocysus, ocysime*; *prius, primò, -um*; *nuper, nuperrimè*; *novè, & noviter, novissimè*; *meritò, meritissimò, &c.* Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sæpe, sæpius, sæpissimè*; *penitus, penitius, penitissime*; *satis, satius*; *secus, secius, &c.* *Magis, maximè*; and *potius, potissimùm*, want the positive.

Rem. 2. Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postridie, magnopère, maximopère, summopère, tantopère, multimodis, omnimodis, quomodo, quare*; of *postero die, magno opère, &c.* *Illicet, scilicet, videlicet*, of *ire, scire, videre, licet*; *illico*, of *in loco*; *quorsum, of quo versum*; *comminus*, hand to hand, of *cum* or *con* and *manus, eminus*, at a distance, of *e* and *manus*; *quorsum*, of *quo versum*; *denuo*, anew, of *de novo*; *quin*, why not, but, of, *qui ne*; *cui*, of *cui rei*; *pedetentim*, step by step, as it were, of *pedem tendendo*; *perendia*,

for *perempto dis*; *mirum*, of *na*, i. e. *non*, and *mirum*; *antea*, *postea*, *præterea*; &c. of *ante* and *ea*, &c. *Ubivis*, *quovis*, *undelibet*, *quousque*, *sicut*, *sicuti*, *velut*, *veluti*, *desuper*, *insuper*, *quomobrem*, &c. of *ubi* and *vis*, &c. *nudiustertius*, of *nunc* *dies tertius*; *identidem*, of *idem et idem*; *impræsentiarum*, i. e. in *tempore rerum præsentium*, &c.

Obs. 1. The Adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientiâ*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *una vice*; *his*, for *duobus vicibus*; *Mæchercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other; as, *ubi*, where, or when; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past*, *present*, or *future*; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad; *redire peregrè*, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjection *soever*; as, *ubiubi*, or *ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quoquod qudcunque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in interrogative words; as, *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever; *quantusquantus*, or *quantus, canque*, how great soever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however or howsoever, &c.

## PREPOSITIONS.

A *Preposition* is an indeclinable word which shows the relation of one thing to another.

§ 249. There are thirty-two Prepositions which govern the Accusative.

**AD**, expresses *conjunction* or *propinquity*, and its general signification is *to*, as, *ad Carthaginem*, 'to Carthage'; *omnes ad unum*, 'all to a man.' **AT** or **ON**, as, *ad præstitutam diem*, 'at the appointed day'; *ad portam*, 'at the gate.' **AFTER**, as, *aliquanto ad rem avidior*, 'a little too greedy after money.' It is also used for *according to*; as, *ad cursum luna*, 'according to the course of the moon.' **FOR**, as, *rebus ad profectionem comparatis*, things being ready for a march. **BEFORE**, as, *ductus est ad magistratum*, 'he was led before a magistrate.' **ABOUT**, as, *ad duo millia*, 'about two thousand.' **IN COMPARISON OF**, *nil ad Cæsarem*, 'nothing in comparison of Cæsar.' But all these different renderings may be referred to the simple signification of 'to.' — **Phrases**. *Ad summum*, 'at most,' or 'to the top'; *ad summam*, 'in the whole'; *ad ultimum*, 'at last,' 'finally'; *ad iudicem agere*, 'to plead before a judge'; *ad hæc*, 'in addition to this,' 'besides'; *ad decem annos*, Cic. 'after ten years,' or 'ten years hence,' that is, up to the completion of ten years; *ad manus venire*, 'to come to a close engagement'; *ad lunam*, 'by the light of the moon'; *ad amussim*, 'exactly,' (literally, 'to a mason's rule.')

**ADVERSUS**, or **ADVERSUM**. This is compounded of *ad*, 'to,' and the participle *versus*, 'turned.' So we have in English the same two prepositions compounded in the word, 'to-wards.' The general idea of this Preposition is that of *opposi-*

tion, or tendency AGAINST something, and hence its general meaning is AGAINST; as, *adversus hostem*, 'against the enemy;' *adversus legem*, 'contrary to law.' Hence it signifies OPPOSITION of place; as, *adversus Italiam*, 'opposite Italy.' From this, it signifies BEFORE, or IN THE PRESENCE OF, or TOWARDS; as, *adversus me*, 'in my presence;' *pietas adversus deos*, 'piety towards the gods.' To, as, *adversus hunc loqui*, 'to speak to him.'

ANTE denotes *precedence* of time or place, and hence means 'BEFORE.' It is opposed to *Post*; as, *ante, non post, decimam horam*, 'before, not after the tenth hour;' *ante aciem*, 'in front of the army.' It also signifies *priority* in point of degree; as, *Una longè ante alias specie ac pulchritudine*, 'one far above the others in beauty and figure.' It is sometimes used adverbially, but in all such cases some noun or adjective may be supplied; as, *ille ante incessit*, 'he marched first,' that is, *ante omnes*, 'before all.'

APUD denotes *presence* of place and person, and is said to be corrupted from *ad pedes*, 'at the feet.' It may generally be translated by 'AT;' as, *apud forum*, 'at the forum;' hence it is used for *cum*, as, *cenavit apud me*, 'he supped with me;' *potior apud exercitum*, 'in greater credit with the army.' Hence it also signifies 'NEAR,' or 'BY,' being used for *juxta*; as, *sedens apud eum*, 'sitting by him.' From the notion of bodily presence, it comes to signify 'presence of mind;' as, *vix sum apud me*, 'I am hardly myself;' *tu fac, apud te ut sies*, Terent. 'take care to be self-collected.' From presence of place may easily be deduced its signification of *inter*, 'AMONG,' as, *apud majores nostros*, 'among our ancestors.' The difference between *Apud* and *Inter* is, however, very clear. *Inter* means 'among,' or 'in the number of,' as, *inter amicos*, 'among,' or 'in the number of my friends;' *Apud* means 'among,' 'with,' 'in the writings of,' 'in the customs of;' as, *apud Cicero-nem*, 'with Cicero,' or 'or in the opinion of Cicero;' *Apud Homerum invenio*, 'I find in the writings of Homer;' *Apud Romanos mos erat*, 'it was the custom among the Romans.' Another meaning is 'BEFORE,' as, *causam apud regem dicere*, 'to plead before the king.'

CIRCA, CIRCUM. This Preposition signifies *approximation* and *comprehension* of time, place, person, and number. It is derived from the Greek *κίρκος*, 'a circle.' Its generic signification is 'ABOUT,' or 'ROUND ABOUT;' as, *circa portas*, 'about the gates;' *postero die circa eandem horam copias admovi*, 'the next day, about the same hour, he advanced his army;' *oppida circa septuaginta*, 'about seven hundred towns;' *circa deos religionesque fuit negligens*, 'about the gods and their worship he was negligent.'

CIRCITER. This is nearly related to *circa* and *circum*, but is principally used in expressing approximation of time; as, *circiter idus Mai*, 'about the Ides of May;' *octavam circiter horam*, 'about the eighth hour.'

CIS expresses limitation of space and time, included within some distant boundary or distant time, to the place where we are, or the time when we are speaking. Its signification is, 'ON THIS SIDE,' 'WITHIN;' as, *cis Appenninum*, 'on this side the Appennine;' *cis dies paucos*, 'within a few days.'

**CITRA,\*** like *Cis*, signifies limitation within a certain boundary; as, *citra Rhodanum*, 'on this side the Rhine.' It also means 'SHORT OF,' as, *peccavi citra sceleris*, 'I have committed an offence short of guilt.' Hence from the signification of 'short of,' it comes to imply 'deficiency,' and is used for *sine*, 'without,' as, *Phidias sine ebre citra æmulum fuit*, 'Phidias was without a rival in ivory;' *citra hanc necessitatem*, 'without this necessity.'

**CONTRA,†** in its general signification, implies *opposition*, and hence signifies 'AGAINST,' or 'IN OPPOSITION TO;' as, *contra naturam*, 'against nature;' *contra expectationem*, 'beyond expectation;' *Carthago est contra Italiam*, 'Carthage is opposite to Italy.' It is also frequently used adverbially, signifying, 'on the other hand;' as, *contra etiam*, &c. Cic. 'on the other hand also;' *stat contra*, *farique jubet*, 'he stands opposite and bids me speak;' *contra intuëri aliquem*, 'to look any one full in the face.' *Contra* is sometimes used to express 'price,' especially by Plautus, evidently from the idea of the *value* being put in the scale *opposite* to the commodity; as, *non carus est auro contra*, 'he is not dear for so much gold,' that is, 'he is worth an equal weight of gold put in the *opposite* scale;' literally—he is not dear against gold.' So we say, 'worth its weight in gold.'

**ERGA,** 'TOWARDS,' as, *erga amicos*, 'towards his friends;' 'BEFORE,' as, *quoniam modo erga ades habitat*, 'who lives now before our house.'

**EXTRA‡** implies something *without* or *beyond* the limits of the thing spoken of, and is opposed to *Intra*. Its general meaning is 'WITHOUT;' as, *ingenium magis extra vitia, quam cum virtutibus*, 'a character rather without vices than accompanied with virtues.' 'BEYOND;' as, *extra modum*, 'beyond measure.' Hence it easily passes into the sense of *Supra*, 'above,' or 'exceeding;' as, *esse extra culpam*, 'to be above fault,' 'to be blameless.' Hence it is elegantly used for *Præter*, 'besides,' 'except;' as, *neque, extra unam aniculam, quisquam aderat*, 'neither was any one present, besides one poor old woman.' *Extra jocum*, 'without a joke,' 'joking apart.'

**INFRA** expresses *inferiority* or *lower situation*, and may generally be rendered by 'below,' or 'BENEATH,' as, *infra tectum*, 'below the roof;' *infra se*, 'beneath himself;' *magnitudine paulo infra elephantos*, 'in size a little inferior to the elephant;'

\* *Citra* is not immediately derived from *Cis*, but from its derivative *Citer*; and is, like *Extra*, *Infra*, *Intra*, *Supra*, *Ultra*, an ablative case feminine, governed by *a* or *ab*, and having *parte* understood with which it agrees. It governs the accusative not by any natural power of its own, but by an ellipsis of *quoad*, or *quod ad*... *attinet* understood after it. Thus, *citra Rubiconem*, 'on this side the Rubicon,' when fully explained, means, *a citerâ (or citra) parte quoad Rubiconem*, or, *a citrâ parte quoad ad Rubiconem attinet*. Thus we see how prepositions are used even for whole sentences, for convenience of speech, and shortening those circuitous expressions, the frequent recurrence of which would be very tedious and unpleasant in common discourse.

† Probably the ablative feminine of the obsolete adjective *Contrus*, just as, *citra*, *extra*, *infra*, *intra*, and *supra*, are the ablatives of *citer*, *extrus*, *inferus*, *intrus*, *superus*. § See note on *Citra*.

‡ See note on *Citra*.



*infra infimas*, 'below the very lowest.' Hence it means 'WITHIN,' as *infra decem dies*, 'within ten days.'

INTER, 'BETWEEN,' as, *inter eos magna contentio fuit*, 'there was a great strife between them.' As that which is between two persons may be referred to one or the other, *inter* is often used for *intice*, 'one another,' as, *pueri amant inter se*, 'the boys love one another.' It also means 'among,' 'in the midst of,' as, *inter exercitum*, 'in the midst of the army,' *inter omnem vitam*, 'during their life time.'

INTRA\* is used to express the boundary *within* which any thing is contained referring either to time or space, and hence it signifies 'WITHIN,' as, *intra decem annos*, 'within ten years,' *intra muros*, 'within the walls,' *intra verba desipiunt*, 'they commit offence within words,' that is, 'no offence beyond words.'

JUXTA signifies *approximation* or *contiguity*, being derived from *jungo*, 'to join.' Its primary meaning is 'NEAR,' or 'by the side of,' as, *juxta murum, castra posuit*, 'he pitched his camp near the wall,' hence it means *proximity* of relationship; as, *velocitas juxta formidinem*, Tacit. 'rapidity is akin to cowardice.' Also, 'according to,' as, *juxta præceptum Themistoclis*, 'according to the instructions of Themistocles.' It is also used adverbially for *alike, equally*; as, *Eorum ego vitam, mortemque juxta castimo*, 'I esteem their life and death alike.' Sallust.

OB, in its more general signification, is used to express the *reason* or *cause* of any thing, and may be rendered by 'FOR' or 'ON ACCOUNT OF,' as, *ob quæstum*, 'for gain,' *ob hanc rem*, 'on account of this thing,' also, 'BEFORE,' as, *ob oculos exitum versatur*, 'destruction is before my eyes.'

PENES is said to be derived from *penus*, 'a store-house,' being used to signify the absolute possession and power over a thing, as if it were laid up at our disposal. Its meaning is, 'IN THE POWER OF,' or, 'IN POSSESSION OF,' as, *me penes est unum vesti custodia mendi*, 'in my power alone is the custody of the vest work.' Also, 'WITH,' as, *penes te culpa est*, 'the fault lies with you.'

PER, (derived probably from the Greek *παρά*, 'to pass through,') is of extensive use. It denotes the cause, means, or instrument of an action, or transition through some medium, and may generally be rendered by 'THROUGH,' as, *per mare, per saxa, per ignes*, Hor. 'through the sea, through rocks, through fire.' Also, 'through,' or 'for,' signifying continuation of space or time; as, *per triennium*, 'for the space of three years,' also, 'through,' denoting the instrument or subordinate agency; as, *per servum epistolam misit*, 'he sent the letter through a servant.' Sometimes it may be translated 'under pretence,' as, *aliquem per fidem fallere*, 'to deceive any one under colour of security.' *Per se*, 'of himself,' 'by his own exertions.' *Per ludum et jocum*, 'in sport and jest.' *Per me*, 'by my permission.' *Per silentium*, 'silently.'

PONE is derived like *post*, from the verb *pono*, and expresses the situation of a thing *behind* or *after* another in point of *place*; but it is not used, like *post*, to signify the same relation in point of *time*. It is opposed to *Ante*. It may always be rendered 'BEHIND.' *Pone ædem Castoris*, 'behind the temple of Castor.' It is often used adverbially; *pone sequens*, 'following behind.'

\* See *Citra*.

**POST** has the same origin and general signification as *Pone*, but is used to express relations of time as well as place. Applied to place, *post montem*, 'behind the mountain.' In point of time, *post mortem*, 'after death.' *Post hominum memoriam*, 'since the memory of man.' It is often joined with *ea*, forming the adverb *postea*, 'afterwards,' that is, 'after these things;' and with *quam*, as, *postquam*, 'after that.'

**PRÆTER** implies exclusion, and may be translated 'EXCEPT,' or 'BUT,' as, *omnibus sententiis præter unum condemnatus est*, 'he was condemned by all the votes but one;' *neque illis vestitus, præter pelles*, 'neither have they any clothing besides skins.' Hence it easily passes into the sense of 'along,' or 'by the side of,' as, *præter oram Etrusci maris Neapolim transmisit*, 'he sent them by the shore of the Tuscan sea to Naples.' Hence it means 'before,' 'in sight of,' as, *præter oculos*, 'before my eyes.' From the sense of 'exclusion,' it easily comes to signify, 'beyond,' or 'above,' as, *Horum ille nihil egregie præter cetera studēbat*, 'he inclined to none of these particularly above the rest.' Also, 'contrary to,' as, *præter spem*, 'contrary to expectation.'

**PROPE**, 'NEAR,' is rather an adverb, and, when it is followed by an accusative, *ad* or *apud* is understood. It is the neuter of the obsolete adjective *propis*, of which the comparative and superlative yet remain in *proprior* and *proximus*. *Prope hostium castra*, 'near the camps of the enemy;' *prope calendas Sextilis*, 'about the calends of August.' It is often used adverbially; as, *sapientia præditus prope singulari*, 'endowed with almost singular wisdom.'

**PROPTER** is derived from *prope*, and has the same general signification of contiguity. Its primary meaning is 'NEAR,' or 'BY THE SIDE OF,' as, *In pratulo propter Platonis statuam cœdēmus*, Cic. 'we sat down in a little meadow by the statue of Plato.' Also, 'ON ACCOUNT OF,' 'FOR THE SAKE OF,' as, *Nam propter frigora, frumenta in agris natura non erant*, 'for in consequence of the cold, the fruits of the earth were not ripe.' *Propter misericordiam*, 'out of pity.'

**SECUNDUM**. This preposition is the neuter gender of the ordinal adjective *secundus*, 'SECOND,' (which follows the first,) which itself comes from *sequor*, 'to follow.' Its general signification implies the notion of 'following after' something which has gone before. Here it is translated, 'next to,' 'after,' as, *Secundum te nihil est mihi amicus solitudine*, Cic. 'next to your company nothing is more agreeable to me than solitude.' As he who follows after another goes in the same direction, *secundum* signifies 'after,' or 'according to,' as, *omnia quæ secundum naturam fiunt, sunt habenda in bonis*, Cic. 'all things which happen according to nature are to be esteemed good.' Hence it signifies 'in favour of,' as, *Nuntiat populo pontifices secundum se decrevisse*, Cic. 'he tells the people that the pontifices had decreed in his favour.'

**SECUS**, as a preposition, is obsolete, being superseded by *secundum*, with the same sense. As an adverb it frequently occurs, but in a sense almost diametrically opposite, signifying *diversity* or *opposition*; as, *nemo dicet secus*, 'no one will say otherwise.'

**SUPRA** is in reality the ablative feminine of *superus*, (see *Citra*.) and implies elevation, and may be translated, 'ABOVE,' 'HIGHER THAN,' as, *supra lunam*, 'above the moon;' *supra modum*, 'beyond measure;' *Tres prohibet supra risum*

*instans tangere Græcia*, 'the Græces, guarding against quærels, forbid us to drink more than three.' *Cum hostes supra caput sint*, 'since the enemy are high at hand.' But the phrase *supra caput* is used to signify 'exceedingly'; as, *supra caput homo levis ac sordidus*, 'a fellow exceedingly contemptible and sordid.' It is also used adverbially; as, *omnia hæc quæ supra et subter unum esse*, 'that all these things which are above and below, are one system.'

TRANS, 'OVER,' 'ON THE OTHER SIDE,' 'BEYOND,' is opposed to *cis*, and is limited to *place*. *Trans mare*, 'across the sea;' *trans Euphratem*, 'on the other side of the Euphrates.'

ULTRA, 'BEYOND,' is referred to both *place*, *time*, and *degree*; as, *ultra terminum vagari*, 'to wander beyond the bounds;' *ultra tempus*, 'beyond the time;' *ultra vires senectæ*, 'beyond the strength of old age;' *ultra mortem*, 'beyond what was sufficient to occasion death.'

USQUE is more properly an adverb, and governs the accusative by the force of *ad* understood. Its signification is, 'AS FAR AS.' *Usque Miletum*, 'as far as Miletum.' As an adverb it is frequently used. *Usque ambo defessi sumus*, 'we were both exceedingly wearied.' *Cicæpho usque occidit*, 'Cicæpho has all but killed me.'

VERSUS, 'TOWARDS.' This preposition, like *Usque*, seems to govern the accusative by the force of *ad*, which, though sometimes omitted, is generally expressed. *Brundisium versus*, 'towards Brundisium.'

## PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

§ 250. There are fifteen Prepositions which govern the Ablative.

A, AB, ABS. This preposition is derived from the Greek *ἀπό*, 'from,' and in its primary notion signifies *beginning*. 'FROM,' as, *ab ovo usque ad mala*, 'from the egg to the apple,' that is, 'from beginning to end.' 'BY REASON OF.' *Vir ab innocentia clementissimus*, 'a man very mild by reason of his probity.' Also, 'ON THE SIDE OF,' 'TO TAKE ANY ONE'S PART'; as, *a mendacio contra verum stare*, 'to stand for a lie in opposition to truth.' *A principio*, 'from the very first.' *A pedibus*, 'a footman;' *a rationibus*, 'an accountant.' *A frigore*, 'against the cold.' *Hujus a morte*, 'after his death.'

ABSQUE, 'WITHOUT.' *Propositio nihil valet absque approbatione*, 'the proposition avails nothing without proof.' *Nam absque eo esset*, 'for had it not been for him,' &c.

CLAM\* conveys the idea of *privacy*, or *secrecy*, and may be translated 'UNKNOWN TO,' 'WITHOUT THE KNOWLEDGE OF.' *Clam viro*, 'unknown to her husband.' It is also used *adverbially*; as, *plura clam de medio removebat*, 'he removed many more out of the way privately.'

---

\* *Clam* is sometimes found with an Accusative; as, *Clam patrem, Terent*. Also, with a Dative; as, *mibi clam, Plant*; and even with a Genitive, as, *clam patris, Plant*.

**CORAM** marks the actual presence of a person before whom an action is done, and therefore signifies 'BEFORE,' 'IN THE PRESENCE OF;' as, *coram rege*, 'in the presence of the king.' It is also used adverbially; as, *cum coram sumus*, 'when we are together.'

**CUM**, 'WITH,' expresses the society, presence, or accompaniment of some thing or person with another. *Vagamur egentes cum conjugibus et libèris*, 'we wander in poverty with our wives and children;' *bellum gerère cum Jugurtha*, 'to carry on war with Jugurtha;' *exit cum nuntio*, 'he departed as soon as he saw the messenger;' *cum primâ luce*, 'at break of day.' This preposition is always added to the ablatives of the primitive pronouns, *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*, as, *mecum*, 'with me;' *nobiscum*, 'with us;' *vobiscum*, 'with you.'

**DE**. The primary signification of this preposition is, *derivation from something anterior, descent, effect, consequence, or dependence*; and hence it may be translated 'FROM,' 'OUT OF,' 'OF,' 'ON.' *Epicûri de grege porcus*, 'a hog of the herd of Epicurus.' Also, 'touching,' 'concerning;' as, *de periculis reipublicæ*, 'concerning the dangers of the republic.' *De sententiâ meâ*, 'according to my opinion.' *Somnus de prandio*, 'sleep after dinner.' *De loco superiøre*, 'from the higher ground.' *De integro*, 'afresh;' *de industria*, 'on purpose;' *de transverso*, 'across;' *de meo*, 'at my cost;' *de die*, 'by day;' *de improvîso*, 'unexpectedly.'

**E, EX**. This preposition implies *motion out of, departure from the interior* of any place, and hence is translated 'FROM.' It differs from **A** or **AB**, in showing that the person or thing excluded had a more intimate connexion with that from which it was excluded. *Dejectus est E domo*, 'he was driven out of the house,' implies that the person had been *within* it; but *dejectus est AB domo*, 'he was driven from the house,' shows merely that the person was around or near it. *Ex Æthiopiâ est usque hæc*. Terent. 'this woman comes as far as from Ethiopia.' *Ex quo in provinciam venerunt*, 'from the time that they came into the province.' *Ex mea sententiâ*, 'according to my opinion;' *magnâ ex parte*, 'for the most part;' *poculum ex auro*, 'a cup made out of gold;' *ex equo*, 'on horseback;' *ex ordine*, 'in order;' *ex animo*, 'from the heart;' *ex industria*, 'on purpose;' *ex tempore*, 'without taking thought beforehand;' *suddenly*; *ex toto*, 'on the whole.'

**PALAM** is opposed to *clam*, and expresses something done *openly*. It is translated 'BEFORE,' 'IN THE PRESENCE OF.' *Palam popûlo*, 'before the people;' *palam omnibus*, 'in the presence of all.'

**PRÆ**, 'BEFORE,' signifies *precedence* in point of situation, and hence *precedence*, in comparison of, or superiority. *Præ oculis*, 'before the eyes.' Hence the phrase *præ se ferre* or *gerère*, 'to carry before,' or 'in front of a man,' means 'to profess,' 'to avow,' 'to have the appearance of.' *Præ nobis beatus est*, 'he is happy in comparison of us.' Also, 'through,' 'that is,' 'by reason of;' as, *nec loqui præ moerore potuit*, 'neither could he speak through grief.' *Præ multitudine*, 'by reason of the multitude.'

**PRO**, 'FOR,' implies, primarily, *interchange or substitution*; as, *te, pro istis dictis at falsis, uliscar*, Terent. 'for these reports and falsehoods I will pay you handsomely.' *Cato mihi est pro centum millibus*, 'Cato is to me instead of,' that is, 'Cato is worth to me a hundred thousand.' *Pro tempore*, 'according to the time.' Also

'**PROPE**,' 'IN FRONT OF,' as, *sedens pro aede Castōris*, 'sitting before the temple of Castor.'

'**SINE** is in reality nothing but the imperative of the verb *sino*, 'to let alone,' and signifies *privation*, or being **WITHOUT** a thing. *Sine pondère*, 'without weight.'

'**TENUS**, 'UP TO,' 'AS FAR AS.' *Capūlo tenus*, Cic. 'up to the hilt' *Antiōchus Taurus tenus regnāre jussus*, 'Antiochus was ordered to reign as far as mount Taurus.' *Tenus* is sometimes used with a genitive case, but the noun is then always in the plural number; as, *crurum tenus*, 'down to the legs;' *labiorum tenus*, 'as far as the lips.'

## § 251. Four prepositions, **IN**, **SUB**, **SUPER**, and **SUBTER**, govern the Accusative and Ablative.

**IN** with an Accusative, 'TO,' or 'UNTO,' or 'INTO,' as, *Ex Asia in Eurōpam exercitum trajicere*, 'from Asia he marched his army into Europe.' Also 'towards,' as, *indulgentia in liberos*, 'indulgence towards children.' *Inflammarē populum in improbos*, 'to inflame the people against the wicked.' *In lucem*, 'until day.' *In rem tuam est*, 'it is for your advantage.' *Potestas in filium*, 'authority over a son.' *In dies*, 'every day.' *Vivere in diem*, 'to live from hand to mouth.'

**IN** with an Ablative, 'IN.' *Esse in manu*, 'to be in one's power.' 'Towards,' as, *mitis in hoste*, 'merciful towards an enemy.' Hence it is even put for 'concerning,' 'about,' or as we sometimes say, 'at;' *In quo igitur homines exhorrescunt*, 'at whom then do men tremble?' Also, 'among,' as, *esse in clarissimus civibus*, 'to be ranked among the most illustrious citizens.' 'Within,' as, *talenta ducenta in sex mensibus promissa*, 'two hundred talents were promised within six months.' *In primis*, or *imprimis*, 'especially,' 'particularly.'

**SUB** implies *inferiority* and *contiguity*. When applied to time it generally governs an accusative; when applied to space it generally governs an ablative; but this rule is not invariable. With an Accusative. '**UNDER**,' as, *sub ipsos muros*, 'under the very walls.' 'On,' 'about,' as, *Pompeius sub noctem naves solvit*, 'Pompey set sail about night;' *sub cantum galli*, 'at cock-crowing.' From the notion of proximity and inferiority which this word conveys, it sometimes signifies 'next after,' or 'immediately following,' as, *Sub eas literas statim recitatae sunt tuae*, 'immediately after them your letters were read aloud.' *Sub hæc dicta*, 'at these words.'

With an Ablative. '**UNDER**,' or '**BENEATH**.' *Manet sub Jove frigido*, 'the hunter remains beneath the cold sky;' *Sub pena mortis*, 'on pain of death;' *Sub specie venationis*, 'under the pretence of hunting.'

**SUBTER** is derived from *Sub*, and like it, signifies *contiguity* and *inferiority* of place, but is not referred to time. It governs an accusative more frequently than an ablative. '**UNDER**.' *Subter mare*, 'beneath the sea.' *Subter densa testudine*, 'under a thick testudo.' *Rhæteo subter litore*, 'beneath the Rhætean shore.'

**SUPER** expresses, for the most part, *elevation*, or a situation *higher* than ourselves, or the object spoken of.

With an Accusative, 'upon,' 'above.' *Super ripas*, 'upon the banks.' *Beyond*, *as, famosissima super cætras fuit cena*, 'the supper was famous beyond all the rest.' *'Besides,' as, Punicum exercitum super morbum etiam fames afficit*, 'famine also, besides the disease, affected the Carthaginian army.'

With an Ablative. *Fronde super viridi*, 'upon the green leaf.' *Consultant bello super*, 'they take counsel about the war.' It is often used adverbially; *as, satis superque dictum est*, 'enough, and more than enough has been said.'

Obs. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am, di* or *dis, re, as, con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words.

## § 252. PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

A, AB, ABS, signify *privation*, or *separation*, and may generally be rendered by the English *Off*, *as, duco*, 'to lead;' *abduco*, 'to lead off,' 'to lead away;' *moveo*, 'to move;' *amoveo*, 'to move off,' 'to remove;' *scindo*, 'to cut;' *absciendo*, 'to cut off.' A is likewise added to nouns as a *privative*; *as, mens*, 'the mind;' *amens*, 'without mind,' 'senseless,' 'mad.' *Ab* is sometimes changed into *au* before words beginning with *f*, for the sake of euphony; *as, fero*, 'to bear;' *aufero*, 'to bear off,' 'to take away;' (in which verb the preposition *ab* resumes its place in those tenses which have not *f*, *as, abstuli, ablatum*;) *fugio*, 'to fly;' *aufugio*, 'to fly off,' 'to fly away.' *Abs* is used in composition before *t*; *as, teneo*, 'to hold;' *abstineo*, 'to hold off from,' 'to abstain.'

AD retains its primary signification of *approach*, or that of *accession* or *augmentation*, and may generally be translated 'to.' In the writers of the Augustan age it generally takes the consonant of the word with which it is compounded; *as, curro*, 'to run;' *adcurro* or *accurro*, 'to run to;' *figo*, 'to fix;' *adfigo* or *affigo*, 'to fix in addition,' or 'affix;' *loquor*, 'to speak;' *adloquor* or *alloquor*, 'to speak to,' 'to address;' *nuo*, 'to nod;' *annuo*, 'to nod to,' 'to assent;' *rogo*, 'to ask;' *arrago*, 'to ask for one's self,' 'to claim;' *sumo*, 'to take;' *assumo*, 'to take to one's self,' 'to assume;' *do*, 'to give;' *addo*, 'to give in addition,' 'to add.' It also increases the signification of the primitive; *as, amo*, 'to love;' *adamo*, 'to love much,' 'to be enamoured of;' *bibo*, 'to drink;' *adbibō*, 'to drink hard.'

AM is an inseparable preposition, being never found alone. It is from the Greek *αμφι*, 'round about;' and may be translated 'around,' 'about;' *as, uro*, 'to burn;' *amburo*, 'to burn all about;' *quero*, 'to seek;' *inquiro*, 'to seek about,' 'to search carefully.' From the signification 'around,' it comes to mean 'on all sides,' 'two ways;' *as, ago*, 'to lead;' *ambigo*, 'to be led around;' that is, 'to doubt,' 'to hesitate what course to take;' *capio*, 'to take;' *anceps*, 'that which may be taken two ways,' 'doubtful.'

ANTE signifies *precedence*, and is translated 'before;' *as, cedo*, 'to go;' *antecedo*, 'to go before;' *fero*, 'to bear;' *antefero*, 'to bear before,' 'to prefer.'

CUM signifies 'society,' 'participation,' or 'accompaniment;' but is changed into *con* before *m*; *as, memora*, 'to relate;' *commemora*, 'to relate together,' 'to commemorate;' or else into *con*, which varies its last consonant before several others.

and sometimes even drops it; as, *curre*, 'to run;' *concorre*, 'to run together;' *ago*, 'to drive;' *con-ago* or *co-ago* or *cogo*, 'to drive together,' 'to collect;' *agito*, 'to agitate,' or 'revolve;' *con-agito*, or *cogito*, 'to agitate with one's self;' hence 'to think;' *natus*, 'born;' *con-natus* or *cognatus*, 'having a participation of birth,' or 'related;' *gustator*, 'a candidate;' *competitor*, 'a fellow candidate,' or 'rival;' *gradior*, 'to walk;' *congradior*, 'to come together;' hence 'to engage in battle.'

DE in composition takes the sense of 1. *privation*; 2. *diminution*; 3. *removal*; 4. *descent*; 5. *completion*; and sometimes from the action of completion it signifies, 6. *excess*. Thus—1. *decōre*, 'to adorn;' *dēdecōre*, 'to disgrace;' *spero*, 'to hope;' *despēro*, 'to be without hope,' 'to despair;' *mens*, 'the mind;' *demens*, 'out of one's mind,' 'mad.' 2. *facio*, 'to do;' *deficio*, 'to do less than one ought,' 'to fail,' 'to be deficient.' 3. *ferveo*, 'to be hot;' *deserveo*, 'to remove heat,' 'to grow cool.' 4. *cado*, 'to fall;' *decido*, 'to fall down.' 5. *finio*, 'to bound;' *definio*, 'to bound completely,' 'to define.' 6. *flagro*, 'to burn;' *deflagro*, 'to burn excessively,' 'to burn to ashes.'

DIS, DI, is an inseparable preposition, denoting 'separation,' 'division,' 'denial;' as, *traho*, 'to draw;' *distrāho*, 'to pull asunder,' 'to disjoin,' 'to distract;' *puto*, 'to think;' *disputo*, 'to think differently,' 'to dispute.' From 'separation' it comes to denote 'distinction;' as, *iudico*, 'to judge;' *dijudico*, 'to judge between,' 'to distinguish,' 'to discern.'

E, EX, generally signifies 'out,' and from this sense all its others may be deduced, such as, 'privation,' 'perfection,' 'elevation,' 'declaration,' &c. Before certain consonants *e* is only used, and before *f*, *x* is changed into *f*. Thus, *bibo*, 'to drink;' *ebibo*, 'to drink out,' 'to drink up;' *dico*, 'to tell;' *edico*, 'to tell out,' 'to publish;' *levo*, 'to lighten;' *elevo*, 'to lighten out and out,' that is 'to lighten thoroughly,' and so 'to raise,' 'to elevate;' *vado*, 'to go;' *evado*, 'to go out of,' 'to escape;' *capio*, 'to take;' *excipio*, 'to take out,' 'to except;' *quaero*, 'to seek;' *exquiro*, 'to seek out,' 'to search;' *sanguis*, 'blood;' *exsanguis*, 'out of blood,' 'bloodless;' *anima*, 'life;' *exanimis*, 'lifeless.'

IN, in composition, changes its consonant before the other liquids into the liquid it precedes; as, *illudo*, from *in* and *ludo*, and before *b* and *p* the *n* is changed into *m*, as, *imbibo*, from *in* and *bibo*.

The signification of *in* is very various in composition, and in some cases even contradictory. Thus it augments, as *minuo*, 'to lessen;' *imminuo*, 'to make less upon less,' or 'to make very small.' But it is more frequently used in the sense of 'negation,' as the *e* privative of the Greek, and the *un* or *in* prefixed to words in English; as, *mundus*, 'clean;' *immundus*, 'unclean.' But in some instances the augmentative and privative senses appear in the same word; thus, *impotens* is used in the sense of 'very powerful,' that is, 'ungovernable,' and in the sense of 'weak,' 'powerless.' It has also various other significations; as, *ludo*, 'to play;' *illudo*, 'to play upon,' 'to mock;' *pono*, 'to place;' *impono*, 'to place upon,' 'to put upon,' 'to impose;' *habeo*, 'to have;' *inhabeo*, 'to have within control,' 'to check,' 'to rein in;' *albesco*, 'to grow white;' *inalbesco*, 'to begin to grow white;' *video*, 'to see,' *invideo*, 'to see' or 'look against,' and thus 'to envy' a person.

INTER has generally the same meaning in composition that it has when alone, namely; 'between,' or 'among;' as, *pono*, 'to place;' *interpono*, 'to place between.'

'to interpose.' Sometimes it signifies 'prevention,' as if from an opposing medium; as, *dico*, 'to say'; *interdico*, 'to say between,' and so 'to forbid,' 'to interdict'; *venio*, 'to come'; *intervenio*, 'to come between,' and thus 'to prevent.' It also augments, as, *interfacio*, 'to do thoroughly,' 'to do up,' 'to kill.' Perhaps in this word the primitive meaning of 'between' may be traced, as *facio*, 'to do,' 'to make'; *interfacio*, 'to make' or 'go between' a person and the period of life to which he is aiming, and thus 'to cut him off' from the living.

OB takes the sense of 'before,' 'against'; as, *ruo*, 'to rush'; *obruo*, 'to rush before,' or 'overwhelm'; *loquor*, 'to speak'; *obloquor*, 'to speak against'; *duco*, 'to lead'; *obduco*, 'to draw over,' 'to hide,' 'to blot.' Sometimes it increases the signification: as, *dormio*, 'to sleep'; *obdormio*, 'to sleep upon sleep,' 'to sleep soundly.'

PER retains its original notion of 'transition,' or its secondary one of 'intensity'; as, *eo*, 'to go'; *pereo*, 'to go through,' and so 'to go through life,' 'to perish'; *do*, 'to give'; *perdo*, 'to give thoroughly,' 'to give without hopes of recall,' and so 'to lose'; *adolescens*, 'young'; *peradolescens*, 'very young.' Sometimes it is privative: as, *fidus*, 'faithful'; *perfidus*, 'perfidious.'

POST takes the sense of 'behind'; as, *pono*, 'to place'; *postpono*, 'to place behind' or 'postpone'; *habeo*, 'to have,' 'to esteem'; *posthabeo*, 'to esteem less.'

PRÆ takes the sense of 'precedence,' or 'prevention.' Thus, *dico*, 'to tell'; *prædico*, 'to foretell'; *facio*, 'to make'; *præfacio*, 'to make first' or 'head,' that is, 'to set over'; *claudo*, 'to shut'; *præclaudo*, 'to shut before a person can get in,' that is, 'to shut out,' or 'prevent admission.' From the notion of priority, it also conveys the idea of 'excellence,' or 'superlativeness,' or 'excess'; as, *potens*, 'powerful'; *præpotens*, 'very powerful'; *maturus*, 'early'; *præmaturus*, 'very early,' 'too early,' 'premature'; *stare*, 'to stand'; *præstare*, 'to stand before the rest,' 'to excel.'

PRO in composition has generally the sense of advancing: as, *moveo*, 'to move'; *promoveo*, 'to move forward,' 'to promote'; *cedo*, 'to go'; *procedo*, 'to go forward,' 'to proceed'; *habeo*, 'to have'; *prohibeo*, 'to have in advance' of another, and so in prevention of him, or 'to prohibit.' Sometimes it has the sense of 'substitution,' as, *curator*, 'a guardian'; *procurator*, 'a guardian for another,' 'a steward'; *nomen*, 'a noun'; *pronomen*, 'a word instead of a noun,' or 'a pronoun.' Also, 'presence,' 'publicity'; as, *pono*, 'to place'; *propono*, 'to place before' or 'in presence of others,' 'to propose'; *scribo*, 'to write'; *proscribo*, 'to write in the presence of the public,' or 'publicly denounce,' or 'proscribe'; *voco*, 'to call'; *provoco*, 'to call out before the public,' or 'challenge.'

RE is an inseparable preposition, and means 'back again,' or 'against'; as, *capio*, 'to take'; *recipio*, 'to take again,' 'to receive'; *pono*, 'to place'; *repono*, 'to place again.'

SE is also inseparable, and means 'apart,' 'aside'; as, *voco*, 'to call'; *sevoco*, 'to call aside'; *claudo*, 'to shut'; *secludo*, 'to shut up.'

SUB. The last consonant of this word is frequently changed into others according to the word with which it is compounded. Most of its meanings in composition may be traced to its primitive signification of 'under,' and frequently corresponds with our termination 'ish'; as, *jacio*, 'to throw'; *subjicio*, 'to cast under,' 'to sub-



*jeet*; *refus*, 'red'; *subrufus*, 'reddish,' that is, a little 'under' red; *video*, 'to laugh'; *subrideo*, 'to smile'; *timeo*, 'to fear'; *subtimeo*, 'to fear a little'; *tristis*, 'sad'; *subtristis*, 'a little sad.' Sometimes it means something secret, or clandestine; *as, gero*, 'to carry'; *suggero*, 'to carry under,' 'to suggest'; *duco*, 'to lead'; *subduco*, 'to lead away,' 'to withdraw privily.'

SUTTER signifies simply 'under,' or 'beneath'; *as, labor*, 'to glide'; *subterlabor*, 'to glide beneath:' or something secret; *as, fugio*, 'to fly'; *subterfugio*, 'to fly away privily,' 'to escape beneath the shelter of something.'

SUPER, 'upon,' or 'over'; *as, gradior*, 'to go'; *supergradior*, 'to go beyond,' or 'surpass'; *scribo*, 'to write'; *superscribo*, 'to write upon,' 'to superscribe.'

TRANS in composition has the same signification that it has by itself; *as, eo*, 'to go'; *trans eo*, 'to pass over'; *adigo*, 'to drive'; *transadigo*, 'to pierce through.' It sometimes drops its two final letters before other consonants; *as, do*, 'to give'; *trado*, 'to give over to another,' and so 'to deliver.'

## INTERJECTION.

§ 253. An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; *as, Oh! Ah!*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY; *as, evax!* hey, brave, lo!
2. GRIEF; *as, ah, hei, heu, cheu!* ah, alas, woe is me!
3. WONDER; *as, papæ!* O strange! *vah!* hah!
4. PRAISE; *as, euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; *as, apæge!* away, begone, avaunt, off, fie, tush!
6. EXCLAIMING; *as, Oh, proh!* O!
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; *as, atat!* ha, aha!
8. IMPRECATION; *as, vœ!* woe, pox on't!
9. LAUGHTER; *as, ha, ha, he!*
10. SILENCING; *as, au, 'st, paz!* silence, hush, 'st!
11. CALLING; *as, eho, ehødum, io, ho!* soho, ho, O!
12. DERISION; *as, lui!* away with!
13. ATTENTION; *as, hem!* ha!

Some interjections denote several different passions; thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; *as, Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! *fy, fy!* *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas* O the villany!

## CONJUNCTION.

§ 254. A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus, "You and I and the boy read Virgil," is one sentence made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil.* In like manner, "You and I read Virgil, *but* the boy reads Ovid," is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, ac, atque, que*, and; *etiam, quodque, item*, also; *cum, tum*, both, and. Also their contraries, *nec, neque, neu, neve*, neither, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive*, either, or.

3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis*, though, although, albeit.

4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, at, atqui, but; tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumtamen, yet*, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, namque, enim, for; quia, quippe, quoniam*, because; *quod*, that because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque*, therefore; *quapropter, quocirca*, wherefore; *proinde*, therefore; *cum, quum*, seeing, since; *quandoquidem*, forasmuch as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti*, that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si, sin, if; dum, modo, dummodo*, provided, upon condition that; *siquidem*, if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, nisi*, unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *salem, certe*, at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an, anne, nam, whether; ne, quonon*, whether, not; *necne*, or not.

12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem, vero*, now, truly; *quidem, equidem*, indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde*, thereafter; *denique*, finally; *insuper*, moreover; *atque*, moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c.* to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne, &c.* are either *interrogative adverbs*, as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or, *suspensive conjunctions*, as, *Nescio an scribas*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, sin, siquidem, præterquam, &c.*: some stand in the second place; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi, &c.*

Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive*, *Subjunctive*, and *Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*; because, when put after a long syllable, they make the accent incline to that syllable; as in the following verse,

*Indoctusque pilæ, discive, trochive, quiescit.* Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

*Arbuteos fatus, montanæque fraga legébant.* Ovid.

## SIGNIFICATIONS OF WORDS.

§ 255. The signification of a Latin word is the notion or thought which it conveyed to the mind of a Roman, and to express this clearly in another language is often a work of no small difficulty, and constitutes one of the chief advantages derived from the study of the ancient classics. To translate accurately and elegantly from one language into another, calls into exercise the highest powers of the mind; and hence a classical foundation has ever been considered by every intelligent scholar as the only basis of a truly liberal and solid education.

Every word has a primitive and invariable sense, which it is most important to know. From this original signification the secondary and metaphorical are derived. This sense must be found by separating compound words; by tracing derivative words to their roots, and by resolving compound ideas or notions into their simple parts. Corporal words, such as, *oculus*, *manus*, &c. are easy, and seldom have more than one meaning. Incorporeal words, such as *virtus*, *longitudo*, *nox*, &c. are more difficult, as well as more frequent with the ancients, and on these our greatest labour must be bestowed.

The danger into which every English scholar, from the lowest class in the Grammar-school to the senior in college, is perpetually liable to run, is that of translating Latin words into those which resemble them in appearance and sound; as, *virtus*, 'virtue;' *crimen*, 'crime.' Against this fault they should be continually on their guard, and to aid them in this, we shall briefly point out, first, some erroneous interpretations, and second, attempt to facilitate the knowledge of the true meanings of words.

## § 256. False significations not to be adopted.

*Ambitio* does not mean 'pride;' but rather, 'love of honour,' 'ambition,' 'vanity,' striving after honour and piquing one's self on certain outward things; liking to be praised, to display one's self, and be in office.

*Æquor* is, properly, 'a level,' or 'flat,' from *æquus*, 'level,' 'even;' thence, 'the sea,' because it is level.

*Amœnus*, 'pleasant,' 'agreeable to the senses,' particularly to the eyes; thence peculiarly applied to places and situations; as, *horti amœni*, *regio amœna*. *Homo amœnus*, or *fortuna amœna*, would be improper. It also means 'agreeable to the ears,' as, *verba amœna*.

*Animal*, from *anima*, 'breath,' 'life,' denotes a living creature, and is therefore applied to *homo* and *bestia*.

*Apparère*, not 'to appear,' that is, to seem, but to appear, that is, 'to be manifest;' as, *mendacium apparet*, 'the falsehood is apparent;' *nantes apparent*, 'men are seen swimming.'

*Arma* are properly 'arms for defence,' or 'armour;' *tela*, 'weapons of offence,' as darts, swords, &c.

*Avārus*, (from *avidus* and *avis*), 'desirous of gold,' 'avaricious,' not covetous generally.

*Calamitas* is not every misfortune or trouble, but something accompanied with loss, and must often be translated 'loss,' 'deprivation.'

*Clemens* is not, generally, 'merciful,' but 'soft,' 'mild,' 'gentle;' 'one who is not easily provoked.'

*Convincere*, not 'to convince,' or convict, generally, but of a bad thing, as of theft, error, &c. In a good sense we use *persuadere*.

*Crimen*, not 'transgression,' unless that be implied in the charge; but 'charge,' 'accusation.'

*Divertère*, not 'to stop at an inn,' but 'to separate,' when a number of people separate and go different ways. *Deverters* means 'to stop at an inn.'

*Exsistere*, or *existere*, means, 1. 'to stand forth,' 'to be in sight,' 'to appear;' 2. 'to be.'

*Imo*, not merely 'yes,' but ironically, something like our 'yea rather.'

*Infans*, (*non* and *fans* participle of *fari*, 'to speak,') not every child, but 'an infant;' one that 'cannot yet speak.'

*Legem ferre*, 1. 'to propose a law,' or 'introduce a bill;' 2. 'to make or pass a law.'

*Opinia*, not every opinion, but such as 'an ungrounded suspicion,' 'fancy;' *opinari*, 'to fancy,' 'to think.'

*Pietas* must be understood according to the subject; it denotes love to God, parents, children, relatives, and benefactors, which will be shown by the connexion.

*Publicus*, not 'public, before the people,' but 1. 'public,' what happened in the name, by the command, or with respect to the state; as, *bellum gerere publicè*, 'to carry on war in the name of the state;' 2. 'universal,' 'common,' 'mean.'

*Stultus*, not merely 'a fool,' but 'thoughtless,' 'hasty,' 'simple.'

§ 257. To facilitate the knowledge of the true meaning of words:

First, we should observe whence a word is derived, as, *animal*, from *anima*, 'life,' thence 'animal,' or whatever lives:—*æquor*, 'a level,' from *aquus*, 'level,' 'even':—*mollis*, from *mobilis*, (which is from *moveo*,) 'moveable,' 'bending,' 'soft':—*momentum*, 'movement,' for *movimentum* from *moveo*; hence *res magni momenti*, 'a thing which has much weight in causing something, which was unsettled and in equilibrium, to be decided':—*prudens* for *providens*, 'seeing beforehand.'

Second, the import of terminations should be understood,

## § 258. TERMINATIONS OF NOUNS.

1. In verbal nouns, the termination *-or* (formed from transitive verbs by changing *-um* of the supine into *-or*) denotes a man who performs the action expressed by the verb; as, *victor*, 'a conqueror,' *lector*, 'a reader,' from *vinco* and *lego*. 2. The termination *-trix*, formed from the same, denotes a female agent; as, *victrix*, 'a conqueress.' 3. The termination *-io* of the third, and *-us* of the fourth declension, express the state of the verb abstractly; as, *actio*, 'a suit,' *questus*, 'a complaint,' *ultio*, 'revenge.'

4. The termination *-strum* (and sometimes *-men*) expresses a means for the attainment of that which the verb denotes; as, *adjumentum*, 'a means of aiding,' from *adjuvo*; *condimentum*, 'something for seasoning,' 'seasoning,' from *condo*, *documentum*, 'a means of instructing,' from *docere*.

5. *-etum*, appended to the names of shrubs and trees, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, from *quercus*, 'an oak,' comes *quercetum*, 'a grove of oaks;' from *vinis*, 'a vine,' comes *vinetum*, 'a vineyard.'

6. *-arium* denotes a receptacle; as, *aviarium*, 'an aviary,' from *avis*, 'a bird,' *granarium*, 'a granary,' a place where corn is kept, from *granum*, 'corn.' So, *seminarium*, from *semen*; *columbarium*, from *columbus*.

7. *-ile*, appended to the names of animals, denotes the place in which they are kept; as, *bovile*, 'a stall for oxen,' *equile*, 'a stable for horses.' So, *caprile*, *suile*, *agile*, &c.

8. The termination *-itas*, which is the most common, denotes, abstractly, the quality of the adjectives from which it comes; as, *atrocitas*, 'cruelty,' from *atroc*,

'cruel;' *veritas*, 'truth,' from *verus*, 'true.' So, *facilitas*, from *facilis*; *celeritas*, from *celer*; *claritas*, from *clarus*, &c.

### § 259. TERMINATIONS OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *-ilis* and *-ibilis* express, passively, the capability of any thing; as, *amabilis*, 'capable of being loved;' *placabilis*, 'capable of being appeased.' So, *docilis*, *facilis*, *fragilis*, which seem to stand for *docibilis*, *facibilis*, &c.

2. *-ax* expresses an inclination to any thing, and generally one that is faulty; *pugnax*, 'disposed to quarrel.' So, *edax*, *loquax*, *rapax*.

3. *-sus* and *-tus* denote the material, but are thus distinguished: *-eus* denotes the solid material; *-tus* what it is adorned with; as, *aureus*, 'golden,' 'made of gold;' *auratus*, 'gilded;' so, *argenteus*, *argentatus*; *ferreus*, *ferratus*, &c.

4. *-arius* generally denotes profession and occupation; as, *statuarius*, *carbonarius*, *argentarius*, &c.

5. *-fer* or *-ferus*, from *fero*, denotes 'bearing;' as, *pinifer*, 'pine-bearing.'

6. *-alis* denotes a resemblance or similarity; as, *regalis*, 'kingly,' 'like a king;' but *regius*, 'royal,' 'belonging to a king;' as, *divitiæ regales*, 'riches suited to a king;' *divitiæ regiae*, 'riches belonging to a king;' so, *liberalis*, 'suited to a free, well-born man,' 'liberal,' 'genteel.'

7. *-osus* denotes an abundance or fulness of any thing; as, *piscosus*, 'full of fish;' *annosus*, 'full of years;' *verbosus*, 'full of words,' 'verbose;' so, *vinosus*, *maculosus*, &c. 8. The terminations *-lentus* and *-idus* have nearly the same import; as, *violentus*, *fraudulentus*, *floridus*, *herbidus*, &c.

### § 260. TERMINATION OF PRONOUNS.

1. *Quam*, 'any;' as, *quisquam*, 'any one;' *usquam*, 'any where.' 2. *Cunque*, 'ever,' 'soever;' *quicunque*, 'whosoever;' *ubicunque*, 'wheresoever.' *Que* has the same force in many words; as, *utique*, 'howsoever,' 'at all events,' 'certainly.'

### § 261. TERMINATION OF VERBS.

1. *-urio* denotes inclination or desire; as, *esurio*, 'to desire to eat.' Verbs of this termination are of the fourth conjugation, and are called *desideratives*. 2. *-to* denotes repetition, as, *dictito*, 'to say often.' 3. *-sco* expresses the beginning of the act denoted by the primitive; as, *calesco*, 'to grow warm.' 4. Diminutives end in *illo*, and denote a trifling insignificant action, as, *cantillo*.

### § 262. TERMINATION OF ADVERBS.

1. *O* and *uc*, in adverbs of place, denote 'whither;' as, *eo*, *quo*, *huc*, *istuc*, *illuc*. 2. *Inc*, 'whence;' as, *hinc*, *illinc*. 3. *Id*, 'where;' as, *hic*, *illic*.

§ 263. Third. In words which have several meanings, we must try to get the proper and first meaning, from which the rest may be derived, and see if there be a connexion between the original and secondary sense which leads from one to the other.

*Ambire*, 1. 'to go round' any thing, or from one to another: 2. 'to solicit an office,' because at Rome the candidates 'went round' to beg for votes, or because going around for any thing shows a desire after it; hence, *ambitio*, 1. 'the soliciting an office' by going round after it; 2. 'desire of honour,' 'ambition.'

*Ango*, 1. 'to make narrow,' 'to tie fast,' as the throat; 2. 'to cause anguish.'

*Adfligo* or *Affligo* (from *ad* and *fligo*) 1. 'to dash a thing against' something, as the wall, the ground: 2. 'to drive to the ground,' 'to make unfortunate,' 'to afflict.'

*Callidus*, 'thick-skinned,' 'having hard humps' from much labour, which supposes practice and experience: 2. 'experienced,' 'skilful.'

*Calamitas*, 1. 'injury to the stalk,' (from *calamus*, 'a stalk'); 2. 'a great loss' or 'hurt,' or misfortune attended with loss; as when one loses his property.

*Confutare* and *refutare*, 1. 'to quench boiling water by pouring in cold; 2. 'to damp, drive back, confute.'

*Egregius*, 1. 'chosen from the flock; 2. 'excellent.'

*Gratia*, 1. 'agreeableness; 2. *gratia hominis*, 'the favour which one has with the people,' or 'which he has towards others; 3. 'complaisance; 4. 'thanks.'

*Offendere*, 1. inadvertently to tread or 'stumble against any thing; 2. 'to find, meet with; 3. 'to hurt; 4. 'to commit a fault,' 'to offend; 5. 'to be unfortunate.'

*Persona*, 1. 'a mask; 2. 'person,' 'part,' or 'character,' whether real or assumed, for the ancient actors wore 'masks' which corresponded to their assumed character; 3. 'person,' the man himself; *mea persona*, 'my person,' 'I.'

*Probus*, 1. 'good,' 'genuine,' 'sincere,' when any thing is what it was taken for; as, *aurum, probum*; 2. 'good,' 'honourable,' 'upright,' as, *probus amicus*, 'a sincere friend.'

*Scrupulus*, 1. 'a small stone; 2. any 'obstacle; 3. 'hesitation,' 'uncertainty,' 'scruple.'

*Sublevare*, 1. 'to raise on high; 2. 'to help,' 'to stand by; 3. 'to lighten.'

## SYNTAX,

OR

## CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS IN SENTENCES.

## SENTENCES.

A **SENTENCE** is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, *I read; the boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a two-fold relation to one another; namely, that of *Concord* or *Agreement*; and that of *Government* or *Influence*.

*Concord*, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

*Government*, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

§ I. 1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood: or by a verbal adjective.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.



## SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

§ 2. The two general divisions of Syntax in this Grammar are into SIMPLE SENTENCES and COMPOUND SENTENCES. The latter will be found under rule LVII—‘The construction of Relatives.’

§ 3. A SIMPLE SENTENCE is that which has but one nominative and one verb; as, *præceptor docet*, ‘the master teaches;’ a COMPOUND SENTENCE is that which has more than one nominative and one verb; as, *præceptor, qui docet, labōrat*, ‘the master, who teaches, is sick;’ here the relative pronoun *qui* introduces another verb, *docet*, into the sentence.

§ 4. In a SIMPLE SENTENCE there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute* or *Predicate*. The *Subject* is the word, (whether it denotes a thing or a person) of which something is said; the *Predicate* is what is said of the subject. *The father is learned*. Here ‘the father’ is the Subject of discourse, or the person spoken of; ‘learned’ the Predicate, or what we affirm concerning the subject. Sometimes the subject is accompanied by an adjective; as, *the fine book is lost*; here ‘the fine book’ is the subject, and ‘lost’ the predicate.

§ 5. In a COMPOUND SENTENCE there are either several subjects and one predicate, or several predicates and one subject, or both several predicates and several subjects; as, ‘My father, mother, brother and sister are dead;’—here, the predicate *dead* belongs to the four subjects, *father, mother, brother and sister*, which taken together form a plural; the predicate therefore with the verb should be plural. The subject is often separated from its predicate; as, ‘my father, who has been absent many weeks, has not yet written;’ where the words, *my father has not yet written* form a sentence, between which another sentence, *who has been absent many weeks*, is interposed. In the interposed sentence, *who* is the subject, *absent* the predicate.

## CONCORD.

The following words agree together in sentences. 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

## 1. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

§ 6. RULE I. Substantives signifying the same thing agree in case; as,

<i>Cicero orator,</i>	Cicero the orator;	<i>Cicerōnis oratōris,</i>	Of Cicero the orator
<i>Urbs Athēnæ,</i>	The city Athens;	<i>Urbis Athēnārum,</i>	Of the city Athens.

§ 7. This addition to a substantive is called *Apposition*, and is properly a short mode of speaking for *qui, quæ, quod, or cum* with the verb *sum*; as, *Cicero, Consul, hoc fecit*, 'Cicero the Consul did this,' the same as, *Cicero, cum consul esset, hoc fecit*.

§ 8. It is not necessary that the nouns agree in gender, number or person; as, *Magnum pauperies opprobrium*, Hor. where *opprobrium*, which is neuter, agrees in case with *pauperies*, fem. But, if it be possible, they should agree in gender and number: thus, *docuit hoc me usus, magister optimus*, 'experience, which is the best master, taught me this:' if for *usus* we substitute *exercitatio*, fem., we should say, *magistra optima*.

§ 9. The noun, pronoun, or adjective, in the answer to a question, must be in the same case with that word in the question to which it is an answer: as, *Quis mundum creavit? Deus. Cujus opera mundus creatus est? Dei*.

§ 10. When a plural appellative is used as descriptive of two or more proper names of different genders, it must be of the more worthy gender; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati missi*, Liv. in which *reges* is equivalent to *regem et reginam*.

§ 11. Sometimes the latter substantive is put in the Genitive; as, *Fons Timavi*, for *Timavus*, Virg.

## 2. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

§ 12. II. Adjectives, including Adjective Pronouns and Participles, agree with their Substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

*Bonus vir*, a good man;  
*Femina casta*, a chaste woman;  
*Dulce pomum*, a sweet apple;

*Boni viri*, good men.  
*Feminae castæ*, chaste women.  
*Dulcia pomæ*, sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

§ 13. Obs. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing. Virg.; *Tuum scire*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge. Pers. We sometimes, however, find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriores feram*, sup. *partes*. Ter.

§ 14. Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as, *Certus amicus*, a sure friend; *Bona ferina*, good venison; *Summum bonum*, the chief good: *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incola turba vocant*, the inhabitants. Ovid. *Populum late regem*, Virg. for *regnantem*, 'ruling.'

§ 15. Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, infimus, imus, summus, supremus, reliquus, cætera*, usually signify the first part, the middle part, &c. of any thing; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

§ 16. An adjective joined with two substantives of different genders, generally agrees with that one which is chiefly the subject of discourse, though sometimes with the nearest, although it may not be the principal one; as, *non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic. where *dicenda* agrees with *stultitia*, instead of *dicendus*, to agree with *error*. But if the principal substantive be the name of a man or woman, the adjective agrees with it; as, *Semiramis puer esse credita est*, Justin. *not creditus* to agree with *puer*.

§ 17. Obs. 4. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus, res præstantissima*, &c.

### 3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

§ 18. III. A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person; as,

*Ego lego*, I read.

*Tu scribis*, Thou writest or you write.

*Præceptor docet*, The master teaches.

*Nos legimus*, We read.

*Vos scribitis*, Ye or you write.

*Præceptores docent*, Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

§ 19. Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos*, of the second person; *ille*, and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Tu es patrônus, tu pater*, Ter. *Tu legis, ego scribo*.

§ 20. Obs. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*; the sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens, detained the dictator for a long time. Liv. 7, 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet, id est esse regem*. Sallust.

§ 21. Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant*, or *fugere cœperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*. This is called the *historical infinitive*, and is only used in animated narration.

§ 22. Obs. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat* or *stant*; the multitude stands, or stand.

§ 23. A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many, considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erat cœni: Pars obtinere trudent, sc. formidæ.* Virg. *Æn.* iv. 406. *Magna pars rapta, sc. virgines.* Liv. i. 9. Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars ardens,* Virg. *Æn.* vii. 624.

§ 24. Not unfrequently a plural verb is used after *uterque* and *quisque*; after *pars...pars*; and after *alius...alius*; or *alter...alterum*, on account of the idea of plurality which they involve; as, *uterque coram at castris exercitum educunt.*

§ 25. The nominative fails to the third person of certain verbs, especially those which mean 'to say,' 'to tell,' &c.; as, *aiunt, dicunt, ferunt, narrant*, that is, *homines*. So also with the third person of *sum* when *qui* follows and represents the subject; as, *est qui dicat, for est aliquis qui dicat*, 'there is some one who says:' so, *sunt quos juvat*, Hor.

§ 26. With certain verbs a nominative is always wanting; as passive verbs used impersonally; as, *parcitur mihi*, 'I am spared,' literally, 'it is spared to me.' So with the gerund; as, *mihi est eundem*, 'I must go.' So also in the expression *venit mihi in mentem illius diei*, where *illius diei* seems to stand for the nominative: but perhaps *negotium* or *memoria* is to be supplied.

§ 27. Sometimes the Nominative which fails must be supplied from the preceding sentence; as, *et, in quem primum egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur*, (Liv. i. 1.) where the nom. *hic* from the preceding *locum* is understood with *vocatur*; or better, *et locus in quem egressi sunt Troja vocatur*. Sometimes from the following; as, *vastatur agri, quod inter urbem ac Fidenas est*, 'there was so much land laid waste as was between Rome, &c.' (Liv. i. 14.) where *id* governing *agri* is nom. to *vastatur*; and *quod* is used, as elsewhere, for *quantum*.

#### *Accusative before the Infinitive.*

§ 28. IV. The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

*Gaudeo te valere,*                      I am glad that you are well.

§ 29. This rule would be better expressed thus.—The subject of the infinitive mode is put in the accusative case; as, *victorem parcere victis, æquum est*, 'it is right that the victor should spare the vanquished;' for if the question be asked 'who should spare?' the answer, that is the subject of the verb *parcere*, would be 'the victor,' which is put in the accusative, *victorem*. So, *miror te non scribere*, 'I wonder that you do not write,' where the subject of the verb *scribere*, of whom the wonder is predicated, is *te*.

§ 30. Obs. 1. The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Atunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

§ 31. Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

§ 32. Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

§ 33. Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied, especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercitum caenum fusumque cognovi*, Cic. Sometimes the subject and the infinitive are both understood; as, *Pollicitus suscipiarum*, scil. *me esse*, Ter.

§ 34. Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, or *quin*; as, *Gaudeo te valere*, i. e. *quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem*: *Jubeo vos bene sperare*, or *ut bene speretis*; *Prohibeo eum exire*, or *ne exeat*: *Non dubito eum fecisse*, or much better, *quin fecerit*. *Scio quod filius amet*, Plaut. for *filium amare*. *Miror, si potuit, for eum potuisse*. Cic. *Nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes virtutes superaret*, for *populum Romanum superasse*. Nep. *Ex animi sententia jure, ut ego rempublicam non destram, for me non deperitum esse*. Liv. xiii. 53.

§ 35. Care should be taken in using this construction not to render the meaning ambiguous, as in the famous answer of the oracle; *Aio te, Aecida, Romanos vincere posse*, in which it could not be ascertained from the mere words, which party was to prove victorious. Here two accusatives being brought together with the active verb *vincere*, it is doubtful from the construction which is the subject of *posse*, and which the object of *vincere*. The ambiguity might be prevented by changing the active into the passive voice.

*The same Case after a Verb as before it.*

§ 36. V. Any Verb may have the same Case after it as before it, *when both words refer to the same thing*; as,

*Ego sum discipulus,  
Tu vocaris Joannes,  
Illa incedit regina,  
Scio illum haberi sapientem,  
Scio vos esse discipulos,*

*I am a scholar.  
You are named John.  
She walks as a queen.  
I know that he is esteemed wise.  
I know that you are scholars.*

*So Redeo iratus, jaceo supplex*; *Evident digni*, they will become worthy; *Rempublicam defendi adolescens*; *nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malum videri timideus, quam parum prudens*. Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligentem*. Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatiss.* Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem*; *cupio non putari mendacem*; *Vult esse medius*, &c. &c. He wishes to be neuter. Cic. *Dixit esse pater*; *Hoc est esse patrem?* sc. *eum*. Ter. *Id est, dominum, non imperatorem esse*. Sallust.

§ 37. Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

§ 38. Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are:

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem, and existo; eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evādo, jaceo, fugio, &c.*

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appello, vocor, nominor, nuncupor*; to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constitutor, salutor, designor, &c.*

§ 39. These and other like verbs admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Intērest omnium esse bonos*, scil. *se*, it is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or accus. promiscuously; as, *Cupio dici doctus* or *doctum*, sc. *me dici*; *Cupio esse clemens*, *non putari mendax*; *vult esse medius*.

§ 40. Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents. Ter. *Omnia pontus erunt*. Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium ira amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love. Ter. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Oppidum est appellatum Posidonia*. Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*. Cic.

§ 41. Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy; or, *licet mihi esse beatum*, *me* being understood; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beatum*. One may be happy, scil. *alicui, or homini*.

§ 42. Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Retulit Ajax Jovis esse pronēpos*, for *se esse pronēpōtem* Ovid. Met. xii.

Obs. 6. The verb *to be*, in English, has always a nominative case after it, as, *It was I*: unless it be of the infinitive mode; as, *I took it to be him*. We often use, however, this impropriety in conversation, *It is me, It can't be me, It was him*; for, *It is I, It cannot be I, It was he*.

## GOVERNMENT.

### I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 43. VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former.*)

§ 44. This rule might be better expressed thus:

A Noun, which limits the meaning of another Noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive; as,

*Amor laudis*, The love of praise. | *Lex naturæ*, The law of nature.  
*Domus Cæsaris*, The house of Cæsar.

In the first example *amor* means 'love' in general; *laudis* LIMITS the affection to the particular object, 'praise'. So, in the second, *domus* means 'a house' in general; *Cæsaris* LIMITS the meaning to the possessor, *Cæsar*.

§ 45. The Genitive has three senses. 1. It is used *actively* or denotes an action,—that one does any thing; as, *Victoria Cæsaris*, 'the victory of Cæsar,' that is, which Cæsar gains. 2. It is used *possessively*, denoting that the thing which is put in the Genitive has or possesses something; as, *liber patris*, 'the father's book,' 'the book which belongs to the father.' 3. It is used *objectively*, that is, denotes the object, whether person or thing, to which the action is directed; as, *amor mei*, 'love for me.' In English the *objective* genitive is often rendered by some other verb than *of*; as, *longing for rest*, *love to virtue*.

§ 46. Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son; and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis*; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

§ 47. The Genitive also sometimes follows substantives to denote their use or service; as, *abaci casa*, Cic. 'plate for the sideboard.' *Apparatus urbium expugmandarum*, Liv. 'Instruments for attacking cities.'

§ 48. Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, the love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him: So *caritas patris*, signifies either the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *Timor Dei* always implies *Deus timetur*; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So, *caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil. Liv. ii. 1.

§ 49. Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectōris Andromæche*, scil. *uxor*; *Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *adem* or *templum*; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*; three miles.

§ 50. Instead of a genitive, verbal substantives are sometimes followed by the case which the verb, from which they are derived, governs; as, *Quid tibi hanc curatio est rem?* Plant. for *hujus rei*, because *curare* governs an accusative. So in Cic. *Quodsi justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus institutisque populorum*; because *obtemperare* governs a dative.

§ 51. A dative may in many cases be substituted for the genitive, with little change of meaning, as in English *to* or *for* may frequently be substituted for *of*; as, *exitium PECORI*, 'a destruction to the flock;' *quem exitum TANTIS MALIS speratis?* 'what issue do you hope for, to so great calamities?' *CÆSARI se ad pedes projicere*, 'they cast themselves at the feet of Cæsar.' *Cui corpus porrigitur*, 'for whom the body is extended,' i. e. 'whose body is extended.' In all these cases the dative is the remote object of the action expressed by the verb, or by the noun which is limited by the dative. Thus *exitum* means 'destruction' in general, and the noun which limits its signification, (*pecus*) is put in the dative, *pecori*.

§ 52. Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Amicitia, inimicitia, pax, cum aliquo*; *Amor in, vel erga, aliquem*; *Gaudium de re*; *Cura de aliquo*; *Mentio illius, vel de illo*; *Quies ab armis*; *Fumus ex incendiis*; *Prædator ex sociis, for sociorum*. Sall. &c.

§ 53. Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to Avernus; *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law.

§ 54. SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

§ 55. So also adjective pronouns, when used as substantives, or having a noun understood; as, *Liber ejus, illius, hujus, &c.* the book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis*; the book of her, or her book, sc. *femine*. *Libri eorum, or earum*, their books; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster*, not *nostri*; *sum jus*, not *sui*.

§ 56. When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vestrum*; but we use their possessives when an active sense is expressed; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved; *Amor meus*, My love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find, however, the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee. Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27. *Labor mei*, My labour. Plaut.

§ 57. The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Pectus tuum hominis simplicis*, Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster duorum eventus*. Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*. Cic. *Mea scripta, timentis, &c.* Hor. *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*. Cic. *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime*. Id. The reason of this is, because the adjective pronouns are equivalent to the genitive of the personal; as, *pectus tuum hominis* is the same as *pectus tui, hominis, &c.* where *hominis* would agree in case with *tui*.

§ 58. The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon the nominative; as, *Cato interfecit se, Miles defendit suam vitam; Dicit se scripturum esse*. We find, however, *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*. Cic. *Persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiscantur, for una secum*. Cæs. See page 84.



§ 59. VII. If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

*Vir summa prudentia, or summæ prudentiâ,*  
*Puer probæ indolis, or probâ indole,*

A man of great wisdom.  
 A boy of a good disposition.

§ 60. This Genitive or Ablative is called the GENTITIVE or ABLATIVE of QUALITY, and the rule would have been better expressed by saying 'an adjective of description' instead of praise or dispraise. This Genitive or Ablative is used to express—1. PROPERTY OF CHARACTER; as, *puer bonæ indolis*; *adolescens summæ virtutis*. 2. FORM; as, *mulier formæ pulchræ, or egregiæ formæ*. 3. WORTH, RANK; as, *homo parvi pretii*. 4. POWER; as, *homo sui juris*, 'a man at his own disposal,' 'one who is his own master.' 5. WEIGHT; as, *lapis centum librarum*. 6. TIME; as, *exilium decem annorum*, 'a banishment of ten years.' 7. LENGTH, SIZE, &c.; as, *testudo pedum sexaginta*.

§ 61. Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum, de, ex, in, &c.* Thus, *Vir summæ prudentiæ* is the same with *vir cum summæ prudentiâ*.

§ 62. Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formica laboris*, the laborious ant; *Vir imi subsellii, homo minimi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war, Sallust. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*. Cic. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. *Miræ sum alacritate ad litigandum*. Cic. *Capite aperto est*, His head is bare; *obvoluto*, covered. *Capite et supercilio semper est rasis*. Id. *Mulier magno natu*. Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens, eximiâ spe, summæ virtutis*. Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive. *Qui nunquam agro corpore fuerunt*. Cic.

§ 63. Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative: thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii, or præstanti ingenio*; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*.

Obs. 4. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum, or quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdöche*; as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus secundum or quod ad membra, or habens membra fracta*. Horat. *Os humerosque deo similis*. Virg.

### Adjectives taken as Substantives.

§ 64. VIII. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; as,

*Multum pecuniæ,* Much money.

*Quid rei est?* What is the matter?

§ 65. Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers; as, *Plus eloquentia, minus sapientia, tantum fidei, id negotii*; *Quicquid erat patrum, reos diceres*. Liv. *Id loci, Ad hoc ætatis*. Sallust.

§ 66. Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum*.

*minus, minimum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

§ 67. *Tantum* with the genitive always means 'so much,' 'so many;' but when it means 'so great,' it is always an adjective, and agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case. Thus, *tentus labor*, 'so great a labour; *tantum laboris*, 'so much labour; *tantum negotium*, 'so weighty a business; *tantum negotii*, 'so much business,' or 'trouble;' it is therefore incorrect to say that *tantum laboris* is put for *tentus labor*. So with *quantum*, 'how much;' as, *quantum negotium*, 'how great,' or 'how important a business;' *quantum negotii*, 'how much business,' or 'trouble.'

§ 68. Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid hostile timèrent*, not hostile: we find, however, *quicquid civilis*. Liv. v. 3.

§ 69. Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viarum, Opæ locorum, Telluris operis, loca* being understood. So, *Amara curarum, acuta belli, ac. negotia*. Horat. An adjective, indeed, of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *Amicus Casaris, Patria Ulyssis, &c.*

### *Opus* and *Usus*.

§ 70. IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying need, require the ablative; as,

*Est opus pecuniâ*, There is need of money; *Unus viribus*, Need of strength.

§ 71. Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive; as, *Lectonis opus est*. Quint. *Opæ usus est*. Liv. *Temporis opus est*. Liv.

§ 72. Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est*. We need a general. Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*. Id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*. Id.

§ 73. Hence it is seen that *opus* is used in two ways; 1. PERSONALLY, that is, it has its subject with which it agrees in the Nominative, and is found in both numbers; as, *liber est mihi opus; libri sunt mihi opus; libri mihi opus fuerunt, &c.* 2. IMPERSONALLY, with *est*, like other impersonal verbs, in which case it has its subject in the Ablative; as, *Auctoritate tua nobis opus est*. In both usages the person to whom something is necessary, is put in the Dative.

§ 74. Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturato*, need of haste; *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation; *Quid facto usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius. Cic.

§ 75. Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*. Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, agrum ut le adsimiles*. Plant. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*. Horat. It is often placed absolutely, i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est; si opus sit, &c.*

## II. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

## 1. Adjectives governing the Genitive.

§ 76. X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

*Avidus gloriæ*, Desirous of glory.  
*Memor beneficiörum*, Mindful of favours.

*Ignarus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud.

§ 77. To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *capax*, *edax*, *ferax*, *tenax*, *pertinax*, &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans*, *appetens*, *cupiens*, *insolens*, *sciens*; *consultus*, *doctus*, *expertus*, *insuetus*, *insolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind; 1. Desire, as, *avarus*, *cupidus*, *studiosus*, *curiosus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance, and doubting; as, *callidus*, *certus*, *certior*, *consciüs*, *gnarus*, *peritus*, *prudens*, &c. *Ignarus*, *incertus*, *insciüs*, *imprudens*, *imperitus*, *immemor*, *rudis*; *ambiguus*, *dubius*, *suspensus*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *anxius*, *curiosus*, *solicitus*, *providus*, *diligens*; *incuriosus*, *securus*, *negligens*, &c. 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolosus*, *pavidus*, *timidus*, *trepidus*; *impavidus*, *interritus*, *intrepidus*. 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius*, *reus*, *suspectus*, *compertus*; *innoxius*, *innocens*, *insons*. 6. Power or might over any thing; as, *compos mentis*, 'master of his understanding;' *diva potens Cypri*, 'the goddess (Venus) mistress of Cyprus.' 7. Liberality, profusion, parsimony; as, *liberalis*, *benignus*, *prodigus*, *profusus*, *parcus*, *avarus*.

§ 78. To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *ager animi*; *ardens*, *audax*, *aversus*, *diversus*, *egregius*, *erectus*, *falsus*, *felix*, *fessus*, *furens*, *ingens*, *integer*, *latus*, *præstans animi*; *modicus voti*; *integer vite*; *seri studiörum*. Hor. But we say, *Ager pedibus*, *ardens in cupiditatibus*, *præstans doctrinæ*, *modicus cultu*; *Latus negotio*, *de re*, or *propter rem*, &c. and never *ager pedum*, &c.

§ 79. Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algöris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algörem*, actually bearing cold. So, *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem*; *doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

§ 80. Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction; as, *avidus in pecuniis*. Cic. *Avidior ad rem*. Ter. *Jure consultus* and *peritus*, or *juris*. Cic. *Rudis literarum*, in *jure civili*. Cic. *Rudis arte*, *ad mala*. Ovid. *Doctus Latine*, *Latinis literis*. Cic. *Assuetus labore*, in *Omnia*. Liv. *Mensæ herili*. Virg. *Insuper moribus Romanis*, in the dat. Liv. *Laböris*, *ad onera portanda*. Cæs. *Desuetus bello et triumphis*, in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg. *Anxius*, *solicitus*, *securus*, *de re aliquâ*; *diligens*, in, *ad*, *de*. Cic. *Negligens in aliquem*, in or *de re*: *Reus de vi*, *criminibus*. Cic. *Certior factus de re*, rather than *rei*. Cic.

§ 81. Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ*, in *re*, or in *negotio*, of some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis*, i. e. *causâ*, or in *re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter

of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain, in their own signification, the force of a substantive; thus, *studiosus pecunie*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecunie*, having a fondness for money.

§ 82. The following Adjectives are found with the Genitive ANIMI: *Abjectior*, Liv. *Ager*, Id. *Amens*, Virg. *Anxius*, Sall. *Augustior*, Apul. *Aversus*, Tac. *Cæcus*, Quintil. *Captus*, Tac. *Certus*, Liv. *Compôs*, Ter. *Confidens*, Sueton. *Confirmatus*, Apul. *Confusus*, Liv. *Crédula spes*, Hor. *Ditior*, Stat. *Diversus*, Tac. and Ter. *Dubius*, Virg. *Egrégius*, Id. *Erectus*, Sil. *Exiguus*, Claud. *Extimius*, Stat. *Explētus*, Apul. *Externatus*, Id. *Falsus*, Ter. *Ferox*, Tac. *Festinus*, Apul. *Fidens*, Virg. *Firmatus*, Sall. *Furens*, Virg. *Illex*, Apul. *Impôs*, Plaut. *Infelix*, Virg. *Ingens*, Tac. *Ineonus*, Apul. *Intèger*, Hor. *Lapsus*, Plaut. *Lassus*, Id. *Macte*, Mart. *Miser*, Plaut. *Mutatus*, Apul. *Præceps*, Virg. *Præstans*, Id. *Roreatus*, Apul. *Stipentis*, Liv. *Suspensus*, Apul. *Tantus*, Id. *Tenella*, Id. *Territus*, Liv. *Turbatus*, Sil. *Turbidus*, Tac. *Vagus*, Catull. *Validus*, Tac. *Vecors*, Apul. *Versus*, Tac. *Victus*, Virg. So *Alternus animæ*, Sil.

1. These are followed by the Genitive INGENII: *Emulus*, Sil. *Audax*, Stat. *Ferox*, Sil. *Latus*, Vell. *Versutus*, Plin.

2. These by MENTIS: *Dubius*, Ovid. *Intèger*, Hor. *Mutabile*, Sil. *Pares*, Id. *Potens*, Ovid. *Sanus*, Plaut.

3. These by IRÆ: *Manifestus*, Sall. *Percorax*, Tac. *Potens*, Curt. *Pulehorritus*, Sil. *Vindictinus*, Id.

4. These by MILITIE: *Acer*, Tac. *Impiger*, Id. *Inglorius*, Id. *Lassus*, Hor. *Optimus*, Sil. *Strimius*, Tac.

5. These by BELLI: *Expertus*, Virg. *Fessus*, Stat. *Madius*, Hor. *Promptus*, Tac. *Serus*, Sil. *Risides bellorum*, Stat.

6. These by LABORIS: *Anhilus*, Sil. *Inevitus*, Cas. *Inivitus*, Tac. *Latus*, Virg. *Fortunatus laborum*, Virg. *Laudandus laborum*, Sil. *Libet laborum*, Hor.

7. These by RERUM: *Fessus*, Virg. *Imperitus*, Ter. *Instabilis*, Senec. *Sicora*, Ter. *Trepidus*, Liv. et Sil. *Unicus*, Sil.

8. These by FIDEI: *Præclarus*, Tac. *Præcus*, Sil. *Strister*, Id.

9. These by ÆVI: *Æquales*, Sil. *Floridior*, Id. *Maturus*, Virg. *Maximus*, Sil. *Memor*, Virg. *Validus*, Aurel. Vict.

10. These by TUI: *Fidissima*, Virg. *Similis*, Plaut.

11. These by SUI: *Mallior*, Apul. *Pariclitabundus*, Id. *Superior*, Tac. *Profusus*, Sall.

12. These by MORUM: *Diversus*, Tac. *Exactus*, Ovid. *Fluxus*, Sil. *Grævis*, Claud. *Sperendus*, Tac.

13. So, *Admirandus frugalitatis*, Senec. *Æquus absentium*, Tac. *Alienus consilii*, Sall. *Dignitatis*, Cic. *Joci*, Ovid. *Pacis*, Lucr. *Ambiguus pudoris*, Tac. *Anxius furti*, Ovid. *Ardens Cædis*, Stat. *Argutus facinorum*, Plaut. *Assuetus tumultus*, Liv. *Atror odii*, Tac. *Attonitus serpentis*, Sil. *Avidus laudis*, Cic. *Bonignus vini*, Hor. *Bibulus Falerii*, Id. *Blandus precum*, Stat. *Cæcus fleti*, Lucan. *Futuri*, Stat. *Calidus temporum*, Tac. *Catus Legum*, Anson. *Celer nandi*, Sil. *Certus destinationis*, Tac. *Salutis*, Ovid. *Clamorous unde*, Sil. *Clarissimus discipline*, Vell. *Commune omnium*, Cic. *Compôs viti*, Liv. *Conternit-nus jugi*, Apul.: cf. Sil. v. 511. *Crédulus adversi*, Sil. *Cumulatissimus scelorum*, Plaut. *Cupidior salutis*, Nep. *Cupidus rerum novarum*, Sall. *Damnandus facti*, Sil. *Deformis liti*, Id. *Degener artis*, Ovid. *Despectus tædæ*, Sil. *Divius æqui*, Id. *Recti*, Id. *Disertus leporem*, ac *facetiarum*, Catull. *Dispar sortis*, Sil. *Divina futuri*, Hor. *Dacilis modorum*, Id. *Doctus virgæ*, Sil. *Dubius sati*, Sil.

*Sententia*, Ovid. *Dulcissimus* fandi, Gell. *Durus* ōris, Liv. *Durior* ōris, Ovid. *Effusissimus* munificentiae, Vell. *Exultantius* corporum, Senec. *Erectus* linguae, Sil. *Fati*, Stat. *Essors* culpae, Liv. *Secandi*, Hor. *Periculi*, Ter. *Exul* patriae, Hor. *Mundi*, Ovid. *Domus*, Quintil. *Extorris* regni, Stat. *Exitus* formae, Sil. *Facilis* frugum, Claud. *Fallax* amicitiae, Tac. *Falsus* cupiti. Sil. *Fatigatus* spei, Apul. *Felix* cerebri, Hor. *Opèrum*, Sil. *Fessus* viae, Stat. *Māris* et viarum, Hor. *Salutis*, Sil. *Fidens* armorum, Lucan. *Firmus* propoſiti, Vell. *Flavus* comarum, Sil. *Formidolōſior* hostium, Tac. *Frēquens* sylvae, Tac. *Frustratus* spei, Gell. *Fugitivus* regni, Flor. *Gaudens* alti, Stat. *Gravida* metalli, Ovid. *Impavidus* somni, Sil. *Imprōba* connubii, Stat. *Incautus* futuri, Hor. *Indecōra* formae, Tac. *Indocilis* pacis, Sil. *Inexplebilis* virtutis, Liv. *Infirmus* corporis, Apul. *Ingratus* salutis, Virg. *Innoxius* consilii, Q. Curt. *Insolens* infamiae, Cic. *Audiendi*, Tac. *Insolitus* servitii, Sall. *Insons* sanguinis, Ovid. *Intēger* vitae, Hor. *Urbis* V. Flac. *Ævi*, Virg. *Annorum*, Stat. *Interrita* lēti, Ovid. *Cupiti*, Vell. *Intrēpidus* ferri, Claud. *Insuper* opēris et lēboris, Tac. *Invidus* laudis, Cic. *Latus* frugum, Sall. *Lassus* maris et viarum militumque, Hor. *Lentus* cepti, Sil. *Levis* opum, Id. *Liberalis* pecuniae, Sall. *Lūgendus* formae, Sil. *Mātidus* roris, Apul. *Mānifestus* criminis, Tac. *Mēdius* pacis, Hor. *Frātis* et sōris, Ovid. *Mēlior* flati, Sil. *Mōdicus* pecuniae, Tac. *Voti*, Pers. *Originis*, Tac. *Dignationis*, Id. *Vitium*, Vell. *Voluptatum*, Tac. *Munificus* auri, Claud. *Nymius* impērii, Liv. *Sermonis*, Tac. *Nobilis* fandi, Auson. *Notus* fugarum, Sil. *Nudus* arboris, Ovid. *Occiduis* odii, Tac. *Onusta* remigata, Hirt. *Otiōis* studiūrum, Plin. *Pāres* etatis, Sil. *Pavidus* offensionum, Tac. *Pauper* iūque, Hor. *Perfida* pacti, Sil. *Perinfames* disciplinae, Apul. *Pēritus* iuris legumque, Hor. *Pertinax* docendi, Id. *Piger* periculi, Sil. *Potens* lyrae, Hor. *Ætatis*, Sil. *Voti*, Ovid. *Māris* et terrae tempestatumque, Virg. *Præcipuus* virtutis, Apul. *Præcia* futuri, Virg. *Præstans* sapientiae, Tac. *Præcox* otii, Tac. *Præfugus* regni, Id. *Præperus* occasionis, Id. *Prospera* frugum, Hor. *Purus* scelēris, Id. *Serpentum*, Sil. *Rectus* iudicii, Senec. *Ridiculis* literarum, Cic. *Saliatus* caedis, Ovid. *Saucius* famae, Apul. *Scitus* vadiorum, Hor. *Segnis* occasionum, Tac. *Seri* studiūrum, Hor. *Solers* opèrum, Sil. *Lyrae*, Hor. *Solutus*, opèrum, Id. *Spirita* vigōris, Sil. *Studiosissimus* mei, Cic. *Summus* severitatis, Tac. *Superstes* dignitatis, Cic. *Surdus* veritatis, Col. *Tardus* fugae, V. Flac. *Tenuis* opum, Sil. *Truncus* pedum, Virg. *Vāfer* iuris, Ovid. *Vālidus* orandi, Tac. *Virtutum*, Id. *Vānus* veri, Virg. *Venerandus* senectutis, Sil. *Vetus* regnandi, Tac. *Vigil* armenti, Sil. *Utilis* mēdendi, Ovid.

§ 83. XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural;\* as,

*Aliquis philosophorum,*  
*Senior fratrum,*  
*Doctissimus Romanorum,*  
*Quis nostrum,*  
*Una musarum,*  
*Octavus sapientium,*

Some one of the philosophers.  
The elder of the brothers.  
The most learned of the Romans.  
Which of us?  
One of the muses.  
The eight of the wise men.

§ 84. Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them in English, *of* or *among*; as, *alius*, *nullus*, *solus*, &c. *quis* and *qui*, with their compounds: also Comparatives, Superlatives, and some numerals; as, *unus*, *duo*, *tres*; *primus*, *secundus*, &c. To these add *multi*, *pauci*, *plerique*, *medius*, *neuter*, *quotus*, *nonnulli*.

\* That is, These partitives, comparatives &c. denoting but a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole

§ 85. If the substantive be a collective noun, the genitive singular is used; as, *totius Græciæ doctissimus*.

§ 86. Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantives which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former; as, *Indus flumen maximus*. Cic. Rarely with the latter; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimum*. Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror* or *ex numero sororum*.

§ 87. Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as, *Unus de fratribus*; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter*; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes*, for *omnium*. Virg. *Primus inter omnes*. Id.

§ 88. Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*. Cic. *Maximus stirpis*. Liv. *Ultimos orbis Britannos*. Horat. Od. i. 35, 29.

§ 89. Obs. 4. Comparatives are used when we speak of two; Superlatives when we speak of more than two; as, *Major fratrum*. The elder of the brothers, meaning two; *Maximus fratrum*, the eldest of the brothers, meaning more than two. In like manner, *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quis*, *unus*, *alius*, *nullus*, with regard to three or more; as, *Uter Vestrum*, Whether or which of you two; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you three; but these are sometimes taken promiscuously, the one for the other.

## 2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

§ 90. [The Dative, when compared with the Accusative (which is the immediate object) may be defined to be THE CASE OF THE REMOTE OBJECT. It answers to the question, to whom? or for whom or what? to what end? to whose advantage or disadvantage? The active Verb with the Accusative expresses the amount of the action done to the object, which object is put in the Dative. Thus in the expression, *narras fabulam surdo*, 'you are telling a story to a deaf person,' the two terms *narras fabulam* (the active Verb with the Accusative) are required to express the amount of what is done, *surdo*, 'to the deaf person.'

§ 91. But the Dative according to our English idiom must frequently be translated by FROM or OF, instead of TO or FOR. Thus, *Brutus percussit pectus Cæsari*, 'Brutus struck the breast of Cæsar;' here the two terms *percussit pectus*, are requisite to express the action done to the object, which object the Latins elegantly put in the Dative, *Cæsari*, 'to Cæsar,' instead of the Genitive to be governed by *pectus*. Thus in Livy, l. 1. line 2d, the reading should be *Æneæ Antenoreque*, according to all the manuscripts: but in the school editions and even in Drackenborch the reading is *Æneâ Antenoreque*, probably, because the ablative could more easily be construed after *abstinuisse* by the common rule of Syntax, "A preposition in Composition," &c. It is here stated by Livy that the Greeks *abstinuisse omne jus belli* 'withheld every right of war.' To whom did the Greeks

to this? to two persons, *Aeneas* and *Antenor*. The English idiom indeed states the persons from whom every right of war was withheld, but the Latin idiom, with no less elegance, states the persons to whom this act of withholding was done.]

§ 92. XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

*Utile bello,*  
*Perniciosus republicæ,*  
*Similis patri,*

Profitable for war.  
Hurtful to the commonwealth.  
Like to his father.

Or thus, Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.

To this rule belong :

§ 93. 1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit; as, *Benignus, bonus, commodus, faustus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber, utilis*. — *Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, inutilis, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer*.

2. Of pleasure or pain; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, latus, suavis*. — *Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis*.

3. Of friendship or hatred; as, *Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius*. — *Adversus, æmulus, alienatus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, immis, inimicus, iniquus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux*.

4. Of clearness or obscurity; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus*. — *Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus*.

5. Of nearness; as, *Affinis, finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus*.

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, oppositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus*. — *Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens*.

7. Of ease, or difficulty; as, *Facilis, levis, obvius, pervius*. — *Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, invius*.

8. Those denoting propensity or readiness; as, *Pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus*.

9. Of equality, or inequality; as, *Æqualis, æquatus, par, compar, suppar*. — *Inequalis, impar, dispar, discors*. Also of likeness or unlikeness; as, *Similis, æmulus, geminus*. — *Dissimilis, abscondus, alienus, conterminus, diversus, discolor*.

10. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognatus, communis, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, conscius, consentaneus, consonus, conveniens, continuus, confinis, continens, contiguus*; as, *Mari aër continens est*. Cic.

11. To these add many other adjectives of various significations; as, *absurdus, credulus, decorus, deformis, intentus, obnoxius, subjectus, superstes, supplex, secundus, præsto*, indecl. 'at hand,' &c.—particularly.

§ 94. Passive Participles, and Verbal Adjectives in *BILIS* govern the Dative; as,

*Amandus* or *amabilis omnibus,*

To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis malis*; *Optabilis omnibus pax*; *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*. Cic. *Semel omnibus calcanda est via lethi*. Hor. *Bella matribus detestata*, 'Wars hated by mothers.' Hor.

§ 95. Verbals in *pus* are often construed with the prep. *a*; as, *Deus est venerandus et colendus a nobis*. Cic. Perfect Participles are usually so; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis deflata*, rather than *multis deflata*. Cic. *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus*, &c. hardly ever *tibi*.

§ 96. *Exosus*, *Perosus*, and *Pertasus*, signifying actively, govern an Accusative; as,

*Exosus Trojānos*, Virg. *Lucem perosi*. Virg. *Pertasus ignaviam suam*, Sueton.

§ 97. Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied; as, *Similis patri*, Like his father, *to* being understood.

§ 98. Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux*, or *filius mihi*, He is father, leader, or son to me; so, *Præsidium reis*, *decus amicis*, &c. Hor. *Exitium pecōri*. Virg. *Virtutibus hostis*, Cic. *Auctor tibi sum*, 'I advise thee.' See § 51.

§ 99. Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive: *Affinis*, *similis*, *communis*, *par*, *proprius*, *finitimus*, *fidus*, *conterminus*, *superstes*, *consci*, *æqualis*, *contrarius*, and *adversus*; as, *Similis tibi*, or *tui*; *Superstes patri*, or *patris*; *Consci facinōri*, or *facinōris*. *Consci* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. We say, *Similes*, *dissimiles*, *pares*, *dispares*, *æquales*, *communes*, *inter se*: *Par* and *communis* *cum aliquo*. *Civitas secum ipsa discors*; *discordes ad alia*. Liv.

§ 100. Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

*Utilis*, *inutilis*, *aptus*, *ineptus*, *natus*, *commodus*, *vehemens*, *accommodatus*, *idoneus*, *habilis*, *inhabilis*, *opportunus*, *conveniēns*, &c. *alicui rei*, or *ad aliquid*. Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *attentus quæsit*, Hor. *Attentus ad rem*. Ter.

§ 101. Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis*, *arrigans*, *asper*, *carus*, *difficilis*, *fidalis*, *invidus*, *iratus*, *offensus*, *suspectus*, *ALICUI*. II. Some with the preposition *IN* and the accusative; as, *Acerbus*, *animatus*, *beneficus*, *gratiosus*, *injuriōsus*, *liberalis*, *mendax*, *misericors*, *officiōsus*, *pius*, *impius*, *prolixus*, *severus*, *sordidus*, *torvus*, *vehemens*, *IN ALIQUEM*. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition *IN*, *ERGA*, or *ADVERSUS*, going before; as, *Contumax*, *criminōsus*, *durus*, *exacerbabilis*, *gravis*, *hospitālis*, *implacabilis*, (and perhaps also *inexorabilis* and *intolerabilis*) *iniquus*, *sævus*, *ALICUI* or *IN ALIQUEM*. *Benevolus*, *benignus*, *molestus*, *ALICUI* or *ERGA*



ALIQUEM. *Mitis, comia*; IN OR ERGA ALIQUEM and ALICUI. *Peritica* ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. *Crudelis*, IN ALIQUEM, seldom ALICUI. *Amicus, amulus, infensus, infestus*, ALICUI, seldom IN ALIQUEM. *Gratus* ALICUI, OR IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. We say *alienus alicui* or *alicujus*; but oftener *ab aliquo*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

§ 102. *AUDIENS* is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; *Dicto audiens fuit jussu magistratum*. *Nep. Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis*. *Cic.*

§ 103. Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

*Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram*, or *in iram*.

§ 104. Obs. 7. *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Proprior montem*, scil. *ad*. *Sall. Proximus finem*. *Liv.*

§ 105. Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*. *Hor. Jupiter omnibus idem*. *Virg. Eadem illis censemus*. *Cic.* But in prose we commonly find, *idem, qui, et, ac, atque*, and also *ut, cum*; as, *Peripatetici, quondam idem erant qui Academicici*. *Cic. Est animus erga te, idem ac fuit*. *Ter. Diānam et Lunam eandem esse putant*. *Cic. Idem faciunt, ut, &c. In eodem loco mecum*. *Cic.* But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana*.

We likewise say, *alius ac, atque, or et*; and sometimes *similis* and *par*.

### 3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

§ 106. XIII. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

<i>Dignus honore</i> , Worthy of honour.	<i>Captus oculis</i> , Blind.
<i>Contentus parvo</i> , Content with little.	<i>Fretus viribus</i> , Trusting to his strength.
<i>Præditus virtute</i> , Endued with virtue.	<i>Ortus regibus</i> , Descended of kings.

So *generatus, creatus, prognatus, oriundus, procreatus regibus*.

§ 107. Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*. *Sallust. Editus de nymphæ*. *Ovid. and extorris*.

§ 108. Obs. 2. *Dignus, indignus, contentus*, and *extorris* have sometimes the Genitive after them; as, *carmina digna deæ*, *Ovid. Indignus avorum*, *Virg. Augusti clavi contentus*, *Paterc. Extorris regni*, *Stat.*

§ 109. *Macte*, the vocative of the adjective *mactus*, (that is, *magis auctus*, 'more increased,') and, by an Atticism, put for the nominative, also governs an Ablative. It was anciently used in the nominative; afterwards the vocative came into general use from its denoting a wish for a person's success, and having the force of a prayer that he might be encouraged to proceed in his virtuous course. Thus, *jubērem macte virtute esse*, Liv. 'I should wish thee success in thy valour.' It is also followed by a Genitive; as, *macte esto virtutis*, 'increase in merit,' 'go on and prosper.' When used in the plural it admits only the ablative; as, *Macti virtute milites Romani este*, Liv. It is also used without a case; as, *macte!* Cic. 'O excellent!'

#### 4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

§ 110. XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

*Plenus iræ* or *iræ*, Full of anger, *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So *Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus*. Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops*. Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*. Cic. *Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis*. Juv. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor*. Ovid. *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus*, Plaut. *Fecunda virorum paupertas fugitur*. Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps*. Curt. *Homo ratione particeps*. Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*. Id. *Vacuas cædis habere manus*, Ovid.

§ 111. Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, *Benignus, exsors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus*

§ 112. With the ablative only; *Beatus, differtus, frugifer, nullus, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus*.

§ 113. With the genitive more frequently; *Compos, consors, egenus, exhaeres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parvus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis, prosper, insatiatus, insatiabilis*.

§ 114. With the ablative more frequently; *Abundans, cassus, extorris, foetus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejūnus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbis, pollens, solutus, truncus, vicius, and captus*.

§ 115. With both promiscuously; *Copiōsus, dives, fecundus, ferax, immūnis, inānis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber*.

§ 116. With a preposition; as, *Copiōsus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, a re aliquâ*; for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet*, in or with respect to any thing. *Extorris ab solo patrio*, banished; *Orba ab optimatibus concio*. Liv. *So pauper, tenuis, fecundus, modicus, parvus, in re aliquâ. Immūnis, inānis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus, a re aliquâ. Potens ad rem, and in re*.

## III. THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

## § 1. VERBS GOVERNING ONLY ONE CASE.

## 1. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

§ 117. XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive;\* as,

*Est regis punire rebelles*, 'It belongs to the king to punish rebels.' *Militum est quo duci parere*, 'It is the duty of soldiers to obey their general.'

§ 118. To this rule may be referred the following and similar expressions. *Suadere principi quod oporteat, multi laboris est.* Tac. *Grates persolvere dignas, Non opis est nostræ.* Virg. *Est hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis.* Cæsar. *Moris antiqui fuit.* Plin. *Est moris*, 'it is usual or customary.' Sometimes the preceding word is to be repeated; as, *hæc mulier est* (mulier) *egregiæ formæ.* Nep. *Hoc pecus est* (pecus) *Melibœi.* Virg.

§ 119. *Esse* is also followed by a genitive when it means 'to be serviceable for,' 'to be conducive to,' instead of the dative, which is more usual; and this genitive is generally accompanied by the passive participle in *du*; as, *quæ æquandæ libertatis essent*, Liv. 'what might serve to equalize their freedom.' *Quod initio conservandæ libertatis atque augendæ reipublicæ fuerat*, Sall. 'what had tended originally to the preservation of liberty and the increase of the state.' In such passages *negotium* or *instrumentum* may be supplied, as governing the nouns in the genitive.

§ 120. These neuter nominatives *Meum*, *Tuum*, *Suum*, *Nostrum*, *Vestrum*, *Humanum*, *Romanum*, &c. are excepted; as, *tuum est*, 'it is thy duty.' *Romanum est*, 'it is the part of a Roman.' *Humanum est errare*.

§ 121. Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*. *Et facere et pati fortia, Romanum est*. Liv. ii. 12.

§ 122. Obs. 2. Here some substantives must be understood; as, *officium*, *munus*, *res*, *negotium*, *opus*, &c. which are sometimes expressed; as, *Munus est principum*; *Tuum est hoc munus*. Cic. *Neutiquam officium libèri esse hominis puto*. Ter. In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these: *Ea sunt modo gloriøsa, neque patrandi belli, scil. causæ or facta*. Sall. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est, for ad æquandam libertatem pertinet*. Liv.

\* *Sum* never signifies possession, property, or duty. The rule would be much better thus:

[*Est* takes a Genitive after it when the Latin word signifying Possession, Property, Duty, Custom, or the like, is understood between them.]

§ 123. Obs. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui munérís*; *So mos est* or *fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*. Cic.

§ 124. XVI. *Miserëor*, *miseresco* and *satāgo* govern the genitive; as,

*Miserëre civium tuörum*,

Pity your countrymen.

*Satāgit rerum suörum*,

{ He has his hands full at home, or has  
enough to do about his own affairs.

§ 125. Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, *Ango*, *decipior*, *desipio*, *discrucior*, *excrucio*, *fallo* and *fallor*, *fastidio*, *invideo*, *lætor*, *miror*, *pendeo*, *studeo*, *vereor*; as, *Ne angas te animi*, Plaut. *Labörum decipitur*, Hor. *Discrucior animi*. Ter. *Pendet mihi animus*, *pendeo animi vel animo*; but we always say, *Pendēmus animis*, not *animörum*, are in suspense. Cic. *Justitię prius mirer*. Virg. In like manner, *Abstineo*, *desino*, *desisto*, *quiesco*, *regno*: likewise, *adipiscor*, *condico*, *credo*, *frustor*, *furo*, *laudo*, *libero*, *levo*, *participo*, *prohibeo*; as, *Abstinento irarum*; *Desine querelarum*; *Regnavit populorum*. Hor. *Desistere pugnae*. Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit*. Liv.

§ 126. But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed; thus, *Angor*, *desipio*, *discrucior*, *fallor*, *animo*. *Hoc animum meum excruciat*. *Fastidio*, *miror*, *vereor*, *aliquem*, or *aliquid*. *Lætor aliquā re*. Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or, with *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, and the subjunctive.

§ 127. In like manner we usually say, *Desino aliquid*, and *ab aliquo*, to give over; *Desisto incepto*, *de negotio*, *ab illā mente*; *Quiesco a labore*; *Regnare in equisibus*, *oppidis*, &c. in Cic. *Per urbes*. Virg. *Adipisci id*; *Frustrari in re*; *Furere de aliquo*. Cic.

§ 128. Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs; thus, *Miseror fratris*, scil. *causę*; *Angor animi*, scil. *dolore* or *anxietae*.

## 2. Verbs governing the Dative.

§ 129. XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; \* as,

*Finis venit imperio*,  
*Animus redit hostibus*,  
*Tibi seris, tibi metis*,  
*Non omnibus dormio*,

An end has come to the empire. Liv.

Courage returns to the enemy. Id.

You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself. Plaut.

I do not sleep for all, that is, to please all.

---

\* This rule might be better expressed thus :

“The Dative follows many verbs in answer to the question, to or for whom, or what? whereunto? for whose enjoyment, advantage, injury? &c., to please whom? for whom? &c.” See § 90 and § 91.

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus*. Cic. *Multa malè eveniunt bonis*. Id. *Sol lucet etiam sceleratis*. Sen. *Hæret latèri lethâlis arundo*. Virg.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English by *to* or *for*; nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

§ 130. 1. *Sum* and its compounds govern the dative (except *possum*); as,

*Præfuit exercitui,*  
*Adfuit precibus,*

He commanded the army.  
He was present at prayers.

§ 131. *EST* taken for *Habeo*, 'to have,' requires the Dative of the possessor and a nominative of the thing possessed; as,

*Est mihi liber,*  
*Sunt mihi libri,*  
*Dico libros esse mihi,*

A book is to me, that is, I have a book.  
Books are to me, i. e. I have books.  
I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner *DEEST* instead of *careo*; as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book; *Libri desunt mihi*; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

§ 132. To this rule may be added *suppetit*, *suppeditat*, used in a neuter sense, and *foret*, and the verbs of a contrary signification, *deest*, *desoret*, and *destit*, used for *careo*, or *non habeo*; as, *Pauper enim non est cui rerum suppetit usus*, Hor. So, *Defuit ars vobis*, Ovid. *Lac mihi non destit*, Virg. *Hinc bonæ artes desunt*, Sall.

§ 133. The dative is often understood; as, *Sit spes fallendi*, *misceris sacra profanis*, Hor. that is, *sit spes tibi*.

§ 134. II. Verbs compounded with *SATIS*, *BENE*, and *MALE*, govern the dative; as,

*Satisfacio*, *satisdo*, *benefacio*, *benedico*, *benevolo*, *malefacio*, *maledico*, *tibi*, &c.

§ 135. III. Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions; *AD*, *ANTE*, *CON*, *IN*, *INTER*, *OB*, *POST*, *PRÆ*, *PRO*, *SUB*, and *SUPER*, are followed by the dative; as,

1. *Accedo*, *accresco*, *accumbo*, *acquiesco*, *adequato*, *adhæreo*, *adjaceo*, *adno*, *adnito*, *adsto*, *adstipulor*, *adsum*, *adversor*, *affulgeo*, *allabor*, *annuo*, *appareo*, *applaudo*, *appropinquo*, *arrideo*, *aspiro*, *assentior*, *assideo*, *assisto*, *assuesco*, *assurgo*;—*addo*, *affero*, *affigo*, *adjicio*, *adjungo*, *adhibeo*, *admoveo*, *adverto*, *alligo*, *appono*, *applico*, *advolveo*, *aspergo*.

2. *Antecedo*, *antecello*, *anteo*, *antesto*, *antevenio*, *anteverto*;—*antefero*, *antehabeo*, *antepono*.

3. *Cohæreo*, *collūdo*, *conctno*, *congruo*, *consentio*, *consūno*, *convivo*, and, chiefly in the poets, *coeo*, *concumbo*, *concurro*, *contendo*;—*compāro*, *compōno*, *conféro*, *conjungo*.

4. *Incido*, *incumbo*, *indormio*, *inhio*, *ingemisco*, *inhæreo*, *innascor*, *innitor*, *insideo*, *insidior*, *insto*, *insisto*, *insūdo*, *insulto*, *invado*, *invigilo*, *illacrīmo*, *illūdo*, *immineo*, *immortor*, *inmōror*, *impendeo*, *insum*;—*inmisceo*, *impōno*, *imprīmo*, *inféro*, *ingero*, *injicio*, *inclūdo*, *instro*, *inspergo*, *intūro*.

5. *Intercado*, *intercīdo*, *interjaceo*, *intermīco*, *intersum*, *intervenio*;—*interdico*, *interpōno*.

6. *Obambulo, oberro, obequito, obductor, obmurmuro, obrupo, obeto, obisto, obestipo, obsum, obrecto, obvenio, obversor, occumbo, occurro, occurso, officio*;—*obduco, obfusca, offero, offundo, oppono offendo*.

7. *Postfero, posthabeo, postpono, postpulo, postscribo*.

8. *Præcedo, præcurro, præeo, præideo, præluco, præmitto, præsum, prævaleo, prævertor*;—*præfero, præficio, præpono, prætendo*.

9. *Procedo, procumbo, proficio, propugno, prosum, prospicio, providet*.

10. *Succedo, succumbo, succurro, sufficio, suffragor, subcreasco, suboles, subjaceo, subruo, subsum, subvenio*;—*subdo, subjugo, submitto, suppono, subterno*.

11. *Supercurro, supersto, supersum, supervenio, supervivo*.

§ 136. REM. 1. Some verbs, compounded with *ab, de, ex, circum*, and *contra*, are occasionally followed by the dative; as, *absum, desum, delabor, excido, circumdo, circumfundo, circumjaceo, circumjicio, contradico, contraeo*; as, *Serta capiti delapsa*, The garlands having fallen from his head, Virg. *Nunqui nummi, exciderunt tibi?* Plaut. *Tigris urbi circumfunditur*. Plin.

### § 137. IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

#### 1. To profit or hurt; as,

*Proficio, prosum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, oaseo, metuo, timeo, consulo* for *prospicio*. Likewise, *Noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo, insidior*.

#### 2. To favour or assist, and the contrary; as,

*Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulo, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, supplico, subparasitor*. Likewise, *Ausilior, adminicilor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitilor*. Likewise, *Derogo, detraho, invideo, emulor*.

#### 3. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

*Impero, precipio, mando; modoror*, for *modum adhibeo*. Likewise, *Pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsequor; obtempero, morigoror, obsecundo*. Likewise, *Familior, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor*. Likewise, *Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adversor*.

#### 4. To threaten and to be angry; as,

*Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenseo*.

#### 5. To trust; as, *Fido, confido, credo, diffido*.

6. To these add *Cedo, despere, excello, hæreo, nubo, operor, præstitor, prævaricor, supplico; recipio*, to promise; *renuncio; respondeo*, to answer or satisfy; *tempere, studeo; vaco*, to apply; *convicior, pepigi, suadeo, pateo*.

§ 138. Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, lædo, offendo, delecto, guberno*, are often, as active verbs, followed by an accusative. *Jubeo* is followed by an accusative with an infinitive, and by the dative with an infinitive, but rarely with an accusative alone: as, *Jubeo te bene sperare*, Cic. *Ubi BRITANNICO jussit EXSURGERE*, Tac. *Lex jubet ea quæ facienda sunt*, Cic.

§ 139. Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only, are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

§ 140. Obs. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, *Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, aversor*, &c. *aliquem*, not *alicui*.

§ 141. Obs. 3. Very many verbs which govern the dative are variously construed, still preserving the same, or nearly the same significations; as,

*Abdicāre*: *abdicare* MAGISTRATUM, 'to abdicate the magistracy;' *abdicare se* CONSULATU, Lív. 'to depose one's self from the consulship.'

*Acquiescēre*, REI, or RE, or IN RE, 'to approve of any thing,' 'to be satisfied with any thing.'

*Adsuescēre*, 'to be accustomed,' 'to accustom one's self to any thing;' *alicui*, Lív. 1. 19.—*AD ALIQUID*, Cæs.—*aliqua re*, Lív. 31, 35.

*Adjacēre*, 'to lie next to,' 'to adjoin.' *Tusculi ager*, ROMANO *adjacet*, Lív. 2. 49. *adjacet mare*, Nep. Timoth.

*Adspirāre*, 'to favour.' *Adspirat primo fortuna LABORI*, Virg. 2. 385. 'fortune favours the first exertion;' *ad eum*, Cels.

*Adhærēre*, 'to adhere to any thing;' *alicui*, or *aliquem*, or *ad aliquem*.

*Adfiāre*, 'to breathe upon;' *rei* or *rem*.

*Adferre vim alicui*, 'to do violence to any one.'

*Adideo*, 'to sit by something,' with a Dative, Cic. Planc. 11. with an Accusative, Virg. *Æn.* 11. 304.

*Advolāre*, 'to fly up to,' *ei*, or *ad eum*.

*Adscribēre*, 'to admit,' 'to enrol as a citizen;' *civitati*, or *in civitatem*, Cic. Arch. 4. or *in civitate*, Ibid.

*Advolvi genibus*, or *genua*, or *ad genua*, 'to fall at one's knees.'

*Adversāri*, 'To be against,' 'to oppose,' is always followed by a Dative. With an Accusative it occurs in Tacitus, but the best editors substitute *versari* in all such instances.

*Adspargēre alicui aliquid*, 'to sprinkle any thing on one.'

*Adnāre navibus*, or *naves*, or *ad naves*, 'to swim to the ships.'

*Adulor*, 'to flatter,' 'to caress.' *Adulāri plebi*, Lív. 3. 69.—*adulari omnes*, Cic. *adulari Neronem*, Tac. Ann.

*Allatāre alicui*, or *aliquem*, 'to bark at any one.' The Accusative is more usual.

*Antecedēre*, 'to excel;' *antecedere belluis*, Cic. Off. *antecedere eum*, Nep. Alc. 9.

*Antecellēre alicui*, or *aliquem*, 'to excel any one.'

*Antepollēre*, 'to excel,' *alicui*, or *aliquem*.

*Anteire*, 'to go before,' to excel. *Virtus omnibus rebus anteit*, Plaut. *Anteire celeros*, Cic.

*Antestāre* or *antistāre*, 'to stand before,' 'to be more eminent,' 'to excel,' *alicui* or *aliquem*.

*Antevenire*, 'to come before;' *antevenire exercitum*, Sall. 'to excel,' *omnibus rebus antevenire*, Plaut.

*Antevertere*, 'to come before;' *miror, ubi, HULC anteverterim*, Terent. 'I wonder how I have come before him.' *Vencno DAMNATIONEM antevertit*, 'he anticipated his condemnation by poison.'

*Apparere consuli*, 'to attend;' *ad solium Jovis. Res apparet mihi*.

*Appropinquare Britannia*, or *portam*, or *ad portam*.

*Circumfundi alicui*, 'to be put around any thing;' *circumfusa LATHE mee turba*, 'the multitude which surrounded my side, for *turba fusa circum latus meum*. See, *circumjecta multitudine hominum totis manibus*, 'when a multitude of men entirely surrounded the walls,' for *multitudine hominum jacta circum tota mania*.

*Circumdare aliquid alicui rei*, 'to put one thing round another;' *circumdare aliquid re*, 'to surround one thing with another.'

*Congruere*, 'to agree,' *alicui*, or *cum re aliqua*, or *inter se*.

*Confidere rei* or *re*, 'to trust to any thing,' 'to confide in.' Also with *de* when it means *about*; as, *de salute urbis confidere*, Cæsar. 'to have confidence about the safety of the city.'

*Curare*, 'to take care of,' 'to care for,' is commonly followed by an Accusative; as, *curo hanc REM*. Yet it is also joined to a Dative; as, *Quia tuo CIBO curas*, Plaut.

*Deficere*, 'to fail' commonly with an Accusative; as, *tempus TE deficeret*, Cic. 'time would fail thee;' sometimes also the Dative; as, *tela NOSTRIS deficerent*, Cæsar. B. G. 3. 5. 'our weapons failed us.'

*Desperare*, 'to despair of any thing,' 'to have no more hope.' *Seu desperans*, Cæsar. 'despairing on his own account.' Also with an Accusative; as, *ut HONOREM desperasse videatur*, Cic. We find also, *desperare de aliqua re*, Cic. The reason why *despero* governs an Accusative, seems to be, that *Spero* also governs one.

*Dominari*, 'to rule over;' *cunctis oris*, Virg. in *Cætera animalia*, Ovid.

*Excellere aliis*, 'to excel others,' or *inter alios*, 'among others,' or *super alios*, 'beyond others.'

*Fidere alicui rei*, or *aliqua re*, or *in aliqua re*.

*Habitare in loco*, 'to dwell in a place;' *locum*, 'to inhabit a place.'

*Ignoscere mihi*, or *culpæ mee*, or *mihi culpam*, 'to pardon me,' or 'pardon my fault.'

*Impendere alicui*, 'to hang over any one;' or *aliquem*, or *in aliquem*.

*Impertire*, 'to impart any thing to any one;' *laudem alicui impertiri. Impertire aliquem osculo*.

*Incescit timor ei* or *eum*, 'fear seizes him.'

*Illudere*, 'to make sport of.' *Illudere auctoritati*, Cic. *Illudere præcepta*, Ibid. *In nos illudere*, Terent. So also *irridet mihi* or *me*.

*Insilire*, 'to spring upon,' with a Dative, Ovid; an Accusative, Hor.; and also with *in* and an Accusative, Cæsar.

*Insultare*, 'to leap upon,' hence 'to insult;' *insultare solo*, Virg. 'to stamp on the ground.' *Insultare aliquem*, Sall.

*Incumbere*, 'to fall upon;' *toro*; *gladium*, or *in gladium*.

*Incidere*, 'to engrave,' *rei*, or *in rem*, or *in re*.

*Indulgere alicui*, or *id ei*.

*Inhiare*, 'to gape after,' 'to desire much;' *inhiare auro. Inhiare bona ejus*.

*Inniti rei*, or *re*, or *in re. Inniti in aliquem*, 'to depend on any one.'



*Latet res mihi*, or *me*, 'the thing is unknown to me.'

*Medēri ei. Medēri cupiditates.*

*Medicāri*, 'to heal,' used both with the Dative and Accusative; the same as *Medēri* above.

*Moderāri*, 'to moderate,' 'to govern,' 'to rule,' 'to regulate.' *Moderāri fortunam suam*, Liv. *gaudium*, Tacit.

*Nocēre*, 'to hurt,' *ei*, rarely *eum*.

*Nubēre*, literally, 'to veil' one's self, as the bride did at the marriage ceremony; hence 'to marry,' always applied to the woman. *Nubere viro. Nupta est cum illo*, seems properly to mean, 'she is with him as a married woman.'

*Occumbēre morti* and *mortem*, 'to die.' We also find, Liv. 1. 7. *occumbere morte*, 'to sink in death,' where the Ablative is governed by some preposition understood.

*Obrepēre*, 'to creep upon,' *ei* or *eum*; also *in animos*; *ad honores*.

*Obtrepēre auribus*, or *aures*.

*Obtrectāre ei*, or *laudibus ejus*, 'to detract from him,' or 'his deserts.'

*Obumbrāre*, 'to overshadow,' with the Dative or Accusative.

*Præcedēre*, 'to go before,' 'to precede,' *præcedere agmen*. 'To excel,' *ut vestras fortune meis præcedunt*.

*Præcurrēre*, 'to run before,' 'to excel,' with a Dative or Accusative.

*Præstāre alicui*, or *aliquem*, 'to excel any one.'

*Præstolāri*, 'to wait for any one,' *alicui* or *aliquem*. It is also found with the Genitive, *cohortium*, Sisenn. ap. Non.

*Pacisci, alicui*, or *cum aliquo*. *Pacisci vitam ab eo*, Sall.

*Procumbēre*, 'to fall upon,' *terras*; *genibus ejus*; *ad genua*.

*Temperāre*, 'to moderate,' 'to tame,' also, 'to govern,' 'to guide,' *temperare linguam*, Liv. 'to subdue his tongue.' So, *temperare lacrymis*, 'to moderate his grief,' also, *temperare iras*, Virg. 'to moderate anger.'

§ 142. Obs. 4. Many verbs when followed by different cases are used with different significations; as,

*Æmulāri aliquem*, 'to imitate any one with emulation,' 'to rival.' *Studia alicujus æmulari*, Liv. 1. 18. 'to be the scholar of any one.' But *æmulāri alicui*, 'to envy any one,' perhaps 'an envious rivalry,' better expresses the idea. In a word, with the Accusative it seems to be used in a good sense, with the Dative in a bad one.

*Accedo tibi*, 'I accede or assent to you,' but *hoc tibi accedit ad illud*, 'this comes to you in addition to that.' *Accedēre ad aliquem*, 'to approach to any one.'

*Auscultāre alicui*, 'to listen to any one,' also, 'to obey any one.' *Auscultare aliquem*, 'to hear any one; also, 'to obey.'

*Cavēre alicui*, 'to take care of any one's safety,' *Cavēre sibi ab aliquo*, 'to take care of one's self against any one.' *Cavēre aliquem*, 'to beware of any one,' *Cavēre aliquid*, 'to guard against any thing.'

*Consulēre tibi*, 'to take care for thee,' (not to give counsel;) *Consulēre aliquem*, 'to consult any one,' 'to take any one's advice.' *Consulēre crudeliter*, *in aliquem*,

'to proceed cruelly against any one,' Liv. 3. 36. *Consulo BONI*, 'I am satisfied,' or 'pleased therewith.'

*Cupio tibi*, 'I am devoted to thee;' *Cupio ALIQUID*, 'I am desirous after something.'

*Deficere mihi* and *me*, 'it fails me;' *Deficere* AB ALIQUO, 'to revolt from any one;' *Deficere* AB AMICITIA, 'to fall off from;' also, *Deficere* AD ALIQUEM, Liv. 22. 61, 'to go over to any one;' also, *deficere* ALIQUEM, 'to desert any one.'

*Dare ALICUI literas*, 'to give a letter to any one,' that is, 'to carry to another;' *Dare AD ALIQUEM literas*, 'to write to any one.'

*Facere aliquid*, 'to do any thing;' *quid HUIUS HOMINI facias?* Cic. 'what will you do with this man?' *Horreo tibi*, 'I am frightened for thee,' on thy account; *Horreo ALIQUID*, 'I am frightened at any thing.'

*Imponere onus ALICUI*, 'to lay a burden on any one;' *Imponere ALICUI*, 'to impose upon any one,' 'to cheat.'

*Incumbere rei*, 'to lean upon any thing;' *ad aliquem*, 'to bend one's self down to any thing,' 'to exert great labour on any thing;' *Incumbere ad rempublicam*, 'to devote one's attention to the state.'

*Interest murus*, 'there is a wall between;' *hoc maxime interest inter*, &c. 'this is the chief difference between,' &c., also with the Dative in this sense. *Interest patris*, 'it is the concern of the father.' *Interesse rei*, 'to be present at a thing.'

*Manet tibi bellum*, 'war remains for thee;' that is, 'thou hast not yet peace,' Liv. 1. 53. *Manet me mors*, 'death awaits me.'

*Merere sibi aliquid*, 'to merit,' or 'earn something for one's self;' *Merere equo*, 'to serve on horseback;' *Merere* or *Mereri de*, 'to deserve of another;' *bene* or *male*, 'well,' or 'ill.'

*Metuo tibi*, 'I fear for thee,' on thy account; *Metuo TE*, 'I fear thee.'

*Peto mihi*, 'I seek for myself;' *Peto aliquem*, 'I aim at somebody;' *Petere aliquem gladio*, 'to attack any one with a sword;' *Petere locum*, 'to seek a place,' 'to go to.'

*Præstare alicui* or *aliquem*, 'to excel;' *præstare aliquid*, 'to be answerable for something.' *EMPTORI damnum præstari oportere*, 'the loss must be made good to the buyer.' Also, *præstare alicui officia*, 'to render good offices to any one;' *Præstare se virum fortem*, 'to prove one's self a brave man.' *Præstat*, 'it is better.'

*Prospicio alicui*, 'to provide for any one;' *Prospicere aliquid*, 'to foresee any thing.'

*Querere sibi aliquid*, 'to seek something for himself;' *querere aliquid*, 'to inquire about any thing;' also, *de aliquo*. Sometimes, *querere de aliquo homine*, or *de aliqua re*, means, 'to institute an inquiry by torture about any person' or 'thing.'

*Recipio tibi*, 'I give you certain assurance,' 'I pledge myself to you;' *recipio in montem*, 'I retire to the mountain.' *Recipio res amissas*, 'I recover my lost goods;' *recipere periculum in se*, 'to take the risk on himself.'

*Renuntiare rei*, 'to renounce any thing,' 'to resign,' 'to give up;' *renuntiare vitii*, 'to renounce one's faults;' *Renuntiare aliquem consulem*, 'to proclaim any one as a consul.'

*Respondere alicui*, 'to answer any one;' *rei*, 'to correspond to any thing;' *eventus non respondet spei*, 'the event does not correspond to expectation.'

*Solvo tibi pecuniam*, 'I pay money to thee;' *solvo te*, 'I free thee;' *solvere naves*, 'to set sail.'

*Timeo tibi*, 'I fear for you;' *te*, 'I fear thee.'

*Vacare*, properly, 'to be at leisure;' also, 'to be without something;' *vacare* A RE, or RE, 'to be free from a thing.' But *vacare rei*, 'to turn one's whole attention to a thing,' 'to apply to a thing,' properly, 'to be free from all other affairs for that one;' *vacare literis*, 'to be devoted to letters.'

*Valere rei*, 'to be serviceable.' This construction is rare; the more usual is with the ablative; *valere eloquentia*, 'to be effective by eloquence,' 'to be strong in eloquence.' *Valere a pecunia*, Plaut. 'to be well on the side of money,' is said jestingly.

§ 143. To this rule are referred many verbs which, among the poets chiefly, are construed with a Dative, after the manner of the Greeks, but which in prose are commonly found with the Ablative and a Preposition, according to Latin construction; as Verbs of—

1. CONTENDING; as, *contendo, certo, bello, luctor, pugno*, ALICUI for *cum aliquo*. *Solus tibi certet*, *Amyntas*, Virg. We also find *Contendere contra* or *adversus aliquem*, Cic. *Certare inter se*, Cic. *Pugnare contra* or *adversus*, Quint. *inter se*, Curt. in *aliquem*, Liv.

2. DIFFERING; as, *distare, dissentire, discrepare, dissidere, differre* REI ALICUI for *a re aliqua*. We also find *distant, dissentiunt, discrepant, dissident, differunt, inter se*. *Distare metâ*, Ovid. *Dissentire, dissidere cum aliquo*.

3. COMING TOGETHER; as, *coâco, concurro, concumbo, misceo*. *Placidis coâtant imitia*, Hor. *Concurrere hosti*, Ovid. *Concubuisse deâ*, Propert. *Mista Deo mulier*, Virg. instead of *cum placidis, cum hoste*, &c. We also find *Coire, concurrere, inter se*, Virg. and Liv. *Miscere vinum aquæ*, or *cum aquâ*, or *aquâ*.

4. KEEPING, or DRIVING AWAY; as, *Arcebis grâvido pecori*, Virg. *Solstitium pecori defendite*, Virg. But these belong to verbs of taking away, which govern two cases, by Rule 25.

5. PASSIVE VERBS; as, *Non intelligor ulli*, Ovid. for *ab ullo*. *Neque cernitur ulli*, Virg.

§ 144. Obs. 5. Verbs signifying Motion or Tendency to a thing, are construed with the preposition *ad*; as,

*Eo, vado, curro, propèra, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino*, &c. *ad locum, rem*, or *hominem*. Sometimes, however, in the poets, they are construed with the dative; as, *Il clamor celo*, for *ad cælum*. Virg.

§ 145. The Datives *Mihi, Tibi, Sibi, Nobis, Vobis*, are very often added to verbs in a redundant manner, particularly in confidential speeches, letters, &c. This is the case in Greek, in English, and probably in all languages. E. g. *Fur MIHI es*, Plaut, 'to me, (that is, in my opinion) thou art a thief.' *An ille MIHI liber, cui mulier imperat*, 'is he to me a freeman,' that is, 'can I think him a freeman whom a woman commands.' These pronouns, though generally considered redundant, have usually a certain reference to the circumstances, or at least denote a participation in them by the person referred to in the Dative.

## 3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

§ 146. XVIII. A verb signifying actively governs the accusative ; as,

*Ama Deum*, Love God.

*Reverere parentes*, Reverence your parents.

§ 147. Obs. 1. Neuter Verbs also govern the Accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own, or when the noun is of the same origin as the verb ; as,

*Vivere vitam*, *Ire iter*, or *viam* ; *Pugnare pugnam*, *Curere cursum* ; *Ludere ludum*, *Sequi sectam*. Yet generally an adjective, an adjective pronoun, or participle, is added to this substantive ; as, *pugnare pugnam acerrimam*. So in English we say, 'he died the death of a hero,' 'I have fought the good fight,' 'Many live a happy life.' Many of these expressions are usual with the best writers ; as, *Juravi verissimum jussurandum*. 'I swore the truest oath.' Some suppose that these accusatives are governed by some preposition understood, but there is no evidence of this, and the expressions must be considered as belonging to the idioms of the language.

§ 148. To this place must we refer *latet*, *fallit*, *fugit*, *præterit*, which are followed by an accusative of a person ; as, *latuere fratrem*, Virg. *Non te fugit nec verò Cæsarem* *fefellit*. Cic. But *lateo* is often found with the dative ; as, *ubi nobis tam diu latuit* ? Cic.

§ 149. Sometimes a Preposition may be easily understood ; as, *propter*, *per*, or *ad*. E. g. *Doleo casum tuum*, that is, *propter* : so, *horrere aliquid*, sc. *propter* or *ob* : so also *ardere aliquem*, 'to be inflamed with love for,' 'to love passionately,' is probably for *propter aliquem* : *Formosum pastor Corydon ardebat Alexin* : so, *desperare aliquam*, 'to love one desperately,' 'to die in love for one.'—*Stygias juravimus undas*, sc. *per Stygias*, Ovid. *Decurrere vitam*, sc. *per*. So, *pasci sylvas*, Virg. 'to be pastured through woods ;' i. e. 'they feed on.' *Ire exequias*, sc. *ad*, 'to go to a funeral.'

§ 150. But sometimes Prepositions cannot be readily understood. The simplest examples are those where *id*, *quid*, and similar pronouns are joined to a verb ; as, *hoc dubito*, 'I doubt this,' for *de hac re*. Perhaps in such cases *ad*, 'as to,' is the most proper preposition to supply ; for *quoad*, mentioned by some, is not a preposition. Virg. Georg. 3. 421. *sibila colla tumentem*, (for the ablative *sibilo collo*,) properly, 'as to its hissing neck,' *ad* or *quod attinet ad* understood. So *peccare aliquid*, Cic. Particularly to these cases belong those verbs which signify 'to taste of,' 'to smell of ;' as, *redolere vinum*, 'to smell of wine.' But *redoleo* is found with the ablative, as, *redolent thymo*, Virg., 'they smell of thyme.' See Rule 49. To these seems to belong the formula *magnam partem*, 'a great part,' *maximam partem*, 'the greatest part ;' as, *libros meos magnam partem amisi*, 'I have lost a great part of my books.' After *Clamo*, *Crepo*, *Queror*, *Festino*, the Accusative is remarkable, since *aliquid clamare*, &c. seem to stand for *aliquid dicere clamando*, &c. Under this head we may place the singular expression, *Bacchanalia vivunt*, for *vivunt modo Bacchanalium*, or *vivendo Bacchanalia expriment*.

§ 151. Sometimes, instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative ; as, *Ire itinere*, *dolere dolore*, *vicem ejus* ; *gaudere gaudio* ; *mori* or *obire morte* ; *vivere vita* ; *ardet virgine*. Horat. *Ludere aleam*, or *â* ; *manare pluvie*, *rorare stillare*, *sudare*, *aliquid* or *aliqua*. *Erubescere jura*. Virg. *origine*. Tacit. *equo veti*. Curt.

§ 152. Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense ; as,

Abhorrere famam, *to dread infamy*. Liv. a litibus : ab uxore ducendâ, *to be averse from*. Id. a meis moribus abhorret, *is inconsistent with*. Cic.

Abolere monumenta viri, *to abolish*. Virg. illis cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat, *was not effaced from, they had not forgotten*. Liv.

Adolere penates, *to burn, to sacrifice to*. Virg. Ætas adolevit ; adolevit ad ætatem. Plaut.

Declinare ictum, *to avoid* ; loco ; agmen aliquo, *to remove*.

Degenerare animos, *to weaken* ; patri, *to degenerate from* ; a virtute majorum.

Durare adolescentes labore, *to harden* ? Res durat ad breve tempus, *endures* ; In ædibus durare nequeo, *stay or remain*. Plaut.

Inclinare culpam in aliquem, *to lay* ; Hos ut sequar, *inclinat animus, inclines* ; acies inclinât, or inclinatur, *gives away*.

Laborare arma, *to forge* ; morbo, e dolore, e renibus, *to be ill* ; de re aliqua, *to be concerned*.

Morari iter, *to stop* ; in urbe, *to stay* ; Hoc nihil moror, *I do not mind*.

Properare pecuniam hæredi. Hor. in orbem ; ad unam sedem. Ov.

Quadrare acervum, *to square*. Hor. aliquid ad normam ; alicui, in aliquem, ad multa, *to fit*.

Suppeditare copiam dicendi, *to furnish* ; Sumptus illi, or illi sumptibus. Ter. suppeditat oratio, *is afforded* ; Manubiz in fundamenta vix suppeditarunt, *were sufficient*. Liv.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, &c.* are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood ; as, *Id lacrymat, Id succenset*. Ter. *Quid rides ? quid clamas ?* Terent.

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood ; *Tum prora avertit*, sc. *se*. Virg. *Flumina præcipitant*, sc. *se*. Id. *Quicumque intendêrat*, sc. *se*, turned or directed himself. Sall. *Obiit*, sc. *mortem*. Ter. *Cum faciam vitula, sc. sacra*. Virg. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence ; as, *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum* ; *for dulcem sermonem, decorum risum*. Hor.

§ 153. XIX. *Recordor, meminî, reminiscor, and obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive ; as,

*Recordor lectionis, or lectionem,*  
*Obliviscor injuriæ, or injuriam,*

I remember the lesson.  
I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence ; as, *Memini videre virginem*. Ter. *Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset*. Cic.

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies *to make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de* ; as, *Memini alicujus, or de aliquo*. So, *recordor*, when it signifies, *to recollect* ; as, *Velim scire equid, de te recordâre*. Cic.

Obs. 3. The phrase *Venit mihi in mentem*, denoting remembrance, is variously construed ; as, *Venit mihi in mentem hæc res, hujus rei, de hæc re*. *Mihi solet venire in mentem illius temporis*. Cic. *In mentem venit de speculo*.

#### 4. Verbs governing the Ablative.

§ 154. XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative ; as,

*Abundat divitiis,*  
*Caret omni culpâ,*

He abounds in riches.  
He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, floreo, suppetito, scateo, &c.*; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destitutor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *Indigeo* frequently govern the Genitive; as, *eg eo consilii*, Cic. *egēt aris*, 'he needs money.' *Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris*, Cic. *Careo* also is used with a Genitive; as, *carendum tui*, Terent. Also, *scateo* and *abundo*; as, *terra scatet ferarum*, Lucr. *Abundans* with a Genitive in Virg. Ecl. 2, 20. We also find *careo, egeo, indigeo, scateo*, with pronouns of the neuter gender; as, *id, quod, &c. nec quidquam eges*, Plaut. So, *id tuus scatet animus*, Plaut. for *ea re*.

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed: as, *Vacat a culpâ*, He is free from fault. Liv.

§ 155. XXI. *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative; as,

*Utitur fraude*, He uses deceit.

*Abutitur libris*, He abuses books.

§ 156. To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consto; labore*, 'to be ill;' *pascor, epulor, nitor, innitor, glorior, lator, delector, dignor, exulto, sto, &c.*; as, *Gaudere bono*, Cic. *Fortes creantur fortibus*, Hor. *Fluminibus salices nascuntur*, Virg. *Fidere prudentiâ*, Cic. *Piscibus vivere existimantur*, Cæs. *Ficus victitamus*, Plaut. *Mente viz constat*, Cic. *Laborare podagra*, Mart. *Cæde pascitur*, Ovid. *Filio mittitur*, Cic. *Gloriari nominibus*, Cic. *Lator tuâ dignitate*, Cic. *Delectari re*, Cic. *Me dignor honore*, Virg. *Stare promissis*, Cic. 'to abide by one's promises.' Some, led away by our idiom, according to which we say, "To stand to an agreement," have supposed that it is the Dative which follows *Sto*: but this is not so, as might be shown by numerous examples.

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis*. Sall. And we always say, *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command, never *rebus*; *imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, lator, fungor, vescor, epulor, pascor*, and *gaudeo*, sometimes have an accusative; as, *Potiri urbem*. Cic. *Officia fungi*. Ter. *Munera fungi*. Tac. *Pascuntur silvas*. Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abutor*, and *fruor*; as, *Uti consilium*. Plaut. *Opem abutitur*. Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative; as, *Depascitur artus*. Virg. *Gavisi sunt suum dolorem*. Cic.

## § 2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

### 1. Verbs governing two Datives.

§ 157. XXII. *Sum* used instead of *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other a thing;\* as,

*Est mihi voluptati*,

It is, or brings, a pleasure to me.

---

\* This rule would be better expressed thus:

The verb *Est*, when it may be construed 'to redound to,' 'to bring,' 'to be conducive,' 'to serve for,' is followed by two Datives, one of which denotes the object to which, the other, the end for which any thing is, or is done.

§ 158. Two datives are also put after *habeo*, *do*, *verto*, *relinquo*, *vento*, *tribuo*, *fore*, *duco*, *appōno*, *assigno*, *cedo*, *compāro*, *curro*, *eo*, *mitto*, *pateo*, *proficiſcor*, *ſuppedito*, and some others; as,

*Ducitur honōri tibi*, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. So, *Misit mihi munēri*; *Dedit mihi dono*; *Habet sibi laudi*; *Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui*. Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, *Est crimum peccōri* for *crimō*; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dono*; *Dare filiam ei nuptam*, or *nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimēni ei*, sc. *id*.

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui*, &c. scil. *mihi*, *alicui*, *hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere, pignōri*, sc. *alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui*, sc. *suis militibus*, to sound a retreat; *Habere curas questus, odii, voluptati, religiōni, studio, ludibrio, despiciatui*, &c. sc. *sibi*.

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

## 2. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

§ 159. XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

*Arguit me furti,*  
*Meipsum inertiae condemno,*  
*Illum homicidii absolvunt,*  
*Monet me officii,*

He accuses me of theft.  
I condemn myself of laziness.  
They acquit him of manslaughter.  
He admonishes me of my duty.

§ 160. Verbs of accusing are, *Accūso*, *ago*, *apello*, *arcesso*, *anquiro*, *capto*, *increpo*, *arguo*, *desero*, *insimūlo*, *postūlo*, *alligo*, *astringo*, *urgeo*, *incuso*, *interrogo*, *compello*. Of condemning, *damno*, *coarguo*, *convinco*, *prehendo*, *judico*, *plector*, *condemno*, *infāmo*, *noto*. Of acquitting, *absolvo*, *solvo*, *libero*, *purgo*. Of admonishing, *moneo*, *admoneo*, *commonefacio*.

§ 161. The crime or punishment is sometimes put in the Ablative without a preposition being expressed, after *absolvo*, *libero*, *damno*, *condemno*, &c.; as, *Consulem regni suspitione absolverunt*, Liv. *Damnabis tu votis*, Virg. *Crimen quo argui posset*, Nep. *Tenēri pōnā*, Cic. We also find *Damnari voti*, which signifies, 'to have gained one's wish;' properly, 'to be condemned to the discharge of the vow which he had made for the prosperous issue of his undertaking,' which is a sign that he had gained his wish. Such a person is said to be *reus voti*. Virg. *Æn.* 5. 237.

§ 162. Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de*; as, *Monere aliquem officii*, or *de officio*; *Accusare aliquem furti*, or *de furto*. *De vi condemnati sunt*. Cic.

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnare, postulare, absolvere, eum*

*crimīnis*, or *capitis*; and *crimīne*, or *capite*; also *Absolve me peccāto*. Liv. And we always say, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person, and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, tradūco, vitupero, calumnior, crimīnor, excūso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritia*. We sometimes also find *accūso, incūso*, &c. construed in this manner; as, *Accusare inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertia*. Cic. *Culpam erguo*. Liv. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft. Cic.

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa*, &c. as, *Moneo, accūso, te illud*. We seldom find, however, *Errorem te moneo*, but *erroris* or *de errore*; except in old writers, as Plautus.

§ 163. XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili*; as,

*Æstimo te magni,*

I value you much.

§ 164. Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo*. They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, minoris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, assis, nihili, teruncii, hujus, flocci, pensi*.

Obs. 1. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magno, per magno, parvo*, scil. *pretio*: and also *nihilo*. We likewise say, *Pro nihilo habeo, puto, duco*.

Obs. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consūlo*; as, *Hoc consūlo boni, æqui bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti*, scil. *de crimīne furti*: *Æstimo rem magni*, scil. *pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii*; *Consūlo boni*, i. e. *statuo* or *censeo esse, factum*; or *munus boni viri*, or *animi*; *Monere aliquem officii*, i. e. *officii, causā*, or *de re* or *negotio officii*.

### 3. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.

§ 165. XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

*Compāro Virgilium Homēro,  
Suum cuique tribūto,  
Narras fabulā surdo,  
Eripui me morti,*

I compare Virgil to Homer.  
Give every one his own.  
You tell a story to a deaf man.  
He rescued me from death.

§ 166. Or, — ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (when, together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted;) as,

*Legam lectionem tibi*, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis arātra boves*. Virg. *Paupertas*



*sæpe suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things. *Plant. Imperâre pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish. *Cæs.*

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparâre unam rem cum aliâ*, and *ad aliam*, or *comparâre res inter se*: *Eripui me morti*, *morte*, *a* or *ex morte*: *Mittere epistolam alicui*, or *ad aliquem*: *Intendêre telum alicui*, or *in aliquem*: *Incidêre cori*, *in ea*, or *in ære*; and so in many others.

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

*Aspergêre labem alicui*, or *aliquem labe*, to put an affront on one; *aram sanguine*.

*Circumdâre mania oppido*, or *oppidum manibus*, to surround a city with walls.

*Donâre, prohibêre rem alicui*, or *aliquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

*Excusâre se alicui*, and *apud aliquem, de re*; *valetudinem ei*.

*Exprobrâre vitium ei*, or *in eo*, to upbraid.

*Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re*, *in, pro*, and *de hac re*, I congratulate you on this. *Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur*. *Liv.*

*Impertire salutem alicui*, or *aliquem salutē*, to salute one.

*Induêre, exuêre vestem sibi*, or *se veste*, to put on, to put off one's clothes.

*Intercludêre commeatum alicui*, or *aliquem commeatu*, to intercept one's provisions.

*Interdixit Galliam Romanis*, or *Romanos Galliâ*, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

*Invideo honori alicujus*, *Cic. honorem alicui*, *Hor. in re aliqua*, *Cic.*

*Levâre dolorem alicui*; *dolorem alicujus*; *aliquem dolore*, to ease one's distress.

*Litâre Deum sacris*, and *sacra Deo*, to sacrifice.

*Mactâre hostiam Deo*, or *Deum hostiâ*, to sacrifice.

*Minâri aliquid alicui*, or sometimes *alicui aliquid*, *Cic.* to threaten one with any thing; *Cæstri gladio*. *Sall.*

*Occupâre pecuniam alicui*, and *apud aliquem*, i. e. *pecuniam fœnori locâre*, to place at interest. *Cic.*

*Opponêre se morti*, and *ad mortem*. *Renunciâre id ei*, and *ad eum*, to tell.

*Restituêre alicui sanitatem*, or *aliquem sanitati*, to restore to health.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

*Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipilo, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito*; also, *hortor* and *invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, lacesto*; thus, *Ad laudem militis hortatur*; *Ad prætorem hominem trahit*. *Cic.* But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, *Inferre Deos Latio*, for *in Latium*. *Virg. Invitâre aliquem hospitio*, or *in hospitium*. *Cic.*

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubêre alicui*, scil. *se*; *Cedêre alicui*, scil. *locum*; *Detrahêre alicui*, scil. *laudem*; *Ignoscêre alicui*, scil. *culpam*. And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum*, He gave me a book, for to me.

## 4. Verbs governing two Accusatives.

§ 167. XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person and the other of a thing; as,

*Poscimus te pacem.*  
*Docuit me grammaticam.*

We beg peace of thee.  
He taught me grammar.

§ 168. Verbs of asking, which govern two accusatives, are *Rogo, oro, exōro, obsecro, precor, posco, postulo, reposco, flagito, &c.* Of teaching, *Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.*

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celāvit me hanc rem*, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celāvit hanc rem mihi*, or *celāvit me de hac re*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often constraed with a preposition; as, *Rogāre rem ab aliquo*: *Docēre aliquem de re*, to inform; but we do not say, *docēre aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say with a preposition, *Peto, exigo a* or *abs te*; *Percontor, scitor, sciscitor, ex* or *a te* or *te* without the preposition; *Interrōgo, consulto te de re*; *Ut facias te obsecro*; *Exōrat pacem divum*, for *divos*. Virg. *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus*, in the abl. without a prep. *Imbuo eum artibus*, in or *ab artibus*. Also, *instruo ad rem*, or *in re, ignorantiam alicujus*. *Erudire aliquem artes, de* or *in re, ad rem*. *Formāre ad studium, mentem, studiis, studia ejus*.

Obs. 3. Many other active verbs with the accusative of a person, take also an accusative of *nihil*, or the neuter pronouns, *hoc, id, quid, &c.*, or of adjectives of quantity; as, *nec te id consulo*, Cic. *Eam rem nos locus admonuit*, Sall. To this construction seems to belong the formula, *magnam partem*, or *maximam partem*; as, *libros meos MAGNAM PARTEM amisi*, 'I have lost a great part of my books.' See § 150.

Obs. 4. Allied to this is the *Greek Accusative*, as it is called, which is added to passive verbs, in order to define more exactly the part to which the meaning of the verb relates; as, *redimītus TEMPORA lauro, — miles fractus membra, &c.* In such cases the accusative is governed by, *quod ad*, or *secundum*, or some other preposition understood. See § 63.

## 5. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

§ 169. XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

*Onērat naves auro,*

He loads the ships with gold.

§ 170. Verbs of loading are, *Onēro, cumulo, premo, opprimo, obruo, repleo, dono, arno*. Unloading, *levo, exonēro, &c.* Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo, &c.* Of loosing, *solvoo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio, &c.* Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo*. Of clothing, *vestio, amicio induo, cingo, tego, velo, corōno, and calceo*. Of unclothing, *exuo, discingo, &c.*

Obs. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvère aliquem ex catēnis*. Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves*, sc. *viris*, means the ship. Virg.

Obs. 2. *Impleo*, *compleo*, and *expleo*, sometimes take the genitive; as, *Adolescētem suā temeritātis implet*. Liv. *Erroris illos et dementia complebo*. Plaut. *Animum explēsse juvabit ulticis flamma*. Virg. And among the more ancient writers, also *saturo* and *obsaturo*; as, *Hæ res vitæ me saturant*, Plaut. *Istius obsaturabere*, Terent. Several vary their construction; as, *induit, exuit se vestibus*, or *vestes sibi*.

Obs. 3. *Muto* governs the Accusative of the thing given in exchange, and the Ablative of that which is taken in exchange; as, *Muto librum pecuniâ*. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Mutare bellum pro pace*, Sall.

Obs. 4. The following verbs are also found with the accusative of the object and the ablative without a preposition: *Instruo*, *formo*, *instituo*, *imbuo*, *informo*, *defendo*, *arceo*, *prohibeo*, *excludo*, *intercludo*, *pello*.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

§ 171. XXVIII. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

*Accūsor furti,*  
*Virgilius comparātur Homēro,*  
*Doceor grammaticam,*  
*Navis onerātur auro,*

I am accused of theft.  
Virgil is compared to Homer.  
I am taught grammar.  
The ship is loaded with gold.

So, *Scio homines accusātum iri furti*;—*Eos ereptum iri morti*, *morte*, a or *ex morte*;—*pueros doctum iri grammaticam*;—*rem celātum iri mihi*, or *me*; *me celātum iri de re*, &c.

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habētur ludibrio iis*.

§ 172. When a verb in the Active voice governs an accusative with any other case, it must be carefully observed that, whatever word is in the Accusative after the Active verb, that word, and no other, must be the Nominative to it in the Passive voice, and the other case remains unchanged. Thus, 'I give you a book,' *Librum tibi do*; passively, *Liber tibi datur*. 'He told me this,' *Hoc mihi dixit*; passively, 'I was told this,' *Hoc mihi dictum est*. 'I present you with a book,' *Dono tibi librum*; passively, *Liber tibi donatur*. This rule is simple, perspicuous, and founded on the best classical authorities—that, whatever is put in the Accusative case, after the Active verb, becomes the Nominative to it, in the Passive voice, while the other case is retained under the government of the verb, by this twenty-eighth rule. Thus, 'I persuade you of this,' *Persuadeo hoc tibi*. Here *the thing* is expressed in the Accusative, and the *person* in the Dative. The former therefore must be the Nominative to the verb in the Passive voice; as, *hoc tibi persuadetur*, 'you are persuaded of this,' literally, 'this is persuaded to you.'

§ 173. But it does not follow that we cannot say, *Ego dicor*, *Ille dicitur*, or *Ille dictus est*. If the person be *He* to whom any thing is

said, it must always be expressed in the Dative case, as in the preceding examples. But if the person be *He* or *whom* any thing is said, it may then be made nominative to the verb. Thus, 'He is said to be a wise man,' *Ille dicitur esse vir sapiens*. Here *Ille* is the subject spoken of, the person of *whom* the assertion is made, not the person to *whom* the thing is told. In like manner, 'I believe you,' *Credo tibi*, that is, 'I give credit to what you say,' in the passive voice, *tibi creditur*, not *tu crederis*. But the latter expression is correct if used to signify, not that credit is given to the words of the person, but that something is believed of him, as the subject of discourse; as, *Tu crederis esse vir bonus*, 'you are believed to be a good man.'

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as,

*Tu laudaris a me*, which is equivalent to *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diligitur a nobis*; *Nos diligimus virtutem*. *Gaudeo meum factum probari a te*, or *te probare meum factum*: And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collucet*. Cic. *Phalaris non a paucis interit*. Id. So, *Cedere ab hoste*; *Cessare a praeiis*; *Mori ab ense*; *Pati furari aliquid ab aliquo*, &c. Also, *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold; *Vapulare ab aliquo*, *Exulare ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere*, &c. *ab aliquo*.

Rem. 1. The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Destitor conjuge*. Ovid. *Desertus meis sc. a. Tacit*. *Tubula distinguitur unda qui navigat*. sc. *ab unda*, is kept from the water by a plank. Juvenal.

Rem. 2. The preposition *PER* is also used in the same sense with *A*; as, *Per me defensa est respublica*, or *a me*; *Per me restitutus*; *Per me or a me factum est*. Cic. But *PER* commonly marks the instrument, and *A* the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per creditores, a rege*, sc. *a rege vel a legato ejus*. Cic. Fam. i. 1.

Obs. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as,

*Neque cernitur ulli*, for *ab ullo*. Virg. *Vix audior ulli*. Ovid. *Scriberis Vario*, for *a Vario*. Hor. *Honestas bonis viris quaruntur*, for *a viris*. Cic. *VIDEOR*, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Videris mihi*, You seem to me: but we commonly say, *Videris a me*, You are seen by me; although not always; as, *Nulla tuorum audita mihi, neque visa sororum*, for *a me*. Virg.

Obs. 3. *Induor, amicio, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor*, and *discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, *Induitur vestem*, or *veste*.

Obs. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnata est*. Cic. *Bellum militabitur*. Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as, *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venitur*, &c. *a vobis, ab illis*, &c. We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me*, or *ab aliquo*: I or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optime a Deo*; *Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it. Cic.

Obs. 5. They also govern the same cases as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicum misereatur*. Cic. Except the accusative: for in these phrases, *Itur Athenas, pugnatum est biduum, dormitur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems*; *Noctes vigilantur amarae*; *Oceanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus aditur*. Tacit.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 174. XXIX. An Impersonal Verb governs the dative; as,

*Expedit reipublicæ,*

It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

*Favetur mihi*, I am favoured, and not *Ego faveor*. So, *Nocetur mihi*, *imperatur mihi*, &c. We find, however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor*, *Ego cur invidetur*, for *imperatur*, *invidetur mihi*. Hor.

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest*, *cœpit*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *debet*, and *solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

*Non potest credi tibi*, You cannot be believed; *Mihi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute*. Cic. *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra*. *Aliorum laudi et gloria invideri solet*. The praise and glory of others are accustomed to be envied. Id. *Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi resisti posse*. Sallust.

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res*, or *de hac re*, or *hujus rei*, scil. *memoria*; This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res*, or *de hac re*. *Doleo* or *dolet mihi*, *id factum esse*.

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *id* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains*, *it shines*; &c. And in the Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Nobis non licet peccare*, the same with *peccatum*; *Omnibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse salvam*, i. e. *Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis*. Cic. *Accidit, evenit, configit, ut ibi essemus*. These nominatives, *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *idem*, *quod*, &c., are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs; as, *idem mihi licet*. Cic. *Eadem licet*. Catull.

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood; as, *Faciât quod libet*, sc. *sibi*. Ter. *Stat casus renovare omnes*, sc. *mihi*, I am resolved. Virg.

§ 175. Exc. 1. *REFERT* and *INTEREST* govern the genitive; as,

*Refert patriæ*, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium*, It is the interest of all.

§ 176. But *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

*Non mea refert,*

It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, &c. to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus interest*, and *quorum interest*; or *cujâ interest*, from *cujus*, -a, -um.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id*, *hoc*, *illud*, *quid*, *quod*, *nil*, &c. also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti*, *quantû*, *magni*, *permagni*, *parvi*, *pluris*; as, *Hoc parvi refert*; *Illud meo magni interest*. Cic. *Usque adeo magni refert studium*. Lucret. *Incessus in gravidâ refert*. Plin.

Rem. 2. They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maxime, vehementer, minime, &c.* as, *Feciam, quod maxime reipublice interesse judicabo.* Cic.

Rem. 3. Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accus. with the prep. *ad*; as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert. Persæ quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it? &c. Plaut. *Magni ad honorem nostrum interest.* Cic.; rarely the dative; as, *Dic quid refert intra naturæ fines viventi, &c.* Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolabellam,* it is of great importance. Cic. *Permultum interest, qualis primus actus sit.* Id. *Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis refert.* Liv. *Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas.* Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest*, is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree; as, *Interest Ciceronis, i. e. est inter negotia Ciceronis.* *Refert patris, i. e. refert se hæc res ad negotia patris.* So, *interest mea, est inter negotia mea.*

§ 177. Exc. II. These five, *MISERET, PŒNITET, PUDET, TÆDET,* and *PIGET,* govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

*Miseret me tui,* I pity you.  
*Pœnitet me peccati,* I repent of my sin.

*Tædet me vita,* I am weary of life.  
*Pudet me culpæ,* I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui,* that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me.*

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse, or quod peccavim.* The accusative is frequently understood; as, *Scelerum si bene pœnitet, scil. nos.* Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret, pœnitet, &c.* are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod, &c.* as, *Ipse tui miseret.* Lucr. *Nonne hæc te pudet.* Ter. *Nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facias, for cujus te pœnitere possit.* Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me, scil. secundum or quod ad.* Ter.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret, pudet, tædet,* and *piget,* when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum.* Ter. We likewise find, *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui.* Ter. *Miseretur te fratrum; Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest.* Cic.

§ 178. Exc. III. *DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT,* and *OPORTET,* govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive; as,

*Delectat me studere,*  
*Non decet te risari,*

It delights me to study.  
It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *parvum parva decet.* Hor. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat.* Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant.* Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet.* Ter.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as,

*Sibi quisque consilium oportet.* Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit; mansum oportuit; Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured. Ter

Obs. 4. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit; De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribere.* Cic.

NOTE. *Attinet, pertinet*, and *spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari.* Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs. Ter. *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points. Cic.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ 179. XXX. One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

*Cupio discere,*

I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi.* Quinctil. And it sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus equum fumantia solvere colla.* Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam*, scil. *debet*, or *par est.* Virg. *Videre est*, one may see. *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*; or *facultas.* Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socratem fidebus docuit*, scil. *canere.* Cic. So, *Discere, scire, fidebus.*

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients, *Nomen verbi*, the name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own: and it likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinari, fraudare, turpe est.* Cic. *Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores.* Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare*, for *cantandi* or *cantus.* Virg. 3. In the dative, *Paratus servire*, for *servituti.* Sall. 4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere*, for *artem fallendi.* Horat. *Quod faciam superest, præter amare, nihil.* Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effuis!* for *vita nostra.* 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari*, for *amore*, or *qui ametur.* Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive a different construction is often used after verbs of doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitâs ita facere*, or more frequently, *an, num, or utrum ita facturus sit; Dubitavit an faceret necne; Non dubito quin fecerit. Vis me facere, or ut faciam. Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur. Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias. Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem.* Cic. *Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur.* Cæs.

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, I am sent to complain, *Mittor questum, or ut querar*, &c. Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum*; Time to read, *Tempus legendi*; Fit to swim, *Aptus natando*; Easy to say, *Facile dictu*; I am to write, *Scripturus sum*; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, *Domus locanda*; He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem.*

Obs. 6. *Dubito* and *dubium est*, are sometimes followed by the Infinitive, but oftener by the Subjunctive, with *an, num, utrum*, and (if *non* goes before) *quin*; as, *non dubium est quin uxorem nolit filius, Terent.* It is to be observed that such phrases as *Dubito an, Haud scio an, Nescio an*, although from their very nature they imply some doubt are, notwithstanding, generally used in a sense almost affirma-

tive; as, *Dubito an hunc primum omnium ponam*, Nep. 'for aught I know he may be placed first,' or, 'I am inclined to place him first.'

Obs. 7. Verbs of fearing, such as, *timeo*, *metuo*, *vereor*, *paveo*, are used affirmatively with *ne*, but negatively with *ut*, or *ne non*; thus, *Timet ne deserat se*, Ter. 'she is afraid that you may forsake her.' *Paves ne ducas uxorem*, Ter. denotem, 'you are afraid to marry.' *Paves ut ducas*, Ter. you are afraid lest you should not marry her.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

§ 180. XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines govern the case of their own verbs; as,

*Amans virtutem*, Loving virtue.

*Carens fraude*, Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive Participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

*Suspectus mihi*, Suspected by me; *Suspectiores regibus*, Sall. *Invisus mihi*, hated by me, or hateful to me; *Ipsi invisissimus*, Plin. *Occulta et maribus non invisita solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra*, unseen. Cic.

Obs. 2. *Do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *curo*, *facio*, *habeo*, *comperio*, with the Accusative of a perfect participle, are often used by way of circumlocution, instead of the verb of the participle; as, *Compertum habeo*, for *compèri*, 'I have found;' *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam*. *Me mittum face*, Ter. for *mitte*. In certain instances there is an evident difference between the simple tense of the verb, and the periphrasis corresponding to the manner in which it is usually interpreted in English. Thus if we say, *Gladius quem abdiderat*, or *Gladius quem abdutum habebat*, the translation of either is, 'The sword which she had concealed.' The latter is the phraseology of Livy, describing the suicide of Lucretia, and implies the actual possession of the dagger at the time; the former does not.

Obs. 3. These verbs, *curo*, *habeo*, *mando*, *loco*, *condūco*, *do*, *tribuo*, *mitto*, &c., are elegantly construed with the participle in *dus*, instead of the infinitive; as, *Fanus faciendum curavi*, for *fieri*, or *ut fieret*; *Columnas edificandas locavi*. Cic.

Obs. 4. *EXOSUS*, *PEROSUS*, and often also *PERTÆSUS*, govern the accusative; as, *Tadas exosa jugales*. Ovid. *Plebs consilium nomen haud æcus quam regum perosa erat*. Liv. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam; semet ipse*, displeased with, Suet. *vitam*, weary of. Justin. *levitatis*. Cic.

Obs. 5. Verbals in *BUNDUS* govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratula-bundus patriæ*. Just. *Vitabundus castra hostium*. Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Iustitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*. Cic. *Insidiæ consuli*. Sall. *Domum reditiōis spe sublata*. Cæs. *Spectatio ludos*. Plant.

Obs. 6. Sometimes the Gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas*, or *ad diripiendum*, Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum*, or *ad utendum*; *Misi mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*.

Obs. 7. The passive participle in *dus* has in the nominative case, (and in the construction of the accusative with the infinitive also) the signification of *necessity*, less frequently, of *possibility*; thus, *laudandus* is one who *must* be praised, or *ought* to be praised. The neuter of this participle is used in the nominative, or the accusative before the infinitive, with *esse* in the sense of 'necessity,' or 'propriety,' as, *laudandum est*; *dico laudandum esse*, 'we must praise.' The person on whom the duty or necessity rests, must be expressed in the dative, and not in the ablative with *ab*. But some consider the neuter participle as the gerund. See § 182, Obs. 1.



## THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

§ 181. XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns ; as,

<i>Studendum est mihi,</i>	I must study.		<i>Scio studendum esse mihi,</i>	I know
<i>Tempus studendi,</i>	Time of study.		that I must study.	
<i>Aptus studendo,</i>	Fit for studying.			

But more particularly :

§ 182. I. The gerund in *DUM*, of the Nominative case, with the verb *est*, governs the dative ; as,

*Legendum est mihi,* I must read. | *Moriendum est omnibus,* All must die.  
So, *Scio legendum esse mihi ; moriendum esse omnibus, &c.*

Obs. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity ; and may be resolved into *oportet, necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut* ; as, *Omnibus est moriendum*, or *Omnibus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur* ; or *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consulendum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good ; for *Oportet ut consûlam tibi*. Cic.

Obs. 2. The dative is often understood ; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*, &c. tibi. Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, milites, est*, &c. vobis. Liv. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel*, &c. tibi or alteri. P. Syr.

§ 183. II. The gerund in *DI* is governed by substantives or adjectives ; as,

*Tempus legendi,* Time of reading. | *Cupidus discendi,* Desirous of learning.

Obs. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural ; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi, for agros*. Cic. *Copia spectandi comædiarum*, for *comædias*. Ter. But chiefly with pronouns ; as, *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causâ*. Cæs. *Vestri adhortandi causâ*. Liv. *Ejus videndi cupidus*, &c. *famînæ*. Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

§ 184. III. The gerund in *DO* of the Dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness ; as,

*Charta utilis scribendo,* Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood ; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par* or *habilis*, He is not able to pay. Cic.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs ; as, *Adesse scribendo*. Cic. *Aptat habendo ensem*, for wearing. Virg. *Is finis censendo factus est*. Liv.

§ 185. IV. The gerund in *DUM* of the Accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter* ; as,

*Promptus ad audiendum,* Ready to hear  
*Attentus inter docendum,* Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions ; as, *Ante domandum*. Virg. *Ob absolvendum*. Cic. *Circa movendum*. Quincitil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case ; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

§ 186. V. The gerund in *DO* of the Ablative case is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

*Pœna a peccando absterret,*

Punishment frightens from sinning.

§ 187. Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; according to Rule XLIX, as,

*Memoria excolendo augëtur,  
Difœsus sum ambulando,*

The memory is improved by exercising it.  
I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. — Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*: only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidium vocarëtur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperëtur*, to receive orders. Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius; sic enim antequam loquebantur*. Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperëtur*. *Urit videndo*, i. e. *dum vidëtur*. Virg.

### Gerunds turned into Participles in *dus*.

§ 188. XXXVI.\* Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number and case; as,

By the Gerund.

*Petendum est mihi pacem,  
Tempus petendi pacem,  
Ad petendum pacem,  
A petendo pacem,*

By the Participle or Gerundive.

} or more  
frequently

*Pax est petenda mihi.  
Tempus petendæ pacis.  
Ad petendam pacem.  
A petendâ pace.*

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive. *Intra sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominus Romani extinguendi*. Cic.

Dat. *Perpetiundo labôri idoneus*. Column. *Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis*. Tac. *Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis*. Liv. *Onëri ferendo est*, sc. *aptus* or *habilis*. Ovid. *Natus miseriis ferendis*, Ter. *Litteris dandis vigilare*. Cic. *Locum oppido condendo capere*. Liv.

Acc. and Abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnandâ Capuâ duces Romanos abstrahere*. Liv. *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficies pleniorẽ*. Cic.

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs, which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis*; but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

\* The Gerunds in *DUM*, *DI*, and *DO*, constitute Rules xxxiii. xxxiv. and xxxv.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. The supine in *um*.

§ 189. XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion ; as,

*Abiit deambulatum,*

He hath gone to walk.

So, *Ductæ cohortes prædatum.* Liv. *Nunc venis irrisum dominum ? Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, te id admonitum venio.* Plaut.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly ; as, *Il se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *opem dat, ut se perdat*, He is bent on his own destruction. Ter. This supine with *iri*, taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive ; as, *An credēbas illam sine tuâ opēâ iri deductum domum ?* Which may be thus resolved ; *An credēbas iri* (a te or ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum*. Ter. The two supines are properly the accusative and ablative of an old verbal substantive of the fourth declension, which govern the case of the verb.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion ; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum ; Cantatum provocamus*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam ; Divisit copias hiematum.* Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb ; as, *Venit oratum opem* ; or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orandæ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opi orandæ*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem oret*. 6. *Venit opem orâre*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. The Supine in *u*.

§ 190. XXXVIII. The supine in *u* is put after adjectives implying *Ease, Difficulty, Propensity, Quality, Fitness, Form, &c.*

*Facile dictu,*

Easy to tell, or to be told.

So, *Nihil dictu fœdum, visûque, hæc limina tangat, intra quæ puer est.* Juv. *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus.*

Obs. 1. The supine in *u* is also used after the nouns *fas, nefas*, and *opus* ; as, *Hoc fas est dictu*, Cic. *Nefas dictu*, Ovid. *Dictu opus est*, Ter.

Obs. 2. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion ; as, *Nunc obsonatu redeo*, from getting provisions. Plaut. *Primus cubitu surgat* (villicus,) from bed, *postrēmus cubitum eat*. Cato.

Obs. 3. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad* ; as, *Difficile cognitu, cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum* ; *Res factis ad credendum*. Cic.

Obs. 4. According to the opinion of many grammarians, the Supines are nothing else but verbal nouns of the Fourth declension, used only in the Accusative and Ablative cases, and are governed in these cases by prepositions understood, the Supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the Supine in *u* by the preposition *in*. But this opinion will hardly bear examination ; for why should the Supine in *um* govern the case of its own verb, unless it be really a part of it ?

Obs. 5. Although in the grammars and dictionaries the Supines of most verbs are given by analogy, yet they are seldom found in the classics: instead of them are used the Gerunds, the Participles in *dus* and *rus*, and *ut*, with the Subjunctive mode.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

### I. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

§ 191. XXXIX. Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs; as,

<i>Benè scribit,</i>	He writes well.	<i>Fortiter pugnans,</i>	Fighting bravely.
<i>Servus egregiè fìdèlis,</i>	A slave remarkably faithful.	<i>Satis benè,</i>	Well enough.

Obs. 1. Adverbs sometimes likewise qualify substantives; as,

*Homèrus planè oràtor: plane noster, verè Metellus.* Cic. So, *Hodie mane, cras mane, heri mane; hodie vespèri, &c. tam mane, tam vespère.*

Obs. 2. The adverb, for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it qualifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

*Nec non senserunt,* Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *et senserunt*, and they did perceive; *Non potèram non examinàri metu.* Cic. So, *non sum nescius*, i. e. 'I know.' Cic. *haud nihil est*, i. e. 'It is something.' Ter. *nonnulli*, i. e. 'some.' Examples, however, of the contrary of this occur in good authors, both Latin and English. Thus, in imitation of the Greeks, two negatives sometimes make a stronger negation: *Non parère noluit.* Nep. 'he did not refuse to obey;' *neque hæc non evenerunt*, 'and this actually took place;' *vide igitur NE NULLA sit divinatio*, Cic. 'consider whether there exist such a thing as divination at all.' *Neque tu HAUD dicas tibi NON prædictum*, Ter. 'and do not say that you were not forewarned.'

Obs. 4. It must be observed however, that the use of *non* before a negative does not merely restore the positive sense but generally heightens it. *Homo non indoctus*, is equivalent to *homo sane doctus*, 'a man truly learned.' *Non imperitissimus*, 'a man of great experience.' So, *non ignoro, non nescius sum*, 'I know very well.'

Obs. 5. A very different sense arises, according as the *non* is placed before or after: thus, *non nemo*, 'some one;' *nemo non*, 'every one.' *Non nulli*, 'some;' *nullis non*, 'every;' *Non nihil*, 'something;' *nihil non*, 'every thing.' *Nonnunquam*, 'sometimes;' *nunquam non*, 'at all times.'

§ 192. But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined. 1. *Apprèhè, admòdum, vehementer, maxime, perquam, valdè, oppiddò, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admòdum feceris*, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us. Cic. *perquam puerile*, very childish; *oppiddò pauci*, very few; *perfacile est, &c.* In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum*; as, *In rebus apertissimis, nimium longi sumus; parum firmus, multum bonus.* Cic. Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantum amplior humanà.* Liv.

§ 193. *Quam* is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quàm difficile est!* How difficult it is! *Quàm crudèlis*, or *Ut crudèlis est!* How cruel he is! *Flens quàm familiaritèr*, very familiarly. Ter. So, *quàm severè*, very

severely. Cic. *Quàm latè*, very widely. Cæs. *Tam multa quàm*, &c. as many things as, &c. *Quàm maximas potest copias armat*, as great as possible. Sall. *Quàm maximas gratias agit, quàm primum, quàm sapissimè*. Cic. *Quàm quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est*. Sall.

§ 194. FACILE, for *haud dubie*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facilè doctissimus, facilè princeps*, or *præcipuus*. LONGE, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive; as, *Longè eloquentissimus Plauto*. Cic. *Pedibus longè melior Lycus*. Virg.

2. CUM, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter; DUM, whilst, or how long, with the indicative; as, *Dum hæc aguntur; Ægròto, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur*. Cic. *Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos*. Ovid. DUM and DONEC, for *usquidum*, until, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, *Opperior, dum ista cognosco*. Cic. *Haud desinam donec perfectò*. Ter. So QUOAD, for *quamdium, quantum, quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Cætilina fuit in urbe; Quoad tibi æquum videbitur; quoad possem and liceret; quoad progredi poterit amentia*. Cic. But QUOAD, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Thessalonicae esse statueram, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes*. Cic. but not always; *Non faciam finem rogandi, quoad nuntiatum erit te fecisse*. Cic. The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere*, or *feri*, is elegantly added to *quoad*; as, *quoad ejus facere poteris; Quoad ejus fieri possit*. Cic. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid*, or some such word understood. *Quoad corpus, quoad animam*, for *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad corpus* or *animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM or POSTEAQUAM, after, is usually joined with the indic. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, before; SIMUL, SIMULAC, SIMUL ATQUE, SIMUL UT, as soon as; UBI, when, sometimes with the indic. and sometimes with the subj.; as, *Antequam dico or dicam*. Cic. *Simulac persensit*. Virg. *Simul ut vidèro Curionem*. Cic. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit*. Liv. *Ubi semel quis perjuraverit, ei credi postea non oportet*. Cic. So *NÆ*, truly, as, *Næ ego homo sum infelix*. Ter. *Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ consulisses*. Cic. But *NE*, not, with the imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Ne jura*. Plaut. *Ne post confèras culpam in me*. Ter. *Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dedèris discrimen*. Liv.

4. QUASI, CEU TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the indicative; *Fuit olim, quasi ego sum, senex*. Plaut. *Adversi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti configunt*. Virg. *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur*. But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laboratur*. Cic.

5. UTINAM, O SI, UT, for *utinam*, I wish, take the subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit*. Cic. *O mihi præteritos refèrat si Jupiter annos*. Virg. *Ut illum dii deoque perdant*. Ter.

6. UT, when, or after, takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit venit*, &c. ¶ Also, for *quàm*, or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut falsus animi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse*. Plaut. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*. Cic.

7. QUIN, for CUR NON, takes the indic. as, *Quin continētis vocem indicem stultitia vestra?* Cic. ¶ For IMO, nay, or but, the indic. or imperat. as, *Quin est paratū argentum; quin tu hoc audi*. Ter. ¶ For UT NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or QUOMINUS, the subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facilis res, quin difficilis flet, quum invitū facias*. Ter. *Nemo est, quin malit; Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam*, I cannot help sending; *Nihil abest, quin sim miserrius*. Cic.

## THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

§ 195. XL. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

<i>Pridiè ejus dièi,</i>	The day before that day.
<i>Ubique gentium,</i>	Every where.
<i>Satis est verbòrum,</i>	There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interea, postea, inde, tunc*; as, *Interea loci*, in the mean time; *postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi*, and *quo*, with their compounds, *ubique, ubicunque, ubivis, ubiubi*, &c. Also, *Eo, huc, hucine, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem*; as, *Ubi, quo, quovis*, &c. also *usquam, nusquam, unde terrarum, or gentium; longe gentium; ibidem loci, ed audaciæ, vecordiæ, miseriarum*, &c. to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abundè, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minime*; as, *Abundè gloriæ, affatim divitiarum, largiter auri, satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum est illi or habet*, He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minime gentium*, by no means.

§ 196. Some add *Ergo* and *Instar*; but these are properly indeclinable nouns. *Ergo* (the Greek *Εργον*) means 'an account of,' 'for the sake of,' and is similar to *gratià*; as, *ejus victoriæ ergo*, Nep. an account of that victory; *honoris ergo*, Cic. It may be considered in the ablative case by Rule 49. *Instar*, 'similitude,' 'likeness,' 'worth,' 'shape,' may be considered in the accusative, and governed by *ad* understood; as, *amo eum instar patris*, 'I love him like a father;' that is, *ad instar*, 'according to the likeness.' *Instar montis equum ædificant*, 'they make a horse as great as a mountain,' that is, *ad instar*, 'according to the size,' &c. See Etymology § 54, page 57.

§ 197. Many adverbs of place, as, *ubi, ubinam, ubivis, quo, quovis, aliquo, usquam, nusquam*, &c. are followed by the genitives *Gentium, Terrarum, Loci, Locorum*, which are not in general superfluous, but express an emphasis, as in English we say, 'where in the world is he?' for 'where is he?' &c., of which the former is more emphatical, and implies more astonishment; as, *ubi terrarum sumus*, 'where in the world are we?' *Nihil est virtute amabilius, quam qui adeptus fuerit, ubicunque erit gentium, a nobis diligenter*, Cic. Nat. Deor. 'Nothing is more lovely than virtue, and for him who practises it, in whatever part of the world he may be, do we feel the strongest affection.' *Quo amentia*, Liv. 'to what extent,' or 'degree of madness.'

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriæque abundè adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriæ*; or, *res, locus, or negotium*, and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridiè, postridiè ejus dièi, seldom diem*; but *pridiè, postridiè Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludus Apollinæres, natalem ejus, absolutionem ejus*, &c., rarely *Kalendarum*, &c.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

*En hostis, or hostem; Ecce miserum hominem*. Cic. Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce tibi Strato. Ter. Ecce duas* (scil. aras,) *tibi, Daphni. Virg. En tibi. Liv. In like manner is construed hæc* put for *ecce*; as, *Hæc tibi Davum. Ter.* But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

§ 198. XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives ; as,

*Omnium optime loquitur,*  
*Convenienter naturæ,*  
*Venit obviam ei,*  
*Proxime castris, or castra.*

He speaks the best of all.  
 Agreeably to nature.  
 He came to meet him.  
 Next the camp.

Obs. 1. Thus also, by Rule XI. *Omnium optime, Sæpissime omnium, diutissime omnium*, although the superlative of the two last, whence the adverbs come, are not used. By Rule XII. *congruenter natura convenienterque vivere. Cic. Huic obviam civitas processerat. Cic.*

## II. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

### 1. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

§ 199. XLII. The Prepositions *ad, adversus, adversum, ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, præter, prope, propter, secundum, secus, supra, trans, ultra, usque, versus*, govern the Accusative.

### 2. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

§ 200. XLIII. The prepositions *a, ab, abs, absque, clam, coram, cum, de, e, ex, palam, præ, pro, sine, tenus*, govern the Ablative.

Obs. 1. To prepositions governing the ablative is commonly added *Procul*; as,

*Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patriâ*, Virg. *Procul ab ostentatione*. Quinct. *Culpa est procul a me*. Ter.

### 3. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACC. AND ABL.

§ 201. XLIV. The prepositions *in, sub, super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative, *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

*IN*, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative.

Obs. 1. Prepositions in English have always after them the accusative or objective case. And when prepositions in English or Latin do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Ante*, *circa*, *clam*, *coram*, *contra*, *infra*, *juxta*, *palam*, *pone*, *post*, *propter*, *secus*, *subter*, *super*, *supra*, *ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempore venit*, sc. *post id tempus*. *Adversus*, *juxta*, *propter*, *secus*, *secundum*, and *clam*, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl.; as, *Intus cellam*, for *intra*. Liv. *Intus templo divum*, sc. *in*. Virg. *Simul his*, sc. *cum*. Hor.

Obs. 2. A and *æ* are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

*A patre*, *e regione*; *ab initio*, *ab rege*; *ex urbe*, *ex parte*; *abs* before *q* and *t*; as, *abs te*, *abs quibus homine*. Ter. Some phrases are used only with *e*; as, *e longinquo*, *e regione*, *e vestigio*, *e re mea est*, &c. Some only with *ex*; as, *Ex compacto*, *ex tempore*, *magna ex parte*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenire locos*, scil. *ad*; *It portis*, sc. *ex*. Virg. *Nunc id prodeo*, scil. *ob* or *propter*. Ter. *Maria aspera juro*, scil. *per*. Virg. *Ut æ loca movere non possent*, scil. *e* or *de*. Cæs. *Vina promens dolio*, scil. *ex*. Hor. *Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*. Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book*; *Get me some paper*, that is, *to me*, *for me*.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordiæ*, sc. *adem*. Sall. *Round St. Paul's*, namely, *church*; *Campum Stellatæm divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus*, *civium*, i. e. *civium multibus ad viginti millia*. Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittere servum*, scil. *manu*. Plaut. *Evomere virus*, scil. *ora*. Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*. Cæs.

§ 202. XLV. A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

*Adeamus scholam*,  
*Exeamus scholâ*,

Let us go to the school.  
Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scholam*; *Exire ex scholâ*; *Adgrædi aliquid*, or *ad aliquid*; *ingrædi orationem*, or *in orationem*; *inducere animum*, and *in animum*; *evadere undis* and *ex undis*; *decedere de suo jure*, *decedere viâ* or *de viâ*; *expellere*, *ejicere*, *exterminare*, *extrudere*, *exturbare urbe*, and *ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari*, *alloqui*, *allatrare aliquem*, not *ad aliquem*. So, *Alluere urbem*; *accolere flumen*; *circumvenire aliquem*; *præterire injuriam*; *abdicare se magistratû*, (also, *abdicare magistratûm*;) *transducere exercitum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem*, *adhortari ad aliquid*, *incidere in morbum*, *avocare a studiis*, *avertere ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire*, *demigrare loco*; and *a*, *de*, *ex loco*, *abstrahere aliquem*, *a*, *de*, or *e conspectu*; *Desistere sententiâ*, *a* or *de sententiâ*; *Excidere manibus*, *de* or *e manibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

*Egrædi urbe*, or *urbem*, sc. *extra*; *egrædi extra vallum*. Nep. *Evadere insidiis* or *insidias*. *Patrios excedere muros*. Lucan. *Sceleratâ excedere terrâ*. Virg. *Elabi ex manibus*; *elabi pugnam* aut *vincula*. Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Alluor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.



## III. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

§ 203. XLVI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

*O vir bonus* or *bone*! *O* good man!      *Heu me miserum*! Ah wretched me!

So, *O vir fortis atque amicus*! Ter. *Heu vanitas humana*! Plin. *Heu miserande guer*! Virg. *O præclærum custodem ovium* (ut aiunt) *lupum*! Cic.

§ 204. XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

*Hei mihi*! Ah me.

*Væ vobis*! Woe to you!

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *ohe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*. Ter. *Ohe libelle*! Martial. *Proh* or *pro*, *ah*, *vah*, *hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh hominum fidem*! Ter. *Proh Sancte Jupiter*! Cic. *Hem astutias*! Ter.

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot, properly, have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connexion with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case, therefore, is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely; thus, *Heu me miserum*! stands for *Heu! quàm me miserum sentio*! *Hei mihi*! for *Hei! malum est mihi*! *Proh dolor*! for *Proh! quantus est dolor*! and so in other examples.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

## 1. PRICE.

§ 205. XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

*Emi librum duobus assibus*,  
*Constitit talento*,

I bought a book for two shillings.  
It cost a talent.

So; *Asse carum est; vile viginti minis; auro venale*, &c. *Nocet emptæ dolores voluptas*. Hor. *Spem pretio non eman*. Ter. *Plurimum auro veneunt honores*. Ovid.

§ 206. ¶ These genitives, *tanti*, *quant*, *pluris*, *minoris*, are excepted; as,

*Quant* *constitit*, How much cost it?      | *Asse et pluris*, a shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere*. Cic.

Obs. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit*, scil. *pretio*. Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nos stetit una tris?* Ovid. *Fast.* ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carè, carius, carissimè; bene, melius, optimè; malè, pejùs, vilius, vilissimè; valdè, carè, æstimas: Emit domum prope dimidio carius, quàm æstimabat.* Cic.

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret.* Liv.

## 2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

§ 207. XLIX. The cause, manner, means, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

*Palleo metu,*  
*Fecit suo more,*  
*Scribo calamo,*

I am pale for fear.  
He did it after his own way.  
I write with a pen.

So, *Ardet dolore; pallescere culpâ; æstuare dubitatione; gestire voluptate* or *secundis rebus; Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentiâ: Pietate filius, consilii pater, amoris frater*; hence, *Res Dei gratiâ: Paritur pax bello.* Nep. *Procedere lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparatu: Nullo sono convertitur annus.* Juv. *Jam veniet tacito curva senectia pede.* Ovid. *Percutere securi, defendere saxis, configere sagittis, &c.*

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, *De more matrum locuta est.* Virg. *Magno cum metu; Hâc de causâ; Præ marore, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio, not cum gladio*; unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab*; as, *Trajectus ab ense.* Ovid.

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, *Obsedit curiam cum gladiis; Ingressus est cum gladio.* Cic.

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum.* Liv. *Floruit acuminè ingenti.* Cic. *Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoriâ, famâ nobilis, &c. Ager pedibus.* When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Templum de marmore, seldom marmoris; Poculum ex auro factum.* Cic.

## 3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars.—

1. The place *where*, or *in which*.
2. The place *whither*, or *to which*.
3. The place *whence* or *from which*.
4. The place *by*, or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place in the ablative.

1. The place *WHERE*.

§ 208. L. When the place *where*, or *in which*, is spoken of, the name of the place is put in the genitive ; as,

*Visit Romæ,  
Mortuus est Londini,*

He lived at Rome.  
He died at London.

§ 209. But if the name of a town be of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative ; as,

*Habitat Carthagine,  
Studuit Parisiis,*

He dwells at Carthage.  
He studied at Paris.

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood or near it, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud* ; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, At or near Troy.

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood ; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe* or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed : thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebri* ; but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe* ; or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or sometimes, *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi* ?

2. The Place *WHITHER*.

§ 210. LI. When the place *whither*, or *to which*, is spoken of, the name of the place is put in the accusative ; as,

*Venit Romam,  
Profectus est Athēnas,*

He came to Rome.  
He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom ; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*. Horat.

Obs. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied ; as, *Romam erat nuntiātum*, The report was carried to Rome. Liv. *Hæc nunciant domum Albani*. Id. *Messānam litteras dedit*. Cic.

3. The Place *WHENCE*.

§ 211. LII. When the place *whence*, or *from which*, or the place *by* or *through which*, is spoken of, the name of the place is put in the ablative ; as,

*Discessit Corintho,  
Laodicēā iter faciēbat,*

He departed from Corinth.  
He went through Laodicea.

Obs. To this rule may be referred such phrases as, *cedere acie*, 'to leave the line,' or 'to retreat.' *Advolvunt ingentes montibus ornos*. Virg.

*Domus and Rus.*

§ 212. LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

<i>Manet domi,</i>	He stays at home.
<i>Domum revertitur,</i>	He returns home.
<i>Domo arcessitus sum,</i>	I am called from home.
<i>Vivit rure,</i> or more frequently <i>ruri,</i>	He lives in the country.
<i>Rediit rure,</i>	He is returned from the country.
<i>Abiit rus,</i>	He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. *Humi, militiæ, and belli,* are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

*Domi et militiæ, or belli,* At home and abroad. *Jacet humi,* He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paternâ, not domi paternæ:* So, *Ad domum paternam: Ex domo paternâ.* Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius, and aliénus;* as, *Domi meæ vixit.* Cic. *Alius, alium domos suas invitant.* Sall. *Aurum atque argentum, et alia, quæ prima ducuntur, domum regiam comportant.* Sall.

Obs. 3. *Rus* and *rure,* even with an adjective, are found without a preposition; as, *equum conscendit, et rus urbanum contendit.* Justin. *Rure* is found with a preposition; as, *ex rure in urbem revertebatur,* Cic. The plural *rura,* is always preceded by a preposition; as, *Jam ubi vos dilapsi domos, et in rura vestra eritis,* Liv.

Obs. 4. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo, or in domo Cæsaris.*

§ 213. LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by,

Ubi? <i>Natus in Italiâ, in Latio, in urbe, &amp;c.</i>
Quo? <i>Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in or ad urbem, &amp;c.</i>
Unde? <i>Rediit ex Italiâ, e Latio, ex urbe, &amp;c.</i>
Qua? <i>Transiit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &amp;c.</i>

Obs. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, *In Româ,* for *Romæ;* *ad Romam, ex Româ, &c.*

§ 214. *Peto* always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition; as, *Petivit Egyptum,* He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition, like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est.* Cæs. *Cretæ jussit considere Apollo.* Virg. *Non Lybiæ,* for *in Lybiâ, non antè Tyro,* for *Tyri.* Id. *Æn.* iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam.* Cic. *Romæ, Numidiæque facinoræ ejus memôrat,* Sall.

## 4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

§ 215. LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

<i>Murus est decem pedes altus,</i>	} The wall is ten feet high.
<i>Urbs distat triginta milia, or triginta milibus passuum,</i>	
<i>Iter, or itinere unius diei,</i>	
	The city is thirty miles distant.
	One day's journey.

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus, and altus: Patet, porrigitur, eminet, &c.* The names of measure are, *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo, curro, abssum, disto, &c.* The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denum pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Sex milibus passuum ab urba consedit*, or *ad sex milia passuum. Cæs. Ad quintum miliarium, or milliære, consedit. Cic. Ad quintum lapidem. Nep.*

Obs. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as,

*Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Toto vertice supra est, Virg. Britannia longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta miliaribus superat.*

## 5. TIME.

§ 216. LVI. Time *when* is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Venit hora tertia.</i>	He came at three o'clock.
---------------------------	---------------------------

§ 217. Time *how long* is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,

<i>Mansit paucos dies,</i>	He staid a few days,
<i>Sex mensibus abfuit,</i>	He was away six months.

Obs. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In presenti, or in presenti, scil. tempore*; in or *ad præsens*; *Per decem annos*; *Surgunt de nocte*; *ad horam destinatum*; *Intra annum*; *Per idem tempus, ad Kalendas soluturus ait. Suet.* The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, isthuc, ætatis, temporis, horæ, &c.* for *hæc, ætate, hoc tempore, &c.* And *ante* or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti, sc. ante. Siculi quotannis tributa conferrunt, sc. tot annis, quot or quotquot sunt. Cic.*

*Prope diem*, sc. *ad*, soon; *Oppidum paucis diebus*, quibus *eo ventum est*, *expugnatum*, sc. *post eos dies*. Cæs. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accēpi tuas litteras*, for *die tertio ante*. Cic. *Qui dies futūrus esset in ante diem octāvum Kalendas Novembrias*. Id. *Exante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt*, sc. *quā per*. Cic. *Wē find Primum stipendium meruit annōrum decem septemque*, sc. *Atticus*; for *septemdecim annos natus*, seventeen years old. Nep.

Obs. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*, It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante*; as, *Paucos post annos*; but here *ea* or *id* may be understood.

## COMPOUND SENTENCES.

§ 218. A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects and one attribute, or several attributes and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes; that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment, or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must, therefore, be in every sentence or period, as many propositions as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

*Happy is the man who loveth religion, and practiseth virtue.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

§ 219. LVII. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

### Singular.

*Vir qui,*  
*Femina quæ,*  
*Negotium quod,*  
*Ego qui scribo,*  
*Tu qui scribis,*  
*Vir qui scribit,*  
*Mulier quæ scribit,*  
*Animal quod currit,*  
*Vir quem vidi,*  
*Mulier quam vidi,*  
*Animal quod vidi,*  
*Vir cui parei.*

The man who.  
The woman who.  
The thing which.  
I who write.  
Thou who writest.  
The man who writes.  
The woman who writes.  
The animal which runs.  
The man whom I saw.  
The woman whom I saw.  
The animal which I saw.  
The man whom he obeys.

### Plural.

*Viri qui.*  
*Feminae quæ,*  
*Negotia quæ.*  
*Nos qui scribitus.*  
*Vos qui scribitis.*  
*Viri qui scribunt.*  
*Mulieres quæ scribunt.*  
*Animalia quæ currunt.*  
*Viri quos vidi.*  
*Mulieres quas vidi.*  
*Animalia quæ vidi.*  
*Viri quibus parei.*

<i>Vir cui est similis,</i>	The man to whom he is like.	<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.	<i>Vir a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.	<i>Mulieres ad quas.</i>
<i>Vir cujus opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.	<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>
<i>Vir quem misereor,</i>	} The man whom I pity.	
<i>cujus misereor, or misereor,</i>		
<i>cujus me mistret,</i>		
<i>cujus or cuja interest, &amp;c.</i>		whose interest it is, &c.

Rem. 1. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

Rem. 2. But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, usually governs.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

Obs. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

*Vir qui (vir) legi; vir quem (virum) amo:* Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque adrit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat.* Cic. *Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedisti.* Ter. sc. *Eunuchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.* Cæs. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos genus hoc minime juvat, fer sunt homines, quos homines, &c.* Hor.

Obs. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

*Vultus quem dixere chaos.* Ovid. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur.* Sall. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem.* Cic. *Cogito id quod res est.* Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius se affixit, quod mihi est summo dolori,* scil. *Pompeium se affligere.* Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word implied, as, *Scelus qui,* for *sceleratus.* Ter. *Abundantia eorum rerum, quas mortales prima putant,* scil. *negotia.* Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitiae puto, facit ut te moneam,* scil. *negotium.* Ter. *In omni Africa, qui agebant;* for *in omnibus Afria.* Sallust. Jug. 89. *Non diffidentia futuri, quae imperavisset* for *quod.* Ib. 100.

Obs. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio, scarcely facit.* In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man, who make, or maketh.* But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence; thus it is proper to say, "I am the man who takes care of your interest," but if I add, "at the expense of my own," it would be improper. It ought either to be, "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you who gave, who did love," &c. But it is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love;" it should be "who gavest, who didst love." In

no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

*Omnes laudare fortūnas meas, qui habērem gnatum tali ingenio pręditum.* Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur*; i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem, &c.* Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, quę nulla sunt; scil. tempōra.* Cic.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit: Tyrii tenuere colōni*, scil. *quam* or *eam*. Virg. Or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuērunt, Romanos invadunt*: for *quique in priore pugna non adfuērunt*. Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *The letter I wrote*, for *the letter which I wrote*; *The man I love*, to wit, *whom*. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum aliquid agas eōrum, quorum consulisti, for quas consulisti agere, or quorum aliquid agere consulisti.* Cic. *Restitue in quem me accepisti locum, for in locum, in quo.* Ter. And. iv. l. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Liber ejus*, His or her book; *Vita eōrum*, Their life, when applied to men; *Vita eārum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis*, *quantus*, *quotus*, &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sorōrum.* Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitudo, quantam urbs capere potest*: and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas.* Cic.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our father, which art in heaven*; and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which*; as, *That is what he wanted*; that is, *the thing which he wanted*.

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so; not, *which when it was so*, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse?* Who do they say that I am? not *whom*. *Quem dicunt adventare*, Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quę legēris*, I want



to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read; *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you (*actually or in fact*) have read.

Obs. 12. To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

*Quæ vocare? Geta, sc. vocor. Quid quæris? Librum, sc. quaero. Quotid horum venisti? Sextâ. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, Cujus est liber? Meus, not mei. Quanti emptus est? Decem assibus. Damnatusne es furti? Imo alio crimine. Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, Quid agitur? Statur, sc. a me, a nobis. Quis fecit? Nescio: Aiunt Petrum fecisse. Quomodo vales? Bene, malè. Scripsistine? Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo, &c. An vidisti? Non vidi, non, minime, &c. Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? Factum. Et eâ est indûtus? Factum. Ter. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.*

#### THE RELATIVE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

To ascertain when the Relative pronoun should be joined to the Indicative and when to the Subjunctive mode, is one of the greatest difficulties which the Latin language presents to the student of the classics. The following Rules will be found, it is believed, to embrace every thing important upon the subject.

§ 220. Rule 1. When the Relative clause expresses no sentiment of the writer, but refers that sentiment, directly or indirectly, to the persons of whom he is speaking, the Relative must be joined with the Subjunctive mode. Thus: *Quoniam gemini essent, nec ætatis verecundia discrimen facere posset, ut Dii quorum tutelæ ea loca essent, auguriis legerent, qui nomen novæ urbi daret, Liv. 1. 6.* The relative clause expresses a sentiment of the founders of the city, and is much the same as if the historian had said, 'That the gods, under whose protection *they conceived*, those places were,' &c. The following passage will still further illustrate this distinction. "Thus born and thus elected king, he has favoured the meanest sort of mankind, whence he himself is sprung; and the burdens, which were formerly common, he has laid on the principal citizens." These, supposed to be the very words of Tarquin, addressed to the Senators, would be thus rendered, "*Ita natus, ita creatus rex, fautor infimi generis hominum, ex quo EST ipse, omnia onera, quæ communia quondam FUERUNT, in primores civitatis inclinavit.*" But as the historian (Liv. 1. 47.) has not introduced Tarquin as addressing the senate in his own words, but has merely detailed the sentiments which he expressed, the passage reads thus,—the verbs being in the subjunctive mode—*Ita natum, ita creatum regem, fautorem infimi generis hominum, ex quo ipse SIT, onera, quæ communia quondam FUERINT, inclinasse in primores civitatis.* He said, "that being thus born," &c.

§ 221. Rule 2. The Relative pronoun is joined to the Subjunctive mode, when the relative clause expresses *the reason, or cause* of the action, state, or event, and may generally be rendered in English

by the preposition *In*, and the imperfect participle. Thus, 'Hannibal did wrong in wintering at Capua,' that is, 'because he wintered,' *Male fecit, Hannibal, qui Capuæ hiemavit*. If we should say, *Male fecit, qui hiemavit*, we impute error to the person who wintered, but do not express the error as consisting in his wintering.

§ 222. Rule 3. When the Relative pronoun follows an interrogative clause, in which the interrogative is equivalent to an affirmation or negation, the relative is joined with the Subjunctive mode. Thus, *Quis est enim, cui non perspicua sint illa?* Cic. 'Who is there to whom these things are not clear? So also after a negation which expresses an affirmation; as, *nemo est, qui haud intelligat*, 'there is no man who does not understand.' But when a sentence implies a question put for information, the Relative takes the Indicative mode; as, *Quis est qui Æsculapium salutat*, Plaut. *Quis est qui salutet* would signify 'who is there that salutes,' implying 'nobody salutes.' Again, if we say, *Nemo est qui ita existimat*, it strictly means, 'he who thinks so is nobody,' that is, 'a person of no consequence;' here *nemo est* is the predicate, and the relative clause, *qui ita existimat*, the subject. If we say, *nemo est qui ita existimet*, it means, 'there is no one who thinks so,' where *nemo* is the subject, and the other clause the predicate.

§ 223. Rule 4. The Relative is joined to the Subjunctive mode, when, in order to impart greater emphasis, a periphrasis with the verb *Sunt* is employed instead of simply the nominative with the principal verb. Thus, instead of saying, *Nonnulli dicunt*, we say, *Sunt qui dicant*, Cic. 'there are persons who say.' This phraseology is employed to excite the particular attention of the reader, as the word *there* is frequently employed in English. *Fuerint qui censerent*, 'there have been persons who thought.'

§ 224. Rule 5. When *Is qui*, *Ille qui*, *Hic qui*, are used for 'such,' 'that,' or in other words, when *Qui* is used for *Ut ego*, *Ut tu*, *Ut ille*, it is joined with the Subjunctive mode. *Atque illæ dissensiones erant hujus modi, Quirites, quæ... PERTINERENT*. Cic. 'The dissensions were such that,' or 'of that kind that,' &c.

#### THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 225. LVIII. The conjunctions, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple similar cases and modes; as,

*Honōra patrem et matrem,  
Nec legū nec scribū,*

Honour father and mother.  
He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, *quām*, *nisi*, *præterquam*, *an*; and also adverbs of likeness; as, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, *ut*, &c. as,

*Nullum præmium a vobis postūlo, præterquam hujus dīci memoriam*. Cic. *Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur*. Id.

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence, if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together; as,

*Intéress mea et reipublicæ; Constitit asse et pluris; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epiro; Decius cum se devovêret, et in mediam aciem irruêbat.* Cic. *Vir magni ingenii summâque industriâ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis.* Sall. *Tecum habitâ, et nôris, quàm sit tibi curta supellex.* Pers.

Obs. 3. When *et*, *aut*, *vel*, *sive*, or *nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise*; *aut* or *vel*, by *either*; the first *sive*, by *whether*; and the first *nec*, by *neither*; as.

*Et legit, et scribit*; so, *tum legit, tum scribit*; or *cum legit, tum scribit*, He both reads and writes; *Sive legit, sive scribit*, Whether he reads or writes; *Jactare quâ vera, quâ falsa*; *Increpare quâ consules ipsos, quâ exercitum*, To upbraid both the consuls and the army. Liv.

§ 226. LIX. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

*Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti,* . Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valétis, ego et Cicero valémus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well. Cic. In English, the person speaking usually puts himself last; thus, *You and I read*; *Cicero and I are well*; but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first; thus, *Ego et tu legimus*.

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui*; but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenârum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c. Propter summam doctôris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c.* Cic. Where *Athênas* and *urbis* are put for *the learned men* of Athens. So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legâti missi*, i. e. the king and queen. Liv.

Obs. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.* Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different

genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now, the *Genus* or class, which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substantives or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this, the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; this is by the figure called *Zeugma*.

*Et ego et Cicero meus flagiabit.* Cic. *Sociis et rege recepto.* Virg. *Et ego in culpa sum, et tu,* Both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa,* Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmina, desunt;* or, *nihil hic deest nisi carmina.* *Omnia, quibus turbari solita erat civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum;* *Duo milia et quadringenti cæsi.* Liv. This construction is most usual when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est,* Understanding, reason, and prudence, is in old men. *Quibus ipse meique ante Larem proprium vescor, for vescimur.* Horat.

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

*Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt.* Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant.* Ter. *Frons, oculi, vultus sæpe mentiuntur.* Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

§ 227. LX. The conjunctions *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam,* and *dummodo,* are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

*Lego ut discam,*  
*Utinam sapires,*

I read that I may learn.  
I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives, as, *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotuplex, uter*; Pronouns, as, *quis* and *cujus*; Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdiudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quomobrem, dum, utrum, quomodo, quâ, ut quâm, quantopere*; or Conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon*: Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit,* I do not know who it is. *An venturus est?* *Nescio, dubito, an venturus sit.* *Vides ut alta stet nive candidum Soracte?* Hor. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ego,* Plaut. *Haud scio, an amat.* Ter. *Vide avaritia quid facit.* Id. *Vides quam turpe est.* Cic.

§ 228. ¶ In like manner the relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit.* *Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE*; *Neque Antonius procul aberrat, utpote qui sequeretur,* &c. Sall. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the indicative. So, *est qui, sunt qui, est quando* or *ubi,* &c. are joined with the indicative or subjunctive

NOTE. *Haud scio an recte dixerim* is the same with *dico, affirmo.* Cic.

Obs. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but

when a more absolute or determinate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode; as, *If he is to do it; Although he was rich, &c.*

Obs. 3. ETSI, TAMETSI and TAMENETSI, QUANQUAM, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative; but elsewhere they also take the subjunctive; ETIAMSI and QUAMVIS commonly have the subjunctive, and UT, although, always has it; as, *Ut quæras, non reperies.* Cic. QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIDEM, are usually construed with the indicative: SI, SIN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM, QUOD, and QUIA, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. Dum, for *dummodo*, provided, has always the subjunctive; as, *Odérni dum metuant.* Cic. And QUIPPE, for *nam*, always the indicative; as, *Quippe vetor fatis.*

Obs. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former: thus, when *etsi, tametsi, or quamvis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam,—quam; Adeo or ita,—ut*: In English, *As,—as, or so*; as, *Etsi sit liberalis tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius or antè,—quàm*. In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor, censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est*, and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine, fac, or factio*; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem; Nolo mentiâre; Fac cogites.* Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave*; as, *Cave facias.* Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octavo, quam creâtus erat.* Liv. 4, 47, scil. *post*. And so in English, *See you do it; I beg you would come to me*, scil. *that*.

Obs. 6. *Ut* and *quod* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done; as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn; *Gaudeo quod legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adeo, ita, sic, tam, talis, tantus, tot, &c.*

Obs. 7. After the verbs *timeo, vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as,

*Timeo ne faciat*, I fear he will do it; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas.* Ter. *Ut sis vitalis, metuo.* Hor. *Ti meo ut frater vivat*, will not live;—*ne frater moriâtur*, will die. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

§ 229. LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative, (when *Quam* is omitted); as,

*Dulcior melle*, sweeter than honey. *Præstantior auro*, better than gold.

Obs. 1. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce.* Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior præ cæteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *immanior ante omnes*. Virg.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quàm*, and then, instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

*Dulcior quàm mel*, scil. *est*. *Amo te magis quàm illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quàm amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quàm ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quàm ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quàm illa*, sc. *ab*

Obs. 3. The conjunction *quàm* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus*; as,

*Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti*, scil. *quàm*. Cæs. *Plus quingentos colâphos infrigit mihi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows. Ter. *Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locant*, sc. *quàm*. Liv.

§ 230. *Quàm* is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as

*Triumphus clarior quàm gratior*, Liv. Or the prep. *pro* is added; as, *Prælium atrocius, quàm pro numëro pugnantium editur*. Liv.

§ 231. The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opiniône*, *spe*, *æquo*, *justo*, *dicto*; as,

*Credibili opiniône major*. Cic. *Credibili fortior*. Ovid. Fast. iii. 618. *Gravius æquo*. Sall. *Dicto citius*. Virg.

Remark. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivèbat*, sc. *justo*, too freely. Nep.

§ 232. *Nihil* is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli*, as,

*Nihil vidi quidquam lætius*, for *neminem*. Ter. *Crasso nihil perfectius* Cic. *Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum*. So, *quid nobis laboriosius*, for *quis*, &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nullà re*, or *quàm pater*. The comparative is sometimes repeated, or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque, plus plusque, minus minusque, carior cariorque*; *Quotidie plus, indies magis, semper candidior candidiorque*, &c.

Obs. 4. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quàm ego*, He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit*. *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc*. Ter.

Obs. 5. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (or more shortly, the difference of measure is put in the ablative;) as,

*Est decem digitis altior quàm frater*, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. *Aliëro tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, He is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquipède minor*, a foot and a half less; *Aliëro tanto, aut sesquimajor*, as big again, or a half bigger. Cic. *Ter tanto pejor est*; *Bin tanto amici sunt inter se, quàm prius*. Plaut.

Obs. 6. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio*, &c.; thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*,

The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit.* Ovid. *Fest.* ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus.* Sall. *Multoque id maximum fuit.* Liv.

## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 233. LXII. A Substantive and a Participle are put in the Ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

<i>Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ,</i>	{	The sun rising, or while the sun riseth, darkness
<i>Opère peracto, ludemus,</i>		Our work being finished, or when our work is
		flies away.
		finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus; Nihil amicitia præstabilius est, excepta virtute; Oppressa libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus amplius; Nobilium vitâ victique mutato, mores mutari civitatum pulo.* Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam inituris, et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante, ac ab auguribus, simul aves ritè admississent, ex composito tolleretur signum.* Liv. *Bellice, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastâ, Mars ades.* Ovid. *Fast.* iii. 1.

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place; the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt.* The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered.* 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered.* 3. *By conquering the enemy.* 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.*

§ 234. Though an independent substantive, joined to a participle, be generally put in the ablative in Latin, it is sometimes with peculiar elegance and precision, put under the government of the verb in the succeeding clause. Thus, 'Having taken Regulus prisoner, they send him to Carthage.' *Regulum captum Carthaginem miserunt.* Here *Regulum* is governed by *miserunt*. There are not wanting examples, however, to justify another phraseology, namely, *Regulo capto, eum Carthaginem miserunt.* But the latter form of expression is much less precise, for it does not so clearly signify that the person taken was the person sent; as the pronoun *eum* might refer to some other person.

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc consedit,* never, *his locutis.* The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt;* or *Romani, libertate adeptâ, floruerunt.* But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore rarely find them used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce*, scil. *existente*. *His consulibus*, scil. *existentibus*. *Invitâ Minervâ*, sc. *existente*, against the grain; *Crassâ Minervâ*, without learning. Hor. *Magistrâ ac duce naturâ*; *visis fratribus*; *te hortatôre*; *Cæsare impulsôre*, &c. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent*, i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset*. Liv. *Tum demum palam facto*, sc. *negotio*. Id. *Excepto quodd non simul esset, cætëra lætus*. Hor. *Parto quod avēbas*. Id. In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell. Ovid.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis presente*. Plaut. *Absente nobis*. Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *me duce, ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*. Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Lætos fecit se consiile fastos*. Lucan. v. 364. *Populo spectante fieri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam*. Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis juvantibus*. Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciōsa libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas naturâ accusatur*. Sall. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat*. *Opère peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum*, or *Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle, in English, independent of the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.



## II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

---

A **FIGURE** is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The Figures of Syntax may be reduced to four kinds, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, *Enallage*, and *Hyperbaton*.

### 1. ELLIPSIS.

§ 235. **ELLIPSIS** is the omission of some word or words necessary to complete the regular Syntax. When the word to be supplied is not to be found in any part of the sentence, the Ellipsis is termed *strict*. It affects all the parts of speech; thus,

2. 1. The Noun; as, *Aiunt*, supply *homines*. 2. The Adjective; as, *Non est oneri ferendo*, supply *aptus*. 3. The Pronoun; as, *Studendum est*, supply *mihi*. 4. The Verb; as, *Quid multa*, supply *dicam*. 5. The Participle; as, *Saturno rege*, supply *ente* or *existente*. 6. The Adverb; as, *Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti*, Cæs. supply *quàm*. 7. The Interjection; as, *Me miserum*, supply *O* or *heu*. 8. The Conjunction; as will be seen under *Asyndeton*.

3. The Ellipsis is termed *lax* or *loose* when the word omitted may be supplied from some part of the sentence; as, *Virtus* (cogebat) *et honestas*, (cogebat) *et pudor cum consulibus esse cogebat*. Cic. Under *strict* Ellipsis are contained the figures, *Apposition*, *Synecdoche* and *Asyndeton*. Under *loose* Ellipsis, the figures *Zeugma*, *Syllipsis* and *Prolipsis*.

4. **APPPOSITION** is, when, in putting two substantives together in the same case, *existens*, or the obsolete *ens*, or some other part of the verb *Sum* with a relative, is understood: as, *Urbs Roma*, i. e. *urbs existens* or *ens*, or *quæ est Roma*.

5. **SYNECDOCHE** is, when, instead of an Ablative of the part, or of the adjunct, an Accusative is used, the Greek *κατά*, *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad*, being understood: as, *Expleri* (quod attinet ad, or secundum) *mentem nequit*. Virg.

6. **ASYNDETON** is the omission of a conjunction: as, *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit*, Cic. scil. *et*.

7. **ZEUGMA** is, when an Adjective or Verb referring to different substantives, is expressed to the last only, with which it agrees, being understood to the rest: as, *Et genus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vilior alqd est.* Hor.

8. **SYLLEPSIS** is, when the adjective or verb, joined to different substantives, agrees with the more worthy. In *gender* the Masculine is the more worthy: as, *Ut templi tetigere gradus, procumbit uterque pronus, humi*, Ovid. i. e. *Deucalion et Pyrrha*. In *person* the First is the more worthy: as, *Sustulimus manus et ego et Balbus*, Cic.

9. **PROLEPSIS** is, when the parts, differing in number or in person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or the adjective not being repeated; as, *Boni quoniam convenimus ambo, tu calamos inflare leves, ego dicere versus*, Virg. i. e. *tu convenisti bonus calamos inflare, ego conveni*, &c.

## 2. PLEONASM.

§ 236. **PLEONASM** adds unnecessary words; as, *Video oculis*, 'I see with my eyes;' *Sic ore locuta est*, Virg. 'Thus she spoke with her mouth.' Under Pleonasm are comprehended, *Parcelon*, *Polysyndeton*, *Hendiadys*, and *Periphrasis*.

2. **PARCELON** is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle, to Pronouns, Verbs, and Adverbs, chiefly, perhaps, for the sake of emphasis: as, *egomet, agedum, fortassean*.

3. **POLYSYNDETON**, is a redundancy of conjunctions: as, *Und, Eurisque Notusque ruunt, creberque procellis*, Virg.

4. **HENDIADYS** expresses one thing as if it were two: as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, Virg. for *aureis pateris*.

5. **PERIPHRAISIS** is, when several words are used to express one thing: as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*. *Teneri fœtus ovium*, for *agni*.

6. *Quod si* often occurs at the beginning of a period for *Si*. In such cases, however, *quod* seems to refer to what precedes, to confirm the connexion and to promote perspicuity: it cannot, therefore, be strictly redundant. It is an accusative with *propter* or *ad* or *quod attinet ad* understood, and may often be translated 'thence,' 'because.'

## 3. ENALLAGE.

§ 237. **ENALLAGE**, in a general sense, is the change of words, or of their accidents, one for another. There are various kinds of it: viz. *Antimeria*, *Enallage* (strictly so called,) *Heterosis*, and *Antiptosis*. To *Enallage* may likewise be referred *Synësis*, *Anacoluthon*, *Hellenismus*, and *Archaismus*.

2. **ANTIMERIA** puts one part of speech for another: as, the noun for the pronoun; *Si quid in Flacco viri est*, Hor. for *in me*, as Horace is speaking of himself.

3. **ENALLAGE** (strictly so named) is when one word is substituted for another, the part of speech not being changed; as Noun for Noun, Verb for Verb, &c.: thus, the Noun substantive for the Noun adjective; *Exercitus victor*, for *victoriosus*.

4. **HETEROSIS** uses one Accident, especially of a noun, pronoun, or verb, for another: as, *nos*, *nobis*, *noster*, for *ego*, *mihi*, *meus*.

5. **ANTIPTOSIS** uses one case for another: as the Nominative for the Accusative: *Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis*, Hor. for *te esse uxorem*.

6. **SYNESIS** is when the construction refers to the sense, rather than to the precise nature of a word: as, *Clamor populi, mirantium quid rei est*, Liv. for *mirantis*.

7. **ANACOLUTHON** is when the Consequents do not agree with the Antecedents: as, *Nan nos omnes . . . . lucro est*, Ter. in which the author began as if he intended to say *lucro habemus*, and ended as if he had said *nobis omnibus*. As the sentence is, there is no verb to which *nos omnes* is a nominative.

8. **HELLENISMUS**, or **GRÆCISMUS**, is in imitation of Greek construction; thus, *abstine irarum*, Hor. for *ab ira*.

9. **ARCHAISM** is when an obsolete construction is used. Many examples of this figure will be found in the first book of Livy: e. g. the formulas of the heralds in declaring war.

#### 4. HYPERBATON.

§ 238. **HYPERBATON** is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words, which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are *Anastrophe*, *Hysteron protëron*, *Hypallage*, *Synchësis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthësis*.

1. **ANASTROPHE** is an inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra*; *His accensa super*; *Spemque metumque inter dubii*; for *contra Italiam*, *super his*, *inter spem*, &c. Virg. *Terram sol facit are*, for *are-facit*. Lucret.

2. **HYSTERON PROTERON** is the placing in the former part of the sentence that which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet*. Ter.

3. **HYPALLAGE** is an exchanging of cases; as, *Dare classibus austros*, for *dare classes austris*. Virg.

4. **SYNCHESIS** is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras*; for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*. Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruorem*. Ovid. Fast. ii. 841.

5. **TMESIS** is the division of a compound word, and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjecta triôni gens*, for

*Septentrioni.* Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere, for quæcunque.* Ter. *Quem sors diærum cunque dabit.* Horat.

6. PARENTHESIS is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction; as, *Titire, dum redeo, (brevis est via,) pasce capellas.* Virg.

### § 239. III. ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words, which takes place in the two languages.

1. In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each instance the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes, indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd.* Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you.* But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given is to *imitate the CLASSICS.*

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorial*.

2. The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of Syntax.

*Artificial* or *Oratorial* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking or most agreeable to the ear.

3. All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order, therefore, to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis*, or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next* the nominative, together

with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence; supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

*Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere.* Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; 1. *Igitur, mi, (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale:* 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipse) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mihi:* 3. *sed (tu) persuade tibi ipsi te fore (filium) cariorem (mihi in) multo (negotio):* 4. *si (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis:* 5. *et (si tu lætabere talibus) præceptis.*

1. Fare (you) well then my (son) Cicero: 2. and assure (you) yourself that you are indeed (a son) very dear to me: 3. but (assure you yourself that you) shall be (a son) much dearer (to me): 4. if you shall take delight in such writings: 5. and (if you shall take delight in such) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis*, as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igitur*, &c. thus,

*Vale*, scil. *tu*; Fare (thou) well: second person singular of the imperative mode, active voice, from the neuter verb, *valeo, valere, valui, valitūrus*, to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

*Igitur*, then, therefore; a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

*Mi*, voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um*, my; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 2. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero, -onis*, a proper noun of the third declension.

*Et*, and; a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 59. We turn *que* into *et*, because *que* never stands by itself.

*Persuade*, scil. *tu*, persuade thou; second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo, -dere, -si, -sum*, to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *suadeo, -si, -sus*, to advise; used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say, however, in the third person, *Hoc persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

*Tibi*, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuade*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

*Esse*, present of infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum, esse, fui*, to be.

*Quidem*, indeed; an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

*Carissimum*, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus, -a, -um*, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus, -a, -um*, dear: Comparative degree, *carior, carius*, dearer, more dear; agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

*Mihi*, to me; dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I; governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 12.

*Sed*, but; an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

*Fore*, the same with *esse futurum*, to be, or to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *forem*, -res, -ret, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 4. or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 59.

*Multo*, scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, -a, -um, much, put in the ablative, according to Observation 5. Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

*Cariorem*, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, -us, the comparative of *carus*, as before : agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2 or Rule 5.

*Si*, if; a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60. Obs. 2.

*Lætâre*, thou shalt rejoice; second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *lætor*, *lætatus*, *lætâri*, to rejoice. Future, *læt-âber*, -âberis or -âbere, -âbitur, &c.

*Talibus*, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis*, *tale*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum*, -ti, neut. a monument or writing; of the second declension; derived from *moneo*, -ere, -ui, -itum, to admonish; here put in the ablative according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

*Præceptis*, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum*, -ti, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio*, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *capio*, *capere*, *cēpi*, *captum*, to take. The *æ* of the simple is changed into *i* short; thus, *præcipio*, *præcipis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and, in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflection of nouns and verbs in the form of questions, such as these, of Cicero? *Cicerōnis*. With Cicero? *Cicerōne*. A dear son? *Carus filius*. Of a dear son? *Cari filii*. O my dear son? *Mi* or *meus care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariōrum filiorum*, &c.

Of thee? or of you? *Tui*. With thee or you? *Te*. Of you? *Vestrūm* or *vestri*. With you? *Vobis*.

They shall persuade? *Persuadēbunt*. I can persuade? *Persuadeam*, or much more frequently *possum persuadere*. They are persuaded? *Persuadētur* or *persuāsum est illis*; according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus*. He will be persuaded? *Persuadebitur*, or *persuāsum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi*. That he will be persuaded. *Ei persuāsum iri*.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

## § 240. IV. DIFFERENT KINDS OF STYLE.

1. The kinds of Style (*genera dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue*;) the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum*;) and the sublime, (*sublime, grande*.)

2. But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

3. There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects, and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular Assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

4. There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner*; as, the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

5. But what deserves particular attention is, the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

6. The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity; or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new-coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words, or a *loose style*.

7. The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity*: 2. *Unity* and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected, intricate* and *feeble* sentence: 3. *Harmony*, or a musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names:

§ 241. 1. A **BARBARISM** is the using of a foreign or strange word: as, *crostus*, for *agellus*; *rigorösus*, for *rigidus* or *severus*; *alteräre*, for *mutäre*, &c. Or, a transgression of the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody; as, *charus*, for *carus*; *stavi*, for *steti*; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A **SOLECISM** is a transgression of the rules of Syntax; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri*: *We was walking*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An **IDIOTISM** is the using of a manner of expression peculiar to one language in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, *I am to write*, *Ego sum scribere*, for *ego sum scripturus*; *It is I*, *Est ego* for

*Ego sum*: Or a *Latinism* in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, for *than I*; *Quem dicunt me esse*? Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

4. **TAUTOLOGY** is a useless repetition of the same words, or of the same sense in different words

5. **BOMBAST** is the using of high sounding words without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. **AMPHIBOLÖGY** is when, by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses: as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse*. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

## § 242. V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figuræ* or *schemata*) are of two kinds: figures of words (*figuræ verborum*,) and figures of thought (*figuræ sententiarum*.) The former are properly called *Tropes*; and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

### 1. TROPEs, OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

§ 243. A *Trope* (*conversio*) is an elegant *turning* of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metäphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdöche*, and *Iröny*.

1. **METAPHOR** (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart: a *soft* temper: he *bridles* his anger: a *joyful* crop: *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say, *the morning* or *spring-time of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an **ALLEGORY**. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

2. An **ALLEGORY** is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of *Æsop*. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*Proverbia* or *Adagia*;) thus, *In sylvam ligna ferre*. Horat.



**Metaphors** are improper when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, the figure is called *Calachrēsis* (*abusio*;) as, a leaf of paper, of gold, &c.; the empire flourished; *parricida*, for any murderer. Vir *gregis ipse caper*. Virg. *Altum edificat caput*. Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*. Ter. *Eurus per Sicūlas equitavit undas*. Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is said to be done by *Syllepsis*, (*comprehensio*;) as, *Galathea thymo mihi dulcior Hybla*. Virg. *Ego Sardois videar tibi amarior herbis*. Id.

3. **METONYMY** (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes: but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars:—

4. When the cause is put for the effect: or the author for his works: as, *Bonum labores*, for corn; *Mars*, for war; *Ceres*, for grain or bread; *Bacchus*, for wine. Virg. Cicero, Virgil and Horace, for their works.

5. When the effect is put for the cause: as, *Pallida mors*, pale death, because it makes pale: *atra cura*, &c.

6. The container for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary; as, *Hausit patēram*, for *vinum*. Virg. He loves his bottle, for his drink. So, Heaven for the Supreme Being.

7. The sign for the thing signified: as, The crown, for royal authority; *palma* or *laurus*, for victory; *Cedant arma togæ*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concedat paci*. So, *ferri togæque*.

8. An abstract for the concrete: as, *Scelus*, for *scelestus*. Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*. Cic. *Vires*, for *strong men*. Hor.

9. The parts of the body for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them: thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address*; as, *habet cor*; *vir cordatus*, a man of sense. Plaut. But with us the heart is put for courage or affection, and the head for wisdom: thus, a stout heart, a warm heart.

10. When we put what follows to express what goes before, or the contrary, this form of expression is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio*;) thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead, lost, or absent*: So, *Fuimus Troes & ingens gloria Dardania*, i. e. are no more. Virg. *Æn.* ii. 325.

§ 244. **SYNECDOCHE** (*comprehensio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense: as,

1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary: thus, *Mortales*, for *homines*; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arboris*; *tectum*, the roof, for the whole house. Virg.

2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary: thus, *Hos-tis, miles, pedes, eques*, for *hostes*, &c.

3. When the materials are put for the things made of them: as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money; *æra*, for vases of brass, trumpets, arms, &c.; *ferrum*, for a sword.

4. When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, the figure is called *Antonomasia* (*pronomination*;) as, the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle*; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero*; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil*; the *Wise man*, for *Solomon*.

5. An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrasis*; as, *Pelōpis parens*, for *Tantālus*; *Anīti reus*, for *Socrātes*; *Trojāni belli scriptor*, for *Homērus*; *Chirōnis alumnus*, for *Achilles*; *Potor Rhodāni*, for *Gallus*. Hor. sometimes with the noun added; as, *Fatālis et incestus judex, famōsus hospes*, for *Paris*. Hor.

6. *IRONY* is when one means the contrary of what is said: as, when we say of a bad poet, *He is a Virgil*; or of a profligate person, *Tertius e cælo cecidit Cato*.

7. When any thing is said by way of bitter raillery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a *SARCASM*; as, *Satia te sanguine, Cyre*. Justin. *Hesperiam metire jacens*. Virg.

8. When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called *LITOTES*: as, *He is no fool*, for *he is a man of sense*; *Non humilis mulier*, for *nobilis* or *superba*.

9. When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, this contrariety is called *ANTIPHRAISIS*: as, *auri sacra fames*, for *execrabilis*. Virg. *Pontus Euxini falso nomine dictus*, i. e. *hospitālis*. Ovid.

10. When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, the figure is called *EUPHEMISMUS*; as, *Vitā functus*, for *mortuus*; *conclamāre suos*, to give up for lost. Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant*; *mactāre* or *ferire*, for *occidere*; *Fecerunt id servi Milōnis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*. Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrasis*.

The *PERIPHRAISIS*, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another: or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions: or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When, after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, the figure is called a *Paraphrase*.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, this imitation is called *Onomatopœia*, (*nominis fictio*;) as, the *whistling* of

winds, *purling* of streams, *buzz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know, in general, that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These, therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of *old Falernian wine*: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion. Horat. These, and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

## § 245. 2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names, according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

1. When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called ANAPHORA; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, &c.* Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in littore secum, Te veniente die, te decedente canebat.* Virg.

2. When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called EPISTROPHE, or *Conversio*; as, *Pænos Populus Romanus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, libertate vicit.* Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called SYMPLOCE, or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis, &c. Rullus.* Cic.

3. When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called EPANALEPSIS; as, *Vidimus victoriam tuam præliorum exitu terminatum; gladium vaginâ vacuum in urbe non vidimus.* Cic. pro Marcello.

4. The reverse of the former is called ANADIPLOSIS, or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit! imo in senatum venit.* Cic.

5. When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called EPANODOS, or *Regressio*; as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; Crudelis mater magis an puer improbus ille? Improbus ille puer crudelis tu quoque mater.* Virg.

6. The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence is called EPIZEUXIS; as, *Excitâte, excitâte eum ab inferis.* Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus, &c.* Id. *Me, me, adsum qui feci, in me convertite ferrum.* Virg. *Bella, horrida bella.* Id. *Ibitus, ibitus.* Hor.

7. When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called CLIMAX, or *Gradatio*; as, *Africâno virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria æmûlos comparavit.* Cic.

8. When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called **POLYPTOTON**; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plena sapientum voces, plena exemplorum vetustas*. Cic. *Littora littoribus contraria, fluctibus undas impræcor, arma armis*. Virg.

9. To this is usually referred what is called **SYNONYMIA**, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non paties, non steam*. Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo*. Id. And also **EXPOSITIO**, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

10. When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called **ANTANACLASIS**; as, *Amari jucundum est, si curatur ne quid insit amari*. Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the **PARONOMASIA**, or **Agnominatio**, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium; Consul pravo animo and parvo: de oratore arator factus*. Cic. *Amanes sunt amentes*. Ter. This is also called a **PUN**.

11. When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called **HOMOIOTOTON**, i. e. *similiter cadens*, as, *Pollet auctoritate, circumfluit opibus, abundat amicis*. Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called **HOMOIOTELEUTON**, i. e. *similiter desinens*; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, and vivere turpiter*. Cic.

### § 246. 3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes.—The principal are the *Hyperbole*, *Prosopopæia*, *Apostrophe*, *Simile*, *Antithesis*, &c.

1. **HYPERBÖLE** is the magnifying of a thing above the truth; as, when Virgil, speaking of *Polyphêmus*, says, *Ipse arduus, altaque pulsat sidera*. So, *Contracta pisces æquora sentiunt*. Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinôsis*. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast*.

2. **PROSOPOPŒIA**, or *Personification*, is a figure by which we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum. Catilina, sic agit, &c.* Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures*. Hor. *Arbore nunc aquas culpante*. Id.

3. **APOSTRÖPHE**, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it: as, *Trojæque nunc stares, Priamique ars alta maneres*. Virg.

4. **SIMILE**, or *Comparison*, is a figure by which one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another: as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion*.

5. **ANTITHESIS**, or *Opposition*, is a figure by which things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the most striking

light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious. Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentiâ magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato, &c. Sall. Cat. 54. Ex hac parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia. Cic.*

6. INTERROGATION, (Græc. *Erotêsis*,) is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form: as, *Quousque tandem, &c. Cic. Creditis avectos hostes? Virg. Heu! quæ me æquora possunt decipere. Id.* Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio*; as, *Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus? minime. Cic.* Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION (*Ecphonêsis*) is a sudden expression of some passion or emotion; as, *O nomen dulce libertatis, &c. Cic. O tempora, O mores! Id. O patria! O Divûm domus Ilîum! &c. Virg.*

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotypôsis*) is the painting of any thing in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision*; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem videre, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. Videre magnos jam videor duces, Non indecôro pulvère sordidos. Hor.* Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. *Virg. xi. 637, &c.*

9. EMPHASIS is a particular stress of voice laid on some word in a sentence; as, *Hannibal peto pacem. Liv. Proh! Jupiter ibit hic! i. e. Æneas. Virg.*

10. EPANORTHOSIS, or *Correction*, is the recalling or correcting by the speaker of what he last said; as, *Filium habui, ah! quid dixi habere me? imò habui. Ter.*

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is the pretending to omit, or pass by, what one at the same time declares.

12. APARITHMESIS, or *Enumeration*, is the branching out into several parts of what might be expressed in fewer words.

13. SYNATHEOSISMUS, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

Fæces in castra tulissem,  
Implèssemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque  
Cum genere extinxèm, memet super ipsa dedissem. *Virg.*

14. *Incrementum*, or CLIMAX in sense, is the rising of one member above another to the highest; as, *Factus est vincere civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare. Cic.*

When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called *AUXESIS*, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. **TRANSITION** (*Metabasis*) is an abrupt introduction of a speech ; or the passing of a writer suddenly from one subject to another ; as, Hor. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, a *change of person* is sometimes used ; as, Virg. Æn. iv. 365, &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. **SUSPENSIO**, or *Sustentatio*, is the keeping of the mind of the hearer long in suspense ; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. **CONCESSIO** is the yielding of one thing to obtain another ; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilègus, &c. at est bonus imperator*. Cic. in Verrem, v. 1.

18. **PROLEPSIS**, *Prevention or Anticipation*, is the starting and answering of an objection.

19. **ANACOINOSIS**, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers ; which is also called *Diaporësis* or *Addubitatio*.

20. **LICENTIA**, or the pretending to assume more *freedom* than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering ; as, *Vide quam non reformidem, &c.* Cic. pro Ligario.

21. **APOSIOPESIS**, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete ; as, *Quos ego — sed præstat motos componere fluctus*. Virg.

22. **SENTENTIA** (*Gnome*) a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms ; as, *Otium sine litèris mors est*. Seneca. *Aded in tenèris assuescere multum est*. Virg. *Probitas laudatur et alget ; Misera est magni custodia census ; Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus*. Juv.

23. As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper for the learner to know the parts into which a regular, formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium*, or *Proæmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers : 2. The *Narration* or *Explication* : 3. The argumentative part, which includes *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation*, or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn are called *Loci*, 'topics;' and are either intrinsic or extrinsic : common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

## PROSODY.

---

§ 1. *Prosody* is that part of grammar which teaches the proper *accent* and *quantity* of syllables, the right *pronunciation* of words, and the measures of verse.

§ 2. *Accent* is a particular stress of the voice upon certain syllables of words.

§ 3. The *quantity* of a syllable is the space of time used in pronouncing it.

§ 4. Syllables, with respect to their *quantity*, are either *long*, *short*, or *common*.

§ 5. A *long* syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a *short* one; as, *tēdērē*.

§ 6. A syllable that is sometimes long, and sometimes short, is *common*; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

§ 7. A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

§ 8. In polysyllables, or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*; and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*, or *Antepenult*.

§ 9. When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*; that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lēgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

§ 10. In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgi*; *rellēgo*, *-lēre*; *rellēgo*, *-āre*, &c.

### RULES FOR THE QUANTITY.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

## GENERAL RULES.

§ 11. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *Mēus, alius*: so *nihil*; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crēate, bēhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fio, fiēbam, &c.* unless when followed by *e* and *r*; as, *fiēri, fiērem*; thus,

*Omnia jam fient, fiēri quæ posse negābam. Ovid.*

Exc. 2. *E*, having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long: as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer, diūs, ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi, terrāi, &c.* in *Pompēi, Cāi*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompēi* in two syllables. Hor. Od. ii. 7. 5.

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *ohē* and *Diāna* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius, unius, ullius, nullius, &c.* to be read long in prose. *Alius*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *alius*; *alterius*, short.

§ 12. In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Rem. 1. Sometimes it is short; as, *Danāe, Idēa, Sophīa, Symphonīa, Simōis, Hādēs, Phāon, Deucaliōn, Pygmalīon, Thebāis, &c.*

Rem. 2. Often it is long; as, *Lycāon, Machāon, Didymāon; Amphion, Arion, Ixion, Pandion; Nāis, Lāis, Achāia; Brisēis, Cadmēis; Latōus and Latōis, Myrtōus, Nerēius, Priamēius; Achelōius, Minōius; Archelāus, Menelāus, Amphiarāus; Ānēas, Penēus, Epēus, Acrisionēus, Adamantēus, Phœbēus, Gigantēus; Darius, Bāsius, Eugenius, Bacchius; Cassiopēa, Caesarēa, Chæronēa, Cytherēa, Galatēa, Laodicēa, Medēa, Panthēa, Penelopēa; Clīo, Enyō, Elegia, Iphigenia, Alexandria, Thalia, Antiochia, idolatria, litania, politia, &c. Lāertes, Deiphōbus, Deīanira, Trōes, herōes, &c.*

Rem. 3. Sometimes it is common; as, *Chorea, Platea, Malea, Nereides, canopeum, Orion, Geryon, Eos, eūs, &c.* So in Foreign words, *Michael, Israel, Raphael, Abraham, &c.*

Rem. 4. The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphēa, Salmonēa, Capharēa, &c.* but sometimes long; as, *Idomenēa, Iliuntēa*. Virg. Instead of *Elegia, Cytherēa*, we find *Elegēta, Cythērēta*. Ovid. But the quantity of Greek words cannot properly be understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *science, idēa*.

§ 13. A vowel before two consonants, or before the double consonants *j, x, z*, is long (by position, as it is called;) as, *ārma, fallo, āxis, gāza, māior*;\* the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bijūgus, quadriūgus, &c.*

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

*Ferte citi flammas, date telā, scandite muros. Virg.*

\* In reality, in such cases *j* is a vowel, and with the preceding vowel constitutes a diphthong, as, *māioribus*. In the same manner arises the quantity of such words as *ejus, pējus*, which, according to Priscian, the ancients write *ējus, pētus*.



Obs. 1. A vowel naturally short, when followed by *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, *st*, (with or without the addition of a third consonant, as *SCRIPTA*.) may either remain short, or be made long at the poet's option.

§ 14. A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as the middle syllable in *volucris*, *tenebræ*; thus,

Et primò similis volūcri, mox vera volūcri. *Ovid.*  
Nox tenēbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras. *Id.*

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro*, *pharetra*, *podagra*, *chiragra*, *celebris*, *latebræ*, &c.

Obs. 1. To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. 1. The vowel must be naturally short; 2. the mute must go before the liquid; and, 3. be in the same syllable with it. Thus *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris*, *acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūdris*, *ambulācrum*, is always long; because they are derived from *salus*, *salūtis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte*, *abluo*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

Obs. 2. *L* and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

§ 15. A contracted syllable is long; as,

*Nīl*, for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mihi*; *cōgo*, for *coāgo*; *alius*, for *alius*; *tībīcen*, for *tibiicen*; *īt*, for *iit*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bīgæ*, for *bijūgæ*; *scīlicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

§ 16. A diphthong is always long; as,

*Aurum*, *Cæsar*, *Eubæa*, &c. 2. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire*, *præustus*; thus,

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præeunte carinâ. *Virg. Æ.* 5, 186.  
Sûpīitbus duris agitur sudibusque præustis. *Id.* 7, 524.

3. But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

—cûm vacuus domîno præiret Arîon. *Theb.* 6, 519.

§ 17. A diphthong is once short in a line of Virgil, out of composition: thus, *Insulæ* Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. This seems to be in imitation of Greek Hexameter.

## SPECIAL RULES.

### I. FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

*Perfects and Supines of two Syllables.*

§ 18. Perfects of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vēni*, *vīdi*, *vīci*.

Exc. Except *bībi*, *scīdi* from *scindo*, *fīdi* from *findo*, *tūli*, *dēdi*, and *stēti*, which are shortened.

§ 19. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *visum, cāsum, mōtum*.

Exc. Except *sātum*, from *sēro*; *cītum*, from *cīeo*; *lītum*, from *līno*; *sītum*, from *sīno*; *stātum*, from *sisto*; *ūtum*, from *eo*; *dātum*, from *do*; *rūtum*, from the compounds of *ruo*; *quītum*, from *queo*; *rātus*, from *reor*.

*Preterites which double the first Syllable.*

§ 20. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as,

*Cēcidi, tētigi, pēpūli, pēpēri, didīci, tūtūdi*; except *cēcidi*, from *cædo*; *pēpēdi*, from *pēdo*: and when two consonants intervene; as, *fēfelli, tētendi, pēpendi, mēmordi*, &c.

Exc. The following are short in the first syllable, although coming from long presents; *pōsui, pōsitum*, from *pōno*; *gēnui, gēnitum*, from *gigno*; *pōtui* from *possum*; *sōlutum* from *solvo*, and *vōlutum* from *volvo*.

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

§ 21. A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex, rēgis*; *sermo, sermōnis*; *interpres, interprētis*. Here *re, mo, pre*, is each called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a *crement*.

1. Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter, itinēris*; *anceps, ancīpitis*.

2. A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener, genēri, genērōrum*.

3. Except nouns of the *first, fourth, and fifth* declensions, which do not increase in the singular number, unless when one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus, fructūi*; *res, rēi*; and falls under Rule I. In the plural, however, they increase, and follow the Rule under § 38.

§ 22. Increments of the Second Declension are short; as, *tener, tenēri*; *satur, satūri*; *vir, vīri*; *puer, puēri*. Exceptions. *Iber, Ibēri*, and its compound, *Celtiber, Celtibēri*, lengthen the penult.

INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 23. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i, and u* short: as,

*Pietātis, honōris*; *mulieris, lapidis, murmuris*.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive of the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

## A.

§ 24. Nouns in A shorten *ātis*, in the genitive; as, *dogma*, -*ātis*; *poēma*, -*ātis*.

## O.

§ 25. 1. O shortens *īnis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis*; as, *Cardo*, -*īnis*; *Virgo*, -*īnis*; *Anio*, *ēnis*; *Cicero*, -*ōnis*.

2. Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macēdo*, -*ōnis*; *Saxo*, -*ōnis*. So, *Lingōnes*, *Senōnes*, *Teulōnes*, *Vanglōnes*, *Vascōnes*. Some are long; as, *Suessiōnes*, *Eburōnes*, *Vetlōnes*. *Brittones* is common; it is shortened by Juvenal, and lengthened by Martial.

## I. C. D. L.

§ 26. 1. I shortens *itis*; as, *Hydromēli*, -*itis*.

2. *Ec* lengthens *ecis*; as, *Halec*, -*icis*.

3. Nouns in D shorten the crement; as, *David*, -*idis*; *Bogud*, -*ūdis*. In sacred poetry the penultimate of *David* is often lengthened.

4. Masculines in AL shorten *alis*; as, *Sal*, *sālis*; *Hannibal*, -*ālis*; *Hasdrūbal*, -*ālis*; but neuters lengthen it; as, *animal*, -*ālis*.

5. *Sōlis* from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael*, -*ālis*. Other nouns in L shorten the crement; as, *Vigil*, -*ilis*; *consul*, -*ūlis*.

## N.

§ 27. 1. Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon*, -*ōnis*; *Chiron*, -*ōnis*. Some shorten it; as, *Memnon*, -*ōnis*; *Actæon*, -*ōnis*.

2. EN shortens *inis*; as, *flumen*, -*inis*; *tibicen*, -*inis*.

3. Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. \*AN *ānis*; as, *Titan*, -*ānis*; EN *ēnis*; as, *Siren*, -*ēnis*; IN *īnis*; as, *Delphin*, -*īnis*; YN *ynis*; as, *Phorcyn*, -*ynis*.

## R.

§ 28. 1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar*, -*aris*. Except the following; *bacchar*, -*aris*; *jubar*, -*aris*; *hepar*, -*ātis*; *nectar*, -*aris*: Also the adjective *par pāris*, and its compounds, *impar*, -*aris*, *dispar*, -*aris*, &c.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive; *Nar*, *Nāris*, the name of a river; *fur*, *fūris*; *ver*, *vēris*: Also *Recimer*, -*aris*; *Byzer*, -*aris*, proper names; and *Ser*, *Sēris*; *Iber*, -*ēris*, as well as *Iher*, *Ibēri*, of the second declension.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater*, -*ēris*; *character*, -*ēris*. Except *æther*, -*ēris*.

4. OR lengthens *oris*; as, *amor*, -*ōris*. Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor*, -*ōris*; *æquor*, -*ōris*: Greek nouns in *tor*; as, *Hector*, -*ōris*; *Actor*, -*ōris*; *rhetor*, -*ōris*. Also, *arbor*, -*ōris*, and *memor*, -*ōris*.

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *āris*, masc.; as, *Cæsar*, -*āris*; *Hamilcar*, -*āris*; *lar*, *lāris*. ER *ēris* of any gender; as, *aër*, *aēris*; *mulier*, -*ēris*; *cadāver*, -*ēris*, *iter*, anciently *it̄ner*, *it̄nēris*; *verbēris*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *ūris*; as, *vultur*, -*ūris*; *murmur*, -*ūris*. YR *yr̄is*; as, *Martyr*, -*yr̄is*.

## AS.

§ 29. 1. Nouns in AS, which have *atis*, lengthen the crement; as, *pietas*, -*ātis*; *Mæcenas*, -*ātis*. Except *anas*, -*ātis*.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement; as Greek nouns having the genitive in *adis*, *ātis*, and *ānis*; thus *Pallas*, -*adis*; *artocreas*, -*ātis*; *Melas*, -*ānis*, the name of a river. So *vas*, *vadis*; *mas*, *māris*. But *vas*, *vāsis* is long.

## ES.

- § 30. 1. ES shortens the crement; as, *mīles*, -*itis*; *Ceres*, -*itis*; *pes*, *pēdis*.  
 2. Except *locuples*, -*ētis*; *quies*, -*ētis*; *mansues*, -*ētis*; *heres*, -*ēdis*; *merces*, -*ēdis*: also Greek nouns which have *ētis*; as, *lobes*, -*ētis*; *Thales*, -*itis*.

## IS.

- § 31. 1. Nouns in IS shorten the crement; as, *lapis*, -*idis*; *sanguis*, -*inis*; *Phyllis*, -*idis*; *cinis*, *cinēris*.  
 2. Except *Gla*, *gliris*; and Latin nouns which have *itis*; as, *lis*, *litis*; *dis*, *dēdis*; *Quiris*, -*itis*; *Samnis*, -*itis*. But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charitis*.  
 3. The following also lengthen the crement; *Crenis*, -*idis*, *Psophis*, -*idis*, *Nesis*, -*idis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also in; as, *Salāmis* or -*in*, *Salāminis*.

## OS.

- § 32. 1. Nouns in OS lengthen the cements; as, *nepos*, -*ōtis*; *flos*, *flōris*.  
 2. Except *Bos*, *bōvis*; *compos*, -*itis*; and *impos*, -*itis*.

## US.

- § 33. 1. US shortens the crement; as, *tempus*, -*oris*; *vellus*, -*oris*; *tripus*, -*idis*.  
 2. Except nouns which have *adis*, *uris*, and *utis*; as, *incus*, -*adis*; *jus*, *jūris*; *salus*, -*utis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligūris*; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecūdis*; and *intercus*, -*utis*.  
 3. The neuter of the comparative has *oris*; as, *melius*, -*oris*.

## YS.

- § 34. YS shortens *ŷdis* or *ŷdos*; as, *chlamys*, -*ŷdis* or *ŷdos*; and lengthens *ŷnis*; as, *Trachys*, -*ŷnis*.

## BS. PS. MS.

- § 35. 1. Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *calebs*, -*itis*; *inops*, -*ōpis*; *hiems*, *hiēmis*; *auceps*, *aucūpis*; *Dolops*, -*ōpis*; also *anceps*, *ancipitis*; *biceps*, *bicipitis*; and similar compounds of *caput*, in which both increments are short.  
 2. Except *Cyclops*, -*ōpis*; *seps*, *sēpis*; *gryps*, *grŷphis*; *Cercops*, -*ōpis*; *plebs*, *plēbis*; *hydrops*, -*ōpis*.

## T.

- § 36. T shortens the crement; as, *caput*, -*itis*: so, *sinciput*, -*itis*.

## X.

- § 37. 1. Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; as, *conjux*, -*ugis*; *remex*, -*agis*; *Allobrox*, -*ēgis*; *Phryx*, *Phrŷgis*. But *lex*, *lēgis*, and *rex*, *rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūgis*.  
 2. EX shortens *icis*; *vertex*, -*icis*: Except *vibex* or *vibix*, -*icis*.  
 3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pax*, *pācis*; *radix*, -*icis*; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, -*ūcis*, &c.  
 4. Except *fācis*, *nēcis*, *vīcis*, *prēcis*, *callcis*, *ciltcis*, *pīcis*, *forācis*, *nŷvis*, *Cappadōcis*, *dūcis*, *nūcis*, *crūcis*, *trācis*, *onŷcis*, *Erŷcis*, *mastix*, -*ŷchis*, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or *mastich* tree; and many others, the quantity of which can only be ascertained by authority.  
 5. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Syphax*, -*ācis*, or *ācis*; *Sandyx*, -*icis*, or -*icis*; *Bebryx*, -*ŷcis*, or -*ŷcis*.

*Increase of the Plural Number.*

§ 38. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long; but shorten *I* and *U*; as,

*musarum, rerum, dominorum; regibus, portibus; except bobus or bubus, contracted for bovibus.*

## INCREASE OF VERBS.

§ 39. A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas, amamus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the increase or crement: for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas, amabamini*; in which case it is said to have a *first, second, or third* increase.

§ 40. In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* short; as,

*Amāre, docēre, amātōte; legimus, sumus, volumus.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. The poets sometimes, by systole, shorten *dēderunt* and *stēderunt*, and lengthen *rīmus* and *rītis*, in the future subjunctive; as, *transieritis aquas*, Ovid.

2. *Do* and its compounds of the first conjugation have *a* short in their first increment; as, *dāmus, dābunt, venundābo*: but not in the second; as, *dābāmus, dedērātis*, where the last *a* is long.

3. *E* before *r* is short in the first increment of any present and imperfect of the third conjugation; as, *legēris, legērem, legērer*. But *rēris* and *rēre* in all the conjugations are long; as, *legerēris, amarēre, &c.*

4. *Bēris*, and *bēre*, are every where short; as, *amabēris, amabēre*; excepting where *b* belongs also to the termination of the present, *scribēris* and *scribēre*, of the future passive being long by the general rule.

5. *E* before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, and the persons formed from them, is short.

6. These have *i* long; *simus, velimus, nolimus*, with the other persons coming from them, and their compounds; as, *sitis, velitis, nolite malimus, possitis, &c.*

7. *I* before *vi* in preterites is always long; as, *petivi, quæsi, audiui*.

8. The first increment of the fourth conjugation is long; as, *audimus, audite, audire*.

§ 41. The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

*Remarks on the Quantity of the Penult and Antepenult of Words.*

§ 42. 1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Præmides, Atlantiædes, &c.* Unless they come from nouns in *eus*: as, *Pelides, Tydides, &c.*

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS, EIS, ITIS, OIS, OTIS, INE*, and *ONE*, commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achæis, Ptolemæis, Chryseis, Ænëis, Memphitis, Latæis, Icarotis, Nerine, Acrisiois*. Except *Thebis*, and *Phocis*; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS, ICUS, IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiacus, academicus, lepidus, legitimus*; also, superlatives; as, *fortissimus*, &c. Except *meracius, opacius, amicus, apricus, pudicus, mendiculus, anticus, posticus, fidus, infidus*, (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fides*, is short,) *bimius, quadrimus, patrimus, matrimus, opimus*; and two superlatives, *imus, primus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS, ANUS, ENUS, ARUS, IVUS, ORUS, OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotalis, urbanus, terrænus, aværus, æstivus, decorus, arenæus*. Except *barbarus, optærus*, and *ovipærus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult; as, *agilis, facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anilis, civilis, herilis*, &c. To these add, *exilis, subilis*; and names of months, *Aprilis, Quintilis, Sextilis*: Except *humilis, parilis*; and also *similis*. But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versatilis, volatilis, umbratilis, plicatilis, fluviatilis, saxatilis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS*, derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c., also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracinus, crocæus, cedrinus, faginus, oleagnus; adamantinus, crystallinus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus, carinus, annotinus*, &c.

7. Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *aginus, caninus, leporinus, bimus, trinus, quinus, eustrinus, clandestinus, Latinus, marinus, supinus, vespertinus*, &c.

8. Diminutives in *OLUS, OLA, OLUM*; and *ULUS, ULA, ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as, *urceolus, filicula, musceolus; lectulus, ratiuncula, corcûm*, &c.

9. Latin denominatives in *aceus, aneus, arius, aticus, orius*; also verbals in *abilis* and words in *atilis*, lengthen the Antepenult; as, *testaceus, amabalis, pluviatilis*.

10. Adjectives in *icius*, derived from nouns, shorten the *i* of the antepenult; as, *gentilicius*; except *novicius*. But those which come from supines or participles, lengthen the *i*.

11. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidatim, veritim, tributim*. Except *affutim, perpetim*, and *statim*.

12. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *esurio, esuris, esurit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligurio, liguris; scaturio, scaturis*, &c.

13. Frequentative Verbs, formed from the supine of the first conjugation, by changing *atu* into *uo*, have the *i* short.

## PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 43. The following proper names lengthen the penult: *Abdera, Abydos, Adonia, Æsopus, Ætolus, Ahala, Alaricus, Alcides, Amycle, Andronicus, Anubis, Archimedes, Ariarthes, Ariobarzanes, Aristides, Aristobulus, Aristogiton, Arpinum, Artabanus, Brachmanes, Busiris, Buthrotus; Cethæus, Chalcedon, Cleobulus, Cyrene, Cythæra, Curætes; Darici, Demonicus, Diomedes, Diorea, Diocæri; Ebudes, Eriphyle, Eubulus, Euclides, Euphrates, Eumædes, Euripus, Euxinus; Garganus, Gætulus, Granicus; Heliogabalus, Henricus, Heraclides, Heraclitus, Hippanax, Hispanus; Irene; Lacydæus, Latona, Leucata, Lugdunum, Lycæus; Mandane, Mausolus, Maximinus, Meleæger, Messala, Messana, Milæus; Nasica, Nicænor, Nicetas; Pachynus, Pandora, Peloris & -us, Pharsalus, Phœnice, Polites, Polycletus, Polynices, Priapus; Sardanapalus, Sarpædon, Serapis, Sinope, Stratonicæ, Suffetes; Tigrænes, Thessalonica; Verona, Veronica.*

§ 44. The following are short: *Amathus, Amphipolis, Anabasis, Anticyra, Antigorus* and *-ne, Antilochus, Antiochus, Antiopa, Antipas, Antipater, Anti-*

phānes, Antiphātes, Antiphila, Antiphon, Anŷtus, Apūlus, Areopāgus, Arimānum, Armēnus, Athēsis, Attālus, Attica; Bitūrix, Bructēri; Calāber, Callicrātes, Callistrātus, Candāce, Cantāber, Carneādes, Cherilus, Chrysostōmus, Cleombrōtus, Cleomēnes, Corŷcos, Constantinopōlis, Crāterus, Cratylus, Cremēra, Crustumēri, Cybēle, Cyclādes, Cyzicus; Dalmāte, Damōcles, Dardānus, Dejoces, Deiotārus, Democritus, Demīpho, Didymus, Diogenēs, Drepānum, Dumnōrix; Empedōcles, Ephēsus, Evēgētes, Eumēnes, Eurymēdon, Euripylus; Fuciūsus; Geryōnes, Gyārus; Hecyra, Heliopōlis, Hermiōne, Herodōtus, Hesiodus, Hesiōne, Hippocrātes, Hippotāmos, Hypāta, Hypānis; Icārus, Icētas, Illŷris, Iphitus, Ismārus, Ithāca; Laodice, Laomēdon, Lampsacus, Lamŷrus, Lapithae, Lucretiŷlis, Libānus, Lipāre or -a, Lysimāchus, Longimānus; Marāthon, Menālus, Marmārica, Massagētæ, Matrōna, Megāra, Mēritus and -ta, Metropōlis, Mutina, Mycōnus; Neōcles, Neritos, Noricum; Ōmphale; Patāra, Pegasus, Pharnāces, Pisistrātus, Polydāmus, Polyxēna, Porsēna or Porsenna, Praxiteles, Puteoli, Pylādes, Pythagōras; Sarmāte, Sarsina, Semēle, Semirāmis, Sequāni and -a, Sisŷphus, Sicōris, Socrātes, Sodōma, Sotādes, Spartācus, Sporādes, Strongyle, Stymphālus, Sybāris; Taygētus, Telegōnus, Telemāchus, Tenēdos, Tarrāco, Theophānes, Theophilus, Tomŷris; Urbicus; Venēti, Vologēsus, Volūsus; Xenocrātes; Zolius, Zopyrus.

§ 45. The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batŷvi*. Lucan. *Batavi*. Juv. and Mart. *Fortuitus*. Hor. *Fortuitas*. Martial. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables, but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*. Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *praetolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

## II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

### A.

§ 46. A in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musā*, *templā*, *Tydeā*, *lampādā*.

Exc. 1. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musā* *Ænēd*.

Exc. 2. The vocative of Greek nouns in *as* is long; as, *O* *Ænēd*, *O* *Pallā*.

§ 47. A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amā*, *frustrā*, *prætereā*, *ergā*, *intrā*.

Exc. *Itā*, *quiā*, *ējā*, *posteā*, *putā*, (adv.) are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contrā*, *ultrā*, and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *trigintā*, &c. *Contra* and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

### E.

§ 48. E in the end of a word is short; as, *Natē*, *sedilē*, *ipsē*, *currē*, *possē*, *nempē*, *antē*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mē*, *tē*, *sē*; except these enclitic conjunctions, *quē*, *vē*, *nē*; and these syllabical adjections, *ptē*, *cē*, *tē*; as, *suaptē*, *huyuscē*, *tutē*; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declensions are long; as, *Calhōpē*, *Anchisē*, *fidē*. So *rē* and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē*, *hoditē*, *pridiē*, *postridiē*, *quotidiē*.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns which want the singular are long; as, *Cetē*, *melē*, *Tempē*.

Exc. 4. The second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation is long; as, *Docē*, *manē*; but *cave*, *vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 5. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placidē*, *pulchrē*, *valdē*, contracted for *validdē*: To these add *fermē*, *ferē*, and *ohē*; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *doctissimē*, *fortissimē*: But *benē* and *malē*, *infernē*, *supernē*, are short. Also the adverbs *herē*, and *Herculē*.

### I.

§ 49. *I* final is long; as, *Domīni*, *patri*, *docēri*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexi*, *Amarylli*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase, is short; as, *Pallādi*, *Minotādī*.

Exc. 3. *Mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, are common: So likewise are *ibi*, *nisi*, *ubi*, *quasi*; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which is seldom the case. *Sicūti*, *sicūti*, and *necūti*, are always short.

Exc. 4. Datives and Ablatives plural of Greek nouns in *si* are short; as, *heroast*, *Troast*.

### O.

§ 50. *O* final is common; as, *Virgo*, *amo*, *quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *O* are long; as, *ō*, *dō*, *stō*, *prō*.

Exc. 2. The dative and ablative singular of the second declensions are long; as, *librō*, *dominō*.

Exc. 3. Also Greek nouns, as, *Didō*, *Sapphō*, and *Athō* the genitive of *Athos*; and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō*, *falsō*, *paulō*. To these add *quō*, *eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis*, *quōcunque*, *adeō*, *ideō*; likewise *illō*, *idcirco*, *citrō*, *retrō*, *ultrō*.

Exc. 4. The following words are short: *Egō*, *scō*, *putō*, *cedō*, a defective verb, *homō*, *ciō*, *illicō*, *immō*, *duō*, *ambō*, *modō*, with its compounds, *quomōdō*, *dummōdō*, *postmōdō*: but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 5. The gerund in *DO* in *Virgil* is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

### U and Y.

§ 51. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *Vultū*; *Molū*.

*B, D, L, M, R, T.*

§ 52. *B, D, L, R*, and *T*, in the end of a word, are short; as, *ab*, *apud*, *semel*, *precor*, *caput*.



§ 53. The following words are long; *sāl, sōl, ntl, pār* and its compounds, *impār, dispār, &c.*; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fur*; also nouns in *ar* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr*; likewise *uēr, æthēr*: to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb, Daniēl*; but *David, Bogud, &c.* are common.

§ 54. *M* final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *Miltūm octo. Ennius*. But, by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *miliū octo*; except in compound words; as, *circūmāgo, circūmeo*.

### C, N.

§ 55. *C* and *N*, in the end of a word, are long: as, *ac, sic, illuc; splēn, ēn, nōn, &c.*

So Greek nouns in *n*; as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salāmin; Æneān, Anchīsēn, Circēn; Lacedæmōn, &c.*

Exc. 1. The following words are short: *nēc* and *donēc*; *Forsttān, in, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn*; likewise nouns in *en* which have *tnis* in the genitive: as, *carmēn, crimēn*.

Exc. 2. Also nouns in *on*, of the singular number, which in Greek are written with a small *o* (*ο μικρον*), and which are in Latin of the second declension; as, *Ilīōn, Erotiōn, Pylōn*.

Exc. 3. *N* is short in Greek accusatives, whatever the declension may be, of nouns the final syllable of whose nominative is short; as, *Matān, Æginān, Alexin, Ibin, Ityn*.

Exc. 4. Greek datives in *sin* are short; as, *Arcasin, Troasin*.

Exc. 5. The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

### AS, ES, OS.

§ 56. *AS, ES, and OS*, in the end of a word, are long: as, *Mās, quies, bonōs*.

Exc. 1. The following words are short: *andēs, ēs*, from *sum*, and *penēs*; *ōs*, having *ossis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs*.

Exc. 2. Also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations: as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās, herōās, Phrygēs, Arcādōs, Tenēdōs, Mēlōs, &c.*

Exc. 3. Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short, are also short; as, *Alēs, hebēs, obsēs*. But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

### IS, US, YS.

§ 57. *IS, US, and YS*, in the end of a word, are short: as, *Turris, legis, legimūs, annūs, Capys*.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnis*, for *omnes*, *fructūs, manūs*; also the genitive singular of the

fourth declension; as, *portūs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is short: as, *florībūs*, *fructībūs*, *rebūs*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *itis*, *inis*, or *entis*; as, *lis*, *Samnis*, *Salāmis*, *Simōis*: To these add the adverbs *gratis* and *fortis*; the noun *glis*, and *vis*, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *itis*; as, *audis*, *abis*, *possis*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long: as, *grūs*, *sūs*: also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris*, *ūdis*, *ūtis*, *untis*, or *ōdis*: as, *tellūs*, *incūs*, *virtūs*, *Amāthūs*, *tripūs*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension ending in *o*; as, *Clīus*, *Sapphūs*, *Mantūs*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative: as, *Panthūs*:—so *Iēsus*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative: as, *Phorcys* or *Phorcyn*, and *Trachys* or *Trachyn*.

§ 58. The last syllable of every verse is common;

Or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

## THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

### I. DERIVATIVES.

§ 59. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

<i>Amicus</i> ,	<i>from</i>	<i>āmo</i> .	<i>Decōro</i> ,	<i>from</i>	<i>decus</i> , -ōris.
<i>Auctōnor</i> ,		<i>auctio</i> , -ōnis.	<i>Exālo</i> ,		<i>exul</i> , -ūlis.
<i>Auctōro</i> ,		<i>auctor</i> , -ōris.	<i>Pāvīdus</i> ,		<i>pāveo</i> .
<i>Audītor</i> ,		<i>audītum</i> .	<i>Quirīto</i> ,		<i>Quiris</i> , -ītis.
<i>Auspīcor</i> ,		<i>auspex</i> , -īcis.	<i>Radicītus</i> ,		<i>radix</i> , -īcis.
<i>Caupōnor</i> ,		<i>caupo</i> , -ōnis.	<i>Sospīto</i> ,		<i>sopes</i> , -ītis.
<i>Compētītor</i> ,		<i>compētītum</i> .	<i>Nātūra</i> ,		<i>nātus</i> .
<i>Cornīcor</i> ,		<i>cornix</i> , -īcis.	<i>Māternus</i> ,		<i>māter</i> .
<i>Custōdio</i> ,		<i>custos</i> , -ōdis.	<i>Lēgēbam</i> , &c.		<i>lēgo</i> .
<i>Decōrus</i> ,		<i>decor</i> , -ōris.	<i>Lēgēram</i> , &c.		<i>lēgi</i> .

#### EXCEPTIONS.

##### 1. Long from short.

<i>Dēni</i> , <i>from</i>	<i>Dēcem</i> .	<i>Suspīcio</i> , <i>from</i>	<i>suspīcor</i> .	<i>Mōbīlis</i> , <i>from</i>	<i>mōveo</i> .
<i>Fūmes</i> ,	<i>fōveo</i> .	<i>Sēdes</i> ,	<i>sēdeo</i> .	<i>Hūmor</i> ,	<i>hūmus</i> .
<i>Hūmānus</i> ,	<i>hōmo</i> .	<i>Sēcūs</i> ,	<i>sēcus</i> .	<i>Jūmentum</i> ,	<i>jūvo</i> .
<i>Rēgūla</i> ,	<i>rēgo</i> .	<i>Pēnūria</i> ,	<i>pēnus</i> .	<i>Vox</i> , <i>vōcis</i> ,	<i>vōco</i> , &c.

##### 2. Short from long.

<i>Arēna</i> and <i>ārista</i> ,	<i>from</i>	<i>āreo</i> .	<i>Lūcerna</i> ,	<i>from</i>	<i>lūceo</i> .
<i>Nōta</i> and <i>nōto</i> ,		<i>nōtus</i> .	<i>Dux</i> , <i>ūcis</i> ,		<i>dūco</i> .
<i>Vīdum</i> ,		<i>vādo</i> .	<i>Stābīlis</i> ,		<i>stābam</i> .
<i>Fīdes</i> ,		<i>fīdo</i> .	<i>Dītio</i> ,		<i>dis</i> , <i>dītis</i> .
<i>Sōpor</i> ,		<i>sōpio</i> .	<i>Quāsilus</i> ,		<i>quālus</i> , &c.

## II. COMPOUNDS.

§ 60. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

*Dēduco*, of *dē* and *dūco*. So *præfēro*, *antīfēro*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *ēnōdo*, *ērūdīo*, *exsūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incēra*, *inhūmo*, *investīgo*, *prægrāvo*, *prænāto*, *rēgēlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *prægravis*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco* and *suffūco*; *diffīdit* from *diffīdo*, and *diffīdit* from *diffīdo*; *indīco*, *-āre*, and *indīco*, *-ēre*; *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*; *effōdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so, *exēdit* and *exēdit*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnimus* and *devēnimus*; *reperīmus* and *reperīmus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

§ 61. The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as,

*Incīdo* from *in* and *cādo*; *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo*; *suffōco* from *sub* and *faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *admitto*, *percūdo*, *dēoscūlor*, *prōhibeo*.

Exc. *Agnitum*, *cognitum*, *dējēro*, *pējēro*, *imūba*, *pronūba*, *maledīctus*, *veridīctus* *nīhilum*, *semīsōpitus*; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *hīlum*, and *sōpio*; *ambītus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambītus* and *ambītio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

§ 62. Prepositions have generally the same quantity in composition as out of it: thus *amitto* and *dēduco* have the first syllable long because *a* and *de* are long. *Aboleo* and *pērimo* have the first short, because *ab* and *per* are short.

Obs. 1. The preposition *PRO* in Greek words, for *ante*, before, is short; as,

*Prōphēta*, *prōlōgus*: *PRO* in Latin words is long; as, *prōdo*, *prōmitto*, &c. but it is short in the following words: *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfugus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōnēptis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfānus*, *prōfecto*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock, or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful; *propāgo*, to propagate; *propino*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūre*, and *Proserpina*.

Obs. 2. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as,

*Sēpāro*, *dīcello*; except *dīrīno*, *dīsertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rēmīto*, *rēfero*; except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

§ 63. *I* in the end of the former compounding word is usually shortened; as, *Capricornus*, *omnīpōtens*, *agrīcōla*, *signīfico*, *bīformis*, *alīger*, *Trīvia*, *Tubīcen*, *vaticīnor*, *archītectus*, *bīmēter*, *trīmēter*, &c.

Exc. 1. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *lanīdem*, *cīdem*, &c.

Exc. 2. Also when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, *ludīmāgister*, *lucrifacio*, *siquis*, &c.

Exc. 3. When a contraction is made by *Crisis* or *Syncope*; as, *trīgæ*, for *trijūgæ*; *ilīcet*, for *ire licet*, &c. it is long.

Exc. 4. So in the compounds of *dies*, as, *bīdūm*, *trīdūm*, *merīdies*, *prīdie*, *postīdie*; but the second syllable is sometimes shortened in *quotīdie* and *quotīdīanus*.

Exc. 5. *Idēm* in the *riase*. is long, (in the neuter short;) also *ubīque*, *ibīdem*. But in *ubīvis* and *ubīcūque*, the *i* is doubtful. *Idēmīdem* has the penultimate short.

§ 64. *O* in the end of the former compounding word is usually shortened; as, *Argōnauta*, *Areōpagus*, *duōdēni*, *duōdēcim*, *hōdie*, *sanctus*, *Arctōphylax*, *bibliōthēca*, *philōsōphus*, &c.

Exc. 1. *O* is lengthened in the compounds of *intro*, *retro*, *contro*, and *quando*; as,

*Intrōdūco*, *intrōmitto*, *retrocēdo*, *retrogrādus*, *contrōversus*, *contrōversia*, *quandōque*; but *quandōquidē* has the second syllable short. *O* is also long in *aliōquin*, *ceterōquin*, *utrōbique*: So likewise in Greek words, written with a large *o*, or *ο* *οῖα*; as, *geōmetra*, *Minōtaurus*, *lagōpus*.

§ 65. *A* in the former compounding part of a word is long; as, *quāre*, *quāpropter*, *quācunque*; So, *trādo*, *trādūco*, *trāno*, for *transo*, &c. *Eādē* is short, except in the abl. sing. *eādē*. So *hexāmeter*, and *catāpulta*.

§ 66. *E* is short; as, *nēfas*, *nēfastus*, *nēfandus*, *nēfarius*, *nēque*, *nēqueo*; *trēdecim*, *trēcēti*, *ēquidē*, *sēlibra*, *valēdico*, *madīfacio*, *tepīfacio*, *patīfacio*, &c. *hufus*, *cēmōdi*, *ejuscēmōdi*—Except *sēdecim*, *sēmōdius*, *nēquis*, *nēquam*, *nēquilia*, *nēquando*, *nēmo*, *crēdo*, *mēmēt*, *mēcū*, *tēcū*, *sēcū*; *venēficus*, *vidēlicet*.

§ 67. *U* also is short; as, *dūcenti*, *dūpondium*; *quadrūpes*, *centūplum*, *Trojūgena*, *cornūpila*; but *jūdico* is long. *Y* likewise in Greek words is short; as, *Polydōrus*, *Polydāmas*, *Polyphēmus*, *Dorūphōrus*.

## VERSE.

§ 68. A Verse is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, both to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, and to regulate its pronunciation.

## FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

### 1. Feet of two Syllables.

*Spondēus*, consists of two long; as, *ōmnēs*.

*Pyrrhichius*, two short; as, *dēus*.

*Iambus*, a short and a long; as, *āmāns*.

*Trechæus* or *Chorēus*, a long and a short; as, *sērvūs*.

### 2. Feet of three Syllables.

*Dactylus*, a long and two short; as, *scribērē*.

*Anapestus*, two short and a long; as, *piētās*.

*Amphimācer*, a long, a short, and a long; as, *chārītās*.

*Tribrachys*, three short; as, *dōmīnūs*.

The following are not so much used :

Molossus, ..... *dilēctant.*  
 Amphibrachys, ..... *honorē.*  
 Bacchius, ..... *dolōrēs.*  
 Antibacchius, ..... *pēluntūr.*

### 3. Feet of four Syllables.

Proceleusmaticus, ..... *hōmīnibūs.*  
 Dispondeus, ..... *orātōrēs.*  
 Dijambus, ..... *āmanūs.*  
 Choriambus, ..... *pōntificēs.*  
 Dichoreus, ..... *Cāntilēnā.*

Antispastus, ..... *Alēxandr.*  
 Ionicus minor, ..... *prōpērabant.*  
 Ionicus major, ..... *calcārībūs.*  
 Pæon primus, ..... *tēmpōrībūs.*  
 Pæon secundus, ..... *pōlētū.*  
 Pæon tertius, ..... *ānīmātūs.*  
 Pæon quartus, ..... *cēlētūs.*  
 Epitritus primus, ..... *vōlūptātēs.*  
 Epitritus secundus, ..... *pōnētēs.*  
 Epitritus tertius, ..... *dīscōrdiās.*  
 Epitritus quartus, ..... *fortūnātūs.*

## SCANNING.

§ 69. The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

Obs. 1. When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus* or *Acatalecticus*, an Acatalectic verse: if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalecticus*: if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalecticus*, or *Hypermeter*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio* or *Clausula*.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

### No. 1. HEXAMETER.

§ 70. The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees: as,

1	2	3	4	5	6
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— —
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— —

Ludēre	que vël-	lēm cālā-	mō pēr-	mīst ā-	grēstī. Virg.
Infān-	dūm Rē-	gīnā jū-	bēs rēnō-	vārē dō-	lōrēm. Id.

Obs. 1. A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Obs. 2. Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondæic*; as,

Cārā Dē- | ūm sōbō- | lēs mā- | gnūm Jōvis | incērē- | mētūm. Virg.

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Obs. 3. Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omīā | Mērcūrī- | ō sīmī- | līs vō- | cēmquē cō- | lōrēmque.  
 Et flavos crines—

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately: as,

Ludere, quæ velle, calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*  
Pinguis et ingrata premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees: as,

Tityre, tu patula recubans sub tegmine fagi. *Virg.*

It is esteemed a great beauty in a hexameter verse, when, by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense: as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*  
Illi inter sese magnâ vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*  
Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum. *Id.*  
Accipiant inimicum, inbre, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention, in scanning hexameter verse, is the CÆSURA.

§ 71. *Cæsura* is when, after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

At rē-ginā grā-vi jān-dudum, &c.

Obs. 1. The *cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimēris*: when on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris*: when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemimēris*: and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Enneemimēris*.

All these different species of the *cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse: as,

Illū lā-tās nīvō-ūm mōl-li fūl-tās hŷā-cīnthō. *Virg.*

Obs. 2. But the most common and beautiful *cæsura* is the penthemim; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice, in reading a hexameter verse thus composed: whence they call it the *cæsural pause*: as,

Tityre, dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long: as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of a hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *cæsura*. Without this, a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose: as,

Rōmæ mōnŷā tārūt impŷgēr, Hānnŷbāl ārmīs. *Ennius.*

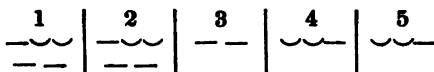
The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They observed not only the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse re-

quired. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse, as has been before observed.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

### o. 2. PENTAMETER.

§ 72. The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees: the third, always a spondee: and the fourth and fifth, an anapestus: as,



Nātū- | ræ æquū- | tūr æ- | mīnā quis- | quē sūæ. *Propert.*

Cārmīn- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pūs īn ōm- | nē mēis. *Ovid.*

Obs. 1. But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves: the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a cæsūra: the latter, always of two dactyles and another cæsūra: thus,

Nātū- | ræ æquū- | tūr | sēmīnā | quīaquē sū- | æ.

Cārmīn- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs īn | ōmnē mē- | is.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

### No. 3. TETRAMETER A POSTERIORE.

§ 73. The *Tetrameter a Posteriore* consists of the last four feet of an Hexameter: as,

Cērtūs ē- | nīm prō | mīsit A- | pōllū. *Hor.*

### No. 4. TRIMETER CATALECTIC.

§ 74. The *Trimeter Catalectic* consists of two dactyles and a semi-foot or *catalectic* syllable: as,

Arbōrī- | būsquē cō- | mæ. *Hor.*

### No. 5. DACTYLIC DIMETER OR ADONIC.

§ 75. The Adonic verse consists of two feet, the first a dactyle, the other a spondee: as,

Vīsērē | mōntēs. *Hor.*

Obs. The *Adonic* is usually joined to the *Sapphic* or *Trochaic Pentameter* [No. 11.] In odes, one Adonic is annexed to three Sapphics to form the stanza.

## IAMBIC.

## No. 6. IAMBIC TRIMETER.

§ 76. *Iambic* verses take their name from the *Iambus*, which, in pure *Iambics*, was the only foot admitted. They are divided into two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimeter* (a word meaning 'two measures;') the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimeter* ('six measures.') The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in *Iambic* verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the *Dimeter quaternarius*, and the *Trimeter, senarius*.

§ 77. The *Trimeter Iambic* consists of three measures, or six feet, properly all *Iambic*; the *cæsura* commonly falling on the fifth semi-foot: as,

Phăc- | lư ư- | lế quế- | vể- | tể hử- | pể- Catullus.

Obs. But the pure *Iambic* was rarely used, and the *Spondee* was allowed to take the place of the *Iambus* in the first, third and fifth stations, for the purpose of giving to the verse a greater degree of weight and dignity. A further liberty was taken in the first, third and fifth places, that of dividing one long syllable into two short ones. The scale of the mixed *Trimeter Iambic* is as follows:—

1	2	3	4	5	6
—	—	—	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—	
—		—		—	
—		—		—	
—		—		—	
—		—		—	

## No. 7. IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.

§ 78. The *Catalectic Trimeter* is the common *Trimeter* [No. 6] wanting the final syllable; that is, it consists of five feet, properly all *Iambi*, followed by a *Catalectic* syllable; as,

Vốc- | tũ ất- | quế nũn | vố c- | tũ ẩ- | đĩt. Hor.

Like the common *Trimeter* it admits a *Spondee* in the first and third places, but not in the fifth, which would render the verse too heavy and prosaic.

## No. 8. IAMBIC DIMETER.

§ 79. The *Dimeter Iambic* consists of two measures, or four feet, properly all *Iambi*; as,

Pử- | xĩ hử- | ẩ- | sũnem. Hor.

But it admits the same variations in the odd feet as the *Trimeter*.



## No. 9. IAMBIC DIMETER HYPERMETER.

§ 80. The *Dimeter Hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the Iambic Dimeter [No. 8] with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rédě- | gýt ad | vērōs | tīmō- | rēs. Hor.

Horace makes frequent use of this metre in conjunction with the Alcaic [No. 19] having *always* the third foot a spondee.

## No. 10. IAMBIC DIMETER ACEPHALUS.

§ 81. The *Acephalus Dimeter* is the Dimeter Iambic [No. 9] wanting the first syllable; as,

Nūn | ēbūr | nēque ān- | rēum. Hor.

## No. 11. SAPPHIC.

§ 82. The Sapphic verse (so called from the poetess Sappho, who invented it) consists of five feet, namely a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyle and two more Trochees; as,

Dēfū- | it sāk- | is āgē- | tātūs | hūmōr. Hor.

Of three such verses with the addition of one Adonic [No. 5] Sappho composed her stanza, in which practice she was followed by Catullus, Horace and others.

## CHORIAMBIC.

## No. 12. CHORIAMBIC PENTAMETER.

§ 83. The Choriambic Pentameter consists of a Spondee, three Choriambi, and an Iambus; as,

Tū nē | quāesērīs | scīrē nēfās | quēm mīhī quēm | tībī. Hor.

## No. 13. CHORIAMBIC TETRAMETER.

§ 84. This species of verse consists of three Choriambi, and a Bacchius (i. e. an Iambus and a long syllable); as,

Jānē pātēr, | Jānē tūēns, | dīvē bŷcēps | bŷfōrmis. Sep. Ser.

Obs. Horace made an alteration, but certainly not an improvement, in this form of verse, by substituting a Spondee, instead of the Iambus in the first measure; as,

Tē dē-ās ō- | rō, Bŷbān | cūr prōpŷrē | āmāndō,

which must be considered as a *lame* Choriambic Tetrameter.

## No. 14. ASCLEPIADIC TETRAMETER.

§ 85. The *Asclepiadic Tetrameter* (so called from the poet Asclepiades) consists of a Spondee, two Choriambi, and an Iambus; as,

Mēcē- | nās ātāvīs | ēdītē rē- | gībus. Hor.

Obs. As the *cæsura* takes place at the end of the first Choriambus, this metre may be scanned as a Dactylic Pentameter, wanting the last syllable; thus,

Mæ oē | nās ātā- | vīs | ēdītē | rēgībūs.

#### No. 15. CHORIAMBIC TRIMETER, OR GLYCONIC.

§ 86. The Glyconic verse (so called from the poet *Glyco*) consists of a Spondee, a Choriambus, and an Iambus; as,

Sic tē | dīvā pōtēs | Cypri. Hor.

Obs. 1. The first foot was sometimes an Iambus or a Trochee. Horace, however, who was very fond of the Glyconic, and has often employed it, invariably adheres to the Spondee, except in one solitary instance; viz.

Ignis | Iliacas | domos. Od. 1, 13, 36.

Obs. 2. This species of verse, when it has a Spondee in the first place, might be scanned as a *Dactylic Trimeter*; thus,

Miles | tē dūcē | gēsērīt. Hor.  
Grātō | Pýrrhā sūb | āntrō. Hor.

#### No. 16. CHORIAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC OR PHERECRATIC.

§ 87. The Pherecratic verse (so called from the poet Pherecrates,) is the Glyconic [No. 15] deprived of its final syllable. It consists of a Spondee, a Choriambus, and a Catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō | Pýrrhā sūb ān- | trū. Hor.

Or it might be divided into a Spondee, a Dactyle and Spondee. See 88.

#### No. 17. CHORIAMBIC DIMETER.

§ 88. The Choriambic Dimeter consists of a Choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lýdīā dīc | pēr ōmnēs. Hor.

### IONIC.

Ionic verses are of two kinds, the *Ionicus Major* and the *Ionicus Minor*, so denominated from the feet of which they are respectively composed.

#### No. 18. IONIC A MINORE.

§ 89. The *Ionic a Minore* is entirely composed of that foot or measure called the *Ionic a minore*, which consists of two short [a Pyrrhic] and two long [a Spondee,] as, *Dōcūtssēt*. It is not confined to any particular number of feet or measures, but may be extended to any length, provided only that, with due attention to *Synapheia* [101] the final syllable of the Spondee in each measure, be either naturally long, or made long by the concurrence of consonants, and that each sen-

ence or period terminate with a complete measure, having the Spondee for its close. Horace's Ode 12, Book 3, may be divided into lines of four Ionics each; as,

Miserarum est | neque amorī | dare ludum, | neque dāci.

No. 19. GREATER ALCAIC.

§ 90. The *Greater Alcaic* consists of an Iambic measure (that is, two feet properly both Iambi) and a long Catalectic syllable, followed by a Choriambus and Iambus; as,

Vidēs | ūt āl- | tā | stēt nīvē cān- | dīdūm. Hor.

But the first foot of the Iambic portion is, of course, alterable to a Spondee.

Obs. The Alcaic is sometimes scanned so as to make two Dactyles of the latter colon; thus,

Vidēs | ūt āl- | tā | stēt nīvē | cāndīdūm.

No. 20. DACTYLICO-TROCHAIC HEPTAMETER or ARCHILOCHIAN.

§ 91. The *Archilochian Heptameter* consists of two members; the first contains four feet from the beginning of the Hexameter—the fourth being always a Dactyle—the latter portion consists of three Trochees; thus,

Solvītūr | acris hī- | ēms grā- | tā vīcē | vēris | et Fā- | vūnī. Hor.

No. 21. DACTYLICO-TROCHAIC TETRAMETER, or LESSER ALCAIC.

§ 92. The *Lesser Alcaic* consists of two Dactyles followed by two Trochees; as,

Lēvā | pēnōnū- | ōrē | sāxē. Hor.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words, to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalapha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Dieræsis*, *Systole*, and *Diastole*.

§ 93. *SYNALAPHA* is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. Virg.

to be scanned thus,

Cōnticū- | ēr' ōm- | nēs īn- | tēntī- | qu' ōrē tē- | nēbant.

Obs. 1. The *Synalapha* is sometimes neglected: and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ō*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

O pater, ō hominum, Divūmque æterna potestas. Virg.

**Obs. 2.** Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insula Ionio in magno, quas dira Celano. *Virg.*  
Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*  
Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Illo alto. *Id.*  
Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam. *Id.*  
Glaucō et Panopææ, et Inoo Melicertæ. *Id.*

§ 94. **ECTHLIPSIS** is the cutting off of *m*, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! *Pers.*

thus,

O cū- | rās hōmī- | n', ō quān- | t' ēst in | rēbus īn- | ānē.

**Obs.** Sometimes the Synalœpha and Ecthlipsis are found at the end of the verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque  
Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*  
Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum  
Ardus cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit: r' Ardua.*

§ 95. **SYNZERESIS** is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as, *Phæton* for *Phaëton*. So *eī* in *Thesēi*, *Orphēi*, *deinde*, *Pompeī*: *uī* in *huic*, *cui*: *ōī* in *proinde*: *ēd* in *aured*: thus,

Notus amor Phædra, nota est injuria Thesēi. *Ovid.*  
Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi—*Virg.*  
Filius huic contrā, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*  
Aurēā percussū virgā, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antēhac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deērit*, *vehēmens*, *anteit*, *eōdem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimis*, *semihōmo*, *fluviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c. as,

Unā eādemque viā sanguis animusque sequuntur. *Virg.*  
Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*  
Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*  
Divitis ubi agri, Trojæque opulenta deerit. *Virg.*  
Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*  
Te semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor. Od. 1, 35, 17.*  
Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*  
Cum refluit campis, et jam se condidit alveo. *Virg.*  
Inde ubi venēre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*  
Bis patriæ cecidēre manus: quin protinus omnia. *Id.*  
Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*  
Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*  
Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*  
Magnanimosque duces totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*  
Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

**Obs.** To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as, in *genva*, *tennis*, *arjētat*, *tēnvia*, *abjēte*, *pitvīta*, *parjetibus*, *Nasidjēnus*; for *genua*, *tenuis*, &c. as,

Propterea quia corpus aquæ naturaque tēnvia. *Lucr.*  
 Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*  
 Arjetat in portas et duros objice postes. *Id.*  
 Velleraque ut foliis depectant tēnvia Sere. *Id.*  
 Edificant, sectaque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*  
 Præcipuè sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*  
 Parjetibusque premunt arcis, et quatuor addunt, *Virg.*  
 Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cœna beati? *Hor.*

§ 96. **DIAERESIS** divides one syllable into two; as, *aulai*, for *aulæ*: *Troia*, for *Trojæ*: *Persēus*, for *Perseus*: *milūus*, for *milvus*: *solūit*, for *solvit*: *volūit*, for *volvit*: *aquæ*, *sūetus*, *sūasit*, *Sūevos*, *relangūit*, *reliquas*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c.; as,

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*  
 Stamina non ulli dissolvienda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*  
 Debuerant fusos evolūisse suos. *Id. Ovid.*  
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquis tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*  
 Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque sūetæ. *Hor.*  
 Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque sūadent. *Lucr.*  
 Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquifone Sūevos. *Lucan.*  
 Imposito fratri moribunda relangūit ore. *Ovid.*  
 Reliquas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. *Lucr.*

§ 97. **SYSTOLE** makes a long syllable short; as, the penult in *tulērunt*; thus,

Matri longa decem tulērunt fastidia menses. *Virg. E. 4. 61.*

§ 98. **DIASTOLE** makes a short syllable long; as, the last syllable of *amor* in the following verse:

Considant, si tantus amōr, et mœnia condant. *Virg. Æ. 11, 323.*

To the above may be added the following, which, though chiefly used by the poets, often occur in prose; and are called

## FIGURES OF DICTION.

§ 99. 1. **SYNAFHEIA** is the connexion or linking of verses together, so as to make them run on in continuation, as if the matter were not divided into separate verses. This figure obtains chiefly in the *Ionic a minore* measure.

2. **Prosthesis** prefixes a letter or syllable; as, *gnatus* for *natus*, *te-tuli* for *tuli*. This figure is of frequent occurrence in Greek. From *πρὸςθεσις*, 'an addition,' compounded of *πρὸ*, 'before,' and *τιθημι*, 'to put' or 'place.'

3. **Epenthesis** is the insertion of a letter or syllable into the body of the word; as, *seditio*, *redeo*, to avoid the unpleasant hiatus in *se-itio*,

re-co: so, *retulit* for *retulit*. From *ἐνθεσος*, 'an insertion;' *ἐν*, 'to,' *τις*, 'in,' *τιθέναι*, 'to place,' or 'insert.'

4. *Paragoge* adds a letter or syllable to the end; as, *amarier*, for *amāri*; *audier* for *audiri*. From *παράγωγη*, 'an extension,' *παράγω*, 'to extend.'

5. *Aphæresis* cuts off the first letter or syllable of a word; as, *natus* for *gnatus*; *tendērant* for *tetendērant*. From *ἀφαίρεσις*, 'a retrenchment,' which is compounded of *ἀπό*, 'from,' and *αἶψα*, 'to take.'

6. *Syncope* strikes out a letter or syllable from the middle of a word; as, *amāsse* for *amavisse*; *opra* for *opéra*. From *σύνκοπη*, (*σύν* and *κόπη*) 'an abridgement.'

7. *Apocöpe* cuts off the final letter or syllable of a word; as, *men*' for *mene*; *viden*' for *videsne*. From *ἀποκοπή*, 'a rescission:' *ἀπό*-*κοπή*, 'to cut off.'

8. *Metathesis* changes the order of letters in a word; as, *pistris* for *pristis*. From *μετάθεσις*, 'a transposition.'

9. *Antithesis* substitutes one letter for another; as, *Olli* for *Illi*; *voltis* for *vultis*. From *ἀντί*, 'in stead of,' 'in place of,' and *τίθηναι*, 'to put,' or 'place.'

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

§ 100. Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem* (*Poëma* or *Carmen*.)

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

Obs. 1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an *EPITHALAMIUM*; on a mournful subject, an *ELEGY* or *LAMENTATION*; in praise of the Supreme Being, a *HYMN*; in praise of any person or thing, a *PANEGYRIC* or *ENCOMIUM*; on the vices of any one, a *SATIRE* or *INVECTIVE*; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an *EPITAPH*, &c.

Obs. 2. A short poem, adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an *ODE*, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems*; a poem in the form of a letter is called an *EPISTLE*; a short, witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an *EPIGRAM*; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit, in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an *EMBLEM*. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an *ÆNIGMA* or *RIDDLE*.

Obs. 3. When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters, express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an *ACROSTIC*; as the following on our Saviour:

I nter cuncta micans I gniti sidera cæl I,  
E xpellit tenebras E tote Phæbus ut orb E;  
S ic cæcas removet JESVS caliginis umbra S,  
V ivificansque simul V ero præcordia mot V,  
S olem justitiæ S ese probat esse beati S.

Obs. 4. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixed*.

The *Eregetic*, where the poet always speaks of himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic, or Instructive, (as the *Satire* or *Epistle*,) and Descriptive.

Obs. 5. Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue; to which may be added *Pastoral Poems*, or *BUCOLICS*, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the *Eclogues* of Virgil.

Obs. 6. The *Mixed* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great, illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of *Aeneas* in Italy in the *Aeneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

Obs. 7. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

## COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

§ 101. In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his *Satires* and *Epistles*, Ovid in his *Metamorphoses*, Lucan, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use the Hexameter verse: Plantus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the Odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

§ 102. A poem, which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, MONOCOLON, sc. *poëma* or *carmen*; or MONOCÓLOS, sc. *ode*; that which has two kinds, DICOLON; and that which has three kinds of verse, TRICOLON.

§ 103. If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called DICOLON DISTRÖPHON;\* as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after an HEXAMETER; which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiæcum*,) because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegiæ, solve capillos;

Ah! nimis ex vero, nunc tibi nomen erit. Ovid.

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the *Metamorphoses*; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

§ 104. When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called DICOLON TRISTRÖPHON; when after four lines, DICOLON TETRASTRÖPHON; as,

---

\* A *Strophe* or *Stanza* includes as many lines as are necessary to show all the different kinds of measure in an ode. It is called *Strophe*, which in Greek literally means a *turning*, because at the end of it, you turn back to the same kind of verse with which you began.

Auream quisquis mediocritatem  
 Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti  
 Sordibus tecti; caret invidiâ  
 Sobrius aula. Horat.

§ 105. When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called TRICOLON TRIMETROPON; but if it returns after four lines, it is called TRICOLON TETRASTROPON; as, when after two greater dactylic Alcaic verses are subjoined an Archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic Alcaic, which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori  
 Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;  
 Cœtusque vulgares, et udam  
 Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

### THE VARIOUS COMBINATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT METRES USED BY HORACE.

§ 106. The different species of metre used by Horace, in his Lyric compositions, are *twenty*; and the various forms in which he has employed these metres, either separate or in conjunction, are *nineteen*.

#### A TRICOLON TETRASTROPON.

§ 107. I. Two greater Alcaics, [No. 19,\*] one Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter, [No. 9,] and one Lesser Alcaic, [No. 21,] as,

O matrē pulchrâ filiâ pulchrôr,  
 Quēm criminōsis cūquē vōlēs mōdum  
 Pōnēs fāmbis, sivē flāmmâ,  
 Sivē mārī libēt ādrīanō. Lib. 1. 16.

This appears to be his favourite form, as we find it in *thirty-seven* of his odes. Thence it is often called the *Horatian Stanza*.

#### A DICOLON TETRASTROPON.

§ 108. II. The combination next in favour with Horace, was the following—three Sapphics, [No. 11,] and one Adonic, [No. 5,] in which form he composed *twenty-six* odes: e. g.

Jān sētis tērris nīvīs atquē dīræ  
 Grandinis misit pātēr, ēt, rūbēnte  
 Dextērâ sacrās fāculātus ārces,  
 Tērrūit urbem. Lib. 1. 2.

#### A DICOLON DISTROPON.

§ 109. III. One Glyconic, [No. 15,] and one Asclepiadic, [No. 14,] which combination occurs in *twelve* odes: thus,

Sic tē Divâ pōtēs Cypri,  
 Sic frātēs Hēlēnæ, lūcidâ sidēra. Lib. 1. 3.

\* These numbers refer to the different kinds of verse on pages 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, and 301.



## A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

§ 110. IV. One Iambic Trimeter, [No. 6,] and one Iambic Dimeter, [No. 8,] in which form we see *ten* of his Epodes.

Ibis Liburnis inter alta navium,  
Amice prœpugnacula. Epod. 2.

## A DICOLON TETRASTROPHON.

§ 111. V. Three Asclepiadics, [No. 14,] and one Glyconic, [No. 15,] in *nine* odes: *e. g.*

Scriberis Varrũ fortis, et hostium  
Victor, Moesonii carminis alii  
Quam rem cumque ferux navibus aut equis  
Milës, ut ducẽ, gesserit, Lib. 1. 6.

## A TRICOLON TETRASTROPHON.

§ 112. VI. Two Asclepiadics, [No. 14,] one Phœcratic, [No. 16,] and one Glyconic, [No. 15,] *seven* odes.

Dianam, teneras dicte, virgines:  
Intonsum, pueri, dicte Cynthium,  
Latonamque supremo  
Dilectam penitus Jovi. Lib. 1. 21.

## A MONOCOLON.

§ 113. VII. The Asclepiadic, [No. 14,] *three* odes: thus,  
Mæcenâs ætævis edicte regibus. Lib. 1. 1.

## A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

§ 114. VIII. One Dactylic Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Dactylic Tetrameter *a posteriore*, [No. 3,] *three* odes: thus,

Laudabant alii clarum Rhodum, aut Mitylenem,  
Aut Ephesum, bimariæve Corinthi. Lib. 1. 7.

## A MONOCOLON.

§ 115. IX. The Choriambic Pentameter, [No. 12,] used alone in *three* odes: thus,

Tu ne quæsieris, scire nefas, quem mihi quem tibi. Lib. 1. 11.

## A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

§ 116. X. One Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Iambic Dimeter, [No. 8,] *two* odes: as,

Nux erat, et cælum fulgebant luna sereno  
Inter minoræ sidera. Epod. 15.

## A MONOCOLON.

§ 117. XI. The Iambic Trimeter, [No. 6,] unmixed with any other species of verse, *two* epodes: thus,

Quid observatis auribus fundis præces? Epod. 18.

## A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

§ 118. XII. One Choriambic Dimeter, [No. 17,] and one Choriambic Tetrameter, [No. 13,] *one* ode:

Lydā, dic, p̄r omnes  
Tē Dē ōs ōrū, Sŷbārin cūr prōp̄rēs āmādo. Lib. 1. 8.

## A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

§ 119. XIII. One Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Iambic Trimeter, [No. 6,] *one* epode.

Alt̄rā jām t̄rtūr bellis cīvilibūs atas  
Sūs ēt ipsā Rōmā viribūs ruit. Epod. 16.

## A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

§ 120. XIV. One Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Dactylic Trimeter, Catalectic, [No. 4,] *one* ode.

Diffūgērē nivēs: rēdēunt jām grāmīnā cāmpis,  
Arbōribūsq̄ cōmā. Lib. 4. 7.

## A TRICOLON TRISTROPHON.

§ 121. XV. One Hexameter, [No. 1,] one Iambic Dimeter, [No. 8,] and one Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic, [No. 4,] *one* epode.

Hōrridā tēpētās cōlūm cōtraxit, ēt imbrēs  
Nivēs quē dēdūcūt Jōvem:  
Nūnc mārē, nūnc silūs. Epod. 13.

## A TRICOLON TRISTROPHON

§ 122. XVI. One Iambic Trimeter, [No. 6,] one Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic, [No. 4,] and one Iambic Dimeter [No. 8,] *only once used.*

Pētī nīhīl mē, sicūt ant̄ā, jūvat  
Scribērē vērsicūlos,  
Amōrē p̄rcūlsūm grāvi. Epod. 11.

## A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

§ 123. XVII. One Archilochian Heptameter, [No. 20,] and one Iambic Trimeter Catalectic, [No. 7,] a single example.

Solvītūr acris hīems grātā vīcō vēris, ēt Fāvōni,  
Trāhūntquē siccas māchināe cārinās. Lib. 1. 4.

## A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

§ 124. XVIII. One Iambic Dimeter Acephalus, [No. 10,] and one Iambic Trimeter Catalectic, [No. 7,] *one* ode.

Nōn ēbūr. nēque aurēum  
Mēā rēnidēt in dōmō lācunar. Lib. 2. 18.

## A MONOCOLON.

§ 125. XIX. The Ionic *a minore* [No. 18,] in *one* instance only.

Miserarum est neque amori dare ludum, neque dulce. Lib. 3. 12.

## INDEX TO THE ODES OF HORACE,

EXHIBITING THE FIRST WORDS OF EACH, WITH REFERENCES TO THE PRECEDING NUMBERS, ACCORDING TO THE EXAMPLES UNDER WHICH THEY ARE SCANNED.

<i>Æli vetusto</i> .....	107	<i>Jam veris comites</i> ...	111	<i>Parentis olim</i> .....	110
<i>Æquam memento</i> ...	107	<i>Justum et tenacem</i> ..	107	<i>Pastor quum trah.</i> ...	111
<i>Alibi ne doleas</i> .....	111	<i>Laudabunt alii</i> .....	114	<i>Pernicos odi puer</i> ...	108
<i>Altera jam teritur</i> ...	119	<i>Lupis et agnis</i> .....	110	<i>Petti nihil me</i> .....	122
<i>Angustam amici</i> ....	107	<i>Lydia dic per omnes</i> ..	118	<i>Phœbe, silvarumque</i> ..	108
<i>At O decorum</i> .....	110	<i>Mæcenas atavis</i> .....	113	<i>Phœbus volentem</i> ...	107
<i>Audivère Lyce</i> ....	112	<i>Malâ soluta</i> .....	110	<i>Pindarum quisquis</i> ..	109
<i>Bacchum in remotis</i> ..	107	<i>Martis coelebs</i> .....	108	<i>Pocimur aiquid</i> .....	108
<i>Beatus ille</i> .....	110	<i>Mater sæva Cupidinum</i>	109	<i>Quæ cura patrum</i> ...	107
<i>Cælo supinas</i> .....	107	<i>Mercuri facunde</i> ....	108	<i>Qualem ministrum</i> ..	107
<i>Cælo tonantem</i> .....	107	<i>Mercuri nam te</i> ....	108	<i>Quando repostum</i> ...	110
<i>Cum tu Lydia</i> .....	109	<i>Miserarum est</i> .....	125	<i>Quantum distet ab In.</i>	109
<i>Cur me querelis</i> ....	107	<i>Molis inertia</i> .....	116	<i>Quem tu Melpomene</i>	109
<i>Delicta majorum</i> ....	107	<i>Montium custos</i> .....	108	<i>Quem virum aut her.</i>	108
<i>Descende cælo</i> .....	107	<i>Motum ex Metello</i> ..	107	<i>Quid bellicosus</i> .....	107
<i>Dianam tenera</i> .....	112	<i>Musis amicus</i> .....	107	<i>Quid dedicatum</i> ....	107
<i>Diffugère nives</i> .....	120	<i>Natis in usum</i> .....	107	<i>Quid fles Asterie</i> ....	112
<i>Dive quem proles</i> ....	108	<i>Ne forte credas</i> .....	107	<i>Quid immerentes</i> ....	110
<i>Divis orte bonis</i> .....	111	<i>Ne sit ancillæ</i> .....	108	<i>Quid obsecratis</i> .....	117
<i>Donarem pateras</i> ....	113	<i>Notis longa ferre</i> ....	111	<i>Quid tibi vis</i> .....	114
<i>Donec gratus eram</i> ..	109	<i>Nondum subacta</i> ....	107	<i>Quis desiderio</i> .....	111
<i>Eheu fugaces</i> .....	107	<i>Non ebur neque aur.</i>	124	<i>Quæ multa gracilis</i> ..	112
<i>Est mihi nonum</i> ....	108	<i>Non semper umbres</i> ..	107	<i>Quo me Bacche</i> .....	109
<i>Et thure et fidibus</i> ..	109	<i>Non usitata</i> .....	107	<i>Quo, quo scelesti ru.</i>	110
<i>Exegi monumentum</i> ..	113	<i>Non vides quanto</i> ...	108	<i>Rectius vives</i> .....	108
<i>Extremum Tanais</i> ..	111	<i>Nox erat</i> .....	116	<i>Rogare longo</i> .....	110
<i>Fæne nympharum</i> ..	108	<i>Nullam Vare sacra</i> ..	115	<i>Scitèris Varo</i> .....	111
<i>Festo quid potius die</i>	109	<i>Nullus argento</i> .....	108	<i>Septimi Gades</i> .....	108
<i>Herculis ritu</i> .....	108	<i>Nunc est bibendum</i> ..	107	<i>Sic te Diva potens</i> ..	109
<i>Horrida tempestas</i> ...	121	<i>O cradelis adhunc</i> ..	115	<i>Solvitar acris hiems</i> ..	120
<i>Ibis Liburnis</i> .....	110	<i>O Diva gratum</i> .....	107	<i>Te maris et terræ</i> ...	114
<i>Icei beatis</i> .....	107	<i>O fons Blandusis</i> ...	112	<i>Tu ne quæsieris</i> ....	115
<i>Ille et nefasto</i> .....	107	<i>O matre pulchrâ</i> ....	107	<i>Tyrrhena regum</i> ....	107
<i>Impios parvas</i> .....	108	<i>O nata mecum</i> .....	107	<i>Ulla si juris</i> .....	108
<i>Inclusam Dantien</i> ...	111	<i>O navis referent</i> .....	112	<i>Uxor pauperis Ibyct</i> ..	109
<i>Intactis opulentior</i> ...	109	<i>O sæpe mecum</i> .....	107	<i>Velox amœnum</i> .....	107
<i>Integer vite</i> .....	108	<i>O Venus regina</i> .....	108	<i>Vides ut alta</i> .....	107
<i>Intermissa Venus diu</i>	109	<i>Odi profanum</i> .....	107	<i>Vile potabis</i> .....	108
<i>Jam jam efficaci</i> .....	117	<i>Otium Divos</i> .....	108	<i>Vitas hinnuleo</i> .....	112
<i>Jam paucæ aratro</i> ....	107	<i>Parcius junctas</i> .....	108	<i>Vixi puellis</i> .....	107
<i>Jam satis terris</i> .....	108	<i>Parcus Decorum</i> .....	107		

## APPENDIX.

*Of Punctuation; Capitals; Abbreviations; Division of the Roman Months; Tables of Roman Coins, Weights, and Measures.*

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma*, (,) *Semicolon*, (;) *Colon*, (:) *Period*, Punctum, or full stop, (.)

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part, of subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence, in this way of considering it; for the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod*, or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the *Colon*, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon; the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon double of the comma.

There are other points, which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!), and the *Parenthesis* (.). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon, a colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with the pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other *marks* made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are the *Apostrophe* ('); *Asterisk* (\*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel Lines* (||); *Paragraph* (¶); *Section* (§); *Quotation* (""); *Crotchets* [ ]; *Brace* ( { ); *Ellipsis* (... or —); *Caret* ( ^ ); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or larger letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decius*, or *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quintus*, or *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*, S. C. *Senatus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus, Populusque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books A. D. marks *Anno Domini*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicinas Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextus*; Cos. *Consul*; Cos. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Imp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in English, Esq. *Esquire*; Dr. *Debtor or Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*, that is; e. g. *exempli gratia*, for example; v. g. *verbi gratia*.

## OF TIME.

### DIVISION OF THE ROMAN MONTHS.

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by † *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*: the fifth day was called the *Nones*: and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides*: except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the *nones* fell upon the seventh day, and the *ides* on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or, by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias*, or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*: or *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the *ides*, which were marked *Idibus Decembris*, or *Decembris*: the day before the *ides*, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the *nones*, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked *Nonis Decembris*, or *Decembris*: the day before the *nones*, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

\* Two capitals in this way denote the plural number; as, L. D. *Legis Doctor*: LL. D. *Legum Doctor*.

† *Kalends*, or *Calends*, is derived from *Calo*, -*are*, to call. In the infancy of Rome, a priest summoned the people together in the Capitol, on the first day of the month, or of the new moon, and called over the days that intervened between that and the *Nones*. In later times the *Fasti*, or Calendar, used to be put up in public places.

The *Nones* [*Nonæ*] are so called, because they are nine days from the *Ides*. *Ides* [*Idus*] from the obsolete verb *Iduare*, to divide, because they divide the month nearly equally.

JUNIO, APRILIS, SEPTEMQUE, NOVEMQUE tricesas;  
 Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;  
 At si bissextus fuerit, superadditar unus.  
 To primam mensis lucem die esse kalendas.  
 Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,  
 Quator at reliqui; dabit idus quilibet octo.  
 Omnes post idus lices die esse kalendas,  
 Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of April, June, September, and November, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of January, August, and December, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of March, May, July, and October, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of February, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except Aprilis, which is used only as a Substantive.

In Leap year, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii*, or *Martias*: and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

TABLE.

The days of our months.	March, May, July and October (have 31 days.)	January, August and December (have also 31 days.)	April, June, September and November, (30 days.)	February has 28, and in Leap Year 29 days.
1	Calendis.	Calendis.	Calendis.	Calendis.
2	VI	IV } ante	IV } ante	IV } ante
3	V } ante	III } Nonas.	III } Nonas.	III } Nonas.
4	IV } Nonas.	Pridie Nonas	Pridie Nonas	Pridie Nonas
5	III } Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.
6	Pridie Nonas	VIII } ante Idus.	VIII } ante Idus.	VIII } ante Idus.
7	Nonis.	VII } ante Idus.	VII } ante Idus.	VII } ante Idus.
8	VIII } ante Idus.	VI } ante Idus.	VI } ante Idus.	VI } ante Idus.
9	VII } ante Idus.	V } ante Idus.	V } ante Idus.	V } ante Idus.
10	VI } ante Idus.	IV } ante Idus.	IV } ante Idus.	IV } ante Idus.
11	V } ante Idus.	III } ante Idus.	III } ante Idus.	III } ante Idus.
12	IV } ante Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	III } ante Idus.	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
14	Pridie Idus.	XIX } ante calend.	XVIII } ante calend.	XVI } ante calend.
15	Idibus.	XVIII } ante calend.	XVII } ante calend.	XV } ante calend.
16	XVII } ante calend.	XVII } ante calend.	XVI } ante calend.	XIV } ante calend.
17	XVI } ante calend.	XVI } ante calend.	XV } ante calend.	XIII } ante calend.
18	XV } ante calend.	XV } ante calend.	XIV } ante calend.	XII } ante calend.
19	XIV } ante calend.	XIV } ante calend.	XIII } ante calend.	XI } ante calend.
20	XIII } ante calend.	XIII } ante calend.	XII } ante calend.	X } ante calend.
21	XII } ante calend.	XII } ante calend.	XI } ante calend.	IX } ante calend.
22	XI } ante calend.	XI } ante calend.	X } ante calend.	VIII } ante calend.
23	X } ante calend.	X } ante calend.	IX } ante calend.	VII } ante calend.
24	IX } ante calend.	IX } ante calend.	VIII } ante calend.	VI } ante calend.
25	VIII } ante calend.	VIII } ante calend.	VII } ante calend.	V } ante calend.
26	VII } ante calend.	VII } ante calend.	VI } ante calend.	IV } ante calend.
27	VI } ante calend.	VI } ante calend.	V } ante calend.	III } ante calend.
28	V } ante calend.	V } ante calend.	IV } ante calend.	
29	IV } ante calend.	IV } ante calend.	III } ante calend.	
30	III } ante calend.	III } ante calend.		
31	Prid. Calend. of the fol. month.	Prid. Calend. of the fol. month.	Prid. Calend. of the fol. month.	Prid. Calend. Martias.

The Roman manner of counting from a given point includes that point. Thus, the third before the Nones, that is before the fifth of the month, is not the second, as we should say, but the third. But if the point from which the reckoning is to be made, is the first of the following month, that is, the Calends, it is not enough to bring into computation the number of days of the current month, but the Calends must also be regarded in the subtraction; that is, the number of days of the current month must be increased by two for the minuend. Hence the following

**RULE.** Add one to the number of the Nones and Ides, and two to the number of days in the month for the Calends, and then subtract the number of the day. Thus, to find the Roman date of the 21st of July, which has 31 days, add  $2 = 33$ , and from this take 21, and the remainder is 12: hence the Roman date of the 21st of July is 12th Cal. Aug.

## OF THE RECKONING OF MONEY.

1. The Romans reckoned their Gold money by *Greek Talents*, their Silver money by *Denarii*, and their Copper money by *Asses*.

2. The *as* was originally a pound of copper, but varied very much in its weight in different ages. The *Denarius* was the Greek Drachma, originally equal in value to ten *asses*, or about 15 cents of our money. The *sestertius* was one fourth of this, or two asses and a half (*semitertius*), and was hence denoted by IIS, or HS. The *sestertius* was called emphatically *nummus*, as all large sums were reckoned in it, after the coining of silver money.

3. The neuter, *sestertium*, which denoted a sum and not a coin, was equal to a thousand sestertii.

4. In reckoning by *asses*, as the Romans carried their numbers only to *centena millia* (100,000), and formed higher numbers by adverbs, the words *centena millia* came to be left out, and only the numeral adverbs, *decies*, *vicies*, &c. used, with which *centena millia* is to be supplied. Thus *decies aris* was *decies centena millia assium aris*.

5. In reckoning by *sesterces* the neuter noun *sestertium* was joined with the numeral adverb, in the case required by the construction. Thus *decies sestertium* was *decies centena millia sestertiorum* (gen. plur. of *sestertius*), a million of *sestertii*. The adverb often stood alone; thus, *decies*, *vicies*. There were, therefore, three forms, carefully to be distinguished from each other:—1. the *sestertius* joined with the cardinal numbers, denoting a single *nummus sestertius*:—2. the *sestertium* joined in the plural with ordinals, denoting so many thousands of the *nummi sestertii*:—3. the *sestertium*, joined in the singular only with numeral adverbs, denoting so many hundred *sestertia*, or hundred thousand *sestertii*. These three combinations were distinguished in writing, thus; HS. X. was *decem sestertii*; HS. X. *decem sestertia*; and HS. X. *decies sestertium*. But this distinction was not always observed, if our present MSS. of the classics are correct.

# TABLES

OF

## ROMAN MEASURES, WEIGHTS, AND MONEYS.

[ TABLE I. ]

## ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH.

1. Measures below the foot. (Unit: Pes = 11.649 inch.)

									Feet.	Inches.
Sextula .....										.16179
$1\frac{1}{2}$	Siciliquus.....									.24269
3	2	Semiuncia.....								.48537
$4\frac{1}{2}$	3	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Digitus .....							.72806
6	4	2	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Uncia.....						.97075
18	12	6	4	3	Palmas.....					2.91225
72	48	24	16	12	4	Pes.....				11.649
						10.....		9		8.49
						100.....		97		0.9
						1000.....		970		9.

[ TABLE II. ]

## ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH.

2. Measures above the foot.

									Miles.	Yds.	Feet.
Pes.....											.97075
$1\frac{1}{2}$	Palmipes.....										1.21344
$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Cubitus.....									1.45612
$2\frac{1}{2}$	2	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Pes Sestertius .....								2.49687
5	4	3+	2	Passus.....					1		1.85375
10	8	6+	4	2	Decempeda.....				3		0.7075
120	96	80	48	24	12	Actus.....			38		2.49
5000	4000	3333+	2000	1000	500	41+	Milliare .....		1617		2.75
7500	6000	5000	3000	1500	750	62+	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Leuga....	1	666	2.625
						10	Milliaria....		9	399	0.5
						100	do. ....		91	1631	2
						1000	do. ....		919	476	2





[TABLE IV.]  
ROMAN MEASURES OF CAPACITY.

2. For things dry. (Unit: *Modius* = 1 gall. 3 qts. 1.21 pts.)

[TABLE IV.]										
ROMAN MEASURES OF CAPACITY.										
2. For things dry. (Unit: Modius = 1 gall. 3 qts. 1.21 pts.)										
Ligula.....		cu. ft.	cu. inch.	bush.	pecks.	galls.	qts.	pts.		
4	Cyathus.....		0.68809					0.019809		
6	14 Acetabulum .....		2.74436					0.079236		
12	3 2 Quartarius .....		4.11654					0.118854		
24	6 4 2 Hemina.....		8.23306					0.237707		
48	12 8 4 2 Sextarius .....		16.46615					0.475415		
96	24 16 8 Semimodius....		32.93231					0.950829		
192	48 32 16 2 Modius..		263.45944				3	1.608632		
384	96 64 32 16 2		526.91688			1	3	1.218264		
768	192 128 64 32 16 8	10	85.16887	2	1	1	0	0.132848		
		100	80	23	3	0	0	1.32848		
		1000	304	237	2	1	2	1.2648		



[TABLE IV.]  
ROMAN MEASURES OF CAPACITY.

2. For things dry. (Unit: *Modius* = 1 gall. 3 qts. 1.21 pts.)

				cub. ft.	cub. inch.	bush.	pecks.	galls.	qts.	pts.
<i>Ligula</i> .....					0.68609					0.019809
4	<i>Cyathus</i> .....				2.74436					0.079236
6	1½	<i>Acetabulum</i> .....			4.11654					0.118854
12	3	2	<i>Quartarius</i> .....		8.23308					0.237707
24	6	4	2 <i>Hemina</i> .....		16.46615					0.475415
48	12	8	2 <i>Sextarius</i> .....		32.93231					0.950829
384	96	64	32 16 8 <i>Seminodius</i> ....		263.45644				3	1.606632
768	192	128	64 32 16 2 <i>Modius</i> ..		526.91688			1	3	1.219284
				16	3	85.10837	2	1	1	0
				160	30	851.68872	23	3	0	0
				1000	304	1684.8872	237	2	1	2

[TABLE V.]  
ROMAN WEIGHTS.

1. (Unit: *Libra* = 10 oz. 10 dwts. 9.53 grs. *Troy Weight*.)

	Troy Weight.				Avoirdupoise Wt.	
	lbs.	oz.	dwt.	grs.	lbs.	oz.
<i>Siliqua</i> .....				2.9222		0.10687
3 <i>Obolus</i> .....				8.7665		0.32061
6     2 <i>Scrupulum</i> .....				17.5331		0.64121
12    4     2 <i>Semisextula</i> .....			1	11.0662		1.28242
24    8     4     2 <i>Sextula</i> .....			2	22.1324		2.56484
36    12    6     3     1½ <i>Sicilicus</i> .....			4	9.1986		3.84726
48    16    8     4     2     1½ <i>Duella</i> .....			5	20.2647		5.12968
72    24    12    6     3     2     1½ <i>Semiuncia</i> .....			8	18.3971		7.69452
144   48    24    12    6     4     3     2 <i>Uncia</i> .....			17	12.7942		15.38905
1728   576   288   144   72   48   36   24   12 <i>Libra</i> .....			10	9.5306	11	8.66855
172800 57600 28800 14400 7200 4800 3600 2400 1200 100 <i>Centumpodium</i>	87	7	19	17.064	72	2 2.85491

[TABLE VI.]  
ROMAN WEIGHTS.  
2. Subdivisions of the *Libra*.

												Troy Weight.		Avoirdupois Wt.	
												oz.	dwt.	gr.	gr.
Uncia.....												17	12.7942	15.3806	
2 Sextans.....												1	15	1.5684	1
3 Quadrans.....	1½											2	12	14.3887	2
4 Triens.....	2	1½										3	10	3.1769	3
5 Quincunx.....	2½	1½	1½									4	7	15.9711	4
6 Semis.....	3	2	1½	1½								5	5	4.7653	5
7 Septunx.....	3½	2½	1½	1½	1½							6	2	17.5595	6
8 Bes.....	4	2½	2	1½	1½	1½						7	0	6.3538	7
9 Dodrans.....	4½	3	2½	1½	1½	1½	1½					7	17	19.1480	8
10 Dextans.....	5	3½	2½	2	1½	1½	1½	1½				8	15	7.9422	9
11 Decunx.....	5½	3½	2½	2½	1½	1½	1½	1½	1½			9	12	20.7364	10
12 Libra.....	6	4	3	2½	2	1½	1½	1½	1½	1½	1½	10	10	9.5306	11

# [TABLE VII.] ROMAN MONIES.

Unit: Denarius = 84d. ster. = 15½ cents in round numbers.

1. The moneys referred to the value which the As and Sesterius had before A. U. C. 486.

		£	s.	d.	far.	¢	cts.	milla.
Teruncius.....					.534			2.49
2	Sembella .....				1.668			4.84
4	As, Libella, Assipondium.....				2.186			9.67
8	4 2 Dupondius .....			1	2.834		8	0.95
10	5 2½ 1½ Sesterius.....			2	0.543		8	8.68
20	10 5 2½ 2 Quinarus, or Victoriatius.....			4	1.686		7	7.87
40	20 10 5 4 2 Denarius.....			8	2.172		15	4.74
100	500 250 125 100 50 25 Aureus, or Solidus.	17	9	2.288		3	86	8.46
		10	17	11	2.932	38	68	4.62
		100	88	19	9 1.326	386	84	6.2
		1000	889	17	9 1.266	3868	46	2.

# [TABLE VIII.] ROMAN MONIES.

2. The monies referred to the value which the As and Sestertius had 536—730 A. U. C.

Teruncius.....										£	s.	d.	far.	¢	cts.	mills.
2	Sembella .....												0.854			3.87
4	2	As, Libella, Assipondium.....											1.709			7.74
12½	6½	3½	Dupondius .....										3.417	1	5.48	
16	8	4	1½	Sestertius.....									2.834	3	0.95	
32	16	8	2½	2	Quinarius, or Victoriatus.....								0.543	3	8.68	
64	32	16	5	4	2	Denarius.....							1.066	7	7.37	
1600	800	400	125	100	50	25	Aureus, or Solidus.						2.172	15	4.74	
													2.293	3	86	8.46
													1.717	1	54	7.38
													1.172	15	47	3.85
													3.72	154	73	8.48

THE END.



